

# Tiguan


Edition: 05.2016

PartNr.: 5NA012720AB

Edition 05.2016

## Description of symbols



Refers to a section within a chapter that contains important information and safety notes  that should always be observed.



Indicates that the section is continued on the next page.



Indicates the end of a section.



Indicates situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as quickly as possible.



The symbol indicates a registered trademark. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.



Symbols like these refer you to warnings within the same section or on a given page. They draw your attention to possible risks of accident or injury and explain how they can be avoided.



Cross reference to potential risks of damage to property in the same section or on the page specified.



### DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which will lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.



### WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to fatal or severe injuries if you do not observe the warning.



### CAUTION

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which could lead to slight or medium injuries if you do not observe the warning.



### NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which could cause vehicle damage if you do not observe the warning.



Texts with this symbol contain additional information on the protection of the environment.



Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

## Thank you for choosing Volkswagen

By purchasing this Volkswagen, you have become the owner of a vehicle fitted with the most up-to-date technology and a multitude of convenience functions for your use and enjoyment.

**Before using your vehicle for the first time, please read and observe the information in this owner's manual. It will quickly help you to become familiar with your vehicle and all of its functions as well as making you aware of dangers to yourself and others and of how these dangers can be avoided.**

If you have any further questions about your vehicle, or if you think that the vehicle wallet has not covered everything, please get in touch with your Volkswagen dealership. They will always be happy to deal with your questions, suggestions or problems.

We hope you enjoy driving your new vehicle. Happy motoring.

**Volkswagen AG**



**Please observe important safety information about the front passenger front airbag ⇒ *Basic information on fitting and using child seats*.**

## About this owner's manual

- This owner's manual is valid for all models and versions of the Tiguan.
- An [alphabetical index](#) is included at the end of this manual.
- A [list of abbreviations](#) at the end of the manual explains the abbreviations used.
- [Directions and positions](#) such as left, right, front and rear are normally relative to the vehicle's direction of travel, unless otherwise indicated.
- [Illustrations](#) help with orientation and should be regarded as a general guide.
- This owner's manual was written for left-hand drive vehicles. In [right-hand drive vehicles](#) the controls may sometimes be different from those displayed in illustrations or described in the text ⇒ [Overview of the driver side](#).
- [Short definitions](#) appear in a different colour before some sections of this manual. They provide a summary of the function and use of a system or feature. More detailed information about the features, conditions and limitations of systems and equipment can be found in the relevant sections.
- Any technical changes that may be made to the vehicle after publication of this booklet are contained in a [supplement](#) that is included with the vehicle wallet.

All equipment and models are described without indicating whether the equipment is optional or specific to the model type. This means that your vehicle may not have some of the equipment described, or it may only be available in certain markets. The scope of equipment fitted in your vehicle can be found in the sales documentation and you can contact your Volkswagen dealership for further information.

All data in this owner's manual correspond to the information available at the time of going to print. Because the vehicle is constantly being developed and further improved, there may be differences between your vehicle and the data in this owner's manual. No discrepancy in data, illustrations or descriptions shall form the basis for any legal claim.

Please ensure that the complete vehicle wallet is always in the vehicle if you lend or sell the vehicle to someone else.

### Standard booklets in the vehicle wallet:

- Service schedule
- Owner's manual

### Additional booklets in the vehicle wallet (optional):

- Supplements
- Infotainment system
- *Other supplements*

# Owner's manual

## Safety

### General information

---

### Checklist

---

Observe the following information both before and during every journey to ensure your own safety, and the safety of all passengers and other road users ⇒ ⚠ :

- ✓ Check that all lights and turn signals are working properly.
- ✓ Check the tyre pressure (Wheels and tyres) and fuel level (Filling the tank).
- ✓ Ensure that you have a good, clear view through all of the windows.
- ✓ Air intake to the engine must not be obstructed, and the engine must not be covered with any kind of insulating materials .
- ✓ Secure any objects and luggage in the stowage compartments, the luggage compartment or on the roof Transporting items.
- ✓ Ensure that you are able to operate the pedals freely at all times.
- ✓ Secure any children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and size Safe transport of children.
- ✓ Adjust the front seats, head restraints and mirrors properly in accordance with the size of the occupants Sitting position.
- ✓ Wear shoes that provide good grip for your feet when using the pedals.
- ✓ The floor mat in the footwell on the driver side must leave the pedal area free and must be securely fastened.
- ✓ Assume a correct sitting position before setting off and maintain this position while driving. This also applies to all passengers Sitting position.
- ✓ Fasten your seat belt correctly before setting off and keep it properly fastened throughout the journey. This also applies to all passengers Seat belts.
- ✓ Each vehicle occupant must sit in a seat of their own and must have their own seat belt.
- ✓ Never drive if your driving ability is impaired, e.g. by medication, alcohol or drugs.
- ✓ Do not allow yourself to be distracted from the traffic, e.g. by passengers, telephone calls, opening menus and making adjustments to settings.
- ✓ Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- ✓ Observe traffic regulations and speed limits.
- ✓ When travelling long distances, stop and take a break regularly – at least every 2 hours.
- ✓ Secure animals in the vehicle using a system that is suitable for their weight and size.

### Checklist

---

In some countries, special safety standards and emissions-related regulations apply that the vehicle may not comply with. Volkswagen recommends that you visit your Volkswagen dealership before travelling abroad to find out about any legal requirements and the following issues at your destination:

- ✓ Does the vehicle need any technical modifications for driving abroad, e.g. masking or switching the headlights over?
- ✓ Are the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment and spare parts available for service and repair work?
- ✓ Are there any Volkswagen dealerships in the destination country?
- ✓ For petrol engines: is unleaded petrol with the correct octane number available?
- ✓ For diesel engines: is diesel with a low sulphur level available?
- ✓

Are the correct engine oil (Engine oil) and other service fluids that comply with Volkswagen specifications available in the destination country?

- ✓ Will the factory-fitted navigation system work with the navigation data available in the destination country?
- ✓ Are special tyres necessary for travelling in the destination country?
- ✓ Which requirements must be observed regarding reflective vests?

## Checklist

---

**Do not perform any work on the engine or in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the tasks, are aware of the general safety procedures and have the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools to hand ⇒ *In the engine compartment!* In any other case all work must be carried out by a qualified workshop. Please ensure that the following are checked regularly, preferably every time you fill the tank:**

- ✓ Windscreen washer fluid level Wipers
- ✓ Engine oil level Engine oil
- ✓ Engine coolant level Coolant
- ✓ Brake fluid level Brake support systems
- ✓ Tyre pressure Wheels and tyres

Vehicle lighting Lights required for the vehicle to be roadworthy:

- Turn signals
- Side lights, dipped beam headlights and main beam headlights
- Tail light cluster
- Brake lights
- Rear fog light
- Number plate lights

Observe the instructions and information for vehicles with an N1 approval ⇒ *Information for vehicles with N1 approval (light commercial vehicle)*.

### DANGER

Please observe important safety information about the front passenger front airbag ⇒ *Basic information on fitting and using child seats*.

### WARNING

Always observe current traffic regulations and speed limits, and think ahead when driving. Correct interpretation of a driving situation can make the difference between reaching your destination safely and having an accident with serious injuries.

### NOTICE

Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work or lack of Genuine Parts.



Regular servicing of your vehicle not only maintains its value, it also ensures that your vehicle remains roadworthy and in perfect working order. Servicing work should therefore be carried out in accordance with the service schedule. Some work may have to be carried out before the due date of the next service if the vehicle is subjected to severe operating conditions. Severe operating conditions

are, for example, regular stop-and-go driving and driving in areas with high levels of dust. Consult a qualified workshop for additional information. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Sitting position

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Dangers of assuming an incorrect sitting position*

⇒ *Correct sitting position*

### Number of seats

The vehicle has a total of **5** seats: 2 at the front and 3 at the rear. Each seat is equipped with a seat belt.

### WARNING

**Assuming an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle can increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, in the event of a collision or accident, or if the airbags are triggered.**

- All vehicle occupants must assume a correct sitting position before setting off and maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies to the fastening of seat belts.
- The number of vehicle occupants must never exceed the number of seats with seat belts in the vehicle.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in an authorised restraint system which is suitable for their height and weight  
⇒ *Safe transport of children* and ⇒ *Airbag system* .
- Always keep your feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion. Never place your feet on the seat or dash panel, for example, and never ride with your feet out the window. When you are sat like this, the airbag and seat belt cannot provide optimal protection and could actually increase the risk of injury during an accident.

### Dangers of assuming an incorrect sitting position

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

If the seat belts are not worn or are worn incorrectly, the risk of severe or fatal injuries increases. Seat belts can only provide optimal protection if the seat belt routing is correct. Assuming an incorrect sitting position considerably impairs the level of protection provided by a seat belt. This could lead to severe or even fatal injuries. The risk of severe or fatal injuries is especially increased when a deploying airbag strikes a vehicle occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position. The driver is responsible for all occupants transported in the vehicle, especially children.

The following list contains examples of sitting positions that can be dangerous for all vehicle occupants.

### Whenever the vehicle is in motion:

- Never stand in the vehicle.
- Never stand on the seats.
- Never kneel on the seats.
- Never tilt the backrest too far to the rear.
- Never lean against the dash panel.
- Never lie on the rear bench seat.
- Never sit on the front edge of a seat.
- Never sit sideways.

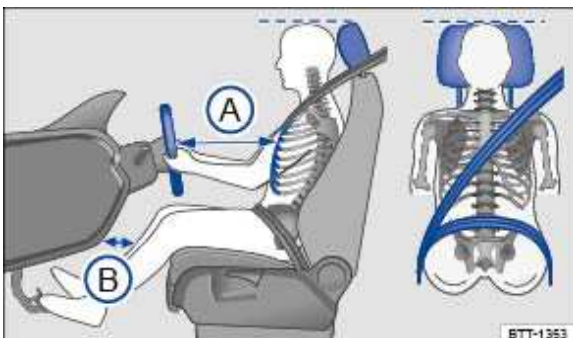
- Never lean out of a window.
- Never put your feet out of a window.
- Never put your feet on the dash panel.
- Never place your feet on the seat cushion or seat backrest.
- Never travel in a footwell.
- Never sit on the armrests.
- Never travel on a seat without wearing the seat belt.
- Never travel in the luggage compartment.

## **WARNING**

**Every incorrect sitting position in the vehicle increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.**

- **All vehicle occupants must maintain a correct sitting position and wear their seat belt properly while the vehicle is in motion.**
- **Sitting in an incorrect position, not fastening the seat belt, or not leaving adequate space between the occupants and the airbags could inflict critical or fatal injuries, especially if the airbags deploy and strike an occupant who has assumed an incorrect sitting position.**

## Correct sitting position



**Fig. 1** Correct distance between the driver and the steering wheel, correct seat belt routing and correct head restraint adjustment.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The following details the correct sitting positions for the driver and passengers.

If any vehicle occupants cannot assume a correct sitting position due to their physical build, they should contact a qualified workshop to find out about possible special modifications. The seat belts and airbags can only provide a maximum level of protection if a correct sitting position is assumed. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Volkswagen recommends the following seating position for your own safety and to reduce the level of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident:

### **The following applies to all vehicle occupants:**

- Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible ⇒ *Fig. 1*.
- For small people, push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then located underneath the top edge of the head restraint.
- For taller people, push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

- Keep both feet in the footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- Adjust and fasten seat belts properly ⇒ [Seat belts](#) .

### Additional points for the driver:

- In vehicles with head restraints that can be moved backwards and forwards, position the head restraint as close as possible to the back of your head.
- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your breastbone is at least 25 cm ⇒ [Fig. 1 @](#) , and the circumference of the steering wheel can be held at the sides with both hands and your arms slightly bent ⇒ [Steering wheel](#) .
- The steering wheel must always point towards the breastbone and not towards the face.
- Adjust the driver seat by moving it forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly bent and so that the distance from the dash panel to your knees is at least 10 cm ⇒ [Fig. 1 @](#) .
- Adjust the height so that you can reach the highest point of the steering wheel.
- Always leave both feet in the footwell, to help ensure you maintain control of the vehicle at all times.

### Additional points for the front passenger:

- In vehicles with head restraints that can be moved backwards and forwards, position the head restraint as close as possible to the back of your head.
- Move the backrest into an upright position so that your back rests fully against it.
- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible so that the airbag can provide maximum protection if it is deployed.


## Seat belts

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ [Warning lamp](#)
- ⇒ [Frontal collisions and the laws of physics](#)
- ⇒ [What happens to vehicle occupants who have not fastened their seat belts](#)
- ⇒ [Seat belt protection](#)
- ⇒ [Checklist](#)
- ⇒ [Fastening and unfastening seat belts](#)
- ⇒ [Seat belt routing](#)
- ⇒ [Seat belt height adjuster](#)
- ⇒ [Belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter](#)
- ⇒ [Service and disposal of belt tensioners](#)
- ⇒ [Proactive occupant protection system](#)

Check the condition of all seat belts regularly. If the belt webbing, belt connections, belt retractor or seat belt buckle become damaged, the seat belt in question should be replaced immediately by a qualified workshop ⇒  . The qualified workshop must use correct spare parts that are compatible with the vehicle, equipment level and model year. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Seat belts will only offer the optimum level of protection when they are fastened and used properly.

- Seat belts are the most effective means of reducing the risk of serious and fatal injuries in the event of an accident. Seat belts must always be fastened properly when the vehicle is in motion to protect the driver and all vehicle occupants.
- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must adopt the correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip. This applies to all vehicle occupants and also in urban traffic.
- While the vehicle is in motion, secure all children travelling in the vehicle in a restraint system suitable for their weight and height. They must also wear correctly fastened seat belts ⇒ *Safe transport of children*.
- Only start driving when all passengers have correctly fastened their seat belts.
- Only ever insert the latch plate into the buckle of the associated seat, and always ensure that it engages properly. Using a buckle that does not belong to the seat that you are occupying reduces the level of protection and can lead to severe injuries.
- Avoid allowing foreign bodies or liquids to enter the slot for the seat belt buckle. This could prevent the belt buckle and seat belt from working properly.
- Never unfasten the seat belt while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never allow more than one person to share the same seat belt.
- Never travel when children or babies are being carried on somebody's lap and fastened with the same belt.
- Never travel wearing loose, bulky clothing (such as an overcoat over a jacket). This could prevent the seat belts from fitting and functioning properly.

## WARNING

Damaged seat belts are very dangerous and can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Never damage the belt by trapping it in the door or in the seat mechanism.
- If the belt webbing or any other part of the seat belt becomes damaged, the seat belt may tear during an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.
- Have damaged seat belts immediately replaced by new seat belts that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle. Seat belts subjected to stress and stretched during an accident must be replaced by a qualified workshop. Renewal may be necessary even if there is no apparent damage. The belt anchorage should also be checked.
- Never try to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself. All repairs to the seat belts, belt retractors and buckles must be carried out by a qualified workshop.

### Warning lamp

---








Fig. 2 In the instrument cluster: warning lamp.





Fig. 3 On the instrument cluster display: seat belt status for the rear seats.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\Rightarrow$   [Introduction](#)



Lights up or flashes	Possible cause	Remedy
	Driver seat belt is not fastened.	Fasten seat belts.
	The front passenger seat belt is not fastened if the front passenger seat is occupied.	
	Objects on the front passenger seat.	Remove objects from the front passenger seat and stow them safely.
	Seat belt not fastened for a rear seat passenger.	Fasten the seat belt.
	Seat belt fastened for a rear seat passenger.	


Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

A signal tone will be given for a few seconds if the seat belts are not fastened as the car pulls off and reaches a speed of more than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph), or if the seat belts are unfastened while the vehicle is in motion. This is accompanied by the flashing warning lamp   $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 2.

The warning lamp  does not go out until the driver and front passenger fasten their seat belts while the ignition is switched on.

### Belt status display for the rear seats

After the ignition has been switched on, the belt status display  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 3 on the instrument cluster display shows the driver whether the rear seat passengers have fastened their seat belts. The symbol  indicates that the passenger on this seat has fastened their seat belt. The symbol  indicates that the seatbelt has not been fastened.

The belt status display will be shown for approximately 30 seconds if a seat belt is fastened or unfastened on the rear seats. The display can be hidden by pressing the  button in the instrument cluster.

If a seat belt for one of the rear seats is unfastened while the vehicle is in motion, the belt status display will flash for a maximum of 30 seconds. If the vehicle is travelling faster than approximately 25 km/h (15 mph) a signal tone will also be given.

## WARNING

Incorrectly fastened or unfastened seat belts increase the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Seat belts will only offer the optimum level of protection when they are fastened and used properly.

## Frontal collisions and the laws of physics





**Fig. 4** Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a brick wall.



**Fig. 5** Unbelted occupants in a vehicle striking a brick wall.



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*

The physical principles involved in a frontal collision are relatively simple. As soon as the vehicle is in motion ⇒ *Fig. 4*, both the moving vehicle and its passengers gain kinetic energy.

The higher the vehicle speed and the heavier the weight of the vehicle, the greater the amount of energy that will have to be released in the event of an accident.

However, the most significant factor is the speed of the vehicle. If the speed doubles from approximately 25 km/h (15 mph) to approximately 50 km/h (31 mph), for example, the kinetic energy increases by a factor of four.

The amount of kinetic energy depends on the speed of the vehicle and the weight of the vehicle and passengers. The higher the speed and the heavier the weight, the greater the amount of energy that will be released in the event of an accident.

Passengers not wearing seat belts are not connected to the vehicle. In the event of a frontal collision they will continue to move forwards at the same speed at which the vehicle was travelling before impact, until something stops them. Because the passengers in our example are not restrained by seat belts, the entire amount of kinetic energy will be released only at the point of impact against the wall ⇒ *Fig. 5*.

Even at speeds of approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) to approximately 50 km/h (31 mph), the forces acting on bodies in a collision can easily exceed one tonne (1,000 kg). These forces are even greater at higher speeds.

This example applies not only to frontal collisions, but to all accidents and collisions.

## **What happens to vehicle occupants who have not fastened their seat belts**

---





**Fig. 6** An unbelted driver is thrown forwards.



**Fig. 7** The unbelted rear passenger is thrown forwards, hitting the belted driver.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Many people believe that they can brace their weight with their hands in a minor collision. This is not true.

Even at low speeds, the forces acting on the body in a collision are so great that occupants cannot brace themselves with their arms and hands. In a frontal collision, vehicle occupants who have not fastened their seat belts will be thrown forward and will make unchecked contact with parts of the vehicle interior, e.g. the steering wheel, dash panel, or windscreen ⇒ *Fig. 6*.

The airbag system is not a substitute for the seat belts. When triggered, the airbags only provide additional protection. Airbags are not triggered in all kinds of accidents. Even if the vehicle is equipped with an airbag system, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must fasten their seat belt and wear it correctly while the vehicle is in motion. This reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident – regardless of whether an airbag is fitted for the seat.

Each airbag can only be triggered once. To achieve best possible protection, seat belts must always be worn properly. This also ensures that protection is provided in accidents in which the airbag is not triggered. Any vehicle occupants not wearing a seat belt can be thrown out of the vehicle and sustain more severe or even fatal injuries as a result.

It is also important for the rear seat occupants to wear seat belts properly, as they could otherwise be thrown forwards violently in an accident. Rear passengers who are not wearing seat belts endanger not only themselves and the driver, but also other people in the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 7*.

## Seat belt protection

---



**Fig. 8** Driver restrained by a properly positioned seat belt during a sudden braking manoeuvre.



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Correctly fastened seat belts can make a major difference. When fastened properly, seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting positions and considerably reduce the kinetic energy in the event of an accident. Seat belts also help to prevent uncontrolled movements that could lead to severe injuries. In addition, wearing seat belts properly reduces the risk of being thrown from the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 8*.

Passengers wearing seat belts correctly benefit greatly from the ability of the belts to reduce the kinetic energy. The front crumple zones and other passive safety features (such as the airbag system) are also designed to reduce kinetic energy. The amount of energy generated will thus decrease, thereby reducing the risk of injury.

The examples describe frontal collisions. Of course, properly worn seat belts substantially reduce the risk of injury in all other types of accidents. This is why seat belts must be fastened before every trip – even if you are only planning to drive a very short distance. Ensure that all passengers also wear their seat belts properly.

Accident statistics have shown properly worn seat belts to be an effective means of substantially reducing the risk of injury and improving the chances of survival in a serious accident. Furthermore, properly worn seat belts improve the protection provided by airbags in the event of an accident. This is why wearing a seat belt is a legal requirement in most countries.

Although the vehicle is equipped with airbags, the seat belts must be fastened and worn. For example, the front airbags will only be triggered in certain types of frontal collision. The front airbags will not be triggered during minor frontal collisions, minor side collisions, rear collisions, rolls or accidents in which the airbag trigger threshold in the control unit is not exceeded.

Therefore, always wear your seat belt and ensure that your passengers have fastened their seat belts properly before you drive off.

---


## Checklist Using seat belts



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

---

### Checklist

**Using seat belts** ⇒  :

- ✓ Check the condition of all seat belts regularly.
- ✓ Keep the seat belts clean.
- ✓ Never let any foreign bodies and liquids get on to the seat belt, the latch plate or into the slot for the seat belt buckle.
- ✓ Do not trap or damage the seat belt and latch plate, for example when closing the door.
- ✓ Never remove, modify or repair the seat belt or any part of the belt fixture system.
- ✓ Always fasten the seat belt correctly before every journey and keep it fastened while the vehicle is in motion.

#### Twisted seat belt

If it is difficult to remove the seat belt from the belt guide, the seat belt may have become twisted if it was returned too quickly into the side trim:

- Take hold of the latch plate then slowly and carefully pull out the seat belt.
- Untwist the seat belt and guide it back slowly by hand.

Fasten the seat belt even if you are unable to undo the twist. However, the twist should not be in part of the seat belt that comes into direct contact with the body. The twist should be corrected immediately by a qualified workshop.

## WARNING

Using seat belts incorrectly increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Regularly check to see if the seat belt and its related parts are in perfect condition.
- Always keep the seat belt clean.
- Do not allow the belt webbing to become jammed, damaged or to rub on any sharp edges.
- Always keep the latch plate and slot in the buckle free from foreign bodies and liquids.

### Fastening and unfastening seat belts




Fig. 9 Inserting the seat belt latch plate into the buckle.





Fig. 10 Removing the latch plate from the buckle.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)


If worn properly, seat belts hold the vehicle occupants in the correct sitting position during an accident or braking manoeuvre, providing maximum protection ⇒ .

### Fastening the seat belts

Fasten seat belts before every trip.

- Always adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ [Sitting position](#).
- Engage the rear seat backrests in an upright position ⇒ .
- Take hold of the latch plate and pull it evenly across your chest and pelvis. Do **not** twist the belt in the process ⇒ .
- Insert the latch plate securely into the buckle belonging to the occupied seat ⇒ [Fig. 9](#).
- Pull on the seat belt to ensure that the latch plate is securely locked in the buckle.

### Unfastening the seat belts

Unfasten seat belts only when the vehicle is stationary ⇒ .

- Press the red button in the buckle ⇒ *Fig. 10*. The latch plate is released and springs out.
- Guide the belt back by hand so that it rolls up easily, without twisting the seat belt and without damaging the trim.

### Lockable seat belt

When the belt webbing has been *completely* retracted and a clicking sound can be heard as the seat belt is being rolled up, the vehicle is equipped with lockable seat belts. The seat belt locking function should be used only for fitting certain child restraint systems ⇒ *Safe transport of children*. A locked seat belt must be released when a vehicle occupant uses the seat belt.

## ⚠ WARNING

Incorrect seat belt routing can cause severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- The seat belts only offer best protection when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly according to the occupant's height.
- Unfastening seat belts while the vehicle is in motion can lead to severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden braking manoeuvre.

### Seat belt routing

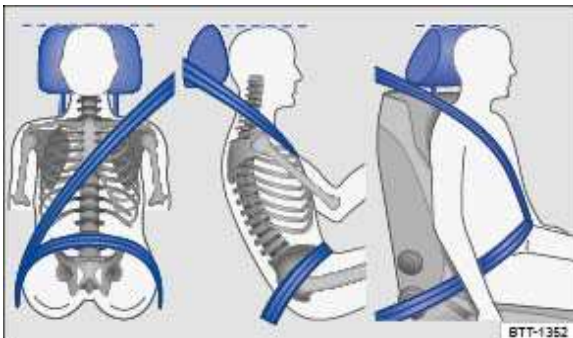


Fig. 11 Correct seat belt routing and head restraint adjustment.



Fig. 12 Correct seat belt routing during pregnancy.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Seat belts only provide an optimum level of protection during an accident when they are routed correctly. Correct seat belt routing reduces the risk of severe or fatal injuries. Correct seat belt routing also holds the vehicle occupants in position so that an inflating airbag can offer the maximum level of protection. Therefore you must always fasten your seat belt and ensure that the seat belt routing is correct.

Assuming an incorrect sitting position can cause severe or fatal injuries ⇒ *Sitting position*.

## Correct seat belt routing

- The shoulder part of the seat belt must always lie on the centre of the shoulder, never across the neck, over or under the arm or behind the back.
- The lap part of the seat belt must always lie across the pelvis, never across the stomach.
- The seat belt must always lie flat and snugly on the body. Tighten the belt if necessary.

For **pregnant women** the seat belt must be positioned evenly over the chest and as low as possible over the pelvis. It must lie flat so that no pressure is exerted on the lower body – this applies in every stage of pregnancy ⇒ [Fig. 12](#) .

## Correct seat belt routing according to height

The following equipment can be used to adjust the seat belt routing:

- Seat belt height adjuster for the front seats ⇒ [Seat belt height adjuster](#) .
- Height-adjustable front seats ⇒ [Sitting position](#) .



### WARNING

**Incorrect seat belt routing can cause severe injuries in the event of an accident or a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre.**

- The seat belts only offer best protection when the backrests are in an upright position and the seat belts have been fastened properly.
- The seat belt itself or a loose seat belt can cause serious injuries if the seat belt shifts from harder body parts in the direction of softer body parts (e.g. stomach).
- The shoulder part of the seat belt must lie on the centre of the shoulder and never under the arm or across the neck.
- The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the chest.
- The lap part of the seat belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach. The seat belt must lie flat and snugly on the pelvis. Tighten the belt if necessary.
- For pregnant women, the lap part of the seat belt must be as low as possible over the pelvis and lie flat around the bulge of the belly.
- Do not twist the belt webbing while the seat belt is being worn.
- Never hold the seat belt away from the body by hand.
- The belt webbing should not lie over hard or fragile objects, such as glasses, pens or keys.
- Never use seat belt clips, retaining rings or similar items to alter the seat belt routing.



If a person's physical build prevents them from routing the seat belt properly, contact a qualified workshop to find out about any special modifications so that the seat belts and airbags can provide the optimum level of protection. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Seat belt height adjuster





Fig. 13 Next to the front seats: belt height adjuster.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The seat belt height adjusters for the front seats can be used to adjust the position of the seat belt on the shoulder so that it can be fastened properly:

- Push the shoulder belt guide together in the direction of the arrows and hold ⇒ [Fig. 13](#) .
- Push the shoulder belt guide up or down so that the seat belt lies over the middle of the shoulder ⇒ [Seat belt routing](#) .
- Let go of the shoulder belt guide.
- Pull sharply on the seat belt to check whether the shoulder belt guide is engaged securely.

## **WARNING**

**Never adjust the seat belt height when the vehicle is in motion.**

## Belt retractor, belt tensioner, belt tension limiter

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The seat belts in the vehicle are part of the vehicle safety concept ⇒ [Airbag system](#) and include the following important functions:

### **Automatic belt retractor**

Every seat belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder part of the belt. Full freedom of movement is made possible when the shoulder belt is pulled slowly or when the vehicle is travelling at normal speeds. However, if the belt is pulled out quickly or during sudden braking, during travel in mountains or bends and during acceleration, the automatic belt retractor is locked.

Fastened seat belts on the front seats may be tensioned automatically by the proactive occupant protection system in critical situations (e.g. during an emergency stop, oversteering or understeering). Both seat belts are slackened if the accident does not happen, or when the critical situation has passed. The proactive occupant protection system is ready to be triggered again ⇒ [Proactive occupant protection system](#) .

### **Belt tensioners**

The seat belts for the front seat vehicle occupants, and in some cases those on the outer rear seats, are equipped with belt tensioners.

The belt tensioners are activated by sensors during severe frontal, side and rear collisions. They tighten the seat belts against the direction in which they are pulled. Any slack in the seat belt is retracted, which can reduce the passenger's movement forwards or in the direction of the impact. The belt tensioner works together with the airbag system. If the side airbags are not activated, the belt tensioner will not be activated if the vehicle rolls over.

A fine dust may be produced when the airbags are triggered. This is quite normal and does not mean that there is a fire in the vehicle.

### **Reversible belt tensioning (proactive occupant protection system)**

In certain driving situations (for example in a sudden braking manoeuvre, oversteering and understeering) the seat belt can be tensioned temporarily ⇒ [Proactive occupant protection system](#) .



## Belt tension limiter

The belt tension limiter reduces the pressure exerted by the seat belt on the body during an accident.



All safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements ⇒ [Service and disposal of belt tensioners](#) .

## Service and disposal of belt tensioners



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ [Introduction](#)

Seat belts may become damaged during any work on the belt tensioners or while removing or refitting any vehicle parts in conjunction with any other repair work. This damage will not always be noticeable. The consequence may be that the belt tensioners could function incorrectly, or not function at all, in the event of an accident.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the belt tensioner is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.



### WARNING

The risk of severe or fatal injuries may be increased if the seat belts, automatic belt retractors and belt tensioners are not used correctly, or if they are repaired by a non-professional. As a result, the belt tensioners may not be triggered when they should, or they may be triggered unexpectedly.

- Any repairs, adjustments or removal and refitting of parts in the belt tensioners or seat belts should always be carried out by a qualified workshop and never by yourself ⇒ [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#) .
- Belt tensioners and automatic belt retractors cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.



The airbag modules and belt tensioners may contain perchlorate. Please comply with legislation regarding disposal.

## Proactive occupant protection system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ [Introduction](#)

The proactive occupant protection system is an assistance system that initiates action to protect vehicle occupants in dangerous situations. However, the system cannot prevent a collision.

The full range of functions of the proactive occupant protection system will be available only if the function is activated in the infotainment system, the **Sport** and **Off-road** driving profiles are not active, and there are no malfunctions ⇒ [Function limitations](#) .

## Displays

Display	Remedy
Proactive occupant protection not available	Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.
Proactive occupant protection: function restricted	

## Basic functions

Depending on country-specific legal requirements and also on the vehicle equipment level, the following functions may be initiated, either singularly or jointly, in critical situations (e.g. emergency braking or over or understeering) from a speed of approximately 30 km/h (18 mph):



- Temporary tensioning of the fastened front seat belts.

- Automatic closing of the side windows and the glass roof down to a gap.

### Additional information for vehicles with an area monitoring system (Front Assist)

In vehicles fitted with the area monitoring system (Front Assist) ⇒ *Area monitoring system (Front Assist) incl. City Emergency Brake*, the probability of a collision with the vehicle ahead is also calculated within the system limits. The system can trigger the proactive occupant protection system if it detects a probable collision with the vehicle ahead.

### Settings in the infotainment system

The proactive occupant protection system can be activated or deactivated in the Infotainment system using the button  and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons.

If the checkbox in the function button is ticked , the function is active and will provide the maximum level of assistance.

The proactive occupant protection system will be reactivated every time the ignition is switched on.

### Setting in driving profile selection (Driving Mode Selection)

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the proactive occupant protection system is adjusted to the specific vehicle settings when the **Sport** or **Off-road** driving profiles are selected ⇒ *Driving Profile Selection*.

### Error message

A message will be shown in the instrument cluster if there is a malfunction or fault in the proactive occupant protection system.

The proactive occupant protection system should be checked by a qualified dealership if it does not function as described in this chapter.

### Function limitations

The proactive occupant protection system will not be available, or will only be available to a limited extent, in the following situations:

- When the TCS or ESC are switched off, and when the vehicle is reversing ⇒ *Brake support systems*.
- If there is a fault in the ESC, belt tensioner or in the airbag control unit ⇒ *Seat belts* or ⇒ *Airbag system*.
- The temporary tensioning for the front passenger seat is switched off if the front passenger front airbag is deactivated.

## WARNING

The intelligent technology of the proactive occupant protection system cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the proactive occupant protection system tempt you into taking any safety risks. The system cannot prevent a collision. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The system cannot detect objects in all situations.
- The proactive occupant protection system does not react to people, animals, objects crossing in front of the vehicle, or objects which are hard to make out.
- Reflective objects such as safety barriers, tunnel entrances, heavy rain and ice can impair the function of the proactive occupant protection system and thus prevent it from detecting a collision risk.
- Incorrect system activation can occur.

## WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Never change settings in the infotainment system when the vehicle is in motion.

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Airbag system

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Types of front passenger front airbag system*
- ⇒ *Indicator lamp*
- ⇒ *Description and function of the airbags*
- ⇒ *Front airbags*
- ⇒ *Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch*
- ⇒ *Side airbags*
- ⇒ *Curtain airbags*
- ⇒ *Knee airbags*

The vehicle is equipped with a front airbag for the driver and front passenger. The front airbags can provide front seat occupants with additional chest and head protection if the seat, seat belts, head restraints and, in the case of the driver, steering wheel are adjusted and used correctly. Airbags are meant only for additional protection. The airbags are not a substitute for seat belts. Seat belts must always be worn, even when the front seats are equipped with front airbags.



## WARNING

Never rely solely on the airbag system for your protection.

- Even if an airbag is triggered, it only offers auxiliary protection.
- The airbag system offers the best level of protection, and reduces the risk of injury, when seat belts are properly worn ⇒ *Seat belts*.
- Before every trip, each vehicle occupant must adopt the correct sitting position, correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to their seat and keep it fastened properly throughout the trip. This applies to all vehicle occupants and also in urban traffic.



## WARNING

The risk of injury increases if there are any objects between the vehicle occupants and the deployment area of the airbag when it is triggered. This will alter the deployment zone of the airbag, or the objects will be flung against the body.

- Never hold any objects in your hand or on your lap while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport any objects on the front passenger seat. The objects could enter the deployment zone of the airbag during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres and then be flung dangerously through the vehicle interior if the airbag is activated.
- Vehicle occupants sitting on the front seats and rear outer seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between themselves and the airbags. Ensure that children and passengers keep to this rule.



## WARNING

The airbag system can only be triggered once. The system will have to be replaced if the airbags have been triggered.

- Airbags that have been triggered, and any affected system parts, must immediately be replaced with new parts that are approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle.
- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.
- Never use recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.
- Never alter any components of the airbag system.

## ⚠ WARNING

Fine dust or steam may be released when the airbags trigger. This is normal and does not mean that there is a fire in the vehicle.

- The fine dust can cause irritation to the skin and eye membranes and cause breathing difficulties, particularly for people suffering from asthma or people who have (had) other respiratory problems. To help reduce breathing difficulties, get out of the vehicle or open the windows or doors for more fresh air.
- If you come into contact with the dust, you should wash your hands and face with a mild soap and water before eating.
- Do not let the dust get into your eyes or into open wounds.
- If dust has entered your eyes, rinse them with water.

## ⚠ WARNING

Cleaning agents that contain solvents cause the surface of the airbag modules to become porous. In an accident that triggers the airbag, loose plastic parts can cause serious injury.





- Never clean the dash panel or the airbag covers with cleansers that contain solvents.

## Types of front passenger front airbag system



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ ⚠ Introduction

Volkswagen offers two different front airbag systems for front passengers:

A	B
<p><b>Features of the front passenger front airbag that can <b>only be switched off by a qualified workshop</b>.</b></p>	<p><b>Features of the front passenger front airbag that can be switched off manually using the key-operated switch ⇒ <i>Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch</i>.</b></p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster.</li> <li>– Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster.</li> <li>– Indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG <b>OFF</b>  in the top area of the centre console.</li> <li>– Indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG <b>ON</b>  in the top area of the centre console.</li> <li>– Key-operated switch in the side of the dash panel on the passenger side (only visible when the door is open).</li> <li>– Front passenger front airbag in the dash panel.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Name: airbag system.</b></p>	<p><b>Name: airbag system with front passenger front airbag deactivation.</b></p>

## Indicator lamp





**Fig. 14** In the upper section of the centre console: indicator lamp showing deactivated front passenger front airbag, indicator lamp showing activated front passenger front airbag.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ *Introduction*

Lit up	Location	Possible cause	Remedy
	Instrument cluster.	Fault in airbag and belt tensioner system.	Go to a qualified workshop to have the system checked immediately.
<b>OFF</b>	Upper section of the centre console ⇒ Fig. 14 <b>A</b> .	Fault in the airbag system.	Go to a qualified workshop to have the system checked immediately.
		Front passenger front airbag switched off.	Check whether the airbag should stay switched off.
<b>ON</b>	Upper section of the centre console ⇒ Fig. 14 <b>B</b> .	Front passenger front airbag switched on.	No solution – the indicator lamp will disappear automatically approximately 60 seconds after the ignition is switched on, or after the front passenger front airbag is switched on using the key-operated switch.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF** indicator lamp in the upper section of the centre console does not light up **continuously** when the front passenger front airbag is **deactivated**, or lights up with the indicator lamp in the instrument cluster, a fault in the airbag system may have occurred ⇒ .

## WARNING

If there is a fault in the airbag system, the airbag may not trigger correctly, may not trigger at all or may trigger unexpectedly. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- The airbag system should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- Never fit a child seat to the front passenger seat or remove a child seat that is already fitted. The front passenger front airbag may trigger during an accident in spite of the fault.

## NOTICE

To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.

## Description and function of the airbags

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ *Introduction*

The airbags can protect vehicle occupants during frontal and side collisions by reducing their movement in the direction of the collision.


When an airbag is triggered, it is inflated by a gas generator. This causes the airbag covers to break, and the airbags inflate forcefully to cover their deployment zones within milliseconds. Once a vehicle occupant wearing a seat belt starts to sink into the inflated airbag, the gas inside the airbag starts to escape to cushion the occupant and slow down their movement. This can reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. A triggered airbag will not always prevent other injuries from occurring, such as swelling, bruising, burning and grazing. The deployment of the airbag can also produce frictional heat.

Airbags provide no protection for the arms or lower body. Exception: in vehicles with a knee airbag, the knee area of the driver will be protected.

The most important factors for triggering the airbag are the type of accident, the angle of impact, the vehicle speed and the type of object with which the vehicle collides. Therefore, visible damage to the vehicle does not always mean that the airbag should have been triggered.





Whether or not the airbag triggers is determined by the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the vehicle may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage in an accident do not necessarily give an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not. It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds and reference values, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. It is therefore impossible to cover every possible kind and angle of impact that would trigger the airbags. Important factors in the triggering of the airbag include the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the vehicle hits, the angle of impact, and the vehicle speed.

Airbags only serve as a supplement to the three-point seat belt in some accident situations when the vehicle braking is sufficient to trigger the airbags. Airbags can only be triggered once and only in certain situations. The seat belts are always there to provide protection in situations in which the airbags are not triggered or have already been triggered. For example, if the vehicle collides with a further vehicle following the initial collision, or is hit by another vehicle.

The airbag system is part of the vehicle's overall passive safety concept. The airbag system can only work effectively when the occupants are wearing their seat belts correctly and have assumed a proper sitting position  ⇒ *Sitting position* .

## Components of the vehicle safety concept

The following vehicle safety equipment makes up the vehicle's safety concept to reduce the risk of severe and fatal injuries. Some of this equipment may not be fitted in your particular vehicle. It may not be available at all in some countries.

- Optimised seat belts for all seats.
- Belt tensioners for the driver and front passenger and also on the rear outer seats if in conjunction with side airbags.
- Belt tension limiter for the driver, front passenger and, if applicable, for the rear outer seats.
- Belt height adjuster for the front seats.
- Warning lamp  and belt status display.
- Front airbags for driver and front passenger.
- Side airbags for the driver, front passenger and, if applicable, for the rear outer seats.
- Curtain airbags on the left and right.
- If applicable, knee airbag for the driver.
- Airbag indicator lamp .
- PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  indicator lamp in top area of the centre console.
- PASSENGER AIR BAG **ON**  indicator lamp in top area of the centre console.
- Control units and sensors.
- Height-adjustable head restraints optimised for rear impact.
- Adjustable steering column.
- If applicable, anchor points for child seats on the rear outer seats and on the front passenger seat.
- If applicable, securing points for the top tether for child seats.

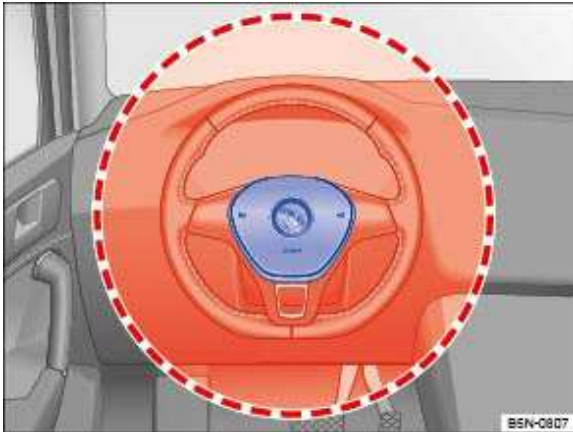
## Situations when the front, knee, side and curtain airbags will not be triggered:

- If the ignition is switched off during a collision.
- If the level of deceleration measured by the control unit is too low during a collision at the front of the vehicle.
- During a minor side collision.

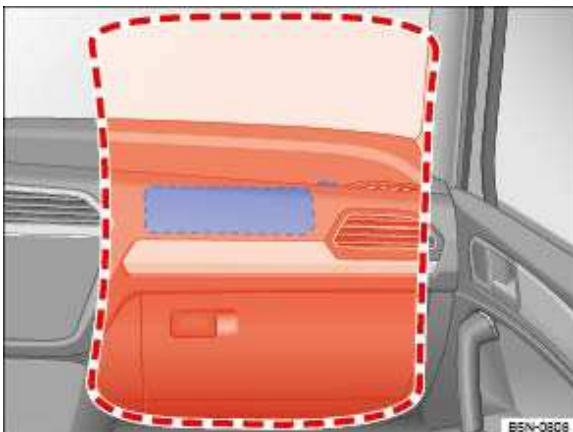
- During rear collisions.
- If the vehicle rolls over.
- If the impact speed in a collision is lower than the reference value specified in the control unit.

## Front airbags

---



**Fig. 15** Location and deployment zone of the driver front airbag.




**Fig. 16** Location and deployment zone of the front passenger front airbag.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

In conjunction with the seat belts, the front airbag system gives the front occupants additional protection for the head and chest in the event of a severe frontal collision. Always keep as far away from the front airbag as possible ⇒ *Sitting position*. This allows the front airbags to inflate fully when triggered, thus providing maximum protection.

The front airbag for the driver is located in the steering wheel ⇒ *Fig. 15* and the front airbag for the front passenger is located in the dash panel ⇒ *Fig. 16*. The airbag locations are identified by the text AIRBAG.

The areas inside the red lines are covered by the front airbags when deployed (deployment zone). You must never leave or attach any objects in these areas ⇒ . Any factory-fitted accessories will not be struck if the driver and front passenger front airbags are deployed.



## DANGER

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the front airbags clear.
- Never attach any objects, such as drink or telephone holders, to the covers of the airbags or anywhere in the airbag deployment zone.
- No other people, animals or objects may be carried between the occupants of the front seats and the airbag deployment zone. Ensure that children and passengers keep to this rule.
- Do not attach any objects, e.g. mobile navigation devices, to the windscreen above the front airbag on the front passenger side.
- Do not cover or stick anything on the steering wheel hub or the soft plastic surface of the airbag unit in the dash panel on the front passenger side, and do not modify them in any way.

## WARNING

The front airbags are deployed in front of the steering wheel ⇒ *Fig. 15* and dash panel ⇒ *Fig. 16*.

- When driving, always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the ring at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions.
- Adjust the driver seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel. Contact a qualified workshop if your physical build makes this impracticable.
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that the distance between the passenger and the dash panel is as large as possible.

## Switching the front passenger front airbag on and off manually using the key-operated switch





*Fig. 17* In the dash panel on the front passenger side: key-operated switch for switching the front passenger front airbag on and off.






First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*





The front passenger front airbag must be disabled if you fit a rear-facing child seat to the front passenger seat.

### Enabling the front passenger front airbag


- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the door on the front passenger side.
- Fold the key bit of the vehicle key all the way out ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
- Insert the fully folded-out key bit of the vehicle key into the key-operated switch in the dash panel ⇒ *Fig. 17* to the second point of resistance. Around three quarters of the key bit should be inserted in the key switch at this point ⇒ .
- Turn the vehicle key, without applying force, to the  **ON** position.



- Remove the vehicle key from the key-operated switch and fold away the key bit ⇒ .
- The indicator lamp for PASSENGER AIR BAG **ON**  lights up in upper part of the centre console and disappears after approximately 60 seconds ⇒ *Indicator lamp*.
- Close the door on the front passenger side.
- Check that the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  indicator lamp in the upper section of the centre console does *not* light up when the ignition is switched on ⇒ *Indicator lamp*.

### Disabling the front passenger front airbag

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open the door on the front passenger side.
- Fold the key bit of the vehicle key all the way out ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.
- Insert the fully folded-out key bit of the vehicle key into the key-operated switch in the dash panel ⇒ *Fig. 17* to the second point of resistance. Around three quarters of the key bit should be inserted in the key switch at this point ⇒ .
- Turn the vehicle key, without applying force, to the **OFF**  position.
- Remove the vehicle key from the key-operated switch and fold away the key bit ⇒ .
- Close the door on the front passenger side.
- When the ignition is switched on, the indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  will light up steadily in the upper section of the centre console ⇒ *Indicator lamp*.

### Ensuring that the front passenger front airbag has been deactivated

The **only** sure sign that the front passenger front airbag has been deactivated is when the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  indicator lamp is displayed in the upper section of the centre console (**OFF**  lights up yellow steadily) ⇒ *Indicator lamp*.

If the indicator lamp PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  in the upper section of the centre console is **not lit up steadily**, or if it lights up at the same time as indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster, do not attach any child restraint system to the front passenger seat for safety reasons. The front passenger front airbag may trigger during an accident.

## WARNING

The front passenger front airbag should only be switched off in exceptional circumstances.

- To prevent damage to the airbag system, only switch the front passenger front airbag on and off when the ignition is switched off.
- It is the driver's responsibility to ensure that the key-operated switch is set to the correct position.
- Only switch the front passenger front airbag off if, in exceptional circumstances, a child seat has to be attached to the front passenger seat.
- Switch the front passenger front airbag back on again as soon as the child seat on the front passenger seat is no longer being used.

## NOTICE

If the key bit is not inserted far enough, the key switch could be damaged when the key is turned.

## NOTICE

Do not leave the vehicle key in the key switch, as this could result in damage to the interior door trim, dash panel, key switch or vehicle key when the front passenger door is closed.

## Side airbags

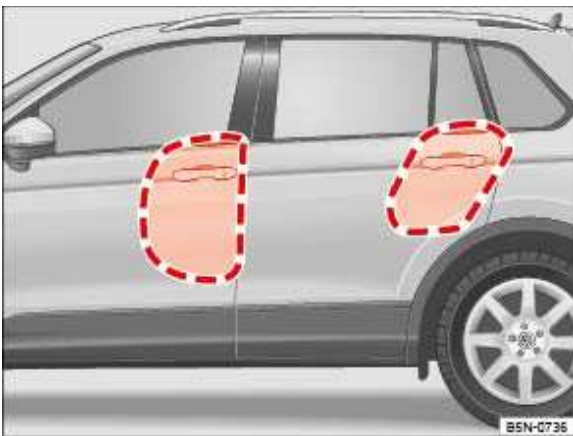


Fig. 18 On left-hand side of vehicle: deployment zones of side airbags.



Fig. 19 On the side of the front seat: location and deployment zone of the side airbag.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, side airbags may also be fitted for the front seats and rear outer seats ⇒ Fig. 18.

- The side airbags for the front seats are located in the outer seat backrest cushions of the driver seat and front passenger seat ⇒ Fig. 19.
- If fitted, the side airbags for the rear outer seats are each located between the door entry and the individual rear seat backrests.

The side airbag locations are identified by the text AIRBAG.

The areas inside the red lines ⇒ Fig. 18 and ⇒ Fig. 19 are covered by the side airbags when triggered (deployment zones). You must never leave or attach any objects in these areas ⇒ .

During a side collision, the side airbags will be deployed on the side of the vehicle which is impacted, thus reducing the risk of injury to the areas of the occupants' bodies facing the impact.



## WARNING

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the side airbags clear.
- Vehicle occupants sitting on the front seats and rear outer seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between themselves and the airbags. Ensure that children and passengers keep to this rule.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.
- Do not fit any accessories to the doors.
- Do not fit seat covers or protective covers over the seats unless they have been expressly approved for use in the vehicle. Otherwise the side airbag may not be able to inflate once triggered.



## WARNING

Incorrect use of the driver and front passenger seat could hinder the proper function of the side airbag and cause serious injury.

- Never remove the front seats from the vehicle or alter any components of these seats.
- If too much pressure is applied to the backrest side bolster, the side airbags may not be triggered correctly, may not trigger at all, or may trigger unexpectedly.
- Any damage to the original seat upholstery or around the seams of the side airbag units must be repaired immediately by a qualified workshop.

## Curtain airbags



Fig. 20 On the left-hand side of the vehicle: location and deployment zone of the curtain airbag.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

In the interior, a curtain airbag is fitted above the doors on both the driver and front passenger sides ⇒ Fig. 20 .

The curtain airbag locations are identified by the text AIRBAG.

The area in the red frame ⇒ Fig. 20 is covered by the curtain airbag when triggered (deployment zone). For this reason, you must never leave or attach any items in this area ⇒ ⚠ .

In a side collision the curtain airbag is triggered on the impact side of the vehicle.

In a side collision, the curtain airbags reduce the risk of injury to the areas of the body facing the impact for vehicle occupants on the front seats and outer rear seats.

## ⚠ WARNING

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- Always leave the deployment zones of the curtain airbags clear.
- Never secure any items to the cover or in the deployment zone of the curtain airbag.
- Vehicle occupants sitting on the front seats and rear outer seats must never carry any people, pets or objects in the deployment zone between themselves and the airbags. Ensure that children and passengers keep to this rule.
- The built-in coat hooks should only be used for lightweight clothing. Do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets.
- Do not fit any accessories to the doors.
- Do not install any sun blinds onto the side windows unless they have been expressly approved for use in your vehicle.
- Only push the sun blinds over to the side windows if no items are attached to them (e.g. pens or the remote control for a garage door).

## Knee airbags

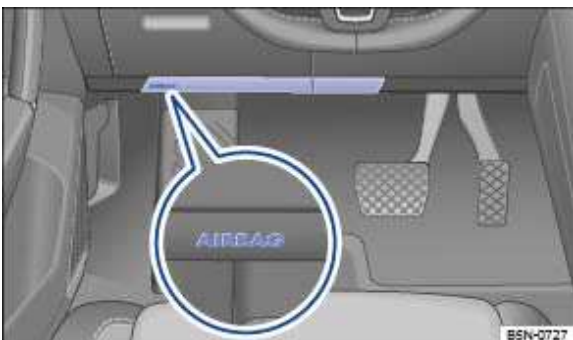


Fig. 21 On the driver side: location of the knee airbag




Fig. 22 On the driver side: deployment zone of the knee airbag.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The knee airbag on the driver side is located in the lower part of the dash panel.

The locations of the knee airbags are indicated by the AIRBAG label ⇒ [Fig. 21](#).

The area in the red frame ⇒ [Fig. 22](#) is covered by the knee airbag when triggered (deployment zone). For this reason, you must never leave or attach any items in this area ⇒ .



## WARNING

Once triggered, the airbag inflates at high speed.

- Do not use any objects, e.g. key rings, that could interfere with the deployment zone of the knee airbag.
- Never secure any items on the cover or in the deployment zone of the knee airbag.
- The knee airbag is deployed in the area in front of the driver's knees. Adjust the driver seat so there is at least a 10 cm gap between the knees and the location of the knee airbag. Contact a qualified workshop if your physical build makes this impracticable.

## Safe transport of children



### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Types of child seat](#)

⇒ [Basic information on fitting and using child seats](#)

⇒ [Securing systems](#)

⇒ [Securing child seats with ISOFIX](#)

⇒ [Securing child seats with top tether upper strap](#)

⇒ [Securing child seats with a seat belt](#)

Using child seats can reduce the risk of injury to the child if there is an accident. Always use child seats when driving with children.

Note the following:

- Child seats are classified into groups depending on the size, age and weight of child for which they are designed.
- Various securing systems are used to secure child seats in the vehicle.

For safety reasons, child seats should always be fitted to the rear seats. They should be fitted to the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases ⇒ [Basic information on fitting and using child seats](#).

Volkswagen recommends child seats from the Volkswagen range of accessories. These child seats have been developed and approved for use in Volkswagen vehicles.

Observe the instructions and information for vehicles with an N1 approval ⇒ [Information for vehicles with N1 approval \(light commercial vehicle\)](#).



## WARNING

If children are not secured or are inadequately secured, they are at greater risk of serious or even fatal injury. Please note the following:

- Children who are either under 12 years of age or less than 150 cm tall must not be carried in the vehicle if they are not secured in a suitable child seat while the vehicle is in motion. Regulations in some countries may differ, and must be complied with.
- Always secure children in the vehicle in a suitable child seat. The seat used must be appropriate to the child's height, weight and age.
- Never fasten more than one child into one child seat.
- Under no circumstances should children or babies be held in a passenger's or driver's lap while driving.
- Never leave a child unsupervised in a child seat.
- Never allow a child to be carried in a vehicle without being properly secured, and never allow a child to stand up or to kneel on a seat, or to sit incorrectly while the car is in motion. This is particularly important for children carried on the front passenger seat. In an accident, children may sustain serious injuries to themselves and others.
- The child seat can only provide maximum protection if the seat belt is routed correctly around it. Always ensure that the seat belt is routed as specified in the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer. If the seat belt is routed incorrectly it may cause injuries even in a minor accident.
- After an accident, it is vital to replace any child seats that were in use during the accident, as they could have sustained non-visible damage.

## Types of child seat



Fig. 23 Some typical child seats.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Only use child seats that have been officially approved and are suitable for the child.

## Standards for child seats

Regulations ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129<sup>1)</sup> apply to child seats within the European Union. Both regulations apply simultaneously. Child seats which have been tested in accordance with these standards carry an orange ECE approval label. This ECE approval label may include the following information on the child seat:

- Weight class
- Size class
- Approval category (universal, semi-universal, vehicle-specific or i-Size)
- Approval number

On child seats that are approved under regulation ECE-R 44, the eight-digit approval number on the ECE approval label must begin with 03 or 04. This shows that the seat is admissible for use. Older child seats with an approval number beginning with 01 or 02 are not admissible.

### Child seat weight classes

Class	Child's weight
Group 0	up to 10 kg
Group 0+	up to 13 kg
Group 1	9 to 18 kg
Group 2	15 to 25 kg
Group 3	22 to 36 kg

- **Weight class 0/0+:** group 0/0+ or 0/1 rear-facing infant carriers ⇒ *Fig. 23* are the best option for the period from birth to 18 months.
- **Weight class 1:** group 1 (up to about 4 years old) or group 1/2 (up to about 7 years old) with an integral belt system are the best for children over the relevant weight limit.
- **Weight classes 2/3:** groups 2 and 3 include child seats with a backrest, and booster seats with no backrest. Child seats with a backrest have integrated seat routing and side cushions, and so provide better protection than booster seats with no backrest. Volkswagen therefore recommends the use of child seats with a backrest. Group 2 child seats are for children up to the age of about 7, group 3 child seats for those older than 7.

Not every child will fit in the child seat specified for their weight group. Likewise, not every seat will fit in every vehicle. Therefore it is vital to check that the child fits properly in their child seat and that the child seat can be securely fastened in the vehicle.

### Child seat approval categories

Child seats can be classified as universal, semi-universal or vehicle-specific (all in accordance with regulation ECE-R 44), or as i-Size (in accordance with regulation ECE-R 129).

- **Universal:** child seats with universal approval are approved for use in all vehicles. No type list is required. ISOFIX child seats with universal approval must also be securing using a strap over the top of the vehicle seat (top tether).
- **Semi-universal:** semi-universal approval requires other safety devices for attaching the seat (that require additional testing) in addition to the standard requirements for universal approval. Child seats with semi-universal approval come with a type list. The seats should only be used in vehicles that are included on this list.
- **Vehicle-specific:** child seats with vehicle specific approval must have undergone dynamic testing in each model of vehicle for which it is approved. These child seats also come with a type list.
- **i-Size:** child seats classified as i-Size must conform to the installation and safety requirements prescribed in regulation ECE-R 129. Contact the child seat manufacturer to find out which child seats are approved for this vehicle in accordance with i-Size.

<sup>1)</sup> Regulation ECE-R 129 has not yet been implemented by the state authorities in all countries.

### Basic information on fitting and using child seats







Fig. 24 A typical airbag label on the sun visor.



Fig. 25 A typical airbag label on the B-pillar.


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

## Country-specific regulations

The standards and regulations governing the use of child seats and child seat securing mechanisms differ from country to country. Not all countries allow you to transport children on the front passenger seat. Legislation and legal requirements take precedence over the information given in this owner's manual.

## Information on fitting a child seat

Observe the following general information when fitting a child seat. This information is relevant whatever child seat securing system is being used.

- Read and follow the instructions provided by the child seat manufacturer ⇒ .
- Whenever possible, fit all child seats to the rear seat behind the front passenger seat so that children can exit the vehicle on the kerb side.
- Deactivate the front passenger front airbag if fitting a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat.
- When fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat push the passenger seat back as far as it will go ⇒ *Sitting position*.
- When using child seats from groups 0 or 1 on the rear seat bench, push the rear seat bench backwards as far as possible ⇒ *Sitting position*.
- When using child seats from groups 2 or 3 on the rear seat bench, push the rear seat bench into a central position ⇒ *Sitting position*.
- Always ensure that there is enough space around the child seat. If necessary, adjust the position of the seat in front. When doing so, ensure that the driver or front passenger can still maintain a correct sitting position ⇒ *Sitting position*.
- The backrest of the child seat must lay as flat as possible against the vehicle seat backrest. Adjust the seat backrest angle if necessary so that the child seat lies flush against the backrest. If the child seat, once fitted, touches the vehicle head restraint so that it cannot lie flat against the backrest, push the vehicle head restraint up as far as it will go or remove it and stow it away safely in the vehicle ⇒ *Sitting position*.

## Airbag sticker

The vehicle may be provided with stickers giving key information about the front passenger front airbag. The information on these stickers may vary from country to country. The stickers may be found:

- On the driver and/or front passenger sun visor ⇒ *Fig. 24*.
- On the B-pillar on the passenger side ⇒ *Fig. 25*.

It is essential to note the warning information shown on these stickers before installing a rear-facing child seat ⇒ ⚠.

### Risks involved in carrying children on the front passenger seat

If you are using a **rear-facing child seat**, the front passenger front airbag can cause critical or potentially fatal injuries when it inflates ⇒ ⚠.

Rear-facing child seat may only be used on the front passenger seat if the front passenger front airbag has been deactivated. An indicator lamp in the centre console lights up steadily when the front passenger front airbag has been effectively deactivated. Deactivating the front passenger front airbag ⇒ [Airbag system](#).

If using a **front-facing child seat**, do not deactivate the front passenger front airbag. When fitting the child seat ensure ensure that it is as far away as possible from the front passenger front airbag. The front passenger front airbag can cause severe injuries when it inflates ⇒ ⚠.

Some child seats are not suitable for use on the front passenger seat. Any child seat fitted on the front passenger seat must be specially authorised by the manufacturer for this use in vehicles with front and side airbags. Volkswagen dealerships keep an up-to-date list of authorised child seats.

### Risks presented by side airbags

Any child on the front passenger seat may be hit on the head and severely injured by the front side airbag inflating ⇒ ⚠.

#### DANGER

If you use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat the child in it is at increased risk of sustaining critical or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.

- Deactivate the front passenger front airbag. If the front passenger front airbag cannot be deactivated no rear-facing child seat may be used.
- Use only child seats that have been approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front and side airbag.

#### WARNING

Child seats present a risk of injury if incorrectly installed.

- Always read and follow the installation instructions and warning information provided by the child seat manufacturer.



## WARNING

Using a front-facing child seat on the front passenger seat presents a risk of injury.

- Move the front passenger seat as far back and as high as it can be set, to create the largest possible distance between the child seat and the front passenger front airbag.
- Move the backrest to the upright position.
- Set the belt height adjuster of the seat belt to the highest position.
- Use only child seats that have been approved by the child seat manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with front and side airbag.



## WARNING

To help avoid injuries caused by inflation of a head airbag or side airbag:

- Ensure that no children are seated within the airbag deployment zone ⇒ *Airbag system* .
- Do not place any objects in the side airbag deployment zones.

## Securing systems

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Different countries use different securing systems for safely fitting child seats in the vehicle.


### Key terms for securing systems

- **ISOFIX:** ISOFIX is a standardised securing system for fitting child seats in the vehicle quickly and safely. The ISOFIX attachment system creates a rigid connection between the child seat and the car body.

Any compatible child seat has two rigid attachment arms that click into ISOFIX attachment points between the seat and the rear seat backrest (on the outer rear seats). The ISOFIX securing system as described here is specific to the EU ⇒ *Securing child seats with ISOFIX* . An upper strap (top tether) and/or support foot may sometimes have to be used in addition to the ISOFIX anchor points described above.

- **Three-point automatic seat belt.** It is better to secure child seats using the ISOFIX system, if available, rather than with a three-point automatic seat belt ⇒ *Securing child seats with a seat belt* .

Additional securing points:

- **Top tether:** the strap at the top of the child seat is routed over the vehicle seat backrest and hooked to an anchor ring on the back of the rear seats ⇒ *Securing child seats with top tether upper strap* . Top tether anchor points are marked with an anchor symbol.
- **Support foot:** some child seats are propped up with a support foot resting on the floor of the vehicle. This support foot helps prevent the child seat tipping forward in a crash. Child seats with a support foot can be used only on the front passenger seat and the outer rear seats ⇒  .

### Recommended child seat securing systems

Volkswagen recommends that child seats are secured as follows:

- **Infant carrier or rear-facing child seat:** ISOFIX *and* support foot.
- **Front-facing child seat:** ISOFIX *and* top tether and possibly support foot also.

## ⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the support foot can cause severe or fatal injuries.

- Ensure that the support foot is always correctly and safely installed.

## Securing child seats with ISOFIX



Fig. 26 On vehicle seat: markings identifying the ISOFIX anchoring points for child seats.

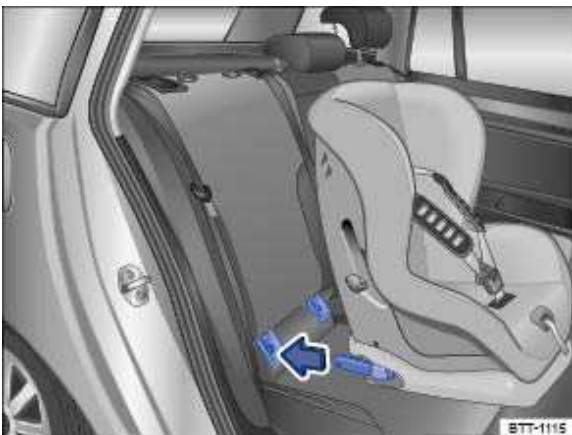


Fig. 27 Fitting a typical ISOFIX child seat with the attachment arms.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*

### Quick guide to ISOFIX and i-Size installation

The table below shows the options for securing ISOFIX or i-Size child seats to ISOFIX anchor points at the various possible seats in the vehicle.

Group	Size class	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Centre rear seat
Group 0: up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
Group 0+: up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D	X		X
	C	X		X
Group 1: 9 to 18 kg	D	X	IL-SU	X
	C	X	IUF	X

Group	Size class	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Centre rear seat
	B	X		X
	B1	X		X
	A	X		X
<b>Group 2:</b> 15 to 25 kg	–	X	IL-SU	X
<b>Group 3:</b> 22 to 36 kg	–	X	IL-SU	X
<b>i-Size child restraint system</b>	–	X	i-U	X

- **Size class:** the size class shown corresponds to the permissible weight range of the child using the seat. The size class is indicated on the ECE test certificate for child seats with universal or semi-universal approval. A size class indication is affixed to the child seat.
- **X:** seat not suitable for securing an ISOFIX or i-Size child seat in this group.
- **IL-SU:** seat suitable for installing an ISOFIX child seat with "semi-universal" approval. Refer to the vehicle list supplied by the child seat manufacturer.
- **IUF:** seat suitable for installing an ISOFIX child seat with "universal" approval.
- **i-U:** seat suitable for installing a front-facing or rear-facing i-Size child seat with "universal" approval.
- **i-UF:** seat suitable for installing a front-facing i-Size child seat with "universal" approval.

### Installing child seats with ISOFIX ISOFIX/i-Size

The location of the ISOFIX anchor points is shown by a symbol ⇒ *Fig. 26*.

- Observe the instructions ⇒ *Basic information on fitting and using child seats*.
- Pull off any protective caps that may be fitted on the ISOFIX anchoring points.
- Push the attachment arms on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchor points ⇒ *Fig. 27* as shown by the arrows. The child seat must click and audibly securely into place.
- Pull on both sides of the child seat to check whether the seat has clicked properly into place.
- If the child seat is fitted with a support foot, the foot must sit firmly on the floor of the vehicle.

### Securing child seats with top tether upper strap



**Fig. 28** Anchor rings for the top tether on the back of the rear bench seat.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

ISOFIX child seats with universal approval must be secured with an upper strap (top tether) in addition to the ISOFIX anchor points.

Only secure the strap to the top tether anchor rings. Retaining rings for use with the top tether are marked by a symbol and sometimes also with TOP TETHER.

- Observe the instructions ⇒ [Basic information on fitting and using child seats](#) .
- Remove the net partition if necessary ⇒ [Net partition](#) .
- Push the head restraint on the vehicle seat all the way down or remove it.
- Position the child seat in the centre of the seat cushion.
- Push the attachment arms on the child seat into the ISOFIX anchor points ⇒ [Securing child seats with ISOFIX](#) as shown by the arrows. The child seat must click and audibly securely into place.
- Adjust the rear seat backrest of the vehicle seat to the backrest of the child seat.
- Remove the luggage compartment cover, if necessary ⇒ [Transporting items](#) .
- Guide the upper strap of the child seat backwards into the luggage compartment and hook it into the corresponding top tether anchor ring ⇒ [Fig. 28](#) .
- Tighten the top tether so that the top of the child seat rests against the rear seat backrest.

## WARNING

Only secure the strap to the top tether anchor rings. Failure to do this could lead to severe injuries.

- Each anchor ring can hold only *one* child seat restraining strap.
- Never fasten the strap on a child seat to any other fastening rings.

## Securing child seats with a seat belt

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

If you want to fit a child seat from the "universal" (u) approval category in your vehicle, you must first ensure that it is approved for the seat position in question. Important information is given on the orange ECE approval label on the child seat. Installation options are shown in the table below.

Group	Child's weight	Front passenger seat		Seats on the rear bench seat
		Front passenger front airbag is activated.	Front passenger front airbag is deactivated.	
Group 0	up to 10 kg	x	u	u
Group 0+	up to 13 kg	x	u	u
Group 1	Rear facing	x	u	u
	Forward facing	u	x	u
Group 2	15 to 25 kg	u	x	u
Group 3	22 to 36 kg	u	x	u

## Securing a child seat using the seat belt

- Observe the instructions ⇒ [Basic information on fitting and using child seats](#) .
- The seat belt height adjuster must be at the highest setting.
- Fasten the seat belt or guide it through the child seat as described in the child seat manufacturer's instructions.
- Ensure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle for the appropriate seat and push it down until it locks securely with a click.

# In an emergency

## Making you and your vehicle safe

---



Fig. 29 In the middle of the dash panel: hazard warning light button.

Observe any legislation concerning the safety of a broken-down vehicle. For example, many countries stipulate that you have to switch on the hazard warning lights and wear a high-visibility waistcoat ⇒ *First aid kit, warning triangle, high-visibility waistcoat and fire extinguisher* .

## Checklist

---

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following actions in the specified order ⇒ ⚠ :

- ✓ Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and on a suitable surface .
- ✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights using the button .
- ✓ Switch on the electronic parking brake Electronic parking brake.
- ✓ Select the neutral position or move the selector lever to P DSG® dual clutch gearbox, Manual gearbox: selecting a gear.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition .
- ✓ Ensure that all occupants exit the vehicle and go straight to a safe place away from moving traffic, e.g. behind the safety barrier. Heed the country-specific regulations concerning high-visibility waistcoats.
- ✓ Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.
- ✓ Place the warning triangle in position to draw the attention of other road users to your vehicle.
- ✓ Allow the engine to cool down and seek expert assistance.

When the hazard warning lights are switched on, for example if the vehicle is being towed, you can still indicate a change in direction or lane change by operating the turn signal/main beam lever. The warning lights will be interrupted temporarily.

### Switch on the hazard warning lights:

- When traffic ahead suddenly starts moving more slowly or you reach the tail end of a traffic jam, to warn vehicles behind you.
- When there is an emergency.
- When the vehicle breaks down.
- When tow-starting or towing.

Always follow local regulations for the use of the hazard warning lights.

If the hazard warning lights are not working, you must use an alternative method of drawing attention to the broken-down vehicle. This method must comply with traffic legislation.

## **WARNING**

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## **WARNING**

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel.


## **WARNING**


Broken-down vehicles on the road increase the risk of accidents, both for you and other road users.

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to lock all doors securely in an emergency. Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked. This may mean that they are locked in the vehicle in an emergency. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.

## **NOTICE**

When pushing the vehicle by hand, do not press on the rear lights, the rear spoiler or large panels. This could damage the vehicle and loosen the spoiler.

 The vehicle battery will discharge if the hazard warning lights are left on over a long period of time – even when the ignition is switched off.

 If you brake hard at speeds over approximately 80 km/h (50 mph), the brake lights will flash to warn the traffic behind you. If you then continue to brake, the hazard warning lights will be switched on automatically at speeds under approximately 10 km/h (6 mph). The brake light will light up steadily. Once the vehicle starts to accelerate, the hazard warning lights will switch off again.

## First aid kit, warning triangle, high-visibility waistcoat and fire extinguisher





**Fig. 30** In the boot lid: holder for the warning triangle.

## High-visibility waistcoat

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, stowage areas for storing a high-visibility waistcoat may be found in the front door trims  
⇒ *Vehicle interior*.

Heed the country-specific regulations concerning high-visibility waistcoats.

## Warning triangle

- If necessary, fold the backrest of the rear bench seat forwards ⇒ *Transporting items*.
- Remove items of luggage so you can reach the boot lid from the inside.
- Turn the screw of the warning triangle holder 90° in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 30*.
- Open the warning triangle holder and take out the warning triangle.

## First aid kit

The first aid kit may be located in various positions in the luggage compartment:

- In a bag on the left or right in the stowage areas of the luggage compartment ⇒ *Stowage area*.
- In a foam rubber holder under the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Transporting items*.

The first aid kit must comply with legal requirements. Comply with the expiry dates of the contents.

## Fire extinguisher

A **fire extinguisher** may be located under the front passenger seat.

The fire extinguisher must comply with the valid legal requirements. It must be fully functional and checked regularly. See the test certificate on the fire extinguisher.

### **WARNING**

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, loose objects could be flung through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always secure the fire extinguisher, high-visibility waistcoat, first aid kit and warning triangle safely in the holders.

## Behaviour after a collision with active bonnet

---




**Fig. 31 Triggered active bonnet.**

In the event of a collision at the front of the vehicle, the active bonnet will be triggered by sensors in the front bumper in the speed range from around 25 to 55 km/h (15 to 34 mph). As a result, the bonnet is lifted by a few centimetres in front of the windscreen in order to create an additional crumple zone above the engine, e.g. in the head area of a pedestrian who has been hit.

The active bonnet system can trigger properly only if the bonnet has not previously been deformed by external influences.


In some cases, the system may trigger even though the collision has not been with a pedestrian. The system can be triggered in the following situations:

- Frontal collision with a marker post, street lantern, pillar etc.
- Frontal collision with an animal.
- Driving into a mound of snow.
- Bottoming of the vehicle when driving on very poor roads.


When the active bonnet has been triggered, the bonnet is moved up by a few centimetres in front of the windscreen → Fig. 31 . Special hinges lock the bonnet in open position → Fig. 31 (close-up). The warning lamp  also remains lit on the instrument cluster display until the system has been repaired.

The following applies if the active bonnet has been triggered:

- It is necessary to go directly to a qualified workshop.
- The system must be repaired by the qualified workshop.
- It is permitted to continue driving only when the vehicle is roadworthy.
- It is not permitted to drive faster than up to 80 km/h (50 mph).
- The seat position must be adjusted if necessary. In spite of the active bonnet having triggered, there must always still be unrestricted visibility through the windscreen → *Sitting position* .

If the active bonnet has been triggered, the warning lamp  on the instrument cluster display lights up.

### Warning lamp

Display	Possible cause	Remedy
	Active bonnet has been triggered.	Go to a qualified workshop immediately and have the system repaired.
	Active bonnet: system fault.	Go to a qualified workshop to have the system checked immediately.

With some vehicle equipment levels, a symbol which indicates that the active bonnet has been triggered may be shown in the instrument cluster instead of a warning lamp.

### Repairing the triggered active bonnet

**A triggered active bonnet must be repaired only by a qualified workshop** →  . Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## WARNING

The intelligent technology used in the active bonnet pedestrian protection system cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the active bonnet pedestrian protection system tempt you into taking any safety risks.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not drive faster than up to 80 km/h (50 mph) when the active bonnet has been triggered.

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## WARNING

Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause malfunctions and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the driver assist systems. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop.

## WARNING

Incorrect closing of the triggered active bonnet can cause accidents and serious injuries, particularly to the hands.

- A triggered active bonnet must be repaired only by a qualified workshop. Never attempt to close the bonnet yourself.

## NOTICE

Incorrect closing of the triggered active bonnet can damage the vehicle.

- Do not press the active bonnet closed under any circumstances, e.g. by pressing down on the bonnet with your hand. The bonnet and its hinges could be damaged as a result.



The symbol can differ depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

## Notes on driving and assistance systems

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *System limits*

An engine and transmission guard may prove useful, depending on the conditions in which the vehicle is to be driven. An engine and transmission guard can reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle's underbody and engine oil sump, for example when driving over kerbs, driveways or unsurfaced roads. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.



## WARNING

Driving under the influence of alcohol, drugs, medication or narcotics can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- Alcohol, drugs, medication and narcotics can severely impair perception, reaction times and driving safety. This could cause you to lose control of the vehicle.

## System limits

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. Under certain circumstances, system reactions may therefore occur unexpectedly or with some delay from the driver's perspective. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle if necessary.

**In certain cases, the following conditions could prevent the systems from reacting or cause them to react with a delay or when not required:**

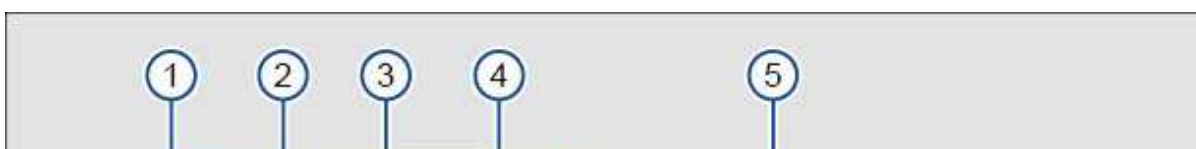
- In tight bends.
- If the accelerator is fully depressed.
- If the area monitoring system has been switched off or is damaged.
- If the traction control system or the Electronic Stability Control is switched off manually.
- If the Electronic Stability Control is intervening.
- If there is a fault in several brake lights on the vehicle or in a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#).
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- If there are metal objects, e.g. tracks in the road, metal plates used in roadworks or road signs above and next to the road.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- Under hard acceleration.
- In snow or heavy rain.
- In case of narrow vehicles, e.g. motorbikes.
- If vehicles are travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle.
- If vehicles are crossing in front of your vehicle.
- If there is oncoming traffic.
- In uncertain traffic situations, e.g. when a vehicle in front brakes heavily or makes a turn.
- When loads or attachment parts on other vehicles protrude to the side, rear or above the normal dimensions of the vehicle.

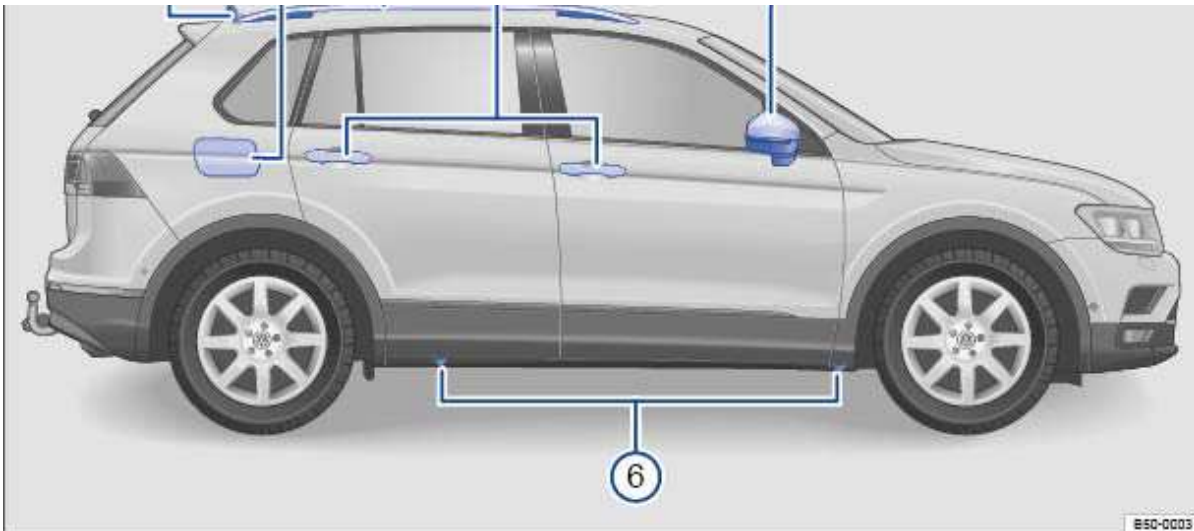
## Vehicle overviews

### Exterior views

#### Side view

---





B50-0003

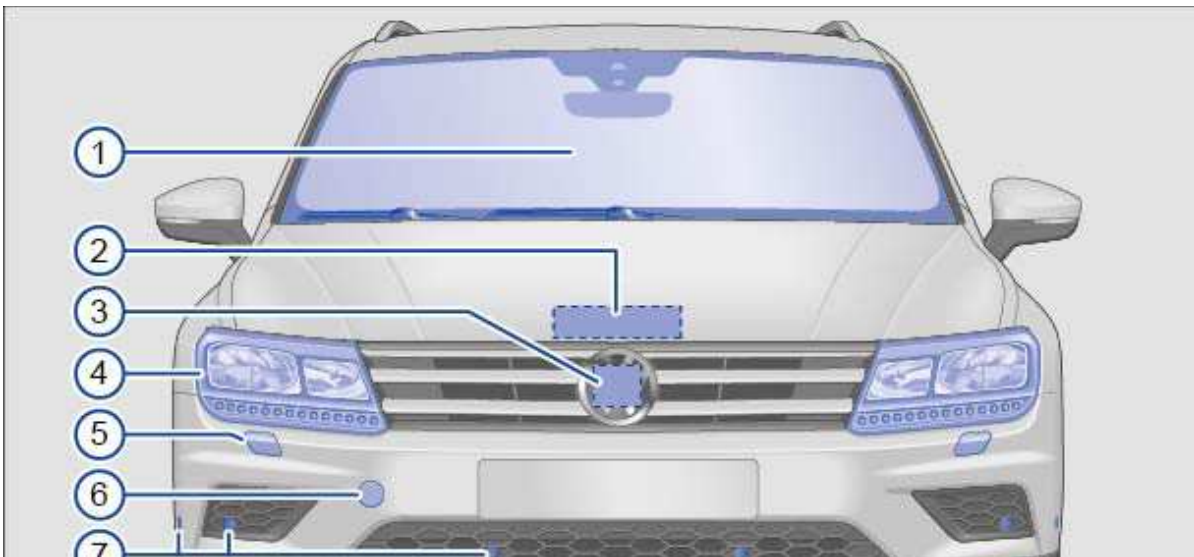
Fig. 32 Side view of the vehicle.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 32 :

- ① Roof aerial ⇒ *Consumer information*
- ② Tank flap ⇒ *Filling the tank*
- ③ Roof railing ⇒ *Roof carrier*
- ④ Door release lever ⇒ *Doors*
- ⑤ Exterior mirrors ⇒ *Mirrors*
  - Display of lane change system (Side Assist) ⇒ *Lane change system (Side Assist) incl. Rear Traffic Alert*
  - Camera for Area View ⇒ *Area View*
  - Additional turn signal ⇒ *Lights*
  - Surround lighting ⇒ *Lights*
- ⑥ Lifting points ⇒ *Changing a wheel*

Positions ③ to ⑥ are also at the same position on the left side of the vehicle.

## Front view



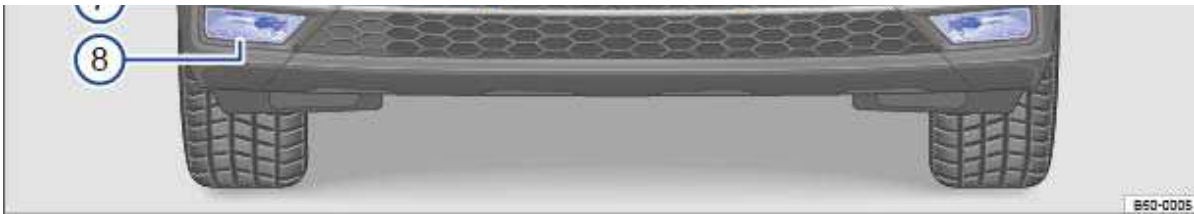


Fig. 33 Front view of the vehicle.

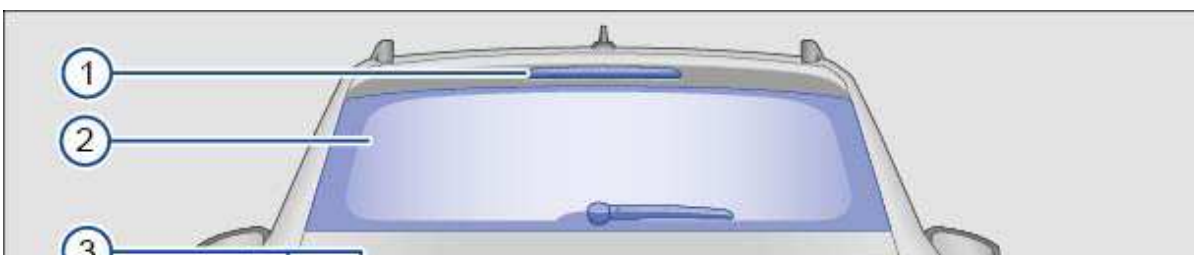
Key to ⇒ Fig. 33 :

- ① Windscreen with:
  - Windscreen wipers ⇒ *Wipers*
  - Windscreen heating ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning system*
  - Rain/light sensor ⇒ *Wipers*
  - Sensor for automatic headlight or main beam control (Light Assist) ⇒ *Lights*
  - Camera window for assist systems ⇒ *Driver assist systems*
  - Vehicle identification number ⇒ *Vehicle identification data*
- ② Bonnet opening lever ⇒ *In the engine compartment*
- ③ Radar sensor behind the Volkswagen badge for:
  - Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*
  - Area monitoring system (Front Assist) ⇒ *Area monitoring system (Front Assist) incl. City Emergency Brake*
  - Pedestrian monitoring ⇒ *Area monitoring system (Front Assist) incl. City Emergency Brake*
  - Traffic Jam Assist ⇒ *Traffic Jam Assist*
  - Emergency Assist ⇒ *Emergency Assist*
- ④ Headlights ⇒ *Lights ⇒ Changing bulbs*
- ⑤ Headlight washer system ⇒ *Wipers*
- ⑥ Mounting for the front towing eye behind a cover ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing*
- ⑦ Ultrasound sensors for:
  - ParkPilot ⇒ *ParkPilot*
  - Park Assist ⇒ *Park Assist*
- ⑧ Fog lights or dynamic cornering light ⇒ *Lights ⇒ Changing bulbs*

Items ④, ⑤, ⑦ and ⑧ are at the same position on the left and right sides of the vehicle.

## Rear view

---



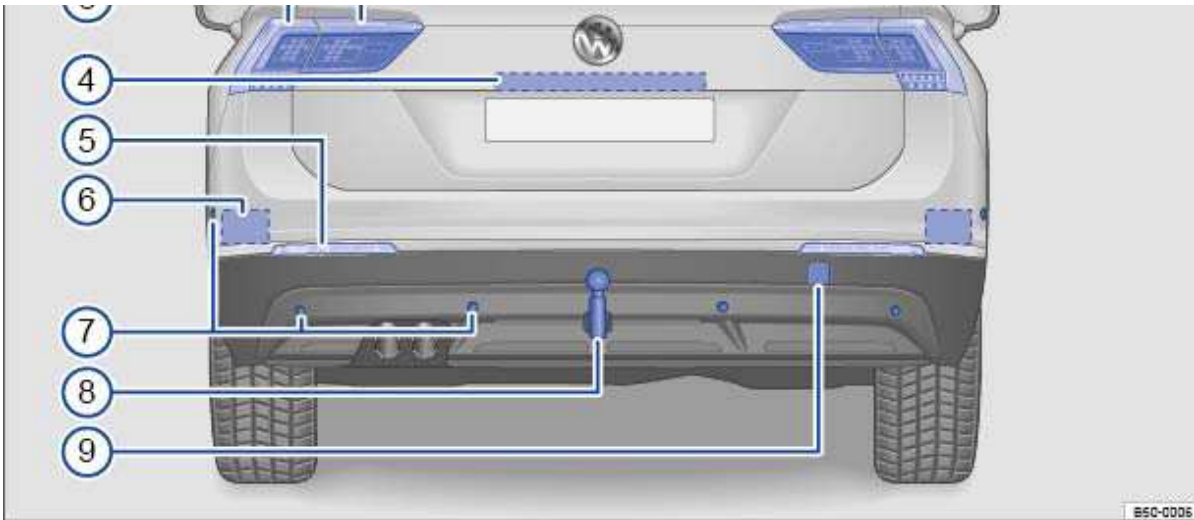


Fig. 34 Rear view of the vehicle.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 34 :

- ① High-mounted brake light
- ② Rear window:
  - Rear window heating ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning system*
  - Rear window wiper ⇒ *Wipers*
  - Window aerial ⇒ *Consumer information*
- ③ Tail light cluster ⇒ *Lights ⇒ Changing bulbs*
- ④ Area with:
  - Boot lid release button ⇒ *Boot lid*
  - Rear view camera system ⇒ *Rear view camera system (Rear View)*
  - Number plate lights ⇒ *Changing bulbs*
- ⑤ Reversing lights and rear reflector
- ⑥ Side Assist system radar sensor behind the bumper ⇒ *Lane change system (Side Assist) incl. Rear Traffic Alert*
- ⑦ Ultrasound sensors for:
  - ParkPilot ⇒ *ParkPilot*
  - Park Assist ⇒ *Park Assist*
- ⑧ Towing bracket ⇒ *Towing a trailer*
- ⑨ Mounting for the rear towing eye behind a cover ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing*

Items ③, ⑤, ⑥ and ⑦ are at the same position on the left and right sides of the vehicle.

## Overview of the driver side



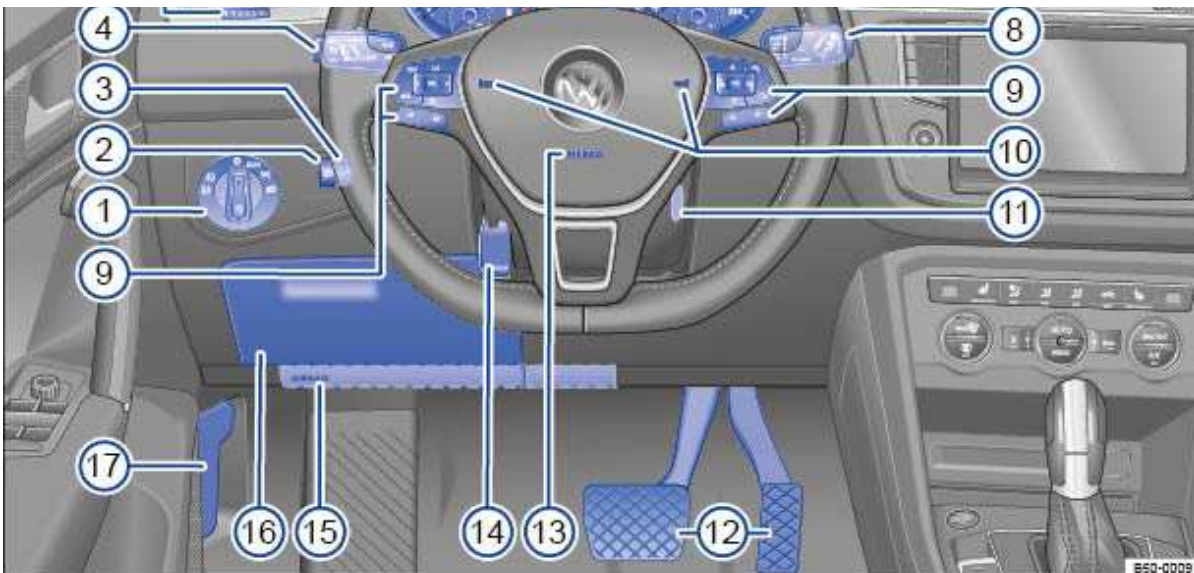


Fig. 35 Overview of the driver side (left-hand drive vehicles).

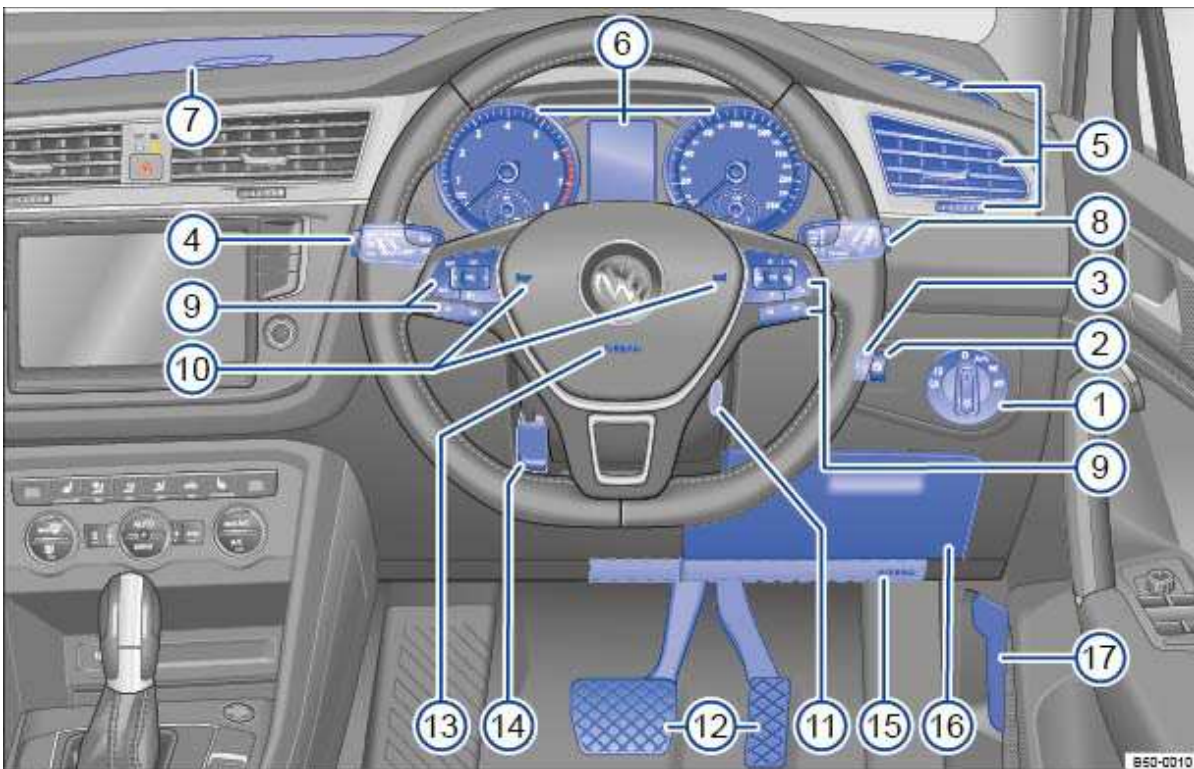









Fig. 36 Overview of the driver side (right-hand drive vehicles).

Key for ⇒ Fig. 35 and ⇒ Fig. 36:

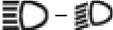
- ① Light switch  ⇒ Lights


  - The lights are switched off, or the daytime headlights or daytime running lights are switched on - **0** -
  - Automatic headlight control - **AUTO** -
  - Side lights   and dipped headlights 
  - Fog lights  
- ② Headlight range control  ⇒ Lights




3 Head-up Display control  ⇒ *Instrument cluster*

4 Lever for: ⇒ *Lights*

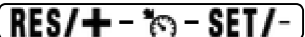
- Main beam headlights 

- Headlight flasher 

- Turn signal 

- Parking lights 

- Switches and buttons for operating the cruise control system and the speed limiter **ON – CANCEL – OFF**,

 ⇒ *Cruise control system ⇒ Speed limiter*

- Button for the driver assist systems  ⇒ *Button for the driver assist systems*

5 Vents ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning system*

6 Instrument cluster:

- Instruments and display ⇒ *Instrument cluster*


- Warning and indicator lamps ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*

7 Stowage compartment ⇒ *Stowage area*


8 Lever for windscreen wipers and washers: ⇒ *Wipers*


- For switching on the windscreen wipers **HIGH – LOW**


- For windscreen interval wipe and switching on the rain sensor **INT**


- For setting the wipe intervals and sensitivity of the rain sensor 

- For switching off the windscreen wipers **OFF**

- For flick wipe 



- For the windscreen wash and wipe system 

- For the rear window wiper 

- For the rear window wash and wipe system 

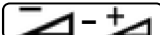
- Buttons for operating the Volkswagen information and infotainment systems **TRIP**, **OK/RESET** ⇒ *Instrument cluster operation ⇒ Operation and display in the infotainment system*




9 Controls on the multifunction steering wheel: ⇒ *Instrument cluster*


- Buttons for operating the cruise control system and the speed limiter **RES**, **SET**, , ,


**-- CNL -- +** ⇒ *Cruise control system ⇒ Speed limiter*

- Buttons for operating the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) **RES**, **SET**, , , **--  -- +** ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

- Volume setting for the infotainment system or a telephone conversation 

- Buttons for operating the Volkswagen information system , , 

- Opening the main telephone menu or accepting a telephone call 


- Activating voice commands 

- Audio, navigation 

10 Horn (works only when the ignition is switched on)

- 11 Ignition lock ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*
- 12 Pedals ⇒ *Notes on driving*
- 13 Driver front airbag ⇒ *Airbag system*
- 14 Lever for adjusting the steering column ⇒ *Sitting position*
- 15 Location of the knee airbag in the dash panel ⇒ *Airbag system*
- 16 Stowage compartment ⇒ *Stowage area*
- 17 Release lever for the bonnet ⇒ *In the engine compartment*

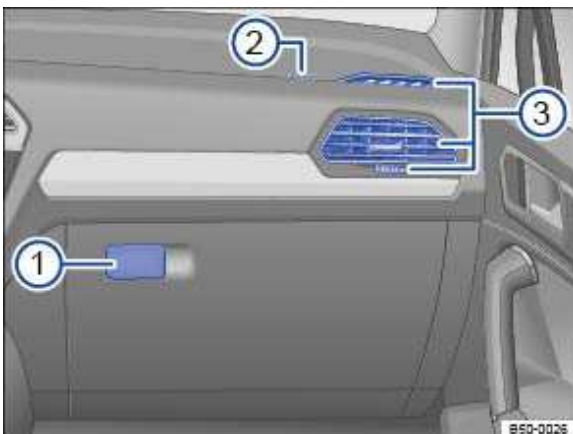
**Not shown:**

Next to the driver seat: button for interior monitoring  ⇒ *Central locking and closing system*

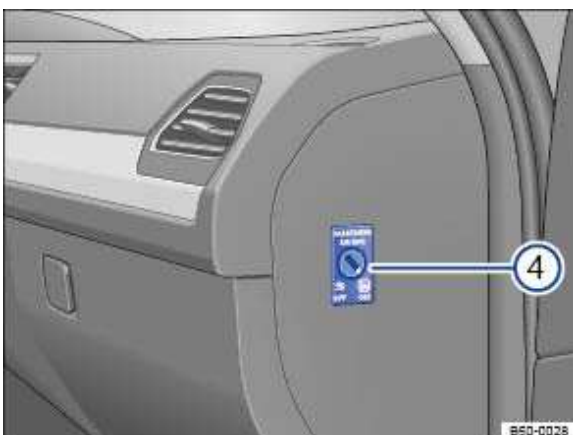
## Vehicle interior

### Overview of the front passenger side

---



**Fig. 37** Overview of the front passenger side (left-hand drive vehicles). The controls are mirrored in right-hand drive vehicles.



**Fig. 38** Dash panel near open front passenger door (left-hand drive vehicles). The controls are mirrored in right-hand drive vehicles.

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 37:**

- 1 Lever for opening the stowage compartment ⇒ *Stowage areas on the front passenger side*

- ② Location of front passenger front airbag in the dash panel ⇒ *Airbag system*
- ③ Vents ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning system*
- ④ Key switch for switching off the front passenger front airbag ⇒ *Airbag system*

## Driver door

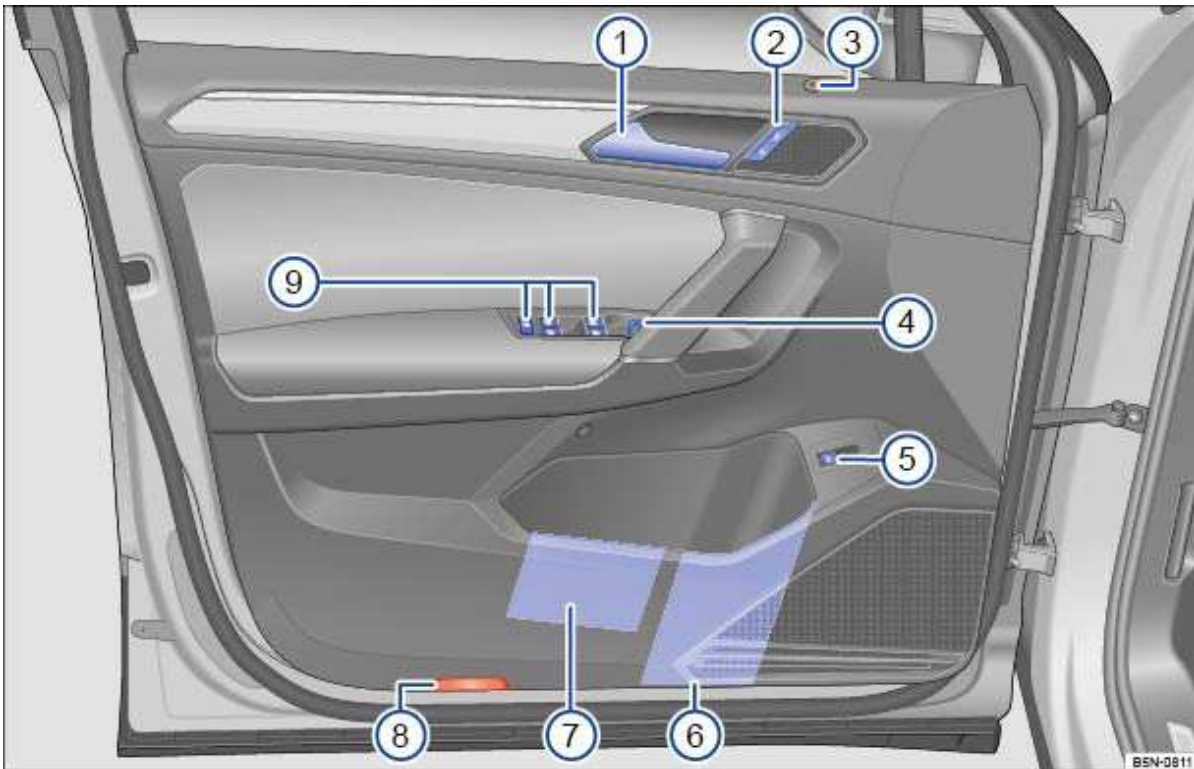
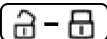






Fig. 39 Overview of the controls in the driver door (left-hand drive vehicles). The controls are mirrored in right-hand drive vehicles.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 39:

- ① Door release lever ⇒ *Doors*
- ② Central locking button for locking and unlocking the vehicle  ⇒ *Central locking and closing system*
- ③ Central locking indicator lamp ⇒ *Central locking and closing system*
- ④ Switch for adjusting the exterior mirrors: ⇒ *Mirrors*
  - Exterior mirror adjustment **L-O-R**
  - Exterior mirror heating 
  - Fold in the exterior mirrors 
- ⑤ Boot lid release button ⇒ *Transporting items*
- ⑥ Bottle holder ⇒ *Drink holder*
- ⑦ Stowage compartment for high-visibility waistcoat ⇒ *Stowage area*
- ⑧ Reflector in the front and rear vehicle doors
- ⑨ Buttons for operating the electric windows: ⇒ *Windows*
  - Electric windows 

- Safety button for the rear electric windows 

## Roof console

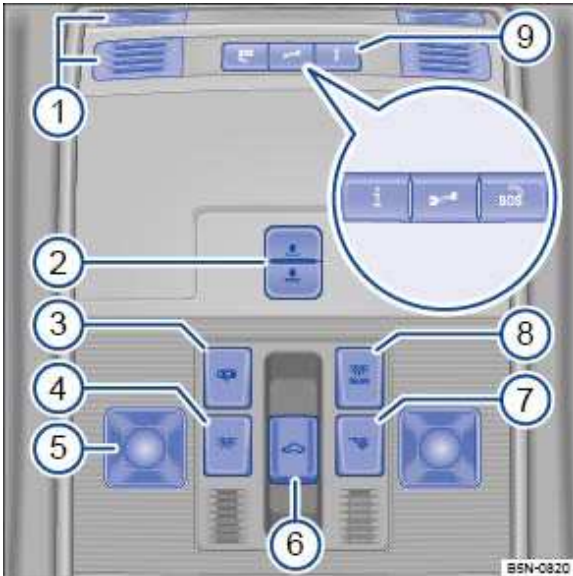


Fig. 40 Roof console: symbols in the roof.


Key for ⇒ Fig. 40



- 1 Interior monitoring ⇒ *Central locking and closing system*
- 2 Buttons for operating the sun blind ⇒ *Protection from the sun*
- 3 Switches the interior light of the door contact switch on or off ⇒ *Lights*
- 4 Switches the front interior light on or off ⇒ *Lights*
- 5 Reading light ⇒ *Lights*
- 6 Button for operating the glass roof ⇒ *Glass roof*
- 7 Button for operating the reading lights ⇒ *Lights*
- 8 Switches the rear interior light on or off ⇒ *Lights*
- 9 Three-button module

### Emergency call service, information and breakdown call

A so-called three-button module may be installed in the front roof area, depending on the vehicle equipment. Different voice services can be used with the three-button module: emergency call service, information call, breakdown call.

The required connection is established by a factory-fitted control unit. When a voice service is activated, the telephone contact person always communicates in the language of the country for which the vehicle was produced. An exception to this is if the driver is abroad and the vehicle has to fall back on the general emergency call number in the event of a fault.

-  Emergency call service: if an emergency call is placed manually or automatically after an accident where the airbags were triggered, data relevant for the emergency call, e.g. the current vehicle location, will be transmitted automatically ⇒ *Information on Volkswagen Emergency Call service*.

-  Breakdown call: the breakdown call function allows expert assistance to be requested directly in the event of a breakdown. For this purpose, some vehicle data, e.g. the current location, is transmitted parallel to the voice call.
-  Information call : the information call function can be used to call the Volkswagen Service hotline. The information call function is available only in some sales regions.

Depending on the equipment level, the three-button module may have an indicator light:

- Lit up green: voice service available. System OK.
- Lit up red: there is a fault. Voice service availability is restricted. Volkswagen recommends consulting a specialist workshop.
- Flashing green: a call is active.
- If your current emergency call location is in an area with no or insufficient mobile communications and GPS reception. This can also include tunnels, streets with tall buildings, garages, underpasses, mountains and valleys.
- If you are in an area with sufficient mobile communications and GPS reception and the mobile network of the telecommunications provider is out of order or is not available.
- If the components in the vehicle required for the emergency call or automatic accident notification are damaged or do not have sufficient energy.

## Overview of the luggage compartment

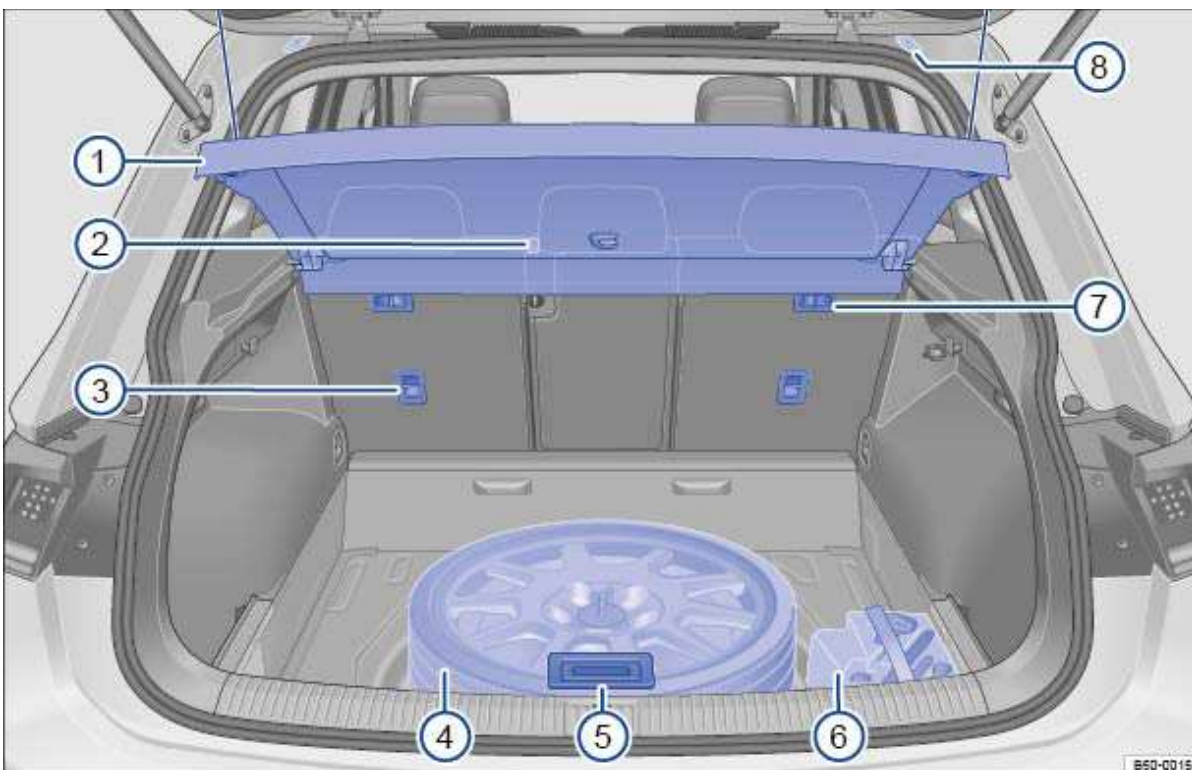


Fig. 41 Overview of the luggage compartment.

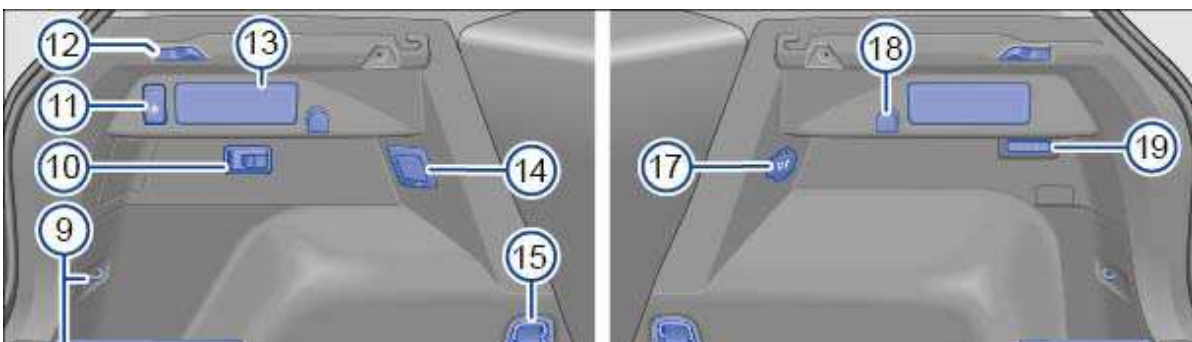




Fig. 42 Side areas of the luggage compartment.

Key for ⇒ Fig. 41 and ⇒ Fig. 42 :

- ① Luggage compartment cover ⇒ *Transporting items*
- ② Release lever for the load-through hatch ⇒ *Load-through hatch*
- ③ Top tether anchor rings (on both left and right) ⇒ *Safe transport of children*
- ④ Depending on the vehicle equipment level, spare wheel or fully fledged replacement wheel ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*
- ⑤ Handle recess for luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Transporting items*
- ⑥ Vehicle tool kit ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit*
- ⑦ Lower holder for net partition ⇒ *Net partition*
- ⑧ Upper holder for net partition ⇒ *Net partition*
- ⑨ Rigid fastening rings ⇒ *Transporting items*
- ⑩ Removable luggage compartment light ⇒ *Lights*
- ⑪ Button for unlocking the ball head ⇒ *Towing a trailer*
- ⑫ Bracket for the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Transporting items*
- ⑬ Backrest remote release mechanism ⇒ *Seat functions*
- ⑭ 230-volt socket ⇒ *Electrical sockets*
- ⑮ Foldable fastening rings ⇒ *Transporting items*
- ⑯ Stowage area behind trim ⇒ *Stowage area*
- ⑰ 12-volt socket ⇒ *Electrical sockets*
- ⑱ Bag hook ⇒ *Transporting items*
- ⑲ Rigid luggage compartment light ⇒ *Lights* Not shown: the button for electric closing is located on the inside of the boot lid ⇒ *Boot lid*. Without illustration: depending on the vehicle equipment level, the luggage compartment may possess a luggage net ⇒ *Luggage net*. Without illustration: depending on the vehicle equipment level, a battery may be located in the rear of the luggage compartment ⇒ *Vehicle battery*. Items ③, ⑦ and ⑧ are in the same location on the right and left sides of the vehicle.

## Upper section of the centre console



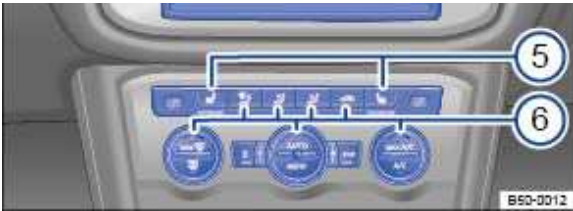





Fig. 43 Overview of the upper section of the centre console.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 43 :

- ① Indicator lamp for the front passenger front airbag switch-off function **OFF** ⇒ *Airbag system*
- ② Vent for indirect ventilation ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning system*
- ③ Hazard warning lights button  ⇒ *In an emergency*
- ④ Infotainment system (factory fitted) ⇒ *Booklet/Infotainment system,*
- ⑤ Seat heating buttons  or  ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning system*
- ⑥ Controls for:
  - Heating and fresh air system ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning system*
  - Air conditioning system (manual) ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning system*
  - Climatronic air conditioning system ⇒ *Heating and air conditioning system*
  - Auxiliary heater (supplementary heating system) ⇒ *Auxiliary heating and ventilation*

## Lower section of the centre console

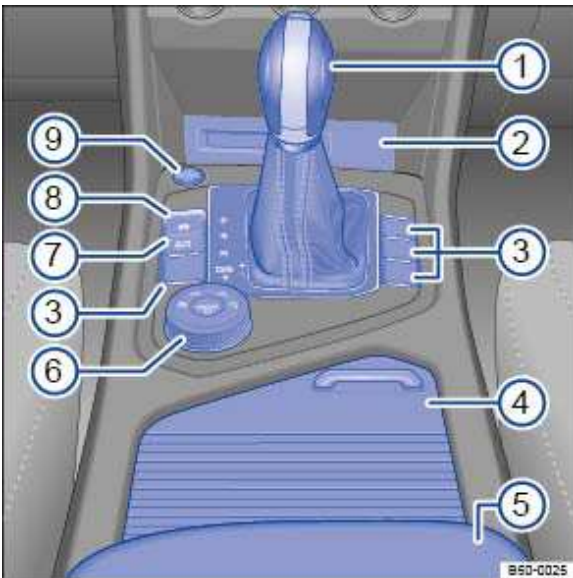
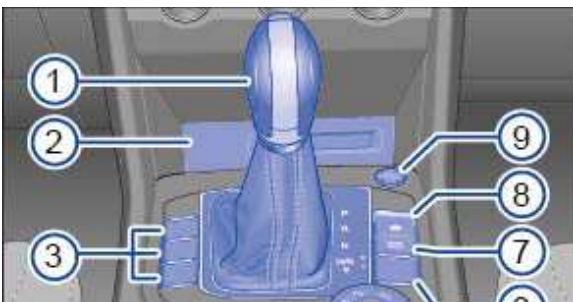


Fig. 44 Overview of the lower section of the centre console (left-hand drive vehicles).



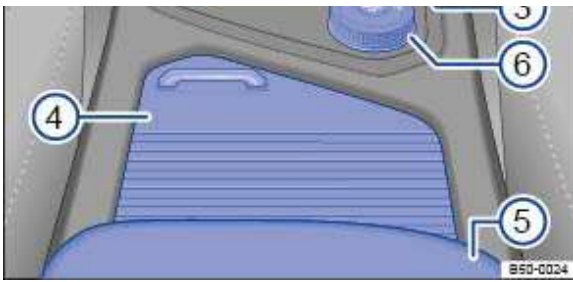






Fig. 45 Overview of the lower section of the centre console (right-hand drive vehicles).

Key to ⇒ Fig. 44 :

- 1 Lever for:

  - Manual gearbox ⇒ *Manual gearbox: selecting a gear*
  - Automatic gearbox ⇒ *DSG® dual clutch gearbox*
- 2 Area for:

  - Multimedia socket MEDIA-IN, USB connection, AUX-IN socket ⇒ *Booklet/Infotainment system*,
  - Cigarette lighter
  - 12-volt socket
- 3 Buttons for:

  - Traction control system (TCS)  ⇒ *Brake support systems*
  - Start/stop system  ⇒ *Start/stop system*
  - Off-road mode **OFFROAD** ⇒ *Driving Profile Selection*
  - ParkPilot  ⇒ *ParkPilot*
  - Park Assist  ⇒ *Park Assist*
- 4 Stowage compartment in the centre console with mobile ashtray in the drink holder ⇒ *Ashtray and cigarette lighter*,  
⇒ *Stowage area*
- 5 Stowage compartment in the front centre armrest
- 6 Control for the 4MOTION Active Control ⇒ *4MOTION Active Control*
- 7 Auto Hold function **AUTO HOLD** ⇒ *Auto Hold function*
- 8 Electronic parking brake  ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*
- 9 Starter button **START - ENGINE - STOP** (Keyless Access locking and starting system) ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*

## Rear section of the centre console

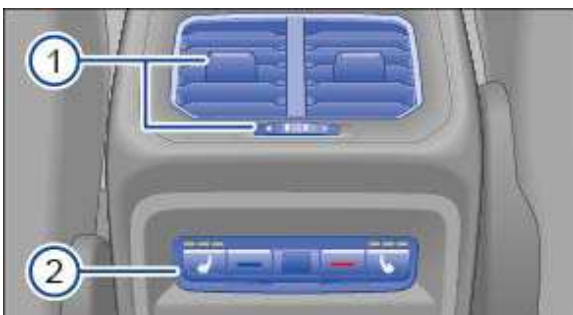








Fig. 46 Overview of the rear section of the centre console

Key to ⇒ Fig. 46 :

- 1 Vents ⇒ Heating and air conditioning system
- 2 Controls for:
  - Climatronic air conditioning system ⇒ Heating and air conditioning system
  - Seat heating  or  ⇒ Heating and air conditioning system
- 3 USB port ⇒ Booklet/Infotainment system,
- 4 12-volt socket ⇒ Electrical sockets

## Driver information

### Instrument cluster

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ Analogue instrument cluster
- ⇒ Digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display)
- ⇒ Head-up Display
- ⇒ Display
- ⇒ Menus in the instrument cluster
- ⇒ Driving data display (Multifunction display)
- ⇒ Warning and information messages
- ⇒ Driver Alert System
- ⇒ Dynamic Road Sign Display (Sign Assist)
- ⇒ Time
- ⇒ Fuel gauge
- ⇒ Vehicle status
- ⇒ Warning lamp and coolant temperature display
- ⇒ Service interval display

#### Analogue instrument cluster

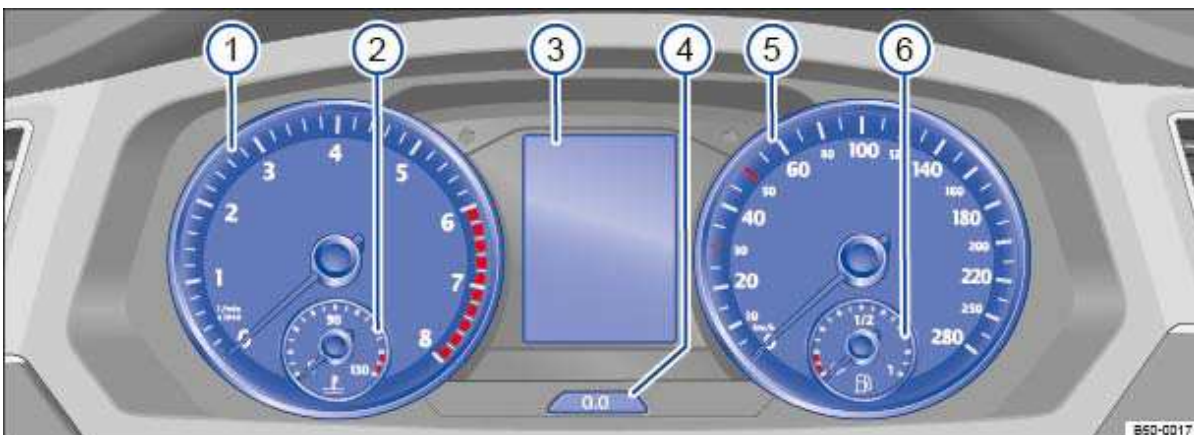




Fig. 47 Dash panel: analogue instrument cluster.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Descriptions of the instruments ⇒ [Fig. 47](#) :

- 1 **Rev. counter** (running engine speed in revolutions x 1,000 per minute). The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed that may be used in each gear when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. You should change up a gear or move the selector lever to **D/S** (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone ⇒ 
- 2 **Coolant temperature display**  ⇒ [Warning lamp and coolant temperature display](#) .
- 3 **Displays** ⇒ [Display](#) .
- 4 **Reset, set and display button** ⇒ [Display](#) .
- 5 **Speedometer**
- 6 **Fuel gauge** ⇒ [Filling the tank](#) .

### **NOTICE**

- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and overloading the engine.
- The needle on the rev counter should only briefly point into the red area, as engine damage may otherwise be incurred.



Changing up a gear early will help to save fuel and reduce engine noise.

## Digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display)


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The "Active Info Display" is a digital instrument cluster with high-resolution TFT colour display. To complement the standard dials such as the rev counter and speedometer, users can choose from various "information profiles" to view additional data.



**Fig. 48** Dash panel: Active Info Display.

Descriptions of the instruments ⇒ [Fig. 48](#) :

1 **Rev. counter** (running engine speed in revolutions x 1,000 per minute). The start of the red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed that may be used in each gear when the engine is warm and after it has been run in properly. You should change up a gear or move the selector lever to **D/S** (or lift your foot off the accelerator) before the needle reaches the red zone ⇒ 

2 **Data as selected via an information profile.** Precisely what data is shown depends on which information profile has been selected. The example above shows the Classic profile with no additional information shown.

3 **Displays** ⇒ *Display*.

4 **Reset, set and display button** ⇒ *Display*.

5 **Speedometer**

6 **Digital speed display.**


7 **Fuel gauge** ⇒ *Filling the tank*.

8 **Coolant temperature display**  ⇒ *Warning lamp and coolant temperature display*.

9 **Current gear / selector lever position** ⇒ *DSG® dual clutch gearbox*, ⇒ *Manual gearbox: selecting a gear*.

## Information profiles





To select a specific information profile, go to the **Views** menu in the Volkswagen information system ⇒ *Instrument cluster*. The Active Info Display shows additional information in the centre of the dials ⇒ *Fig. 48* ② depending on the information profile you have selected. The following information profiles are available:

- **Classic.** No additional information shown.
- **Consumption and range.** Current consumption is shown graphically and average consumption is shown digitally in the rev counter. The remaining range is shown digitally in the speedometer.
- **Efficiency.** Average consumption is shown digitally and current consumption is shown graphically in the rev counter. In the speedometer, the symbol  is shown if the current driving style is fuel-efficient, and a graphic display helps the driver save fuel.<sup>1)</sup>
- **Navigation.** If route guidance is *active*: the remaining distance to the set destination and an estimated time of arrival are shown in the rev counter, and arrows to aid navigation are shown in the speedometer. If route guidance is *inactive*: the current altitude is shown in the rev counter, and a compass is shown in the speedometer.
- **Driver assistance.** Graphic displays relating to various driver assist systems are shown ⇒ *Driver assist systems*, or the travel time is shown digitally in the rev counter. The speedometer meanwhile shows arrow navigation or a compass.
- **Off-road.** Digital display of the steering angle and compass display in the speedometer. With *active* Hill Descent Control: graphic display of the Hill Descent Control with speed display in the speedometer.

## Navigation map in the Active Info Display

With some vehicle equipment levels, the Active Info Display is able to display a detailed map. To display this map, select the **Navigation** menu item in the Volkswagen information system ⇒ *Instrument cluster*.

The map can be shown in two sizes. If the larger version is selected, the Active Info Display dials will be smaller. To select the preferred map size:

- Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ *Instrument cluster* again to switch between map sizes as required.
- **OR:** press the  or  arrow button on the multifunction steering wheel to select the required map size. A frame appears around the selected option.
- Confirm the selection by pressing the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Depending on the equipment level, navigation is shown on two displays or only one. The navigation map be displayed on the Active Info Display and infotainment system or only on the infotainment system display. In the latter case, only navigation arrows are shown on the Active Info Display.

## ! NOTICE

- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and overloading the engine.
- The needle on the rev counter should only briefly point into the red area, as engine damage may otherwise be incurred.



Changing up a gear early will help to save fuel and reduce engine noise.

<sup>1)</sup> The specific content of the Efficiency profile depends on the drive type.

## Head-up Display



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

The Head-up Display projects selected information or warning messages from the assistance systems or the activated navigation system into the driver's field of vision.



Fig. 49 Next to the steering wheel: Head-up Display control (arrow).



Fig. 50 On the dash panel above the steering wheel: Head-up Display

## Switching the Head-up Display on or off

Press the control  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 49 to switch the Head-up Display on or off.

## Adjusting the height

Proceed as follows to adjust the height of the Head-up Display and individually adapt the angle:

- Adopt correct sitting position  $\Rightarrow$  *Sitting position*.
- Use the control  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 49 to adjust the height of the Head-up Display as required.

## Infotainment system setup

You can configure additional setup parameters for the Head-up Display in the infotainment system.

To open the **Head-up Display settings** menu, press the **CAR** button and tap the  and **Head-up display** function buttons.

The following settings are available:

- Adjust the Head-up Display brightness. If the surroundings become darker, the display brightness is automatically dimmed. The basic brightness is adjusted together with the instrument and switch lighting.
- Select the desired colour scheme. You can choose between a standard colour scheme and an alternative colour scheme.
- Selection of the display contents for the Head-up-Display.

### NOTICE

The Head-up Display may detach from the guide rail as a result of applying excessive pressure, e.g. during cleaning.

- Do not apply excessive pressure when cleaning the Head-up Display.

### NOTICE

Do not place objects in the slot of the Head-up Display to prevent scratching the cover panel.



Sun glasses with polarisation filters and unfavourable lighting conditions may impair the effectiveness of the display.



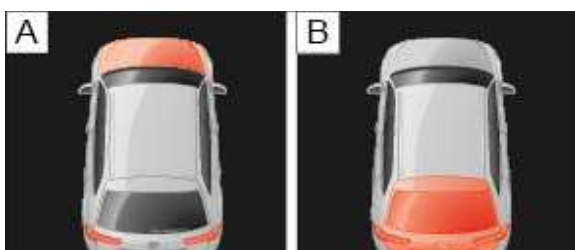
The ideal position to read the Head-up Display depends on your seat position and the height setting of the Head-up Display.

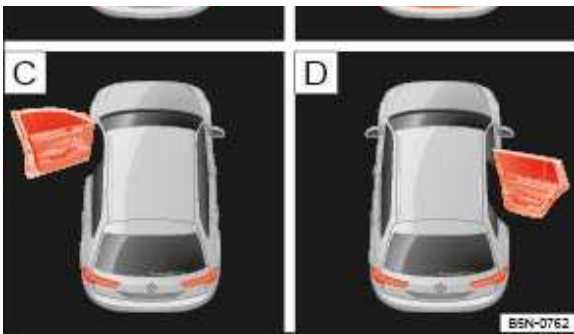


The route guidance display of the factory-fitted navigation system in the Head-up Display may not be available in some countries.

## Display

---






**Fig. 51** On the instrument cluster display: bonnet open, boot lid open, front left door open, right rear door open.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

## Display layout

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, various kinds of information can be displayed on the instrument cluster display:

- Open doors, bonnet and boot lid ⇒ *Fig. 51*
- Warning and information messages
- Mileage displays
- Time
- Infotainment system ⇒ *Booklet/Infotainment system*,
- Telephone information ⇒ *Booklet/Infotainment system*,
- Outside temperature
- Compass display
- Selector lever positions ⇒ *DSG® dual clutch gearbox*, ⇒ *Manual gearbox: selecting a gear*
- Gear-change indicator ⇒ *Driving*
- Driving data display (multifunction display) and menus for various settings ⇒ *Instrument cluster*.
- Service interval display ⇒ *Service interval display*
- Speed warning function ⇒ *Instrument cluster*
- Speed warning for winter tyres ⇒ *Instrument cluster*
- Start/stop system status display ⇒ *Display*
- Road signs detected by the Dynamic Road Sign Display system ⇒ *Dynamic Road Sign Display (Sign Assist)*
- Status display for active cylinder management (ACT®) ⇒ *Driving economically*
- Economical mode 
- Engine code (EC)
- Personalisation: welcome and user selection

## Open doors, bonnet and boot lid

The instrument cluster display indicates if any doors, or the bonnet or boot lid, are open once the vehicle has been unlocked, and while the vehicle is in motion. In some cases, a signal tone is also given. Different instrument cluster designs will have different displays.

**Key for** ⇒ *Fig. 51*



The bonnet is open or not properly closed ⇒ *In the engine compartment*.





The boot lid is open or not properly closed ⇒ *Boot lid*.



Do not drive on.

The vehicle door is open or not properly closed ⇒ [Doors](#) .

## Personalised display

When the vehicle is delivered, the display of the instrument cluster corresponds to the factory settings. The display can be personalised via the Infotainment button  and the  and **User selection** function buttons ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#) . Seven different profiles may be created in total. The following settings may be defined for each profile:


- Language
- Units
- Multifunction display settings

For the personalised display in the freely programmable instrument cluster, it is also possible to set the size of the display, the information profile ⇒ [Digital instrument cluster \(Active Info Display\)](#) and the navigation map ⇒ [Digital instrument cluster \(Active Info Display\)](#) .




## Mileage displays

The *odometer* registers the total distance travelled by the car.

The *trip recorder (trip)* shows the distance travelled since the trip recorder was last reset. The final digit shows distances of 100 m.

- To reset the trip recorder to 0, briefly press the  button in the instrument cluster ⇒ [Analogue instrument cluster](#) or ⇒ [Digital instrument cluster \(Active Info Display\)](#) .

## Outside temperature display

In the event of outside temperatures below about +4 °C (+39 °F), the display of the outside temperature appears in the display of the instrument cluster, e.g.  **Attention: outside temperature -2.0 °C (+28 °F)**. This symbol  remains lit up until the outside temperature rises above +6 °C (+43 °F) ⇒ .

Heat radiated from the engine may cause the temperature display to show a slightly higher value than the actual outside temperature if the vehicle is stationary, the auxiliary heater ⇒ [Auxiliary heating and ventilation](#) is switched on or the vehicle is travelling at a very low vehicle speed.

The measuring range lies between -45°C (-49°F) and +76°C (+169°F).

## Compass display

When the ignition and navigation system are switched on, the instrument cluster display shows the current direction of travel.

## Selector lever positions (dual clutch gearbox DSG®)




The gear selected is displayed on the side of the selector lever and on the display in the instrument cluster. The instrument cluster display may show which gear has been selected if the lever is in **D/S**, or in Tiptronic mode ⇒ [DSG® dual clutch gearbox](#) .

## Gear-change indicator

When driving in Tiptronic mode, the instrument cluster display may recommend a gear to save fuel ⇒ [Driving](#) .

## Speed warning for winter tyres


A display in the instrument cluster indicates when the set maximum speed has been exceeded ⇒ [Instrument cluster](#) .

Speed warning settings can be made and adjusted in the infotainment system using the  button and the  and  function buttons ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system* .


## Start/stop system status display

The instrument cluster display shows information about the current status ⇒ *Start/stop system* .

## Economical mode

While driving, the instrument cluster will show whether the vehicle is in a fuel-efficient mode  due to active cylinder management (ACT®) ⇒ *Driving economically* or if the automatic gearbox is coasting ⇒ *DSG® dual clutch gearbox* .

## Engine code (EC)

Press and hold the  button in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Analogue instrument cluster* or ⇒ *Digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display)* (for approximately 15 seconds) to show the vehicle's engine code (EC) in the display. The ignition should be switched on but the engine should not be running.


## Trailer drawbar load display


If the vehicle drives with a trailer attached, the drawbar load and the trailer weight can be shown in the instrument cluster display.


### **WARNING**


**Streets and bridges can be iced over at outside temperatures above freezing point.**

- **The snowflake symbol indicates that there is a risk of black ice.**
- **There may be black ice on the roads even when outside temperatures are above +4 °C (+39 °F), even when no snowflake symbol is displayed.**
- **You should never rely solely on the outside temperature display!**

 Different instrument clusters are available, which means that the versions and displays may vary. In displays without warning or information texts, faults are indicated exclusively by indicator lamps.

 Depending on the vehicle equipment level, some settings and displays may also appear in the infotainment system.

 If several warnings are present, the symbols will appear for several seconds, one after another. The symbols will continue to appear until the faults are rectified.

 If warning messages about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this is the case, take the vehicle to a qualified workshop to have the malfunctions rectified.

## Menus in the instrument cluster

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The size and layout of the Volkswagen information system menus and displays depends on the vehicle electronics and the level of vehicle equipment.



Qualified workshops can programme and modify other functions depending on the vehicle equipment level. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

- **Driving data** ⇒ *Driving data display (Multifunction display)*
- **Assistants** ⇒ *Additional displays and display options*
- **Views**<sup>1)</sup> ⇒ *Instrument cluster*
- **Navigation** ⇒ *Booklet/Infotainment system,*
- **Audio** ⇒ *Booklet/Infotainment system,*
- **Telephone** ⇒ *Booklet/Infotainment system,*
- **Vehicle status** ⇒ *Vehicle status*
- **Personalisation (user selection)** ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*



<sup>1)</sup> Only in vehicles with an Active Info Display.

## Driving data display (Multifunction display)

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The driving data display (multifunction display) shows a variety of travel and fuel consumption data. The driving data display is opened from the selection menu ⇒ *Instrument cluster operation*.

### Switching between displays

- *Vehicles without a multifunction steering wheel:* press the rocker switch **TRIP** on the wiper lever ⇒ *Fig. 58*.
- *Vehicles with a multifunction steering wheel:* press the  or  button ⇒ *Fig. 59*.

### Driving data recorders

The driving data display (multifunction display) has 3 automatic recorders:

- **Since start**
- **Since refuelling**
- **Long-term**

The currently selected recorder is shown in the display.

Press the **OK/RESET** button on the windscreen wiper lever or press the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel to switch between recorders when the ignition is switched on and the recorder is displayed.


Display	Function
<b>Since start</b>	Display and storage of gathered driving and consumption values from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.  If the journey is continued within approximately 2 hours of the ignition being switched off, the new values are also taken into account. The recorder will automatically be deleted if the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours.
<b>Since refuelling</b>	Display and storage of the collected driving and consumption values. The recorder is deleted automatically when the vehicle is refuelled.
<b>Long-term</b>	The memory collects journey data for any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 99 hours and 59 minutes journey time or 1,999.9 km or

Display	Function
	9,999.9 km distance travelled. If one of these maximum limits <sup>a)</sup> is exceeded, the memory is automatically deleted and reset to 0.


### Deleting the driving data recorder manually

- Select the memory that you wish to delete.
- Press and hold the **OK/RESET** button on the windscreen wiper lever, or the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel, for approximately 2 seconds.

### Personal selection of displays



You can set which driving data should appear in the instrument cluster using the **CAR** button and the  and **Instrument cluster** function buttons in the infotainment system → *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

### Examples of display

Display	Function
<b>Consumption</b>	The current fuel consumption is displayed in litres/100 km while the vehicle is in motion, and in litres/hour while the vehicle is stationary.
<b>Av. consumption</b>	The average fuel consumption will be shown in l/100 km after a distance of approximately 300 metres has been travelled. The display will show dashes until this point. The displayed values will be updated approximately every 5 seconds.
<b>Range</b>	Approximate calculation of the distance in km that can still be travelled with the current fuel level under the current driving conditions. One factor used for calculating this figure is the current level of fuel consumption.
Conv. consumers	List of active convenience systems which can increase fuel consumption, e.g. the air conditioning.
<b>SCR range OR:Range</b> 	Approximate distance (in km) that can be travelled with the remaining quantity of AdBlue <sup>®</sup> under current driving conditions.
<b>Travel time</b>	Driving time in hours (h) and minutes (min) that has elapsed since the ignition was switched on.
<b>Distance</b>	The distance travelled in km since the ignition was switched on.
<b>Av. speed</b>	The average speed will be shown after a distance of approximately 100 metres has been travelled. The display will show dashes until this point. The displayed values will be updated approximately every 5 seconds.
Digital speed display	Current vehicle speed displayed digitally.
<b>Speed warning --- km/h</b> or <b>Warning at --- mph</b>	If the saved speed (within the range of 30 km/h (19 mph) and 250 km/h (155 mph)) is exceeded, an acoustic warning will be given, along with a visible warning if required.
Dynamic Road Sign Display	Show recognised road signals.
<b>Oil temp.</b>	Current temperature of the engine oil displayed digitally.

### Saving a speed for the speed warning

- Select the display **Warning at --- km/h** or **Warning at --- mph**.
- Press the **OK/RESET** button on the windscreen wiper lever, or the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel to save the current speed and activate the warning system.

- If necessary, use the **TRIP** rocker switch on the windscreen wiper lever, or the  or  buttons on the multifunction steering wheel, within approximately 5 seconds to set the desired speed. Then press the **OK/RESET** or **OK** button again, or wait a few seconds. The speed is now saved and the warning is activated.
- To deactivate, press the **OK/RESET** or **OK** button. The stored speed will be deleted.

a) Changes depending on the instrument cluster version.

## Warning and information messages






**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The system runs a check on certain components and functions in the vehicle when the ignition is switched on or while the vehicle is in motion. Malfunctions are indicated by red and yellow warning symbols<sup>1)</sup> with text messages on the instrument cluster display ⇒ *Instrument cluster*. An acoustic warning is also given in certain cases. Different instrument cluster designs may have different displays.

The system runs a check on certain components and functions in the vehicle when the ignition is switched on or while the vehicle is in motion. Malfunctions are indicated by red and yellow warning symbols with information messages on the instrument cluster display ⇒ *Instrument cluster*. An acoustic warning is also given in certain cases. Different instrument cluster designs will have different displays.

In addition, a list of current malfunctions can be opened manually. To do so, choose **Vehicle status** or **Vehicle** in the selection menu ⇒ *Instrument cluster*.

Type of message	Symbol colour	Explanation
Priority 1 warning report	Red	The symbol flashes or lights up (sometimes together with a signal tone).  <b>Do not drive on! Danger</b> ⇒  ! Check the fault and correct the cause. Seek expert assistance if necessary.
Priority 2 warning report	Yellow	The symbol flashes or lights up (sometimes together with a signal tone). Your vehicle could be damaged or break down if there is a fault, or if service fluids are running low ⇒  . Check the fault as soon as possible. Seek expert assistance if necessary.
Information message	–	Information about various procedures within the vehicle.



### WARNING


Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.


- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- A broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk, for you, your passengers and for other road users. If the situation requires, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle as a warning to other road users.
- Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel.





### NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

 Different instrument clusters are available, which means that the versions and displays may vary. In displays without warning or information texts, faults are indicated exclusively by indicator lamps.

 Depending on the vehicle equipment level, some settings and displays may also appear in the infotainment system.

 If several warnings are present, the symbols will appear for several seconds, one after another. The symbols will continue to appear until the faults are rectified.

 If warning messages about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this is the case, take the vehicle to a qualified workshop to have the malfunctions rectified.

<sup>1)</sup> Displayed in colour on an instrument cluster with colour display.

## Driver Alert System

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The Driver Alert System informs the driver if their driving shows signs of tiredness.



Fig. 52 On the instrument cluster display: Driver Alert System.

### Function and operation


The Driver Alert System determines the driving behaviour at the beginning of a journey and uses it to evaluate the tiredness of the driver. This is compared to the behaviour of the driver while actually driving. If the system detects that the driver may be tired, an acoustic warning signal will sound and a message will appear in the instrument cluster display ⇒ Fig. 52. The message on the instrument cluster display appears for about five seconds and may be repeated once. The last displayed message is saved by the system.

The message in the instrument cluster display can be switched off by pressing the **OK/RESET** button on the wiper lever or the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ [Operating using the multifunction steering wheel](#). The message can be displayed again on the instrument cluster display using the multifunction display ⇒ [Driving data display \(Multifunction display\)](#).

### Functional limitations

The driving behaviour can only be evaluated at speeds over approximately 65 km/h (40 mph) and up to approximately 200 km/h (125 mph).

### Switching on and off

The Driver Alert System can be activated or deactivated using the **CAR** button and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons in the infotainment system.

## Function limitations

The Driver Alert System has system-related limitations. The following conditions can limit the function of the Driver Alert System, or prevent it from working altogether:

- When travelling at speeds of less than approximately 65 km/h (40 mph).
- When travelling at speeds of more than approximately 200 km/h (125 mph).
- Roads with bends.
- Poor roads.
- Adverse weather conditions.
- Sporty driving style.
- The driver is distracted.
- Towing a heavy/long trailer ⇒ *Towing a trailer*.

The Driver Alert System is reset when:


- The ignition is switched off.
- The driver seat belt is unfastened and the driver door is open.
- The vehicle is stationary for longer than 15 minutes.


The Driver Alert System is automatically reset in case of long slow drives (speed less than 65 km/h (40 mph)). If the speed is increased, the system evaluates the driving behaviour again.

## WARNING

The intelligent technology used in the Driver Alert System cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by the Driver Alert System tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents. During a long trip, plan regular and sufficient breaks.

- The driver is responsible at all times for their fitness to drive.
- Never drive a vehicle when you are tired.
- The system cannot always detect the driver's level of alertness. Observe the information in the section ⇒ *Function limitations*.
- In certain situations, the system may wrongly interpret intentional driving manoeuvres as a lack of alertness from the driver.
- No urgent warning will be given in the event of the phenomenon known as microsleep.
- Follow the information on the instrument cluster display and respond according to the commands.

 The Driver Alert System has been developed for use only while driving on highways and good roads.

 If there is a system fault, proceed to a qualified workshop immediately to have the system checked.

## Dynamic Road Sign Display (Sign Assist)





**Fig. 53** On the instrument cluster display: examples of recognised speed limits or overtaking restrictions with accompanying additional signs.



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Dynamic Road Sign Display uses a camera in the base of the interior mirror to monitor standard road signs in front of the vehicle and notifies the driver of any detected speed limits or overtaking restrictions. Within the limits of the system, the system also displays additional signs, e.g. temporary restrictions, signs related to towing a trailer ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#) or restrictions in wet weather conditions. In some cases the system can also display the current speed limits on non-signposted routes.

In addition to speed limits and overtaking restrictions, Dynamic Road Sign Display also detects the sign which indicates that all restrictions have been lifted on motorways and main roads in Germany. In all other countries, the current speed limit is displayed instead.

## Country availability

At the time that this owner's manual went to print, Dynamic Road Sign Display was available in the following countries:

Andorra, Austria, Belgium, Bulgaria, Croatia, Czech Republic, Denmark, Germany, Finland, France, Greece, Hungary, Ireland, Italy, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Monaco, Netherlands, Norway, Poland, Portugal, Romania, San Marino, Slovakia, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, United Kingdom, Vatican City.



## Display

The road signs detected by Dynamic Road Sign Display system are displayed on the instrument cluster ⇒ [Fig. 53](#) and, depending on the navigation system installed in the vehicle, also on the infotainment system display. Depending on the equipment level, a notification may also appear on the Head-up Display ⇒ [Instrument cluster](#).

Dynamic Road Sign Display texts	Cause and solution
<b>No road signs available</b>	The system is in the initialisation phase. <b>OR:</b> the camera has not detected any regulatory or warning signs.
<b>Error: Dynamic Road Sign Display</b>	System fault. Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.
<b>Speed warning currently not available.</b>	Fault in the Dynamic Road Sign Display system speed warning. Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.
<b>Dynamic Road Sign Display: clean windscreen!</b>	The area around the camera on the windscreen is dirty. Clean the windscreen. No data transmission from the navigation system.
<b>Dynamic Road Sign Display is currently restricted.</b>	Check whether valid map data is loaded on the navigation system. <b>OR:</b> the vehicle is located in an area that is not covered by the map stored on the navigation system.




Dynamic Road Sign Display texts	Cause and solution
No data available	Dynamic Road Sign Display is not supported in the country in which you are currently travelling.

## Switching Dynamic Road Sign Display on and off in the instrument cluster display

The continuous display of road signs in the instrument cluster display can be activated and deactivated using the  button and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons.

## Display of road signs

After checking and evaluation of the information from the camera, the navigation system and the current vehicle data, up to three valid road signs → Fig. 53 with the accompanying additional signs will be displayed:

1st position: The road sign that currently applies for the driver is shown on the left-hand side of the display, e.g. a speed limit of **130 km/h (100 mph)** → Fig. 53 . 2nd position: Road signs that do not always apply (e.g. **100 km/h (60 mph)** in wet conditions → Fig. 53 ). Additional sign: if the windscreen wiper is active while the vehicle is in motion, any road sign, for example with the additional In wet conditions sign that now applies will be moved left to the first position. 3rd position: Further road signs that do not always apply will be displayed in the third position, e.g. overtaking temporarily not permitted → Fig. 53 .

The sign is shown steadily in the instrument cluster display when you drive past the road sign.



Shortly after driving into or out of an urban area, the speed limits that normally apply to urban and/or rural roads in the country in which you are travelling will be displayed. If there is an additional road sign displaying a speed limit on the way into or out of the urban area, this sign will be shown in the display.

Signs indicating the end of a speed limit or overtaking restriction will not be displayed.



There is no warning when you exceed the displayed speed limits. Traffic-calmed areas are not detected by the system. The legal regulations apply.

## Speed warning function

When the Dynamic Road Sign Display detects that an applicable speed limit has been exceeded, it will issue an acoustic warning signal and display a message on the instrument cluster display.

The speed warning can be activated or completely deactivated using the  button and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons in the infotainment system. The settings can be adjusted in increments of 5 km/h (3 mph) within a range between 0 km/h (mph) and 15 km/h (9 mph) above the permitted maximum speed.

## Trailer mode

In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket and an electrical connection to the vehicle, the display of traffic signs that may apply to the vehicle when towing a trailer, e.g. applicable speed limits and no-overtaking signs, can be activated or deactivated using the  button and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons in the Infotainment system.

In trailer mode, the speed warning of the Dynamic Road Sign Display can be adjusted to the type of trailer or to legal requirements. The settings can be adjusted in increments of 10 km/h (6 mph) within a range between 60 km/h (37 mph) and 130 km/h (80 mph). If a higher speed is set than is permitted for driving with a trailer in the country in which you are currently travelling, Dynamic Road Sign Display automatically issues a warning at the usual speed limit, e.g. example at 80 km/h (50 mph) in Germany.

If the speed warning for the trailer is deactivated, Dynamic Road Sign Display issues warnings as if the vehicle was being driven without a trailer.

## Function limitations

Dynamic Road Sign Display is subject to system-related limitations. The following conditions can restrict the function of Dynamic Road Sign Display, or prevent it from working altogether:

- In poor visibility, e.g. snow, rain, fog or heavy spray.
- When dazzled, e.g. by oncoming traffic or sunlight.
- At high speeds.
- If the camera is covered or dirty.
- When road signs are located outside of the camera's field of view.
- If road signs are partially or fully covered, e.g. by trees, snow, dirt or other vehicles.
- If there are non-standard road signs.
- If the road signs are damaged or bent.
- Variable road signs on gantries (changeable road sign display using LEDs or other light sources).
- When the navigation system is using old maps.
- When vehicles are fitted with road sign stickers, e.g. speed restrictions on HGVs.

### WARNING

The intelligent Dynamic Road Sign Display technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by Dynamic Road Sign Display tempt you into taking any risks when driving, as this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Poor visibility, darkness, snow, rain and fog can cause road signs to be not displayed or be incorrectly displayed by the system.
- If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of the Dynamic Road Sign Display system may be impaired.

### WARNING

Driving recommendations and traffic symbols displayed by the Dynamic Road Sign Display system may differ from the current traffic situation.

- Not all road signs can be recognised by the system and displayed correctly.
- Road signs and traffic regulations have priority over the recommendations and displays provided by the Dynamic Road Sign Display system.

### WARNING

Failure to observe the text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.



## ! NOTICE

Please observe the following points in order to avoid impairing the proper function of the system:

- Regularly clean the camera's field of view, and keep it free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Always replace damaged or worn wiper blades as soon as possible to avoid streaks in the camera's field of view.
- Check the area of the windscreen that is in the camera's field of view for damage.

## ! NOTICE

- The use of old map data in the infotainment system can lead to incorrect display of the road signs.
- Availability of the Dynamic Road Sign Display system is restricted in waypoint navigation mode (waypoint navigation) of the infotainment system.

## ! NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Time

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

- To set the time (on all vehicle clocks), press and hold the **0.0** button in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Analogue instrument cluster* or ⇒ *Digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display)* while the doors are closed until the word **Time** appears in the display.
- Release the **0.0** button. The time is shown in the instrument cluster display and the hour setting is marked.
- Then press the **0.0** button repeatedly until the required hour is displayed. Press and hold the **0.0** button to scroll through quickly.
- Once you have set the hour, wait until the minutes display in the instrument cluster is marked.
- Then press the **0.0** button repeatedly until the required minute is displayed. Press and hold the **0.0** button to scroll through quickly.
- Release the **0.0** button to finish setting the clock.

The analogue clock adjusts itself a few seconds after ignition is switched on.

You can also set the time in the infotainment system using the **CAR** button and the  and **Time and date** function buttons ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

## Fuel gauge

---





Fig. 54 In the instrument cluster: fuel gauge for petrol and diesel.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ [Introduction](#)

### Fuel gauge

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy ⇒
	Fuel tank almost empty. Reserve volume, red marking ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 54</a> , is consumed ⇒ <i>Fuel tank capacity</i> . Fill the tank at the next opportunity ⇒ <i>Filling the tank</i> .
	Water in fuel in vehicles with a diesel engine. Reduce the vehicle speed immediately and drive to the nearest qualified workshop at a medium engine speed and avoiding high engine loading. <b>OR:</b> if the warning lamp lights up immediately after filling the tank, switch off the engine and seek expert assistance.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

When the indicator lamp lights up, the auxiliary heater ⇒ [Auxiliary heating and ventilation](#) and the fuel-powered supplementary heater switch off automatically.

**WARNING**

Driving when the fuel level is too low can lead to the vehicle coming to a standstill in traffic, potentially causing accidents and serious injuries.

- When the fuel level is too low, the fuel supply to the engine could be irregular, especially when driving up or down hills and inclines.
- The steering, all driver assist systems and brake support systems will not function if the engine sputters or stops completely due to a lack of fuel or irregular fuel supply.
- Always fill the tank when it is still 1/4 full. This reduces the risk of running out of fuel and breaking down.

**WARNING**

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

**NOTICE**

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

- To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.
- Do not run the tank empty. Irregular filling periods can cause backfiring and allow unburnt fuel to enter the exhaust system. This could cause damage to the catalytic converter!



The small arrow next to the petrol pump symbol in the fuel gauge shows you the side of the vehicle on which the tank flap is located.

a) Displayed in colour only on an instrument cluster with colour display.

## Vehicle status



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

Menu	Function
Driving data	Information and settings for the driving data display (multifunction display) ⇒ <i>Driving data display (Multifunction display)</i> , ⇒ <i>Operation and display in the infotainment system</i> .
Assist systems	Information and settings for the driver assist systems ⇒ <i>Additional displays and display options</i> , ⇒ <i>Operation and display in the infotainment system</i> .
Views	Select various Active Info Display information profiles ⇒ <i>Digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display)</i> .
Navigation	Information displays from active navigation system:  Turning arrows and proximity bars are displayed if you use active route guidance. The displays are similar to the symbols used in the infotainment system ⇒ <i>Booklet Navigation system</i> ,.  In some models, a detailed map may be shown in the instrument cluster display instead ⇒ <i>Booklet Navigation system</i> ,.  The direction of travel (compass function) and the name of the road being used are displayed if the route guidance option is not active ⇒ <i>Booklet Navigation system</i> ,.
Audio	Station display in radio mode ⇒ <i>Booklet Infotainment system</i> ,. Display station list in radio mode ⇒ <i>Booklet Infotainment system</i> ,. Track display in media mode ⇒ <i>Booklet Infotainment system</i> ,.
Telephone	Display telephone information ⇒ <i>Booklet Infotainment system</i> ,. Telephone operation ⇒ <i>Booklet Infotainment system</i> ,.
Vehicle status or Vehicle	Display and storage of current warning or information texts ⇒ <i>Instrument cluster</i> , ⇒ <i>Operation and display in the infotainment system</i> .  The menu option appears only if warning and information texts are available ⇒ <i>Instrument cluster</i> , ⇒ <i>Operation and display in the infotainment system</i> .

## Warning lamp and coolant temperature display






Fig. 55 In the instrument cluster: coolant temperature display (illustration).



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

In normal driving conditions, the needle will be in the middle section of the scale. The temperature may also rise when the engine is working hard, especially at high ambient temperatures.

Flashes <sup>a)</sup>	Needle position ⇒ Fig. 55	Possible Cause/action
	Ⓢ Warning area	<p>Coolant temperature too high.</p> <p> <b>Do not drive on!</b></p> <p>Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Stop the engine and let it cool down until the needle returns to the normal range. Check the coolant level ⇒ <i>Checking the coolant level and refilling coolant</i>.</p>
	Ⓢ Normal area	<p>Coolant level too low.</p> <p>After the engine has cooled down, check the coolant level and refill if the level is too low ⇒ <i>Checking the coolant level and refilling coolant</i>.</p> <p>If the warning lamp does not go out although the coolant level is OK, this indicates a cooling system problem.</p>
	—	<p>Fault in the cooling system.</p> <p> <b>Do not drive on!</b></p> <p>Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Switch off the engine.</p> <p>Seek expert assistance.</p>
—	Ⓢ Cold	<p>The engine has not yet reached operating temperature.</p> <p>Avoid high engine revs and heavy engine loads until the engine is warm.</p>


## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

 Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly in the instrument cluster as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

<sup>a)</sup> Displayed in colour on an instrument cluster with colour display.

## Service interval display





Fig. 56 In the instrument cluster display: example of a display in the instrument cluster when a service is due (illustration).



Fig. 57 Infotainment system screen: example of a display containing service information screen (illustration).



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

The service event displays are shown on the instrument cluster display ⇒ Fig. 56 and on the infotainment system display ⇒ Fig. 57.

Versions and displays can vary as different versions of the instrument cluster and of the infotainment system are available.

Service schedules at Volkswagen are divided into two categories, oil change service and inspections. The service interval display provides information on the next service which includes an oil change and on the next scheduled inspection. Scheduled services can also be found in the service schedule.

In vehicles with **fixed oil change service**, services take place at predefined intervals.


The service intervals are calculated on an individual basis in vehicles with **flexible oil change service**. Advances in technology have brought about a considerable reduction in servicing requirements. An oil change service need be carried out only when required by the vehicle. The individual conditions in which the vehicle is used, as well as the driver's personal driving style, are taken into account. The service reminder is displayed 30 days before the service is due. The distance is rounded to the nearest 100 km; the remaining time is rounded to full days.

## Service alert

If an oil change service or inspection is due soon, a service alert will appear the next time the ignition is switched on.

The number of kilometres or amount of time shown correspond to the maximum number of kilometres or maximum time that can still be driven before the next service.

## Service event

If an **oil change service is due** or an **inspection is due**, a signal tone will be given when the ignition is switched on and the spanner symbol  will be displayed for several seconds on the instrument cluster display. One of the following displays will also appear ⇒ Fig. 56:



**Inspection now!**




**Oil service now!**

**Oil service and inspection now!**

## Calling up service schedules



You can access the current service schedule when the ignition is switched on, the engine is not running, and the vehicle is stationary:

- Press and hold the  button in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Analogue instrument cluster* or ⇒ *Digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display)* until the word **Service** appears in the display.
- Release the  button. The current service message will be shown in the display.

Service information ⇒ *Fig. 57* can also be displayed in the infotainment system by pressing the  button and the  and  function buttons ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

## Resetting the service interval display

If the oil change service or the inspection was not performed by a qualified workshop, the display can be reset as follows:




- Switch off the ignition.
- Press and hold the  button in the instrument cluster ⇒ *Analogue instrument cluster* or ⇒ *Digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display)*.
- Restart the ignition.
- Release button  if one of the following messages appears on the instrument cluster display:


**Reset oil change service?**

**Reset inspection service?**

- Press the  button on the instrument cluster ⇒ *Analogue instrument cluster* or ⇒ *Digital instrument cluster (Active Info Display)* to confirm.

If the oil change service has been reset manually, the service interval display switches to a fixed service interval, even in vehicles with a **flexible oil change service**.

 The service message will disappear after a few seconds, when the engine is running, or when the  button on the wiper lever or the  button on the multifunction steering wheel is pressed ⇒ *Instrument cluster*.

 If the vehicle battery was disconnected for long periods in vehicles with flexible service, the system cannot calculate the time at which the next service is due. The information shown in the service interval display may therefore be incorrect. If this is the case, please heed the maximum permissible service intervals listed in the ⇒ *Booklet Service Schedule*.

## Instrument cluster operation

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:


- ⇒ *Operating with the wiper lever*
- ⇒ *Operating using the multifunction steering wheel*
- ⇒ *Button for the driver assist systems*
- ⇒ *Additional displays and display options*

Some menu options can only be opened when the vehicle is stationary.

## WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Never open the menus on the instrument cluster display while the vehicle is in motion.

 After starting the engine with a discharged vehicle battery or after the battery has been changed, system settings (time, date, personal convenience settings and programming) may have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the battery has been sufficiently charged.

## Operating with the wiper lever



Fig. 58 On the right of the steering column: buttons on the wiper lever (vehicles without multifunction steering wheel).

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The menus in the instrument cluster are operated using the buttons on the wiper lever.

### Opening the selection menu and selecting a menu or information display

- Switch on the ignition.
- If a message or vehicle pictogram is displayed, press the ⇒ Fig. 58 ① button on the wiper lever. You may have to press it several times.

To display the selection menu ⇒ [Menus in the instrument cluster](#) or to return to the selection menu from another menu or information display, press and hold the rocker switch ⇒ Fig. 58 ② until the selection menu is displayed. To browse through the selection menu, press the rocker switch up or down.


To open the menu or information display shown in the selection menu, press ⇒ Fig. 58 ① or wait until the menu or information display opens automatically after a few seconds.

### Making settings in menus

- In the displayed menu, press the rocker switch ⇒ Fig. 58 ② on the wiper lever up or down until the desired menu option is marked. A frame appears around the selected option.
- Press the button ⇒ Fig. 58 ① to make the desired change. A tick indicates that the particular system or function is active.

### Returning to the selection menu

- Select the menu option **Back** in each case to leave the current menu.

 If warning messages about malfunctions are displayed when the ignition is switched on, it may not be possible to adjust some settings as described, or the information display may appear differently. If this is the case, take the vehicle to a qualified workshop to have the malfunctions rectified.

## Operating using the multifunction steering wheel

---





**Fig. 59** Right-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel: buttons for using the menus and information displays in the instrument cluster display.




 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

If any priority 1 ⇒ *Instrument cluster* warning reports are being displayed, you will be unable to open any menus. Some warnings can be confirmed and switched off with the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ *Fig. 59*.

### Opening the main menu

- Switch on the ignition.
- If a message or vehicle pictogram is displayed, press the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- To navigate through the individual menu options, press the button  or  several times.

### Opening a submenu


- Press and hold the  or  button on the multifunction steering wheel until the required submenu option is selected.
- The selected submenu option is shown between the two horizontal lines. There is also a triangle on the right-hand side: .
- To open the submenu option, press the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel.

If no selection is made in the submenu within a few seconds, the screen switches back to the previous menu.

### Making changes to settings in the menu

- Make the desired changes with the arrow buttons on the multifunction steering wheel. If necessary, press and hold the buttons to increase or decrease the values quickly.
- Use the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel to mark or confirm the selection.

### Returning to the main menu

- Press the  button or select the Back menu option.

## Button for the driver assist systems

---







**Fig. 60** On the turn signal and main beam lever on the left of the steering column: button for driver assist systems.

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒ [Introduction](#)

You can switch the driver assist systems listed in the **Assist systems** menu on and off with the button on the turn signal and main beam lever ⇒ [Driver assist systems](#) .

### Switching individual driver assist systems on and off

- Press the button ⇒ [Fig. 60](#) in the direction of the arrow to open the **Assist systems** menu.
- Select the driver assist system and switch it on or off ⇒ [Operating using the multifunction steering wheel](#) , ⇒ [Operating with the wiper lever](#) . A tick indicates that a driver assist system is switched on.
- Mark and confirm your selection by pressing the button **OK/RESET** on the wiper lever, or by pressing the **OK** button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ [Operating using the multifunction steering wheel](#) , ⇒ [Operating with the wiper lever](#) .

Driver assist systems can also be switched on and off in the infotainment system by pressing the **CAR** button and the and **Driver assist** function buttons ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#) .

The button for the driver assist systems may also be installed in vehicles that are not equipped with compatible driver assist systems. In these cases, the button will not work.

## Additional displays and display options

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒ [Introduction](#)

Assist systems menu:

Menu	Function
Lane Assist	Switch the lane keeping system (Lane Assist) on or off ⇒ <a href="#">Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)</a> .
Front Assist	Switching the area monitoring system (Front Assist) on and off ⇒ <a href="#">Area monitoring system (Front Assist) incl. City Emergency Brake</a> .
Side Assist	Switching the lane change system (Side Assist) on and off ⇒ <a href="#">Lane change system (Side Assist) incl. Rear Traffic Alert</a> .
Rear Traffic Alert	Switches Rear Traffic Alert on and off ⇒ <a href="#">Lane change system (Side Assist) incl. Rear Traffic Alert</a> .
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) display ⇒ <a href="#">Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</a> .

## Warning and indicator lamps
























The warning and indicator lamps indicate various warnings ⇒ , faults ⇒ or certain functions. Some warning and indicator lamps light up when the ignition is switched on and should go out once the engine is running or the vehicle is in motion.


Additional text can be shown on the instrument cluster display to provide further information or to prompt you to carry out certain actions ⇒ [Instrument cluster](#) .

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, symbols may be displayed in the instrument cluster instead of warning lamps.

Signal tones are given when some warning or indicator lamps light up.

For details on indicator lamps which light up in the light switch see Chapter Lighting ⇒ [Lights](#) .

Symbol	Meaning ⇒ 
	Central warning lamp. Observe the additional information on the instrument cluster display.
	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> The electronic parking brake is switched on ⇒ <a href="#">Electronic parking brake</a> .
	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Brake system faulty, brake fluid level too low or together with the ABS indicator lamp  : anti-lock brake system (ABS) failed ⇒ <a href="#">Brake support systems</a> .
	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Engine coolant level too high, too low, or faulty ⇒ <a href="#">Coolant</a> .
	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Flashing: engine oil pressure is too low ⇒ <a href="#">Engine oil</a> .
	Flashing:  <b>Do not drive on!</b> Fault in the electronic steering column lock ⇒ <a href="#">Steering</a> . Lit up: electromechanical steering not functioning ⇒ <a href="#">Steering</a> .
	<b>The engine cannot be restarted!</b> AdBlue® level too low ⇒ <a href="#">Emission control system for diesel vehicles (AdBlue®)</a> .
 with	<b>The engine cannot be restarted!</b> Fault in the selective catalytic reduction system ⇒ <a href="#">Emission control system for diesel vehicles (AdBlue®)</a> .
	Driver seat belt is not fastened ⇒ <a href="#">Seat belts</a> . <b>OR:</b> the front passenger seat belt is not fastened if the front passenger seat is occupied ⇒ <a href="#">Seat belts</a> . <b>OR:</b> there are objects on the front passenger seat ⇒ <a href="#">Seat belts</a> .
	<b>Brake or take avoiding action!</b> Advance warning display. Collision warning from area monitoring system (Front Assist) ⇒ <a href="#">Area monitoring system (Front Assist) incl. City Emergency Brake</a> .
	Brake pedal not depressed. Brake support systems ⇒ <a href="#">Brake support systems</a> , Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ⇒ <a href="#">Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</a> .
	Fault in the alternator ⇒ <a href="#">Vehicle battery</a> .
	Water in fuel in vehicles with a diesel engine ⇒ <a href="#">Filling the tank</a> .
	Central warning lamp. Observe the additional information on the instrument cluster display.
	Brake pads worn ⇒ <a href="#">Brake support systems</a> . Go to a qualified workshop immediately. <b>All</b> brake pads should be checked and renewed as necessary.
	Lit up: Electronic Stability Control (ESC) switched off by the system or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) faulty ⇒ <a href="#">Brake support systems</a> .

**OR:** in conjunction with ABS indicator lamp : fault with the anti-lock brake system (ABS) ⇒ *Brake support systems* .

**OR:** the vehicle battery has been reconnected ⇒ *Brake support systems* .

Flashes: Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or traction control system (TCS) is intervening ⇒ *Brake support systems* .


Traction control system (TCS) switched off manually ⇒ *Brake support systems* .




**OR:** Electronic Stability Control (ESC) switched off manually.

**OR:** ESC Sport switched on manually.

**OR:** Off-road or Off-road Individual driving profile active.

Together with ESC indicator lamp : fault in the anti-lock brake system (ABS) ⇒ *Brake support systems* .



Together with the warning lamp : Anti-lock brake system (ABS) not functioning ⇒ *Brake support systems* .



Electronic parking brake fault ⇒ *Electronic parking brake* .



Rear fog light switched on ⇒ *Lights* .



Vehicle lighting not working partially or completely. ⇒ *Lights* .

**OR:** fault in the dynamic cornering light system ⇒ *Changing bulbs* .

Lit up: there is a fault that affects the exhaust gas ⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system* .



Flashing: misfiring, which damages the catalytic converter ⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system* .



Lit up: diesel engine is preheating before starting ⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system* .

Flashing: fault in engine management system (diesel engine) ⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system* .



Fault in engine management system (Electronic Power Control) ⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system* .



Engine speed limited ⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system* .



Diesel particulate filter has become saturated with soot ⇒ *Engine management system and exhaust purification system* .



Lit up: electromechanical steering reduced or the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected ⇒ *Steering* .

Flashing: steering column is twisted or is not unlocked/locked ⇒ *Steering* .



Lit up: tyre pressure too low or the tyre is structurally damaged ⇒ *Wheels and tyres* .

Flashing: fault in tyre monitoring system ⇒ *Tyre monitoring system* .



Fault in the rain/light sensor ⇒ *Wipers* .



Fault in wipers ⇒ *Wipers* .



Washer fluid level too low ⇒ *Wipers* .



Fuel tank almost empty ⇒ *Filling the tank* .



Lit up: engine oil level too low or too high ⇒ *Engine oil* .

Flashing: engine oil system fault ⇒ *Engine oil* .














Fault in airbag and belt tensioner system ⇒ *Airbag system* .



Fault in the airbag system ⇒ *Airbag system* .

Front passenger front airbag switched off ⇒ *Airbag system* .

	Front passenger front airbag switched on ⇒ <i>Airbag system</i> .
	AdBlue® level is low ⇒ <i>Emission control system for diesel vehicles (AdBlue®)</i> .
	Selective catalytic reduction system faulty or not refilled using norm-standard AdBlue® ⇒ <i>Emission control system for diesel vehicles (AdBlue®)</i> .
with	
	Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) switched on but not active ⇒ <i>Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)</i> .
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) currently not available ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .
	Area monitoring system (Front Assist) is deactivated ⇒ <i>Area monitoring system (Front Assist) incl. City Emergency Brake</i> .
OFF	
	Gearbox fault ⇒ <i>DSG® dual clutch gearbox</i> , ⇒ <i>Manual gearbox: selecting a gear</i> .
	Fault in the adaptive chassis control (DCC). Driving profile selection ⇒ <i>Driving Profile Selection</i> , 4MOTION Active Control ⇒ <i>4MOTION Active Control</i> .
	The ball head on the towing bracket is not locked ⇒ <i>Towing a trailer</i> .
	Turn signal, left or right ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .
	<b>OR:</b> hazard warning lights switched on ⇒ <i>In an emergency</i> .
	Trailer turn signal ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .
	Lit up: brake pedal not depressed. Brake support systems ⇒ <i>Brake support systems</i> .
	Flashing: the lock button in the selector lever is not engaged. Brake support systems ⇒ <i>Brake support systems</i> .
	The vehicle is being held by the Auto Hold function ⇒ <i>Auto Hold function</i> .
	Lit up: the cruise control system is switched on and active ⇒ <i>Cruise control system</i> .
	<b>OR:</b> Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) switched on, active ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .
	<b>OR:</b> the speed limiter is switched on, active ⇒ <i>Speed limiter</i> .
	Flashing: the set speed of the speed limiter has been exceeded ⇒ <i>Speed limiter</i> .
	Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) is switched on and active ⇒ <i>Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)</i> .
	The main beam is switched on or the headlight flasher is being operated ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .
	<i>When displayed in white:</i> Hill Descent Control active ⇒ <i>Hill Descent Control</i> .
	<i>When displayed in grey:</i> Hill Descent Control not active. System switched on, but not regulating ⇒ <i>Hill Descent Control</i> .
	Off-road or Off-road Individual driving profile active ⇒ <i>4MOTION Active Control</i> .
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and speed limiter active. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> , speed limiter ⇒ <i>Speed limiter</i> .
	Adaptive cruise control (ACC) active. No vehicle has been detected ahead ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and cruise control system switched on, active ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> , ⇒ <i>Speed limiter</i> .
	<i>When displayed in white:</i> Adaptive cruise control (ACC) active. Vehicle detected ahead ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .
	<i>When displayed in grey:</i> Adaptive cruise control (ACC) not active. System switched on, but not regulating ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .
	Main beam control (Light Assist) or dynamic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist) is active ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .
	Service alert / service due ⇒ <i>Service interval display</i> .


	Mobile telephone battery charge level. Only when the factory-fitted mobile telephone interface is active ⇒ <i>Booklet/Infotainment system</i> .
	The outside temperature is below +4°C (+39°F) ⇒ <i>Display</i> .
	The start/stop system is available, automatic engine stop is active ⇒ <i>Start/stop system</i> .
	The start/stop system is not available. <b>OR:</b> the start/stop system has switched on the engine automatically ⇒ <i>Start/stop system</i> .
	The engine is starting. Pre-heating period in diesel engines. Starting and stopping the engine ⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i> .
	Fuel-efficient mode ⇒ <i>Display</i> .
	Note about information in the vehicle wallet.

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel.
- A broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk, for you, your passengers and for other road users. If the situation requires, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle as a warning to other road users.
- Before opening the bonnet, switch off the engine and allow it to cool down sufficiently.
- The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here ⇒ *In the engine compartment*.

## WARNING

If the warning lamp  lights up either individually or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately to have the brake pads checked or any worn brake pads replaced.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

# Operation and display in the infotainment system

## Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Vehicle settings (Car) menu*
- ⇒ *Performance monitor*
- ⇒ *Lap timer*
- ⇒ *Personalisation*


The infotainment system brings together key vehicle systems in a central operating

unit, e.g. menu settings, radio and navigation system.


## General information on operating the unit

The following section contains information on the settings that can be adjusted in the **Vehicle settings** menu. Basic information on operating the infotainment system and on warning and safety instructions are contained in a separate manual ⇒Booklet*Infotainment system*.

## Systems settings and display of vehicle information

Press the infotainment button  and then touch the corresponding function buttons to show information or make settings.


- Vehicle settings ⇒ *Vehicle settings (Car) menu* .
- Auxiliary heater settings ⇒ *Auxiliary heating and ventilation* .
- Active media.
- Driving data.
- Vehicle status.
- Convenience consumers.
- Radio station selection.

For example, you can touch the  function button in the **Vehicle status** menu to display the current status of the start/stop system. On infotainment systems with navigation function, a quick access toolbar for the current status of the start/stop system is displayed independently of the current display content. Touch the **i** in the quick access toolbar to obtain further information on the status.

### **WARNING**

**Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the infotainment system can distract you from the road.**

- **Always drive carefully and responsibly.**



 After starting the engine with a discharged vehicle battery or after the battery has been changed, system settings (time, date, personal convenience settings and programming) may have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the battery has been sufficiently charged.

## Vehicle settings (Car) menu


---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

### Opening the Vehicle settings menu

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, switch on the infotainment system.
- Press the  infotainment button.
- Touch the  function button to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.

If the checkbox in the function button is ticked , the respective function is switched on.

Touching the  function button takes you back to the previous menu.

## Menu overview

The following menu overview is an example of the infotainment system menu structure. The size and layout of the Volkswagen information system menu depends on the vehicle electronics and the level of vehicle equipment.

Menu	Submenu	Settings options
ESC system	–	The following settings can be made: – Traction control system (TCS) off, – Electronic Stability Control (ESC) activated, – Electronic Stability Control sport mode (ESC Sport) ⇒ <i>Brake support systems</i> .
Tyres	<b>Tyre Pressure Monitoring System</b>	Store the tyre pressures (SET) ⇒ <i>Tyre monitoring system</i> .
	<b>Winter tyres</b>	Activation or deactivation of the speed warning. Setting the speed warning value ⇒ <i>Wheels and tyres</i> .
Driver assistance	<b>ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control)</b>	The following functions can be set: – Activation or deactivation of the last selected distance, – Active distance setting (time interval to the vehicle ahead) when the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is switched on ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .
	<b>Front Assist (area monitoring system)</b>	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: – Area monitoring system (Front Assist), – Advance warning, – Distance warning display ⇒ <i>Area monitoring system (Front Assist) incl. City Emergency Brake</i> .
	<b>Lane Assist (lane keeping system)</b>	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: – Lane keeping system (Lane Assist), – Adaptive lane guidance ⇒ <i>Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)</i> .
	<b>Side Assist (lane change system)</b>	Activation and deactivation of the lane change system (Side Assist). Setting the brightness of the display in the exterior mirror ⇒ <i>Lane change system (Side Assist) incl. Rear Traffic Alert</i> .
	<b>Dynamic Road Sign Display</b>	The following systems can be activated or deactivated: – Show recognised road signs in the driving data display (multifunction display), – Trailer recognition (display of road signs for vehicles with a trailer). – Activation and deactivation of the speed warning ⇒ <i>Dynamic Road Sign Display (Sign Assist)</i> .
	<b>Driver Alert System</b>	Activation or deactivation of the Driver Alert System ⇒ <i>Driver Alert System</i> .
	<b>Proactive pass. protection</b>	Activation or deactivation of the proactive occupant protection system ⇒ <i>Seat belts</i> .
	<b>Parking and manoeuvring</b>	<b>ParkPilot</b>

Menu	Submenu	Settings options
		<p>The following functions can be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Front and rear volume,</li> <li>– Front and rear tone,</li> <li>– Entertainment fading ⇒ <i>ParkPilot</i> .</li> </ul>
	<b>Rear Traffic Alert</b>	Activation and deactivation of Rear Traffic Alert ⇒ <i>Park Assist</i> .
<b>Lights</b>	<b>Light assistance</b>	<p>The following systems can be activated or deactivated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Dynamic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist),</li> <li>– Dynamic cornering light,</li> <li>– Daytime running lights,</li> <li>– Switch-on time</li> <li>– Automatic dipped headlights (when raining),</li> <li>– Lane change flash.</li> </ul> <p>The following function can be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Travel mode (right-hand or left-hand drive) ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .</li> </ul>
	<b>Interior lighting</b>	<p>The following functions can be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Instrument and switch lighting,</li> <li>– Background lighting in the front,</li> <li>– Background lighting in the doors,</li> <li>– Footwell lighting ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .</li> </ul>
	<b>Coming Home/Leaving Home function</b>	<p>The following functions can be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Duration that the Coming Home function is switched on,</li> <li>– Duration that the Leaving Home function is switched on ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .</li> </ul>
<b>Background lighting</b>	–	<p>The following areas can be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Roof</li> <li>– Footwell</li> <li>– Doors</li> </ul>
<b>Mirrors and wipers</b>	<b>Mirrors</b>	<p>The following systems can be activated or deactivated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Synchronous adjustment of the exterior mirrors,</li> <li>– Mirror lowering function in reverse gear,</li> <li>– Folding in when parked ⇒ <i>Mirrors</i> .</li> </ul>
	<b>Wipers</b>	<p>The following systems can be activated or deactivated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Automatic wipe function when raining,</li> <li>– Rear window wipers in reverse gear ⇒ <i>Wipers</i> .</li> </ul>
<b>Opening and closing</b>	<b>Window operation</b>	Setting convenience opening of the windows ⇒ <i>Windows</i> .
	<b>Central locking</b>	<p>Setting door unlocking.</p> <p>Activation or deactivation of automatic locking ⇒ <i>Central locking and closing system</i> .</p>
	<b>Luggage compartment cover</b>	Activate or deactivate automatic opening of the luggage compartment cover ⇒ <i>Luggage compartment cover</i> .



Menu	Submenu	Settings options
<b>Instrument cluster</b>	<b>Multifunction display</b>	<p>The following displays can be activated or deactivated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Current fuel consumption,</li> <li>– Average fuel consumption</li> <li>– Top-up volume,</li> <li>– Convenience consumers,</li> <li>– Eco tips,</li> <li>– Travel time,</li> <li>– Distance,</li> <li>– Average speed,</li> <li>– Digital speed display,</li> <li>– Speed warning function,</li> <li>– Oil temperature,</li> <li>– Dynamic Road Sign Display.</li> </ul> <p>The following data can be reset:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Driving data since start,</li> <li>– Driving data Long-term ⇒ <i>Instrument cluster</i> .</li> </ul>
<b>Head-up Display</b>	<b>Display</b>	<p>The following functions can be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Brightness,</li> <li>– Colour scheme ⇒ <i>Instrument cluster</i> .</li> </ul>
	<b>Contents</b>	<p>The following displays can be activated or deactivated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– cruise control system,</li> <li>– Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC),</li> <li>– Dynamic Road Sign Display,</li> <li>– Route guidance,</li> <li>– Lane keeping system (Lane Assist).</li> </ul>
<b>Personalisation</b>	<b>Personalisation</b>	Activate or deactivate user account.
	<b>Select user account</b>	Select an account from different user accounts.
	<b>Settings</b>	<p>The following functions can be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Manual or automatic key assignment</li> <li>– Assign key to current user account</li> <li>– Reset all</li> </ul>
<b>Time and date</b>	–	<p>The following functions can be set:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Clock time source (manual, GPS),</li> <li>– Time,</li> <li>– Set summer time automatically,</li> <li>– Time zone,</li> <li>– Time format (12h, 24h),</li> <li>– Date,</li> <li>– Date format.</li> </ul>
<b>Units</b>	–	<p>The following functions can be set:</p>

Menu	Submenu	Settings options
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Distance,</li> <li>- Speed,</li> <li>- Temperature,</li> <li>- Volumes,</li> <li>- Consumption,</li> <li>- Pressure.</li> </ul>
<b>Service</b>	-	<p>The following data are displayed:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Vehicle identification number,</li> <li>- Date of next inspection,</li> <li>- Date of next oil change service ⇒ <i>Instrument cluster</i> .</li> </ul>
<b>Factory settings</b>	-	<p>The following settings can be reset:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- All settings,</li> <li>- Driver assistance,</li> <li>- Parking/manoeuvring,</li> <li>- Lights,</li> <li>- Background lighting,</li> <li>- Mirror and wipers,</li> <li>- Opening/closing,</li> <li>- Instrument cluster,</li> <li>- Head-up Display</li> <li>- Personalisation.</li> </ul>

## Performance monitor

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The performance monitor is a display for sporty driving. The digital instruments display real-time values for engine power, temperature and acceleration that are determined by sensors on the vehicle. This provides the driver with an overview of driving dynamics.



**Fig. 61** On the infotainment system display: Performance monitor.

Key for ⇒ **Fig. 61**

- ① Display areas.
- ② Arrow buttons for changing to the lap timer.

### Opening the performance monitor

- Press the **CAR** button on the Infotainment system.
- Touch the **Selection** function button.
- Touch the **Sport** function button.
- **OR:** press the **MENU** button on the Infotainment system.
- Touch the **Vehicle** function button.
- Touch the **Selection** function button.
- Touch the **Sport** function button.
- **OR:** press the **CAR** button on the Infotainment system repeatedly until the performance monitor is displayed.

If you would like to switch between the performance monitor and the lap timer ⇒ *Lap timer*, touch one of the arrow buttons on the left and right above the instruments ⇒ **Fig. 61** ②.



### Selecting instruments and setting units

The display can show a maximum of three instruments at the same time. Each instrument can be selected for each display area ⇒ **Fig. 61** ① (left, middle, right).

To change instruments, swipe vertically over the display. The currently selected instrument will then disappear and a new instrument will appear.

The units can be set for some instruments in the Infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

### The following instruments can be displayed:

- **Charge pressure display:** the charge pressure display ⇒ **Fig. 61** ① (left) shows the pressure in the charge air system between the turbocharger and engine (in the unit bar). The further to the right the needle on the scale, the higher the engine power output.
- **Accelerometer (G-meter):** The accelerometer (G-meter) ⇒ **Fig. 61** ① (centre) shows the acceleration value in the centre (in the unit g). The red marking in the grid-type area shows the acceleration level and the direction of the acting force (in the opposite direction according to physical laws). If you drive to the left, for example, the red marking will move in the right area of the instrument (and vice versa). If you accelerate, the red marking will move down. If you brake, the red marking will move up. The level of acceleration is indicated by the position of the red marking which moves outwards. If the acceleration increases, the red marking will move away from the centre area.
- **Power display:** the power display ⇒ **Fig. 61** ① (right) shows the current engine power output as a digital value and on the surrounding scale (in kW).
- **Coolant temperature display:** The needle may move further in clockwise direction under high engine loads and with high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern unless the  indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display is lit up or flashing ⇒ *Warning lamp and coolant temperature display*.
- **Oil temperature display:** the needle is in the middle area under normal driving conditions. If the needle is in the bottom left area, this means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid excessively high speeds and acceleration when the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. The needle may move further in clockwise direction under high engine loads and with high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern unless the  indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display is lit up or flashing ⇒ *Engine oil*.

## Adapting the display areas to the driving situation

Choose the three possible instruments corresponding to your individual driving style and the driving situation.


### WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the Infotainment system can distract you from the road.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.

### NOTICE

When starting from cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and over-loading the engine.

 Due to the principle of performance determination available in the vehicle, the physical accuracy of the displayed values is not guaranteed.

## Lap timer

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\Rightarrow$   Introduction

The lap timer provides you with the option of timing your own laps manually in the vehicle on a race track, storing the times and comparing them with previously measured best times.



Fig. 62 On the infotainment system display: lap timer with stopwatch, function button and lap times.





**Fig. 63** Function button on the infotainment system display: time measurement for paused, current and completed lap.

Key to ⇒ *Fig. 62* and ⇒ *Fig. 63* :

- ① Stopwatch
- ② Function button with current lap time
- ③ Stored lap times
- ④ Start or continue time measurement
- ⑤ Cancel current lap
- ⑥ End time measurement
- ⑦ Pause time measurement
- ⑧ Start new lap
- ⑨ Display intermediate time
- ⑩ Display statistics

## Opening the lap timer

To access the lap timer, you must first open the performance monitor ⇒ *Performance monitor* :

- Press the **CAR** button on the Infotainment system.
- Touch the **Selection** function button.
- Touch the **Sport** function button to call up the performance monitor.
- Touch one of the arrow buttons ⇒ *Fig. 61* ② in the performance monitor to change to the lap timer.
- **OR:** press the **MENU** button on the Infotainment system.
- Touch the **Vehicle** function button.
- Touch the **Selection** function button.
- Touch the **Sport** function button to call up the performance monitor.
- Touch one of the arrow buttons ⇒ *Fig. 61* ② in the performance monitor to change to the lap timer.
- **OR:** press the **CAR** button on the Infotainment system repeatedly until the performance monitor is displayed.
- Touch one of the arrow buttons ⇒ *Fig. 61* ② in the performance monitor to change to the lap timer.
















You can change between the lap timer and performance monitor at any time using the arrow buttons ⇒ *Fig. 61* ② and ⇒ *Fig. 62* .

## Measuring lap times

The stopwatch measures the lap time in two areas:

The red needle and the numerical value in the centre show the running time in seconds. The smaller display in the inner area shows minutes and hours.

The display on the right side shows the current lap time with an accuracy of 1/100 seconds. There is no difference between the stopwatch and lap times if there are not yet any laps with intermediate times stored in the lap timer.

Function	Operation
<b>Start or continue time measurement</b>	Touch the function button to start or continue  ⇒ Fig. 63  ④.
	Time measurement is not possible when the ignition is switched off. A message is shown on the display. Press <b>Start</b> to start time measurement. Time measurement starts as soon as the vehicle moves forwards.
	A new first lap can be started when the data in the statistics has been reset.
<b>End time measurement</b>	Touch the function button to end measurement  ⇒ Fig. 63  ⑥.
<b>Pause time measurement</b>	Touch the function button to pause measurement  ⇒ Fig. 63  ⑦.
<b>Start new lap</b>	Touch the function button to add a new lap ⇒ Fig. 63  ⑧. The last lap time is stored and a new lap starts. The overall time of the laps driven is shown in the statistics.
<b>Cancel current lap</b>	Touch the function button to cancel the current lap ⇒ Fig. 63  ⑤.
	During a running time measurement, touch the function button to pause measurement   ⑦. Time measurement is cancelled and the lap time is deleted. --:--:-- is displayed in the statistics.
<b>Display intermediate time</b>	Touch the function button for the intermediate time  ⇒ Fig. 63  ⑨. The stopwatch ⇒ Fig. 62 ① stops for a few seconds and the intermediate time is displayed.
<b>Display statistics</b>	After ending or cancelling time measurement, touch the function button for the statistics ⇒ Fig. 63  ⑩. The statistics show the number of laps, the overall time, the fastest and slowest laps, the average value of all lap times and all lap values.
	Touch the  function button to go back to the previous menu.
<b>Reset data in the statistics</b>	Touch the function button for statistics ⇒ Fig. 63  ⑩. Delete the data by touching the <b>Reset</b> function button.

A maximum of 99 laps and a maximum time of 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds can be recorded. If one of these limits has been reached, the data in the statistics must be deleted before a further time measurement.

## WARNING

Avoid operating the lap timer when the vehicle is in motion if possible.

- Preset lap timer settings and access statistics only when the vehicle is stationary.
- When the vehicle is in motion, use the lap timer only in driving situations which are easy to control.

## Personalisation

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The personalisation function allows you to save your individual vehicle settings (e.g. settings for air conditioning system, instrument cluster or light) in a user account. You have four user accounts available. Users are identified using the vehicle key upon unlocking the vehicle. One user account is assigned to each vehicle key.

Changes to the setup will be assigned to the active user account and saved upon locking the vehicle or changing the user account.

## Welcome and user account selection



When personalisation is activated, the name of the current user account appears on the instrument cluster display for approximately 10 seconds after you switch on the ignition.

During this time, you can select a user account using the buttons on the wiper lever or multifunction steering wheel ⇒ *Instrument cluster*.

When you select a user account, the saved vehicle settings are activated.

## User management and setup

When the ignition is switched on you can use the **Personalisation** menu in the infotainment system for user management and setup. Please proceed as follows to access the menu:



- Press the  infotainment button.
- Press the  function button and touch **Personalisation**.

If the checkbox in the function button is ticked , the respective function is switched on.

Menu	Submenu	Settings
<b>Personalisation</b>	<b>Active</b>	Switch personalisation on and off
<b>Driver selection</b>	<b>Driver 1</b>	– Select a user account.
	<b>Driver 2</b>	– Rename user account (except for user account <b>Guest</b> ).
	<b>Driver 3</b>	– Copy settings of the active user account to another user account.
	<b>Driver Guest</b>	– Reset the saved settings of the selected user account to factory settings. The user name will not be changed and it will still be assigned to the same vehicle key
<b>Settings</b>	<b>Key assignment</b>	<b>Manual</b> A vehicle key is permanently assigned to a user account.
		<b>Automatically</b> The vehicle key is automatically assigned to the new selected user account.
	<b>Assign key to current user account</b>	Assign a vehicle key to a user account.
	<b>Reset all</b>	Reset the setups of all user accounts, user account names and all vehicle key assignments to default.

## Switching user account


Select a user account in the **Personalisation** menu or in the **Vehicle status** menu.

- Press the  infotainment button.
- Touch the  function button and select the desired user account.

## Manually assigning vehicle keys to user accounts

You can assign a vehicle key to the currently active user account. For this purpose, select **Manual** key assignment.

- Touch the  function button.
- Select **Personalisation**

- Touch the **Assign key to current user account** function button.
- Press the  button on the vehicle key within five seconds ⇒ *Vehicle key set*.

### Automatically assigning vehicle keys to user accounts


If you have selected **Automatic** key assignment, the following vehicle key is assigned to the user account upon changing the user account:

- *Vehicles without Keyless Access*: vehicle key used to unlock the vehicle.
- *Vehicles with Keyless Access*: vehicle key that is detected first by the personalisation function when the driver door is opened.

### Personalised vehicle setup

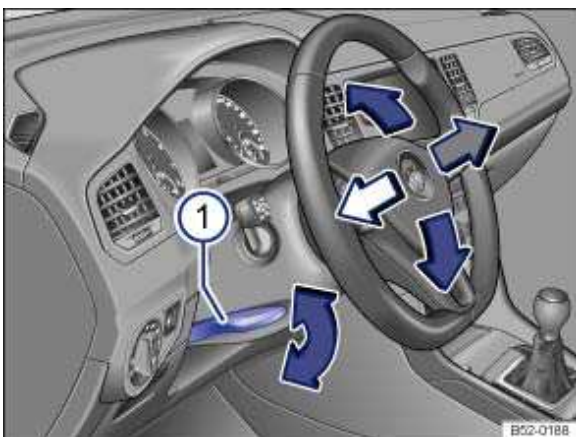
Vehicle equipment including the following can be personalised:

- Open and close (single door unlocking, window convenience opening etc.)
- Light and vision (daytime running lights, cornering light, lane change flash etc.)
- Air conditioning system (temperature settings, ventilation etc.)
- Assist systems (ParkPilot, Adaptive Cruise Control etc.)
- Driver profile selection (driver profiles etc.)
- Multifunction display and instrument cluster (choice of display content)
- Infotainment system with navigation function
- Seat setup (seat position)

 A new vehicle key will be assigned to the current user account. To assign the vehicle key to a different user account, select the user account you want and manually assign it to the vehicle key.

## Steering wheel

### Adjusting the steering wheel position



**Fig. 64** Below the steering wheel in the steering column trim: lever for mechanical adjustment of the steering wheel position.







**Fig. 65** On the steering wheel: 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock position.

Adjust the steering wheel position **before** setting off and only when the vehicle is stationary ⇒ ⚠.

- Push down the lever ⇒ Fig. 64 ①.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that you can hold it with both hands on the outside of the rim at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions ⇒ Fig. 65, with arms slightly bent.
- Push the lever up firmly until it is flush with the steering column trim ⇒ ⚠.

## ⚠ WARNING

**Incorrect use of the steering column position adjustment and incorrect adjustment of the steering wheel can cause serious or fatal injuries.**

- After adjusting the steering column, always move lever ⇒ Fig. 64 ① up so that it engages securely. This prevents the steering column from moving spontaneously while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is in motion. If you determine that a readjustment is necessary, stop the vehicle safely and adjust the steering wheel to the correct position.
- The steering wheel must always point towards the chest and not towards the face. This ensures that the driver front airbag provides maximum protection in the event of an accident.
- While driving, always keep both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions ⇒ Fig. 65. This reduces the risk of injury if the driver front airbag is triggered.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position, or in any other manner, e.g. on the hub of the steering wheel. If the driver front airbag is triggered, you could receive severe injuries to the arms, hands and head.

## Opening and closing

### Vehicle key set

#### 📖 Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ Vehicle key
- ⇒ Changing the button cell



## DANGER

Swallowing batteries with a diameter of 20 mm, or other button cells, can result in severe or even fatal injuries within a very short period of time.

- Always keep the vehicle key, key ring with batteries, spare batteries, round cells and other batteries that are larger than 20 mm out of the reach of children.
- Call for medical help immediately you suspect that someone has swallowed a battery.



## WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the vehicle key can lead to accidents or injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. Children or unauthorised persons could lock the doors and the boot lid, start the engine or switch on the ignition and operate electrical equipment such as the electric windows.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, locked vehicles may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.
- Never switch off the ignition or remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock while the vehicle is in motion. The steering column lock or steering lock mechanism may be activated and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.

## Vehicle key

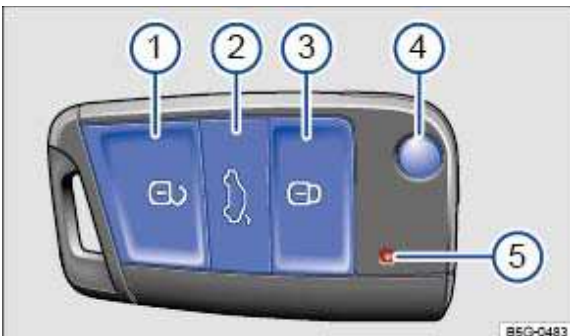


Fig. 66 Vehicle key.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Key to ⇒ Fig. 66 :


- 1 Central locking button: unlock the vehicle.
- 2 Unlock the boot lid.
- 3 Central locking button: lock the vehicle.
- 4 Lock button for key bit.
- 5 Indicator lamp.

### Indicator lamp in the vehicle key

The indicator lamp in the vehicle key flashes when you press a button. If it does not light up, the button cell (battery) in the vehicle key needs to be changed ⇒ [Changing the button cell](#) .

## Folding the key bit out and in

Press lock button . The key bit is released and folds out.


To fold in, press the lock button  and simultaneously push the key bit back until it clicks into place.


## Buttons on the vehicle key

The key can be used to unlock and lock the car from a distance  $\Rightarrow$  *Central locking and closing system*.

If the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the vehicle key  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig. 66*, the vehicle key will have to be re-synchronised or the button cell (battery) in the vehicle key replaced  $\Rightarrow$  *Changing the button cell*.

## Synchronising the vehicle key

It may no longer be possible to unlock or lock the vehicle with the vehicle key if the  button is pressed repeatedly outside of the effective range of the vehicle key. If this is the case, the vehicle key should be re-synchronised as follows:

- Fold out the key bit.
- Remove the cover of the door handle in the driver door  $\Rightarrow$  *Unlocking or locking the driver door manually*.
- Press the  button on the vehicle key. Remain standing close to the vehicle.
- Unlock the vehicle with the key bit within one minute. The synchronisation process is complete.
- Replace the cover of the door handle in the driver door.

## Replacement key


You will need to quote the vehicle identification number when ordering a vehicle key.


Several vehicle keys can be authorised for one vehicle.


You can obtain new vehicle keys at a Volkswagen dealership or qualified workshop.


### NOTICE

**Every electric vehicle key contains electronic components. Protect the key from damage, moisture and excessive vibration.**

 Press the buttons on the key only if the corresponding function is actually needed. Pressing a button when the function is not required could lead to the vehicle being unlocked unintentionally or the alarm going off. This also applies even when you are not within the effective range.

 The function of the vehicle key can be affected temporarily if there is more than one transmitter in the direct vicinity working on the same frequency (e.g. a two-way radio or mobile telephone).

 Obstacles between the vehicle key and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weak button cell reduce the range of the vehicle key.

 If the buttons on the vehicle key  $\Rightarrow$  *Fig. 66* or one of the central locking buttons  $\Rightarrow$  *Central locking and closing system* are pressed repeatedly within a short period of time, the central locking system will switch off briefly to prevent overloading. The vehicle will then be unlocked. Lock the vehicle if necessary.

## Changing the button cell

---

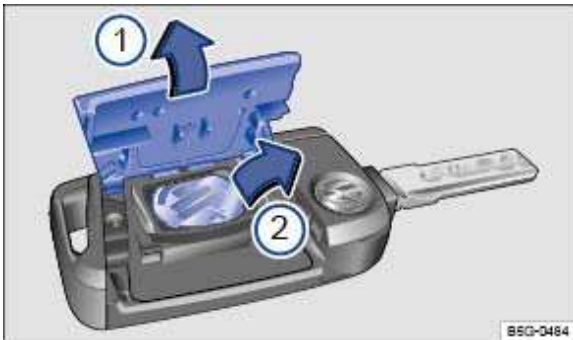


Fig. 67 Vehicle key: replacing the button cell.



 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Key to ⇒ Fig. 67 :

- ① Remove the cover.
- ② Remove the button cell.


Volkswagen recommends having the button cell changed at a Volkswagen dealership or by a qualified workshop.

### Changing the button cell (battery)

- Fold out the key bit.
- Remove the cover on the rear of the vehicle key with a suitable object ⇒ Fig. 67 ① in the direction of the arrow ⇒ .
- Using a suitable flat object, lever the button cell out of the battery compartment ⇒ Fig. 67 ②.
- Push the new button cell into the battery compartment in the opposite direction to that shown by the arrow ⇒ Fig. 67 ② ⇒ .
- Push the cover onto the vehicle key housing in the opposite direction of the arrow until it engages ⇒ Fig. 67 ①.

### NOTICE

- The vehicle key can be damaged if the battery is not changed properly.
- Unsuitable batteries can damage the vehicle key. Replace discharged batteries only with new batteries of the same voltage rating, size and specification.
- Ensure that the battery is fitted the right way round.

 Dispose of discharged batteries in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.

## Central locking and closing system

### Introduction


---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ Indicator lamp
- ⇒ Central locking system
- ⇒ Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside
- ⇒ Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside
- ⇒ Unlocking or locking vehicle with
- ⇒ SAFELOCK
- ⇒ Anti-theft alarm

- ⇒ Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm
- ⇒ Locking the vehicle after the airbag has been triggered

The central locking system will work only when all doors and the boot lid are properly closed. The vehicle *cannot* be locked if the driver door is open.

 m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: the vehicle can be locked *only* when the ignition has been switched off **OR** the driver has switched off the engine before leaving the vehicle.

Leaving the vehicle stationary and unlocked for long periods can discharge the vehicle battery and prevent the engine from starting.

## Automatic locking (anti-theft protection)

If the vehicle is unlocked but not opened, it will be locked again automatically after around 45 seconds.

### WARNING

Improper use of the central locking system could lead to serious injury.

- The central locking system locks all doors. Locking the vehicle from the inside can prevent accidental opening of the doors and unauthorised persons from entering the vehicle. However, locked doors can delay assistance to passengers inside the vehicle in the event of an accident or emergency.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. All doors can be locked from the inside using the central locking button. This may mean that people lock themselves in the vehicle. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.
- Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.
- Never leave anyone inside a locked vehicle. People in the vehicle could become trapped in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety.
- Doors and the boot lid should therefore be opened or closed only when you are sure that nobody is in their path.

## Indicator lamp

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The central locking system indicator lamp is located in the driver door ⇒ [Vehicle interior](#).

The vehicle is locked: a red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds, firstly at short intervals and then more slowly.

Fault in the locking system: A red LED flashes for approximately 2 seconds at short intervals. The lamp will then light up without interruption for approximately 30 seconds. Go to a qualified workshop.

### NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated indicator lamps could lead to the vehicle being damaged.

## Central locking system


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The central locking system enables you to lock or unlock all the doors, the boot lid and the tank flap from one point.

The doors and the boot lid can be locked or unlocked manually if the vehicle key or central locking fails ⇒ *Unlocking or locking the driver door manually* or ⇒ *Unlocking the boot lid manually* .

Special functions for the central locking can be activated or deactivated using the **Central locking** submenu in the **Settings for opening and closing** menu ⇒ *Instrument cluster* .


### Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The vehicle may lock itself automatically at speeds of approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) and above ⇒ *Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside* . The indicator lamp  in the central locking button ⇒ *Fig. 69* lights up yellow when the vehicle is locked.


### Automatic unlocking (Auto Unlock)


All doors and the boot lid are automatically unlocked if one of the following conditions applies:

- The vehicle is at a standstill and the vehicle key has been removed.
- **OR:** in an accident, when airbags have triggered ⇒ *Locking the vehicle after the airbag has been triggered* .

 m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with the Keyless Access locking and starting system: the vehicle is stationary and a door has been opened from the inside.

Automatic unlocking gives emergency response crew access to the vehicle.

 If the buttons on the vehicle key ⇒ *Fig. 66* or one of the central locking buttons ⇒ *Fig. 69* are pressed repeatedly within a short period of time, the central locking system will switch off briefly to prevent overloading. The vehicle is then unlocked for a number of seconds. If no door or the boot lid are opened during this time the vehicle will lock again automatically.





 If the sensor surface is touched twice, the entire vehicle will be unlocked, also when a single door has already been unlocked.



## Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside




**Fig. 68** Vehicle key: central locking system.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

- *Unlock*: press the  button. Press and hold for convenience opening.
- *Lock*: press the  button. Press and hold for convenience closing.
-  m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: touch the sensor surfaces ⇒ *Unlocking or locking vehicle with Keyless Access* . Individual doors or the entire vehicle are unlocked.
- Press the  button ⇒ *Boot lid* . The boot lid is released.

In vehicles with SAFELOCK, press the  button *once* to lock the vehicle using the SAFELOCK mechanism ⇒ *SAFELOCK* . Press the  button *twice* to lock the vehicle without SAFELOCK.

**Please note:** depending on the settings made for the central locking system in the **Central locking** submenu, all of the doors and the boot lid may be unlocked only once the  button has been pressed twice ⇒ *Instrument cluster* .

- When the vehicle is locked, all turn signals will flash *once* as confirmation.
- When unlocking the vehicle, all turn signals will flash *twice* as confirmation.



If the turn signals do *not* flash as confirmation when you lock the vehicle:


- At least one of the doors or the boot lid is not closed.
- **OR:** not all the windows and the glass roof are closed.

The vehicle cannot be locked if the driver door is still open.

### Convenience opening and closing

- See Windows – Functions ⇒ *Windows* .
- See Glass roof – Functions ⇒ *Glass roof* .

 Depending on the mirror function set in the infotainment system, the exterior mirrors fold out when the vehicle is unlocked using the  button and surround lighting is switched on ⇒ *Mirrors* .

 If the sensor surface is touched twice, the entire vehicle will be unlocked, also when a single door has already been unlocked.

### Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside

---







**Fig. 69** In the driver door: central locking button.



**Fig. 70** In the driver door: release for the boot lid.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*



-  : unlock the vehicle.
-  : lock the vehicle.
-  : unlock the boot lid ⇒ *Fig. 70* .

If the  button in the driver door is pressed, only the boot lid opens. All doors remain locked.

The central locking button works only when the driver door is closed.


If the vehicle has been locked with the vehicle key, the central locking buttons do not work.

Please note the following if the central locking button was used to lock the vehicle from inside:

- The indicator lamp  in the button lights up yellow  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 69 when all doors are closed and locked.
- The anti-theft alarm will **not** be activated.
- It is not possible to open the doors and the boot lid from the *outside*.
- The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door release handle. The indicator lamp  in the button goes out. The unopened doors and boot lid remain locked and cannot be opened from the outside.

In vehicles with **SAFELOCK**: the **SAFELOCK** mechanism is **not** activated  $\Rightarrow$  **SAFELOCK**.

In some cases, the vehicle automatically unlocks all doors and the boot lid  $\Rightarrow$  *Operation and display in the infotainment system* when:

- The  button is pressed  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 69.
- The vehicle comes to a standstill and the vehicle key is removed.
- A door is opened, depending on the functions set in the central locking system in the **Central locking** submenu  $\Rightarrow$  *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

## Unlocking or locking vehicle with Keyless Access

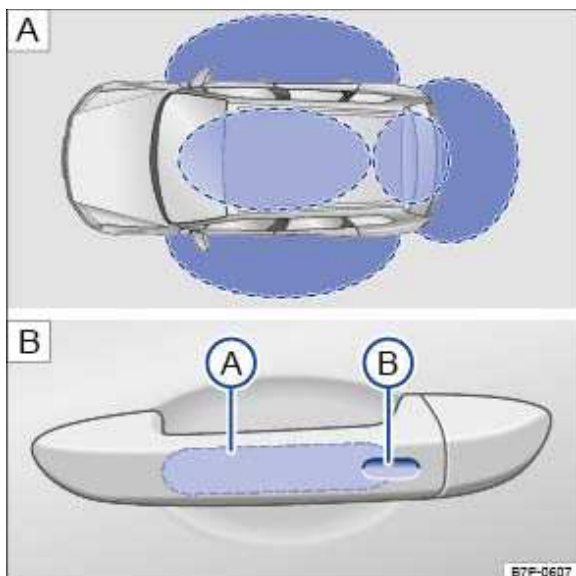





Fig. 71 Keyless Access locking and starting system: operating range. Sensor surfaces of the central locking system.


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings**  $\Rightarrow$   *Introduction*

Keyless Access is a locking and starting system that allows the vehicle to be locked or unlocked without actively using the key. For this purpose, a valid vehicle key must be within the vehicle's range  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 71 . The vehicle of boot lid is unlocked or locked by touching the sensor surfaces on the front door handles or pressing the button in the boot lid  $\Rightarrow$  *Boot lid*  $\Rightarrow$  .

### General notes

If a valid vehicle key is in the operating range  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 71 , the Keyless Access locking and starting system authorises the key to obtain access to the vehicle. The following functions can then be performed without active use of the vehicle key:




- Unlock the vehicle by means of the sensor surface on the driver or front passenger door or the button in the boot lid.
- *Press & Drive*: press the starter button to start the engine. A valid vehicle key must be located in the vehicle interior ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*.
- Lock the vehicle by means of the sensor surface on the driver or front passenger door.
- *Easy Open*: opens the boot lid through a foot movement underneath the rear bumper ⇒ Fig. 71 .
- Easy Close: automatically closes the boot lid.

All the turn signals flash *twice* to confirm that the vehicle is unlocked, and *once* to confirm that it is locked.

If the vehicle is locked and then the doors and boot lid are closed, and the most recently used vehicle key is located inside the vehicle, it will **not immediately** lock properly. All turn signals on the vehicle flash *four times*.

## Unlocking and opening the doors

- Touch the sensor surface ⇒ Fig. 71  on the inside of the driver or front passenger door handle.
- Open the door.


## Closing and locking the doors

- Switch off the ignition.
- Close the driver or front passenger door.
- Touch the sensor surface on the outside of the driver or front passenger door handle *once*.

## On vehicles with SAFELock: closing and locking doors


- Switch off the ignition.
- Close the driver and front passenger door.
- *Locking with SAFELock*: touch the sensor surface on the outside of the driver or front passenger door handle *once*.
- *Locking without SAFELock*: touch the sensor surface on the outside of the driver or front passenger door handle *twice*.

## Locking and unlocking the boot lid

If the vehicle is locked and a valid vehicle key is located within the operating range ⇒ Fig. 71  of the boot lid, the boot lid automatically unlocks when you open it with the handle button.

The boot lid is locked automatically after it is closed. If the vehicle is completely unlocked, the boot lid will **not** lock automatically when closed.

## Response when locking the vehicle with a second vehicle key


If the vehicle is locked from the outside with a second valid vehicle key, any key located inside the vehicle will be blocked and unable to start the engine ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine*. To allow the key to start the engine again, press the  button on the vehicle key located in the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 68.

## Automatic switch-off of the sensor surfaces

If the vehicle has not been locked or unlocked for a long period of time, the sensor surfaces on the door handles will switch off automatically.

If a sensor surface on the door handle is operated an usually high number of times, this sensor surface will be deactivated for a while.

The sensor surfaces can be reactivated with the following steps:

- Some time has passed.
- **OR:** the vehicle is unlocked using the  button on the vehicle key.
- **OR:** the boot lid is opened.
- **OR:** unlock the vehicle with the vehicle key ⇒ *Unlocking or locking the driver door manually* .


## Convenience functions


To use **convenience closing** for all the electric windows and the glass roof, hold your finger on the sensor surface ⇒ *Fig. 71* in the driver or front passenger door handle for a few seconds until the windows and the glass roof have closed.

**Opening the door** using the sensor surface on the door handle is carried out according to the active settings in the **Settings for opening and closing** menu and in the **Window operation** submenu ⇒ *Instrument cluster operation* .


### NOTICE


Please note that the sensor surfaces in the door handles could be activated by a powerful jet of water or steam if a valid vehicle key is in the operating range at the same time. If at least one window is open and sensor surface in a door handle is continuously activated, all windows will close. It is possible that all windows will open if the jet of water or steam is moved away from a door handle sensor surface briefly and then moved back onto it ⇒ *Unlocking or locking vehicle with Keyless Access* .


 It may not be possible to lock or unlock the vehicle using Keyless Access if the vehicle battery or the button cell in the vehicle key is weak or discharged. The vehicle can be locked or unlocked manually ⇒ *Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually* ..


 The unlock function is deactivated for a few seconds so that you can check that the vehicle has been locked properly.


 If the message **Keyless fault** appears on the instrument cluster display, there may be a malfunction in the Keyless Access system. Go to a qualified workshop.

 Depending on the mirror function set in the infotainment system, the exterior mirrors fold out when the vehicle is unlocked using the sensor on the door handle of the driver or passenger door and surround light is switched on ⇒ *Mirrors* .

 If there is no valid vehicle key in the vehicle or if it is not detected, a corresponding display will be shown on the instrument cluster display. This may occur if the vehicle key is obstructed by another radio signal or is covered by another item, e.g. a mobile telephone accessory or an aluminium suitcase ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine* .

 The function of the sensor surfaces may be limited if they become very dirty.


 If the vehicle has an automatic gearbox it can only be locked if the selector lever is in position **P**.





 If the sensor surface is touched twice, the entire vehicle will be unlocked, also when a single door has already been unlocked.

## SAFELOCK

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the vehicle may have a SAFELOCK mechanism and an anti-theft alarm ⇒ *Anti-theft alarm* .



The SAFELOCK deactivates the door release levers if the vehicle has been locked. This makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle. The doors can no longer be opened from the inside ⇒  .


- Press the  button on the vehicle key *once* ⇒ *Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside* .
- Press the  button on the vehicle key *twice* in quick succession ⇒ *Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the outside* .
-  m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: touch the sensor surface on the outside of the door handle *twice* in quick succession ⇒ *Unlocking or locking vehicle with Keyless Access* .
- Press the central locking button  in the driver door *once* ⇒ *Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside* .

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, there may be an indication of the activated SAFELOCK in the display of the instrument cluster (**Check SAFELOCK!** or **SAFELOCK**).

## Deactivating SAFELOCK

The SAFELOCK can be deactivated in one of the following ways:

- Press the  button on the vehicle key *twice* ⇒ *Central locking and closing system* .
-  m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: touch the sensor surface on the outside of the door handle *twice* ⇒ *Unlocking or locking vehicle with Keyless Access* .
- Switch on the ignition.

Before locking the vehicle, press the button for switching off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm  *once* ⇒ *Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm* .

### The following applies when SAFELOCK is deactivated:

- The vehicle can be unlocked and opened from the inside using the door release lever.
- The anti-theft alarm ⇒ *Anti-theft alarm* is active.

The interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm ⇒ *Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm* are deactivated.

The interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm ⇒ *Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm* can be reactivated by pressing the  button again.

## WARNING

Always take care when using the SAFELOCK as you could cause serious injuries.

- Never leave anybody in the vehicle if the vehicle has been locked using the vehicle key. The doors can no longer be opened from the inside once the SAFELOCK is activated.
- Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency service personnel to gain access to the vehicle and provide assistance when needed. In an emergency, people locked inside the vehicle would not be able to leave the vehicle by unlocking the doors.

## Anti-theft alarm

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*


The anti-theft alarm is activated automatically when the vehicle is locked using the vehicle key.


## When does the system trigger an alarm?



The anti-theft alarm can sound an acoustic alarm for up to five minutes and trigger a visible warning if any of the following unauthorised actions are performed while the vehicle is locked:


- A door unlocked mechanically with the vehicle key is opened and the ignition is not switched on within approximately 15 seconds.
- A door is opened.
- The bonnet is opened.
- The boot lid is opened.
- The ignition is switched on using an invalid key.
- The vehicle battery is disconnected.
- There is movement inside the vehicle (in vehicles with interior monitoring) ⇒ *Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm*.
- The vehicle is towed (vehicles with anti-tow alarm) ⇒ *Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm*.
- The vehicle is lifted (vehicles with anti-tow alarm) ⇒ *Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm*.
- The vehicle is transported on a car ferry or by rail (vehicles with anti-tow alarm or interior monitoring) ⇒ *Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm*.
- A trailer that is connected to the anti-theft alarm system is removed ⇒ *Towing a trailer*.


## Switching off the alarm

- Unlock the vehicle using the unlocking button  on the vehicle key.
- **OR** switch on the ignition using a valid vehicle key.
- In vehicles with Keyless Access, the alarm can be switched off by gripping the door handle ⇒ *Unlocking or locking vehicle with Keyless Access*.

 The alarm will be triggered again if a person gains access to the same or a different secured zone after the alarm has been switched off.

 The anti-theft alarm will **not** be activated if the vehicle is locked from the inside using the central locking button .

 If you unlock the driver door mechanically using the vehicle key, only the driver door is unlocked, and not the whole vehicle. The SAFELock mechanism on all doors is not deactivated and the central locking button is not activated until you switch on the ignition (however the doors will not be unlocked).

 The anti-theft alarm will not function correctly if the vehicle battery is weak or discharged.

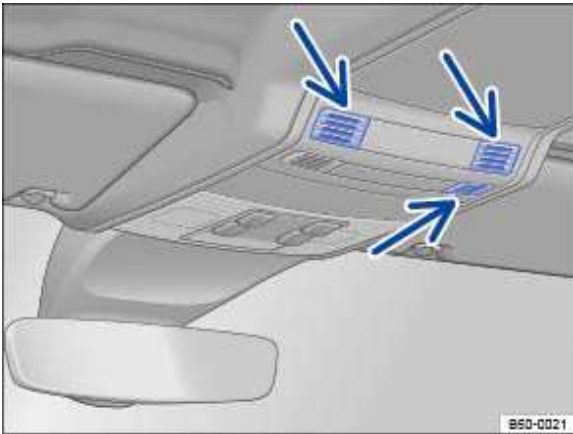
## Interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm

---





**Fig. 72** Next to the driver seat: button for switching off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm.



**Fig. 73** In the roof console: sensors for the interior monitoring system (arrows).



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

If movements are detected in the vehicle interior of a locked vehicle, the interior monitoring system triggers an alarm ⇒ *Fig. 73*.

The anti-tow alarm will be triggered if the vehicle is lifted.



### Switching on the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm

Close the storage compartments in the roof console ⇒ *Stowage area* if necessary, otherwise correct functioning of the interior monitoring system cannot be fully guaranteed.

Lock the vehicle. When the anti-theft alarm is switched on, the interior monitoring system and the anti-tow alarm ⇒ *Fig. 72* are also active.



OR: press the  button ⇒ *Fig. 72*. A yellow indicator lamp  in the button lights up.

### Switching off the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm

- Switch off the ignition and open the driver door.
- Press the  button ⇒ *Fig. 72*. A yellow indicator lamp  in the button lights up.
- Close all doors and the boot lid.
- Lock the vehicle using the vehicle key. The interior monitoring system and anti-towing alarm are deactivated until the next time the vehicle is locked.

It is recommended to deactivate the interior monitoring and anti-tow alarm in the following situations:

- If any people or animals are to remain inside the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is to be loaded onto another vehicle.
- If the vehicle is being transported.
- If the vehicle is going to be towed with one axle off the ground.
- If the vehicle is to be parked in a two-storey garage.
- If the vehicle is to be parked in a car wash.

When the interior monitoring system and the anti-tow alarm have been deactivated by pressing the  button ⇒ *Fig. 72*, these functions can be reactivated by pressing the  button again. The yellow indicator lamp goes out.

## Risk of false alarm

Interior monitoring can only work properly if the vehicle is completely closed. Comply with legal regulations. A false alarm can be triggered in the following situations:

- If one or more windows are fully or partly open.
- If the glass roof is fully or partly open.
- If lightweight items such as loose pieces of paper or items hung from the interior mirror are left in the vehicle.
- If a mobile telephone that is left in the vehicle vibrates.
- If the vehicle is being transported.
- If the vehicle is being parked in a two-storey garage.
- If the vehicle is in a car wash.



If doors or the boot lid are still open when the anti-theft alarm is activated, only the anti-theft alarm is activated. Interior monitoring and the anti-tow alarm are not activated until all doors and the boot lid are closed.



The SAFELOCK is also deactivated when the interior monitoring system and anti-tow alarm are switched off ⇒ **SAFELOCK**.

## Locking the vehicle after the airbag has been triggered


---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

In the event of an accident in which an airbag is triggered, the locked doors will be unlocked automatically to allow rescue personnel access to the vehicle interior.

The entire vehicle is unlocked if the airbags are activated during an accident. Depending on the extent of the damage, the vehicle can be locked as follows after an accident:

- Switch off the ignition.
- Open and close any door once.
- Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock, and lock the vehicle with the vehicle key ⇒ [Central locking and closing system](#).
- **OR:** press the central locking button  in the driver door ⇒ [Central locking and closing system](#).

## Doors

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Display](#)

⇒ [Childproof lock](#)

⇒ [Unlocking or locking the driver door manually](#)

⇒ [Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually](#)

If the vehicle key or central locking fails, the doors, boot lid and glass roof can be locked and, with some exceptions, unlocked manually.

## WARNING

Any door that is not properly closed could open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This could lead to severe injuries.

- Stop as soon as possible and close the door.
- Ensure that the door is closed properly and that the lock has engaged. The closed door must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- Doors should only be opened or closed when you are sure there is no-one in their path.

## WARNING

Any door being held open by the door arrester could close unexpectedly in strong winds or if the vehicle is on a slope. This could lead to injuries.

- Always keep a good grip on the handle when opening and closing doors.

## WARNING

The opening/closing paths of the doors and boot lid are potential danger areas where injury can occur.

- The doors and boot lid should therefore be opened or closed only when you are sure that nobody is in their path.

## WARNING

Careless manual opening and closing of the doors can cause serious injury.

- If the vehicle is locked from the outside, the doors and electric windows cannot be opened from the inside.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety.
- Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.

## NOTICE

When carrying out manual opening or closing, remove parts carefully and fit them again correctly in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.

## Display

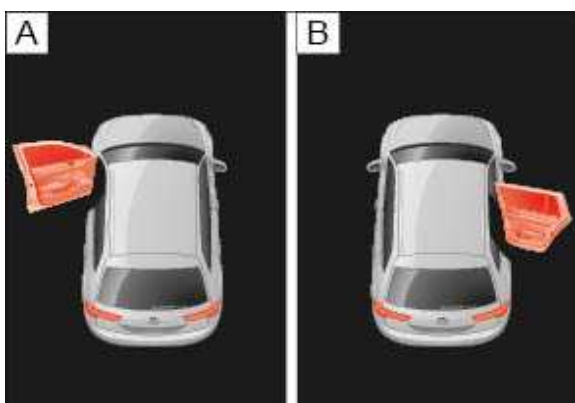



Fig. 74 On the instrument cluster display: front left door rear right door open or not closed properly.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction


A symbol in the instrument cluster display ⇒ Fig. 74 indicates if one or more doors are not closed properly.  **Do not drive on!** Open the relevant door and then close it again.

This symbol is also visible when the ignition is switched off and will go out a few seconds after the vehicle has been locked when all doors are closed.

## WARNING

If the doors are not closed properly, they can open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This can lead to severe injuries.

- Stop as soon as possible and close all doors.
- After closing the doors, always check that they are all properly secured in the lock carrier.

 The symbol can differ depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

## Childproof lock

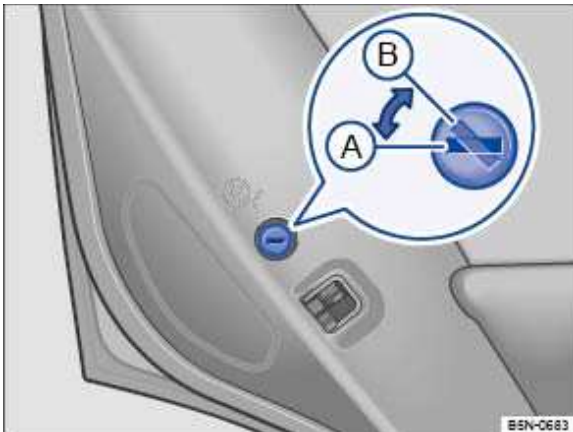


Fig. 75 In the left rear door: childproof lock  switched off,  switched on.

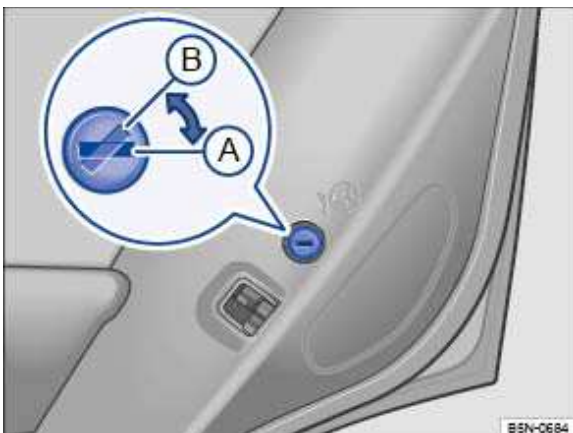


Fig. 76 In the right rear door: childproof lock  switched off,  switched on.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

Key for ⇒ Fig. 75 or ⇒ Fig. 76:



**A** Child lock is switched off.

**B** Child lock is switched on.

The childproof lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside, e.g. so that children cannot open the doors accidentally while the vehicle is in motion.

When the childproof lock is activated, the door can only be opened from the outside.

### Switching the child lock on and off

- Unlock the vehicle and open the appropriate rear door.
- Use the key bit to turn the slot to the corresponding position.

### **⚠ WARNING**

**When the childproof lock is activated, the door cannot be opened from the inside.**

- **Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the doors are locked. This may mean that these people lock themselves in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. People locked in the vehicle may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures.**
- **Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.**

### Unlocking or locking the driver door manually

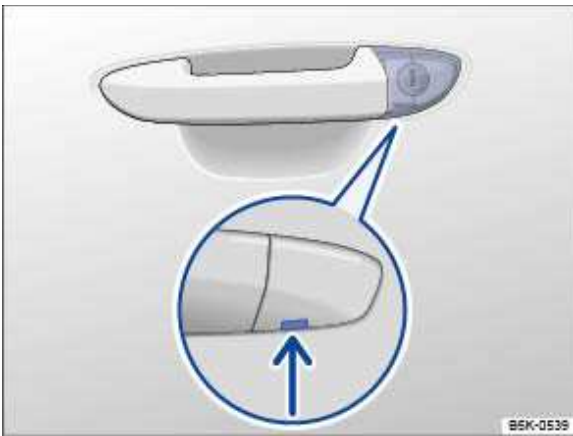


Fig. 77 Driver door handle: concealed lock cylinder

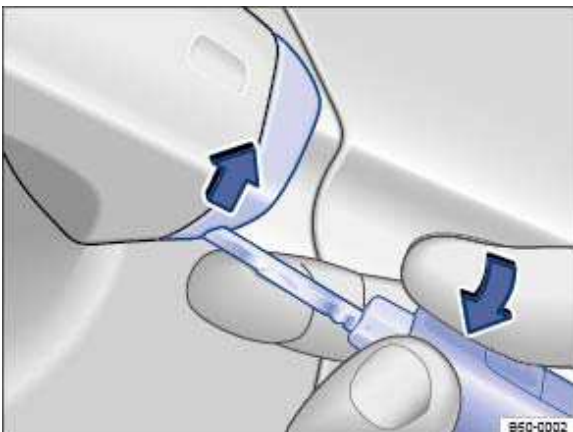


Fig. 78 Driver door handle: lever off cap.




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

If locked manually, all doors are locked. If unlocked manually, only the driver door is unlocked. Observe information on the anti-theft alarm ⇒ [Central locking and closing system](#).

- Pull on the door release lever until the cap is removed.
- Position the key bit on the notch in the driver door handle from below ⇒ [Fig. 78](#) (arrow).
- Hold your index finger under the key bit ⇒ [Fig. 78](#).
- Lift the cap off with the vehicle key in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 78](#).
- Insert the key bit into the lock cylinder and lock or unlock the vehicle.
- Pull the door release lever and put the cap back in position.

### Things to note when unlocking:

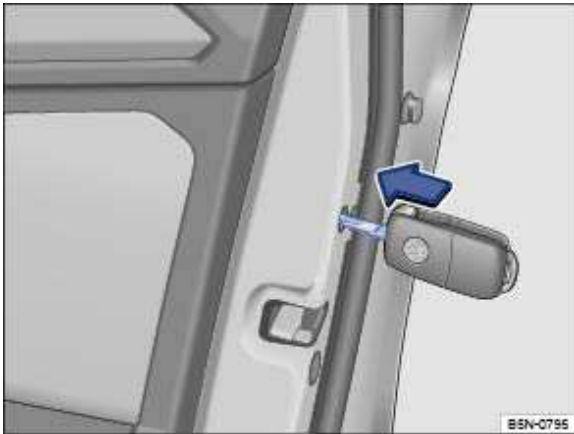
- The anti-theft alarm stays active when the vehicle is unlocked. However, the alarm will not be triggered ⇒ [Central locking and closing system](#).
- Open the driver door. This will trigger the alarm.
- Switch on the ignition.
-  m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: fold in the key bit and carry out emergency start function ⇒ [Starting and stopping the engine](#).
- When the ignition is switched on, the electronic immobiliser detects a valid vehicle key and deactivates the anti-theft alarm system.



The anti-theft alarm is not activated when the vehicle is locked manually using the key bit ⇒ [Central locking and closing system](#).

## Locking the front passenger door and rear doors manually

---




**Fig. 79** In the end face of the right-hand door: vehicle manual locking with the vehicle key.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The front passenger door and the rear doors can be locked manually. This does **not** activate the anti-theft alarm.

- Open the door.
- Remove the rubber seal from the end face of the door. The seal is marked by a lock symbol .
- Insert the key bit into the slot in the recess and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.
- Put the rubber seal back in place and close the door fully.
- Ensure that the door is locked.
- The vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

The manually locked door is unlocked again when the vehicle is unlocked or the door is opened from the inside.



The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by pulling the door release handle.

## Boot lid

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Display*
- ⇒ *Manually unlocking and opening the boot lid*
- ⇒ *Manually closing and locking the boot lid*
- ⇒ *Opening and closing the boot lid electrically*
- ⇒ *Unlocking the boot lid manually*

If the vehicle key or central locking fails, the doors, boot lid and glass roof can be locked and, with some exceptions, unlocked manually.

### Automatic locking (anti-theft protection)

If the vehicle is unlocked but not opened, it will be locked again automatically after around 45 seconds.

#### **WARNING**

The opening/closing paths of the doors and boot lid are potential danger areas where injury can occur.

- The doors and boot lid should therefore be opened or closed only when you are sure that nobody is in their path.

#### **WARNING**

Careless manual opening and closing can cause serious injury.

- If the vehicle is locked from the outside, the doors and electric windows cannot be opened from the inside.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety.
- Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially to small children.

#### **NOTICE**

Before opening the boot lid, please check that there is enough space to open and close it, for example when in a garage.

#### **NOTICE**

Never use the opening mechanism to fix or hold a load. This could lead to damage that makes it impossible to close the boot lid.

## ! NOTICE

Never use the rear wiper or rear spoiler to fix or hold a load. This could lead to damage where the rear window wiper or rear spoiler is torn off.

## ! NOTICE


When carrying out manual opening or closing, remove parts carefully and fit them again correctly in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.

## Display



Fig. 80 In the instrument cluster display: the boot lid is open or not closed properly.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

An instrument cluster display or ⇒ Fig. 80 indicates if the boot lid is open or not closed properly.  **Do not drive on!** Open the boot lid and close it again.

These symbols are also visible when the ignition is switched off. The display will go off after a short time after the vehicle has been locked with closed doors.

## ! WARNING

If the boot lid is not closed properly, it can open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion. This can lead to severe injuries. Stop as soon as possible and close the boot lid. After closing the boot lid, always check that it is properly secured.

## Manually unlocking and opening the boot lid



Fig. 81 In the vehicle key: button for unlocking the boot lid.

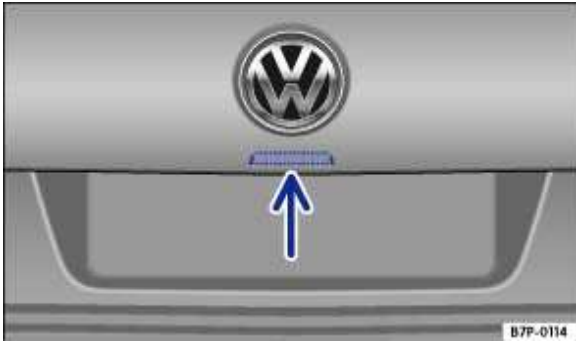


Fig. 82 In the boot lid: button for opening the boot lid.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\Rightarrow$  [Introduction](#)

Before opening the boot lid, always remove any items of luggage that are on the luggage carrier attached to the boot lid  $\Rightarrow$  .

### Unlocking and opening boot lid

- Unlock the vehicle or boot lid  $\Rightarrow$  [Central locking and closing system](#).
- m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: touch the sensor surfaces twice in quick succession.
- Lift the boot lid slightly with the button  $\Rightarrow$  [Fig. 82](#) (arrow) and guide it upward.

If the boot lid is not opened within the next few minutes after unlocking, it automatically locks again.

### WARNING

Serious injuries could occur if the boot lid is unlocked or opened incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- The boot lid may not always be detected as being unlocked if there is a carrier and items attached to it. The boot lid may open suddenly while the vehicle is in motion if it is unlocked.

At outside temperatures of less than 0°C (+32°F), the gas struts cannot always lift the partially opened boot lid automatically. If this happens, guide the boot lid further up by hand.

### Manually closing and locking the boot lid

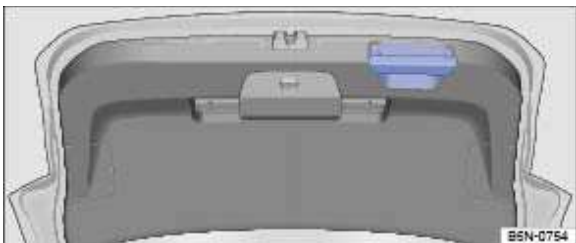


Fig. 83 Open boot lid: handle for closing the boot lid.


First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\Rightarrow$  [Introduction](#)

### Closing the boot lid

- Grip the handle in the interior trim on the boot lid  $\Rightarrow$  [Fig. 83](#).
- Pull the boot lid down with some force until it engages in the lock  $\Rightarrow$  .
- Check that the boot lid has engaged securely.

## Locking the boot lid

The boot lid can only be locked when it has properly engaged.

- The boot lid is also locked by the central locking system.
- If the boot lid of a locked vehicle is unlocked using the  button in the vehicle key, it will lock again automatically as soon as it is closed. The anti-theft alarm is activated immediately after it is closed ⇒ *Anti-theft alarm*.
- If the boot lid is closed but not locked, it will lock automatically once the vehicle reaches speeds between approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) and 9 km/h (6 mph).

### **WARNING**

Serious injuries could occur if the boot lid is closed incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- Never leave the vehicle unattended or leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the boot lid and trap themselves inside. Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This could cause serious injuries or illness, or even have fatal consequences.
- When closing the boot lid, please ensure that there are no hands in the direct path of the boot lid as it moves.



Before closing the boot lid, ensure that the vehicle key is not in the luggage compartment.

## Opening and closing the boot lid electrically



Fig. 84 Sensor-controlled luggage compartment opener (Easy Open).

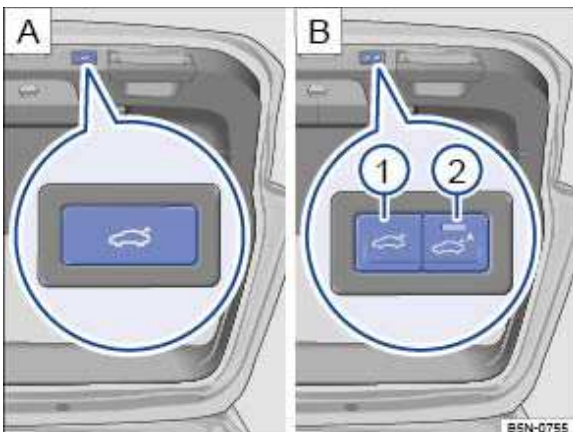


Fig. 85 In the open boot lid: button for electric closing of the boot lid.








First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 85](#) :

- ① Closing the boot lid electrically.
- ② The boot lid closes automatically.





## Opening the boot lid electrically

The boot lid opens automatically ⇒ .

- Unlock the vehicle ⇒ [Central locking and closing system](#) .
- Operate the handle button ⇒ [Fig. 82](#) (arrow).
- **OR:** pull the  ⇒ [Fig. 70](#) button in the driver door upwards. The button also works when the ignition is switched off.
- **OR:** press the  button on the vehicle key and hold it briefly. If the vehicle is locked, only the boot lid will be unlocked; the doors remain locked.
-  m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system and sensor-controlled opening: the boot lid can be opened by moving a foot in the sensor area below the rear bumper (Easy Open) ⇒ [Fig. 84](#) .
-  m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: the boot lid opens automatically after operation of the handle button.

The boot lid can be opened only manually if a trailer is attached ⇒ [Manually unlocking and opening the boot lid](#) . The remote control function in the vehicle interior and the button on the vehicle key are then disabled.

## Closing the boot lid electrically




- Briefly press the  button in the open boot lid ⇒ [Fig. 85](#) **A** or **B** ① ⇒ .
- **OR:** pull the  button in the driver door upwards.
- **OR:** press and hold the  button on the vehicle key briefly.
- **OR:** close the boot lid by moving it manually until the boot lid closes by itself.
- **OR:** on vehicles with Keyless Access and Easy Close ⇒ [Central locking and closing system](#) , press the Easy Close button ⇒ [Fig. 85](#) **B** ② to automatically close the boot lid.

The boot lid returns to its end position and closes automatically ⇒ .

On vehicles with Keyless Access: if the boot lid is to be closed electrically when the vehicle has already been locked and the last-used vehicle key is still in the vehicle, the boot lid will move only briefly and all turn signals on the vehicle will flash *four times*. If the boot lid is closed by hand, the vehicle does not lock **immediately**. All turn signals on the vehicle flash *four times*.

## Interrupting the opening or closing procedure

The boot lid opening and closing procedure can be interrupted:

- Press one of the  buttons during the opening or closing procedure.
- Open or close the boot lid further by hand. You will need to use some force.
- Pressing the  button again moves the boot lid back into the starting position.
-  m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: the closing and locking procedure will be interrupted if the last-used vehicle key is in the vehicle interior. The boot lid moves briefly and the turn signals flash four times.

If the boot lid moves slowly or is blocked by an obstacle during the automatic opening or closing procedure:

- the opening or closing procedure is interrupted immediately. If it is in the process of closing, the boot lid will open again slightly.
- Check why the boot lid was unable to open or close.
- The boot lid can be opened or closed manually as necessary. You will need to use increased force for this.

### Things to note when towing a trailer

The electrically operated boot lid can **only** be opened and closed on the boot lid if the electrical connection for the factory-fitted towing bracket is connected to the trailer.


### Signal tones

Acoustic signals are given during the whole boot lid opening and closing procedure. Exception: if the boot lid is opened or closed via the buttons on or in the boot lid.

### Changing and storing the opening angle

If the area behind or above the vehicle is smaller than the path of the boot lid, the opening angle of the boot lid can be changed.


The boot lid must be at least half open in order to store a new opening angle.

- Stop the opening procedure at the desired open position.
- Press and hold the  button in the open boot lid ⇒ Fig. 85 **A** or ⇒ Fig. 85 **B** ① until the hazard warning lights flash.

The opening angle is stored.

### Resetting and storing the opening angle

The opening angle must be reset and stored again in order for the boot lid to open fully again.

- Unlock the boot lid and open it to the stored position.
- Push the boot lid up as far as it will go by hand. You will need to use some force.
- Press and hold the  button in the open boot lid ⇒ Fig. 85 **A** or ⇒ Fig. 85 **B** ① until the hazard warning lights flash.

The opening angle is reset to the factory setting and stored.

### Boot lid with sensor-controlled opening

Once a valid vehicle key is located in the operating range of the boot lid ⇒ Fig. 71 **A**, the boot lid can be unlocked and opened by moving your foot in the sensor area underneath the rear bumper ⇒ Fig. 71.

- Switch off the ignition.
- Stand in front of the middle of the rear bumper.
- Make quick movements with your foot and shin as close as possible to the bumper. The shin must be positioned in the upper area of the sensor, and the foot in the lower area ⇒ Fig. 71 **B** ①.
- Then quickly move your foot and shin away from the sensor areas ⇒ Fig. 71 **B** ②. The boot lid opens automatically.
- If the boot lid does not open, repeat the procedure after a few seconds.

The high-level brake light will light up once to show that the boot lid is being opened using Easy Open.

The boot lid will lock again automatically, provided that the vehicle was locked beforehand and as long as there is no valid vehicle key inside the vehicle.

Easy Open is not available or has limited availability in the following situations (examples):




- If the rear bumper is dirty.
- If the rear bumper is dampened with salty water.
- If the electrically folding ball head is swivelled out ⇒ *Towing a trailer*.
- If a towing bracket has been retrofitted to the vehicle ⇒ *Towing a trailer*.

During heavy rain, Easy Open may experience a delay in opening the boot lid or the function may be deactivated automatically in order to prevent accidental activation.




Easy Open can be permanently switched on or off by pressing the  button and the  and **Open and close** function buttons on the Infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

### Automatically closing the boot lid (Easy Close)

If a valid vehicle key is located within the operating range ⇒ *Fig. 71* of the open boot lid, the boot lid can be closed automatically by pressing the Easy Close button ⇒ *Fig. 71* ②. The boot lid closes automatically only when the valid vehicle key is moved out of the operating range ⇒ *Boot lid*.

- Switch off the ignition and close the driver door.
- If applicable, unhitch the trailer ⇒ *Towing a trailer*.
- Take a valid vehicle key and move to within the operating range ⇒ *Fig. 71*  of the boot lid that is open by at least half its opening angle.
- Press the Easy Close button.
- If the indicator lamp in the Easy Close button ⇒ *Fig. 71* ② is flashing, the closing function is active. The boot lid remains open.
- The boot lid automatically closes once the valid vehicle key is removed from within the operating range of the open boot lid. The indicator lamp of the Easy Close button flashes slowly as the boot lid closes, and an acoustic signal sounds.
- If there is more than one valid vehicle key within the operating range of the open boot lid when you activate Easy Close, the boot lid will close automatically only once the last valid vehicle key has been removed from the operating range of the open boot lid.

Easy Close is unavailable or the system cancels the function and the boot lid is not automatically closed in one of the following situations:

- There is no valid vehicle key within the operating range of the open boot lid.
- **OR:** Easy Close button is pressed several times.
- **OR:** there is more than one valid vehicle key in the luggage compartment upon activating Easy Close.
- **OR:** the valid vehicle key is within the operating range of the open boot lid for more than around 20 seconds after you have activated the Easy Close function. The indicator lamp in the Easy Close button flashes quickly to confirm that the function has been cancelled.
- **OR:** during automatic closing of the boot lid, the  button on the vehicle key or the  button on the driver door is operated.
- **OR:** the valid vehicle key is moved back to within the operating range of the boot lid during closing. The indicator lamp in the  button flashes quickly to confirm that the function has been cancelled. The boot lid is opened again.
- **OR:** the boot lid is prevented from closing automatically by stiff components or objects. The boot lid is opened again.

If a valid vehicle key is in the luggage compartment, and another valid key is within the operating range of the open boot lid when you activate Easy Close, the boot lid automatically closes once the vehicle key is removed from within the operating range of the open boot lid. The vehicle key inside the luggage compartment is locked inside the vehicle.

## WARNING

If there is a large amount of snow or a heavy load on the boot lid, the boot lid may not open or, if it is already open, the boot lid may lower by itself and cause serious injuries due to the additional weight.

- Never open the boot lid if it is covered by a large amount of snow or a load is attached to it, e.g. a rack or luggage carrier.
- Remove the snow or luggage before opening the boot lid.


## WARNING


Serious injuries could occur if the boot lid is closed incorrectly or without due care and attention.

- Never leave the vehicle unattended or leave children playing unattended in or around the vehicle when the boot lid is open. Children could climb into the luggage compartment and shut the boot lid and trap themselves inside. Temperatures inside a locked vehicle may reach extremes of heat or cold, according to season. This could cause serious injuries or illness, or even have fatal consequences.

## NOTICE

Before opening or closing the boot lid, please check that there is enough space to open or close the boot lid, e.g. when towing a trailer → [Towing a trailer](#) or when in a garage.

 The system switches off automatically in order to prevent overheating if it is used too frequently in a short space of time. The function can be used again as soon as the system has cooled down. Until then, the boot lid can be opened or closed by hand using more force than normal.

 If the vehicle battery or fuse is disconnected or faulty when the boot lid is open, the boot lid must be fully closed once by hand.

## Unlocking the boot lid manually



Fig. 86 In the luggage compartment: manual release for the boot lid.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

The boot lid can be opened manually if the vehicle battery is discharged or if there is a fault in the locking system.

- If necessary, fold the backrest of the rear bench seat forwards → [Seat functions](#).
- Remove items of luggage so you can reach the boot lid from the inside.
- Fold out the key bit.

- Insert the key bit into the opening in the boot lid ⇒ [Fig. 86](#) and push the release lever in the direction of the arrow to unlock the boot lid.

## Windows

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Opening and closing windows*

⇒ *Electric window roll-back function*

### WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the electric windows can cause serious injuries.

- The electric windows should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their operating area.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked. The windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.
- When transporting children on the rear bench seat, the rear electric windows should always be deactivated using the safety button so that they cannot be opened or closed.

### NOTICE

During sudden rain showers, water can enter the vehicle interior via open windows and cause damage to the vehicle.

### Opening and closing windows

---

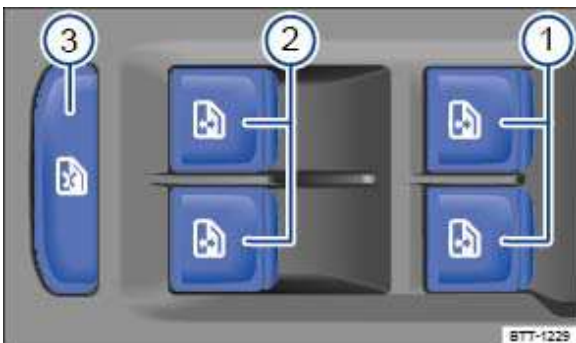





Fig. 87 In the driver door: buttons for the electric windows.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 87](#) :

- 1 Buttons for the front windows.
- 2 Buttons for the rear windows.
- 3 Safety button for the rear electric windows.

- *Opening*: press the  button.

- *Closing*: press the  button.
- *Stopping the one-touch function*: press or pull the button for the appropriate window again.
- Press the safety switch  ⇒ [Fig. 87](#) ③ to disable the electric window buttons in the rear doors. The yellow indicator lamp in the button lights up.

The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened. After a few seconds, convenience opening/closing starts.

## One-touch opening and closing

One-touch opening and closing makes it possible to fully open and close the windows. The individual buttons do not have to be held down to do this.

**One-touch closing**: pull the button for the appropriate window up briefly into the second position.

**One-touch opening**: press the button for the appropriate window down briefly into the second position.

**Stopping the one-touch function**: press or pull the button for the appropriate window again.

## Restoring one-touch opening and closing

One-touch opening and closing is deactivated if the vehicle battery has been disconnected or discharged while the windows were not fully closed. The function will have to be reset.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Close all windows and doors.
- Pull up the button for the window and hold it in this position for a few seconds.
- Let go of the button then pull it up again and hold it in this position. One-touch opening and closing is now ready for operation.

The one-touch function can be restored for individual windows or for several windows at the same time.

## Convenience opening and closing

The windows can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key when the ignition is switched off:

- Press and hold the locking or unlocking button on the vehicle key.
- In vehicles with keyless access: place your fingers on the locking sensor on the door handle for a few seconds until the windows have closed ⇒ [Central locking and closing system](#) . The key must be in the operating range for this.
- To interrupt the function, release the unlocking or locking button **OR** take your finger off the sensor surface.

Convenience closing closes all windows in the doors and the glass roof.

A valid vehicle key must be located in the operating range. Once all windows and the glass roof have been closed, all turn signals will flash *once* as confirmation.

The **Settings – Convenience** menu on the infotainment system display can be used to make various settings for operating the windows ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#) .



## WARNING

Careless or unsupervised use of the electric windows can cause serious injuries.

- The electric windows should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in their operating area.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle when the vehicle is locked. The windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The windows can still be operated using the buttons several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.
- When transporting children on the rear bench seat, the rear electric windows should always be deactivated using the safety button so that they cannot be opened or closed.



One-touch opening and closing and the roll-back function will not work if there is a malfunction in the electric windows. Go to a qualified workshop.



Convenience opening and closing only works when one-touch opening and closing of the electric windows is active.


## Electric window roll-back function


---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The roll-back function for the electric windows can reduce the risk of crush injuries when the windows are closing.

If the one-touch closing function for a window does not work because the mechanism is stiff or it is being obstructed, the window will automatically open again ⇒ .

- Check to see why the window has not closed.
- Try to close the window again.
- If the window is again prevented from closing within a few seconds of the first attempt because it is stiff or obstructed, the one-touch closing function is switched off for several seconds.
- If the window still cannot be closed, it will stop at the corresponding position. To close the window **without the roll-back function**, press the button again within a few seconds ⇒ .

### Closing the window without the roll-back function

- Try to close the window again within a few seconds by holding the button. **The roll-back function will be deactivated for a small section of the path of the closing window.**
- If the closing procedure takes longer than several seconds, the roll-back function will be reactivated. If it is still stiff or obstructed, the window will stop and will open itself automatically again.
- Please go to a qualified workshop if the window still cannot be closed.

## **WARNING**

Closing the electric windows without the roll-back function can lead to severe injuries.

- Always close the window carefully.
- Ensure that nobody obstructs the path of the window, especially if a window is being closed when the roll-back function is not active.
- The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from being pressed against the window frame and sustaining injury.



The roll-back function is also activated if the windows are closed using the vehicle key for convenience closing.

## Glass roof

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Opening and closing the glass roof*
- ⇒ *Convenience opening and closing of the glass roof*
- ⇒ *Glass roof roll-back function*

The term glass roof is used as standard below for the electric tilting and sliding panoramic sunroof.

The glass roof is a roof opening system featuring two glass elements. The rear glass element is fixed and cannot be opened.

## **WARNING**

Careless or unsupervised use of the glass roof can cause serious injuries.

- Open and close the glass roof and sun blind only when you are sure that nobody is in the operating area.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the car, particularly if they have access to the vehicle key. Unsupervised use of the vehicle key can lock the vehicle, start the engine, switch on the ignition and operate the glass roof.
- The glass roof can still be operated for a short time after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door or front passenger door are not opened.

## **NOTICE**

- To avoid damage during cold weather, clear any ice and snow off the vehicle roof before opening or tilting the glass roof.
- Always close the glass roof when you leave the vehicle or if it starts to rain. Any rain entering the vehicle when the glass roof is open or tilted could cause significant damage to the electrical system. This can result in further damage to the vehicle.



Remove leaves and other loose items from the glass roof guide rails at regular intervals using a vacuum cleaner, or by hand.



The roll-back function will not work properly if there is a malfunction with the glass roof. Go to a qualified workshop.

## Opening and closing the glass roof

---

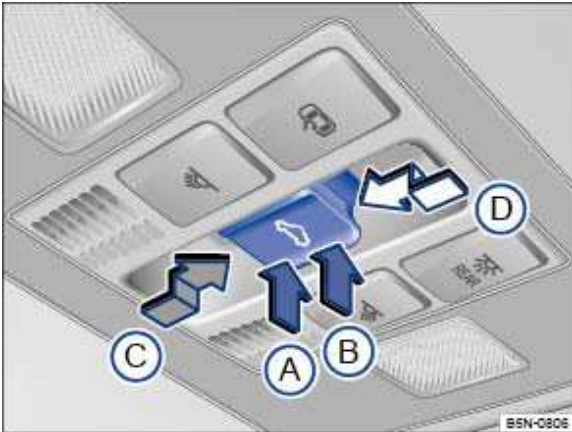


Fig. 88 In the roof: button for the glass roof.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The glass roof only works when the ignition is switched on. The glass roof can still be operated for a short time after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver door or front passenger door are not opened.

The sun blind automatically opens parallel to the glass roof if it was previously completely closed or was positioned in front of the glass roof. The sun blind remains in the previous position and does not close automatically with the roof. The sun blind can be closed completely only once the glass roof has been closed.

The  button ⇒ Fig. 88 has 2 positions. In the first position the roof can be completely or partially tilted, opened or closed.

When set to position 2, the roof automatically returns to the final position when the button is pressed briefly. Press the button again to stop the one-touch function.

- *Opening the glass roof:* push the rear area of the button ⇒ Fig. 88 ① to position 1. One-touch function: Push the rear area of the button ① to position 2.
- *Closing the opened glass roof:* Push the front area of the button ② to position 1. One-touch function: Push the rear area of the button ② to position 2.
- *Stopping one-stop function of the opening or closing procedure:* Push button ② or ① again.
- *Opening the glass roof:* Push the button ③ rearwards to position 1. One-touch function up to the convenience position: Push the button ③ briefly rearwards to position 2.
- *Closing the glass roof:* Push the button ③ rearwards to position 1. Push the button ③ briefly forwards to position 2 for the one-touch function.
- *Stopping one-stop function of the opening or closing procedure:* Push button ③ or ① again.

## Convenience opening and closing of the glass roof

---

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

### Convenience opening and closing

The glass roof can be opened and closed from outside the vehicle using the vehicle key:

- Press and hold the locking or unlocking button on the vehicle key. The glass roof is tilted or closed.
- In vehicles with keyless access: place your fingers on the locking sensor on the door handle for a few seconds until the glass roof has closed ⇒ *Central locking and closing system*.
- Release the locking or unlocking button to interrupt this function.


Convenience closing closes all windows in the doors and the glass roof. Once all windows and the glass roof have been closed, all turn signals will flash *once* as confirmation.

## Glass roof roll-back function

---






First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The roll-back function can reduce the risk of injury when closing the glass roof ⇒ . The glass roof will open again immediately if it is unable to close because it is stiff or obstructed.

- Check to see why the glass roof has not closed.
- Try to close the glass roof again.
- The glass roof will open again immediately if it is unable to close because it is stiff or obstructed. After opening, the glass roof can be closed again within a short period of time without the roll-back function.
- If the glass roof still cannot be closed, close it without the roll-back function.

### Closing the glass roof without the roll-back function

- Turn switch ⇒ [Fig. 88](#) to position .
- *Glass roof:* within a few seconds of initiating the roll-back function, press and hold the  button ⇒ [Fig. 88](#) to the second position in the direction of arrow  until the glass roof has fully closed.
- **The glass roof will now close without the roll-back function.**
- Please go to a qualified workshop if the glass roof still cannot be closed.



## WARNING

Closing the glass roof or sun blind without the roll-back function could lead to severe injuries.

- **Always close the glass roof or sun blind with care.**
- **Ensure that nobody obstructs the path of the glass roof or sun blind, especially if the roll-back function is not active when the roof is being closed.**
- **The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from being pressed against the roof frame and sustaining injury.**



The roll-back function is also activated if you use the convenience closing function on the vehicle key to close the windows and the glass roof ⇒ [Convenience opening and closing of the glass roof](#).

## Seats and head restraints

### Front seats



#### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ [Mechanically adjusting the front seat](#)
- ⇒ [Electrically adjusting the front seat](#)
- ⇒ [Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards](#)

The adjustment possibilities for the front seats are described below. Always ensure that the correct sitting position is adjusted ⇒ [Sitting position](#).



## WARNING

Always adjust the front seats to their correct position before any journey and ensure that any passenger has fastened their seat belt.

- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Adjust the driver seat so that there is at least 25 cm between your breastbone and the hub of the steering wheel. Adjust the driver seat by moving it forwards or backwards so that you are able to press the pedals to the floor with your knees still slightly bent and so that the distance from the dash panel to your knees is at least 10 cm. If your build makes it impossible to fulfil this requirement then you must contact a qualified workshop so they can make any necessary modifications.
- Never travel with the backrest tilted far back. The further back the backrest is tilted, the greater the risk of injury caused by incorrect seat belt routing or an incorrect sitting position.
- Never travel with the backrest tilted far forwards. When a front airbag is triggered it could force the seat backrest backwards and injure vehicle occupants on the back seats.
- Adopt and maintain the greatest possible distance from the steering wheel and dash panel.
- You should always sit upright with your back against the seat backrest with the front seats properly adjusted. Do not position any body part too close where the airbags are fitted.
- The risk of serious injury is increased for passengers on the rear seat if they are not sitting upright because the seat belts are incorrectly positioned.

## WARNING

Incorrect adjustment of the seats can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Only adjust the seats when the vehicle is stationary. The seats could change position unexpectedly if you attempt to reposition them while the vehicle is in motion, leading to a loss of control of the vehicle. Furthermore, an incorrect seating position is adopted while adjusting the seat.
- Only adjust the height and tilt of the seat or move it forwards and backwards when the area around the seat is clear.
- There should be no objects in the adjustment area of the front seats.
- To be able to make adjustments to the seats, the area around them must not be restricted by any items.
- Only adjust the height of the rear seat or move it forwards and backwards when the area around the seat is clear.
- The areas for adjusting and locking the seats must not be soiled.

## WARNING

Cigarette lighters in the vehicle could be damaged or accidentally lit. This could lead to serious burns and other injuries.

- Before adjusting the seats always ensure that there is no lighter on or near the moveable parts of the seat.
- Before closing stowage areas or compartments always ensure that there is no lighter in the way.
- Never stow lighters in stowage areas, compartments or on other surfaces in the vehicle. High surface temperatures, especially in summer, may cause cigarette lighters to self-ignite.

### Mechanically adjusting the front seat





Fig. 89 Front left-hand seat controls (type 1).



Fig. 90 Front left-hand seat controls (type 2).

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The layout of the controls on the front right-hand seat is a mirror image of the layout of the controls on the front left-hand seat.

The following section contains a description of all possible controls. The number of controls may vary depending on the design of the seat.

The seat may have a combination of mechanical and electrical controls.

### Adjusting the seat position (type 1)

Key to ⇒ Fig. 89 :

- ① Move the lever to adjust the lumbar support.
- ② Take your weight off the backrest and turn the handwheel to adjust the backrest.
- ③ Move the lever up or down several times if necessary to adjust the seat height.
- ④ Pull the lever to push the front seat forwards or backwards. The front seat must engage after the lever has been released.

## Adjusting the seat position (type 2)

Key to ⇒ Fig. 90 :

- ① Take your weight off the backrest and turn the handwheel to adjust the backrest.
- ② Move the lever up or down several times if necessary to adjust the seat height.
- ③ Pull or press the lever up or down, several times if necessary, to adjust the seat cushion angle.
- ④ Raise the handle to slide the seat cushion forwards or backwards.
- ⑤ Pull the lever to push the front seat forwards or backwards. The front seat must engage after the lever has been released.

## Electrically adjusting the front seat

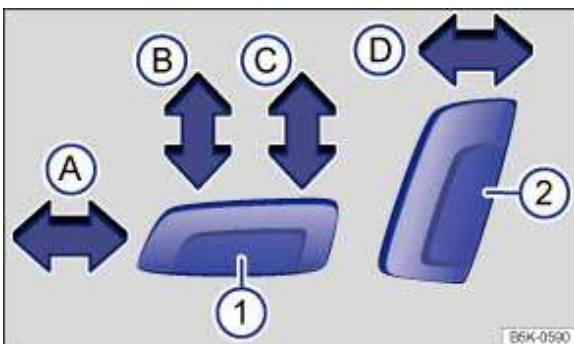


Fig. 91 Switches on the front left seat: adjusting the front seat forwards or backwards, adjusting the backrest and the seat cushion for height and tilt.

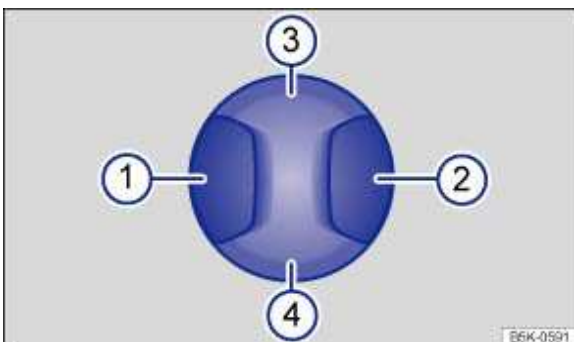


Fig. 92 Switch on the front left seat: adjusting the lumbar support.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

The layout of the controls on the front right-hand seat is a mirror image of the layout of the controls on the front left-hand seat.

The seat may have a combination of mechanical and electrical controls.

## Adjusting the seat position

Press switch in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 91 :

- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| ⊙   | Slides the seat forwards or backwards. |
| ① ⊙ | Adjusts the angle of the seat cushion. |
| ⊙   | Raises or lowers the seat.             |

---

**Press switch in the direction of the arrow → Fig. 91 :**

---

②	⊕	Adjusts the angle of the backrest.
---	---	------------------------------------

---

### Adjusting the lumbar support

---

**Press the switch in the desired area → Fig. 92 :**

---

① or ②	Adjusts the curve of the lumbar support.
③ or ④	Adjusts the height of the lumbar support.

---


## **WARNING**

Careless or unsupervised use of the electric front seats can result in severe injuries.

- The electrical front seat adjustment also works when the ignition is switched off. Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle.
- In the event of an emergency, stop the electrical adjustment by pressing another switch.

## **NOTICE**

To avoid damaging the electrical components in the front seats, do not kneel on the seats or apply sharp pressure at a single point on the seat cushion and backrest.

 It may not be possible to adjust the seat electrically if the battery charge level is too low.

 Starting the engine will interrupt the seat adjustment procedure.

### Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards

---

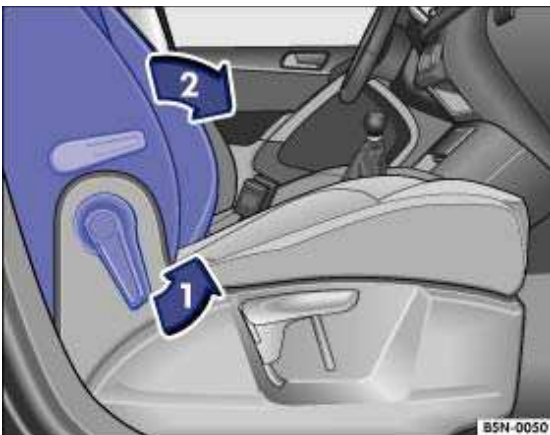



Fig. 93 Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The front passenger seat backrest can be folded forwards to a horizontal position.

The front passenger front airbag must be switched off if any items are to be transported on the front passenger seat when folded forwards ⇒ [Airbag system](#) .

## Folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards

- Remove any items from the front passenger seat cushion ⇒ .
- Lower the front passenger seat down as far as possible ⇒ *Sitting position*.
- Push the front passenger seat as far back as possible ⇒ *Sitting position*.
- Push the head restraint all the way down ⇒ *Sitting position*.
- Release the front passenger backrest in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 93 ①*.
- Fold the front passenger seat backrest forwards in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 93 ②* until it is horizontal.
- When it is folded down, the front passenger seat backrest must click securely into place.


## Folding back the front passenger seat backrest

- When folding back, check that there are no items or body parts near the hinges.
- To fold back, release the front passenger seat backrest ⇒ *Fig. 93 ①*.
- Fold back the front passenger seat backrest so that it is upright.
- When it is folded up, the front passenger seat backrest must click securely into place.



### WARNING

Injuries could be caused if the front passenger seat backrests are folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- Fold the front passenger seat backrest forwards and backwards only when the vehicle is stationary.
- While folding the front passenger seat backrest forwards, always ensure that there are no people, animals or objects in its path.
- The front airbag must be switched off and the PASSENGER AIR BAG **OFF**  indicator lamp will light up for as long as the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.
- When folding forwards and backwards, keep all hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the seat hinges and seat release mechanism.
- Floor mats or other objects could get caught in the hinges on the front passenger seat backrest. This could cause the front passenger seat backrest to fail to engage securely when it is returned to the upright position.
- When being folded back, the front passenger seat backrest must be securely locked in the upright position. If the front passenger seat backrest is not locked properly it could move suddenly and cause severe injuries.



### WARNING

The open seat anchors and hinges of the folded front passenger seat backrest could cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.

- Never transport people (adults or children) on the front passenger seat if the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.
- If the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards, you should only use the outer rear seat behind the driver seat. This also applies to children in child seats.

## Rear seats

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Adjusting the rear bench seat*

⇒ *Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards*

The adjustment possibilities for the rear seats are described below. Always ensure that the correct sitting position is adjusted ⇒ *Sitting position*.

## **WARNING**

Incorrect adjustment of the rear seat can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- The rear seat should be adjusted only when the vehicle is stationary as the rear seat could otherwise move unexpectedly while the vehicle is in motion. Furthermore, an incorrect seating position is adopted while adjusting the seat.
- The rear seat should only be adjusted when there is no one in the direct area.

## **WARNING**

Cigarette lighters in the vehicle could be damaged or accidentally lit. This could lead to serious burns and other injuries.

- Before adjusting the seats always ensure that there is no lighter on or near the moveable parts of the seat.
- Before closing stowage areas or compartments always ensure that there is no lighter in the way.
- Never stow lighters in stowage areas, compartments or on other surfaces in the vehicle. High surface temperatures, especially in summer, may cause cigarette lighters to self-ignite.

## **NOTICE**

- Items in the luggage compartment could cause damage when pushing the rear seat forwards or backwards.
- When the rear seat is moved forwards, objects could move into the space between the seat and luggage compartment floor. Remove any items or objects from this space before pushing the rear seat back.

## Adjusting the rear bench seat

---

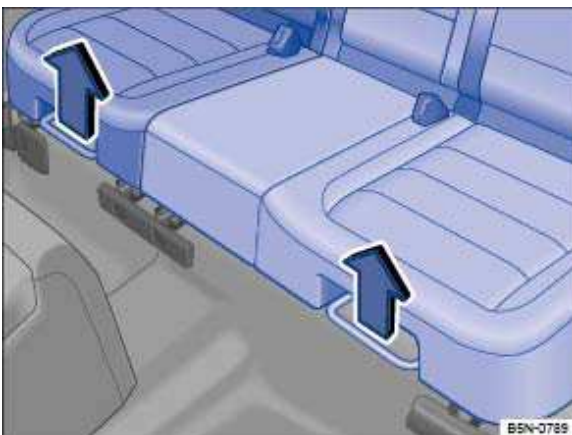
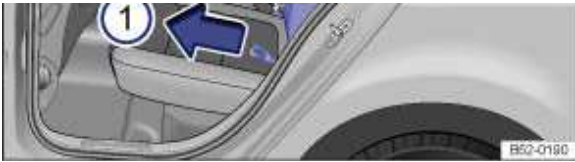


Fig. 94 Adjusting the rear bench seat.





**Fig. 95** Adjusting the rear bench seat backrest.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The rear bench seat is split 40:60. Each section can be adjusted separately.

### Adjusting the rear bench seat

- Pull up the right-hand or left-hand lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 94* and move the corresponding element of the rear bench seat either forwards or backwards.
- Release the lever and engage the rear bench seat element in position by pushing forwards and backwards gently.

### Adjusting the rear bench seat backrest

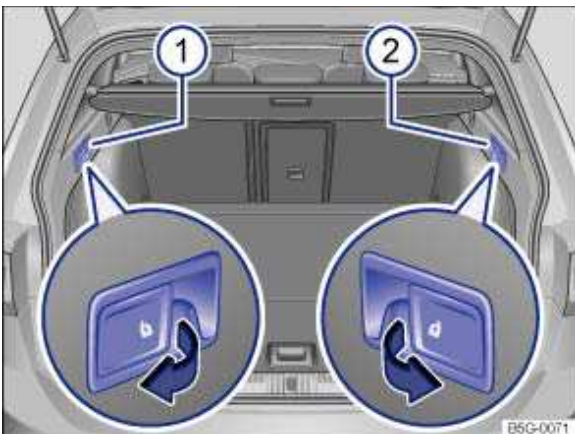
- Push down on the left-hand or right-hand side of the backrest with one hand and simultaneously pull on the corresponding loop with the other hand ⇒ *Fig. 95①*.
- Adjust the rear seat backrest to the required position with your hand against the spring pressure ⇒ *Fig. 95②*.
- Release the loop and engage the rear seat backrest in position by moving it forwards or backwards gently.

### Folding the backrests on the rear bench seat forwards and backwards

---



**Fig. 96** Folding the backrest forwards and backwards.




**Fig. 97** In the luggage compartment: remote release lever for the left ① and the right ② parts of the rear backrest.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The rear seat is split for folding. Each part of the rear seat backrest can be folded down to increase the size of the luggage compartment.


### Folding the rear seat backrest forwards

- Push the head restraint all the way down ⇒ [Head restraints](#) .
- Slide the rear bench seat back as far as it will go ⇒ [Adjusting the rear bench seat](#) .
- Fold down the folding table if necessary ⇒ [Stowage area](#) .
- Pull the loop forwards in the direction of the arrow while simultaneously supporting and folding the rear seat backrest forwards ⇒  .
- Fold the rear seat backrest completely forward by hand until it locks in place.
- Passengers (adults and children) must not use seats if the backrest is folded forwards.

### Folding rear backrest forwards with the remote release button

- Push the head restraint all the way down ⇒ [Head restraints](#) .
- Open the boot lid ⇒ [Driving with an open boot lid](#) .
- Push the remote release button for the left ⇒ [Fig. 97 ①](#) or the right ⇒ [Fig. 97 ②](#) parts of the rear backrest in the direction of the arrow. The part of the rear seat backrest that has been unlocked folds down automatically.
- Close the boot lid if it is open ⇒ [Driving with an open boot lid](#) .

### Folding back the rear seat backrest

- Use the loop to release the rear seat backrest. The rear seat backrest pops out of the catch.
- Keep pulling on the loop while folding back the rear seat rest.
- Make sure that the seat belt is not caught anywhere.
- Fold back the rear seat backrest until it is securely engaged ⇒  .
- The rear seat backrest must always be securely engaged.
- If necessary, fold back the rear seat backrests.
- Adjust the head restraint if necessary.



## WARNING

Injuries can be caused if the rear backrests are folded forwards and backwards carelessly.

- Never fold the rear seat backrest forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.
- Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the rear seat backrest.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet or other body parts away from the seat area when folding the rear seat backrest forwards and backwards.
- Ensure that each rear seat backrest engages securely in the upright position, otherwise the seat belts for the rear seats will not work properly. This applies to the centre seat of the rear bench seat in particular. If a seat is occupied and the backrest has not clicked securely into place, the seat occupant and backrest may move forwards in the event of a sudden braking or driving manoeuvre or during accidents.
- Passengers (adults and children) must not use seats if the backrest is folded forwards or is not clicked securely into place.

## NOTICE

- Before folding the rear seat backrests, adjust the front seats so that the rear head restraints or rear seat cushions do not rub against the front seats.
- Items in the luggage compartment or in the footwell could cause damage when pushing the rear seat backrest forwards or backwards.

## Head restraints

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Adjusting the head restraints*

⇒ *Removing and fitting head restraints*

The adjustment possibilities for the head restraints and the procedure for removal of the head restraints are described below. Always ensure that the correct sitting position is adjusted ⇒ *Sitting position*.

## WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with incorrectly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of severe or fatal injuries in the event of an accident or sudden driving or braking manoeuvre.

- If a seat is occupied, the head restraint for that seat must be fitted and adjusted correctly.
- Each vehicle occupant must adjust the head restraint to suit their body size, to help reduce the risk of neck injuries in an accident. As far as possible, the upper edge of the head restraint must be level with the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head in the middle and as close to the head restraint as possible.
- Never adjust the head restraint when the vehicle is in motion.

## NOTICE

When removing or fitting head restraints, make sure that they do not hit the roof, the front seat backrest or other parts of the vehicle. This will prevent damage from occurring.

## Adjusting the head restraints

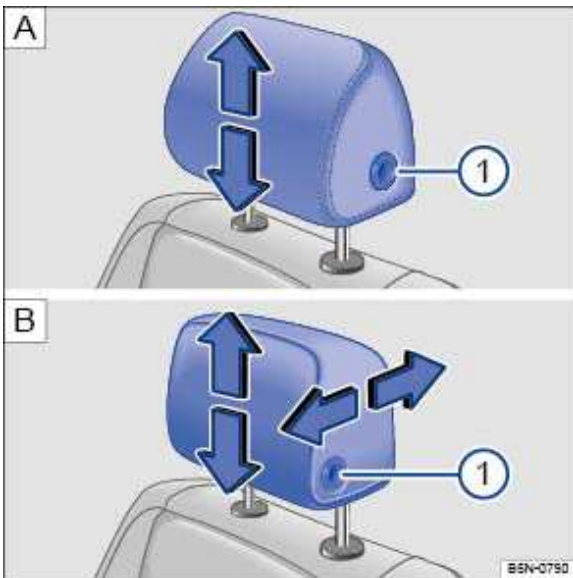


Fig. 98 Adjusting front head restraint: without longitudinal adjustment, with longitudinal adjustment.

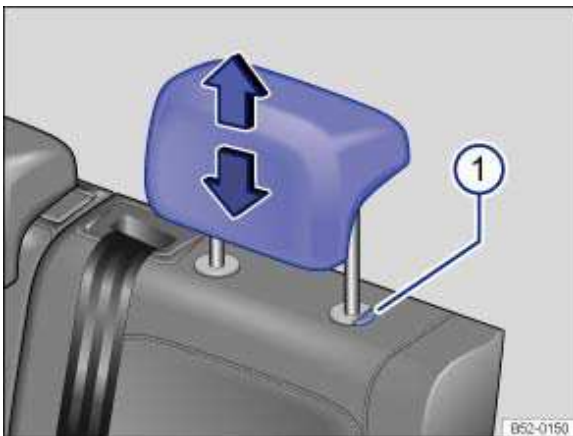



Fig. 99 Adjusting rear head restraint.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Every seat is fitted with a head restraint. The centre head restraint at the rear is designed solely for use with the centre rear bench seat. Therefore you should not install the head restraint in any of the other positions.

### Adjusting the height of the head restraint

- Push the head restraint up in the direction of the arrow or push it down with the button pressed ⇒ Fig. 98 ① or ⇒ Fig. 99 ① ⇒ .
- The head restraint must click securely into position.

### Adjusting front head restraint in longitudinal direction

- Push the head restraint forwards in the direction of the arrow or press button ⇒ Fig. 98 **B** ① and push it backwards.
- The head restraint must click securely into position.

### Correct head restraint setting

Adjust the head restraint so that its upper edge is at the same height as the top of the head, but not lower than eye level. Position the back of your head as close to the head restraint as possible.

In vehicles with head restraints that are adjustable longitudinally, place the head restraints on the front seats as close as possible to the back of your head.

### Head restraint setting for shorter people

Push the head restraint all the way down, even if the head is then underneath the top edge of the head restraint. There may be a small gap between the head restraint and backrest in the lowest position.

### Head restraint setting for taller people

Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

## Removing and fitting head restraints

---

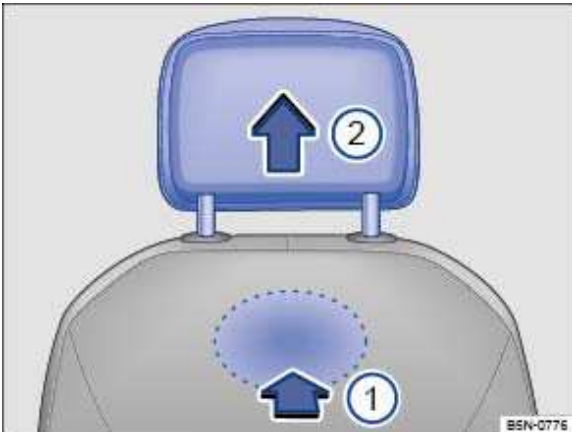


Fig. 100 Removing the front head restraint.

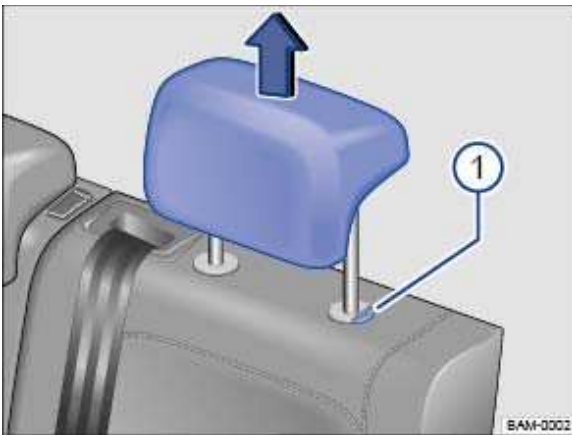



Fig. 101 Removing the rear head restraint.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Every seat is fitted with a head restraint.

### Removing the front head restraint



- You may need to lower the head restraint ⇒ .
- To unlock it, feel for the recess in the marked area on the rear side and press in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 100①.
- Pull the head restraint out in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 100②.

### Fitting the front head restraint


- Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.

- Slide the head restraint all the way down until the guide pins click into place.
- Adjust the head restraint so a correct sitting position can be assumed.

### Removing the rear head restraints

- If necessary, adjust the backrest so that the head restraint can be removed.
- Push the head restraint all the way up ⇒ .
- Pull the head restraint out fully while pressing the button ⇒ *Fig. 101* .

### Fitting the rear head restraints

- Release the rear seat backrest and fold the backrest forwards slightly ⇒ *Rear seats*.
- Position the head restraint correctly over the head restraint guides and then insert into the guides of the corresponding seat backrest.
- Press and hold the button ⇒ *Fig. 101*  and push the head restraint downwards.
- Push back the rear seat backrest and allow it to engage securely.
- Adjust the head restraint so a correct sitting position can be assumed ⇒ *Adjusting the head restraints*.

## Seat functions

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Memory function*
- ⇒ *Centre armrest*
- ⇒ *Folding table*
- ⇒ *Massage function*

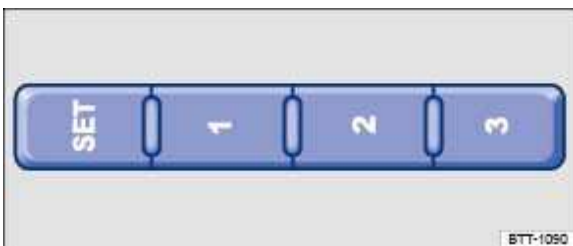
### WARNING

Incorrect use of the seat functions can cause serious injuries.

- Always assume a correct sitting position before you drive and maintain this position throughout the trip. This also applies to all passengers.
- The memory function should be adjusted only when the vehicle is stationary.
- Switch the massage function on and off only when the vehicle is stationary.
- Keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the moving parts of the seats.

### Memory function

---



**Fig. 102** Memory buttons on the outside of the driver seat.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The memory buttons can be used to store and recall settings for the driver seat and the exterior mirrors.

## Memory buttons

You can assign individual settings for the driver seat and exterior mirrors to each of the memory buttons.

### Storing driver seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forwards

- Switch on the electronic parking brake.
- Put the gearbox into neutral.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Adjust the driver seat and exterior mirror.
- Press the **SET** button for longer than one second ⇒ *Fig. 102*.
- Within approximately 10 seconds press the memory button you wish to use. A gong signal will sound to confirm that the settings have been saved.

### Storing front passenger exterior mirror settings for reversing

- Switch on the electronic parking brake.
- Put the gearbox into neutral.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the appropriate memory button.
- Select reverse gear.
- Adjust the exterior mirror on the front passenger side so that you have a good view of the kerb area.
- The settings for the mirror position will be saved automatically and assigned to the vehicle key that is used to unlock the vehicle.

### Accessing driver seat and exterior mirror settings

- While the vehicle is stationary and the ignition is switched on, briefly touch the required memory button.
- **OR:** while the ignition is switched off, touch and hold the required memory button until the saved position is reached.
- The front passenger exterior mirror will leave the stored reversing position automatically if the vehicle drives forwards at a minimum speed of 15 km/h (10 mph) or if you turn the rotary knob from **R** to a different position ⇒ *Mirrors*.

## Personalisation


You can save and access your individual seat setting in a user account via the Personalisation function ⇒ *Personalisation*.

After switching off the ignition and locking the vehicle, the driver seat and exterior mirror settings are stored in the user account.

The driver seat and exterior mirror settings are called up again after the vehicle is unlocked and the driver door is opened.

The seat responds to selecting or changing a user account as follows:

- *Vehicle stationary or moving no faster than 5 km/h:* seat is moved. You can cancel the movement at any time by touching the appropriate function button on the Infotainment system display or by pressing a button on the driver seat.
- *Vehicle moving faster than 5 km/h:* seat is not moved. All other setup configurations are adopted.

 If the driver door is opened later than approximately 10 minutes after unlocking the vehicle, the driver seat and exterior mirrors are no longer automatically adjusted.

## Centre armrest

---



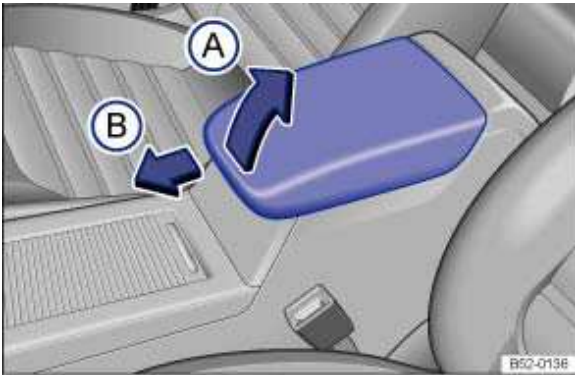


Fig. 103 Front centre armrest.

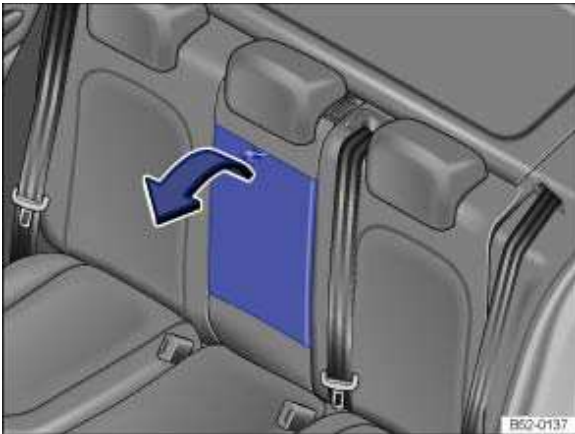


Fig. 104 Rear fold-out centre armrest.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

### Front centre armrest

To *lift*: push the centre armrest up gradually in the direction of arrow ⇒ Fig. 103@.

To *lower*: pull the centre armrest all the way up. Then lower the centre armrest.

To *adjust in longitudinal direction*: push the centre armrest fully to the front ⇒ Fig. 103@ or fully to the rear until it engages.

### Rear centre armrest

There may be a centre armrest in the rear bench seat that can be folded out of the middle seat.

To *fold it down*, pull the loop in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 104.

To *fold it back*: fold the centre armrest upwards in the opposite direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 104 and push it into the backrest as far as it will go.

## WARNING

The centre armrest can obstruct the driver's arm movements. This can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always keep the stowage compartments in the centre armrest closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never transport an adult or child on the centre armrest. An incorrect seating position can cause serious injury.
- Never place hot drinks or fluids in the drink holders. These can be spilt during a braking or driving manoeuvre.

## Folding table

---



Fig. 105 Front seat: setting up the folding table.



Fig. 106 On the left front seat: folding table with drink holder.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

A drink holder is integrated in the folding table ⇒ *Drink holder*.

### Folding out the folding table

Pull the folding table up in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 105* until it clicks into place.

### Folding down the folding table or adjusting the table angle

The angle of the folding table can be adjusted in steps.

- Press and hold the locking lever on the underside of the folding table ⇒ *Fig. 106 ①* in an upward direction.
- *Adjusting*: press and hold the locking lever and adjust the folding table to the desired angle.
- *Folding down*: press and hold the locking lever and press the folding table down as far as it will go.

### Drink holder

With the folding table set up, pull the drink holder ⇒ *Fig. 106 ②* out in the direction of the arrow. In order to stow the drink holder, push it into the folding table in the opposite direction to the arrow ⇒ *Drink holder*.

## **WARNING**

The folding table must always remain closed while the vehicle is in motion in order to reduce the risk of injury.

## Massage function

---



Fig. 107 In the lower area of the driver seat: button for massage function.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

When the massage function is switched on, the lumbar support moves and massages the lumbar region.

The in/out position of the lumbar support can be adjusted using the appropriate switch during a massage ⇒ *Sitting position* .

### Switching the massage function on or off

To switch on, press the  button in the seat control panel. To switch off, press the  button again.

The massage function is switched off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

## Lights

### Controls

#### **Introduction**

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Indicator lamps*
- ⇒ *Instrument and switch lighting*
- ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*
- ⇒ *Headlight range control*
- ⇒ *Interior and reading lights*

Observe any country-specific regulations when using vehicle lighting.

The driver is responsible for the correct headlight position and the correct headlight setting.



## WARNING


Accidents and serious injuries can occur if roads are not sufficiently illuminated and other road users have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or cannot see it at all.


- The light assist functions are designed to provide assistance only. The driver is responsible for making sure that the vehicle lights are switched on correctly.
- Always switch the dipped beam headlights on if it is dark, raining or visibility is poor.

## WARNING

Setting headlights too high, and the incorrect use of the main beam, could distract and dazzle other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always ensure that the headlights are adjusted correctly.
- Never use the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users could be dazzled.







 In cool or damp weather, the interior of the headlights, tail lights and turn signals may mist up briefly. This is normal and does not affect the service life of the lighting system of your vehicle.

 If the gas discharge bulbs flicker or stop generating uniform light, go to a qualified workshop immediately to have the headlights checked.

## Indicator lamps

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  [Introduction](#)



### Indicator lamps on the instrument cluster display

Lit up / flashing	Possible cause	Remedy
	Vehicle lighting not working partially or completely.	Check the vehicle lighting and change the appropriate bulb as required <a href="#">⇒ Changing bulbs</a> .  If all of the bulbs are in working order, go to a qualified workshop.  A separate display appears in the instrument cluster if there is a cornering light fault.
	Rear fog light switched on.	<a href="#">⇒ Fog lights</a> .
	Turn signal, left or right.  The indicator lamp will flash twice as fast if one of the turn signals on the vehicle is not working.	Check the vehicle lighting.
	Trailer turn signal.	The indicator lamp goes out if a trailer turn signal or all trailer lights stop working.  Check trailer lights.
	Main beam is switched on or the headlight flasher is being operated.	<a href="#">⇒ Switching lights on and off</a> .
		<a href="#">⇒ Main beam control</a> .

Lit up / flashing	Possible cause	Remedy
	Main beam control (Light Assist) or dynamic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist) is active.	

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

### Indicator lamps in light switch

Lit up	Possible cause
	The fog light is switched on ⇒ <i>Switching lights on and off</i> .
	The side lights are switched on ⇒ <i>Switching lights on and off</i> .
<b>AUTO</b>	The automatic headlight control and, if applicable, the daytime running lights are switched on ⇒ <i>Switching lights on and off</i> .

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.



- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- Stop the vehicle at a safe distance away from moving traffic and so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass, fuel, oil etc.
- A broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk, for you, your passengers and for other road users. If the situation requires, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle as a warning to other road users.

## NOTICE


Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Instrument and switch lighting

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The brightness of the instrument and switch lighting as well as the basic brightness of the Head-up Display ⇒ *Instrument cluster* can be adjusted in the Infotainment system using the  button and the  and **Light** function buttons ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

The brightness setting is automatically adjusted to the changing light conditions in the vehicle.

 When the light is switched off and the ignition switched on, the dash panel lighting (indicators and scales) is switched on. As the ambient light becomes lower, the lighting of these scales is automatically reduced and may be switched off entirely. This function is intended to remind the driver to switch on the dipped beam in good time, i.e. when driving through tunnels.

## Switching lights on and off





Fig. 108 Next to the steering wheel: light switch (illustration).

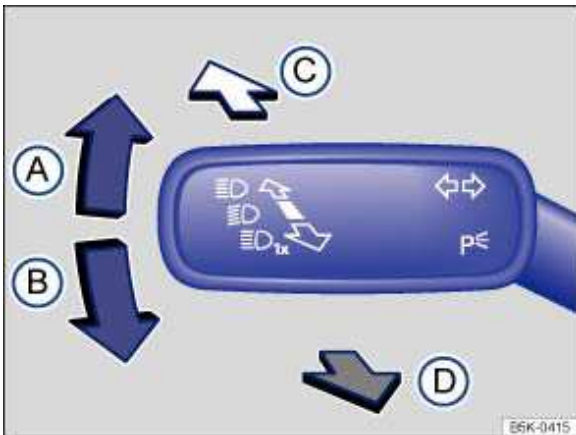


Fig. 109 On the steering column left: turn signal and main beam headlight lever.

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒ *Introduction*

In vehicles with a factory-fitted **towing bracket**: the vehicle's rear fog lights are switched off automatically if a trailer with rear fog lights is electrically connected to the vehicle ⇒ *Towing a trailer*.

### Light switch positions when the ignition is switched off


<b>0</b>	The fog lights, dipped beam headlights and side lights are switched off.
<b>AUTO</b>	The orientation lighting can be switched on.
	Side lights or continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle switched on.
	Dipped beam switched off – the side lights remain on while the vehicle key is in the ignition lock and while the driver door is closed in vehicles with Keyless Access.

### Light switch positions when the ignition is switched on


<b>0</b>	Lights switched off or daytime headlights are switched on.
<b>AUTO</b>	The automatic headlight control and, if applicable, the daytime headlights are switched on.
	The side lights and daytime running lights are switched on.
	The dipped beam headlights are switched on.

### Move the lever into the required position:


- A** Right turn signal ⇒ , ⇒ *Lane change flash* .**OR**: turn on right parking light. With the ignition switched off, move the lever into position from the centre position ⇒ *Parking light* .Move the lever to the basic position to switch off the turn signal or the parking light.

**B** Left turn signal  $\Rightarrow$  ,  $\Rightarrow$  *Lane change flash*. **OR:** turn on left parking light. With the ignition switched off, move the lever into position from the centre position  $\Rightarrow$  *Parking light*. Move the lever to the basic position to switch off the turn signal or the parking light.



**C** With dipped beam switched on: switch on main beam  $\Rightarrow$  . When the main beam is switched on, an indicator lamp  lights up in the instrument cluster.



**D** Operate the headlight flasher or switch off the main beam. The *headlight flasher* comes on for as long as the lever is pulled. The indicator lamp  lights up.




### Automatic switch-off of side lights and parking lights

- With the ignition switched on, turn the light switch to position .
- Switch off the ignition.
- **OR:** switch on the left or right parking light  $\Rightarrow$  *Parking light*.
- Lock the vehicle from outside.

### Fog lights

The indicator lamps  or  in the light switch or instrument cluster indicate that the fog lights are switched on.

When the ignition is switched on, the fog lights can be switched on with the light switch in the positions **AUTO**, side lights  and dipped beam headlights .

- To switch on the fog light : pull the light switch out to the first notch.
- To switch on the rear fog light : pull the light switch out as far as it will go.
- To switch the fog lights off, press the light switch or move it to position .

### WARNING

The side lights or daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you.

- Always switch the dipped beam headlights on if it is dark, raining or visibility is poor.


### WARNING

Incorrect use of turn signals, a failure to use turn signals, or forgetting to switch off a turn signal can confuse other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always activate the turn signal in good time when changing lanes and performing overtaking or turning manoeuvres.
- Always switch off the turn signal once the lane change or overtaking or turning manoeuvre has been completed.

### WARNING

Incorrect use of the main beam headlights can lead to accidents and serious injuries as the main beam headlights can distract and dazzle other road users.

 The turn signal will only work when the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights also work when the ignition is switched off  $\Rightarrow$  *In an emergency*.

**i** The parking light only lights up when the ignition is switched off and if the turn signal and main beam lever was in the central position before being operated.

**i** Go to a qualified workshop and have the vehicle checked if the acoustic signal does not sound when a turn signal is switched on.

## Headlight range control



Fig. 110 Next to steering wheel: headlight range control ①.

**📖** First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ **⚠️ Introduction**

Headlight range control can be used to adjust the light cone in the front headlights to the vehicle load level. This gives the driver the best visibility possible and means that oncoming traffic will not be dazzled ⇒ **⚠️**.

The front headlights can be adjusted only when the dipped beam headlights are switched on ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*.

**To adjust, turn the control ⇒ Fig. 110 ① to:**

Setting	Setting for sports running gear	Example vehicle load level <sup>a)</sup>
–	–	Front seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.
1	1	All seats occupied and luggage compartment empty.
2,5	1,5	All seats occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded. Towing a trailer with a low drawbar load.
3	2	Only the driver seat occupied and luggage compartment fully loaded. Towing a trailer with maximum drawbar load.

## Dynamic headlight range control

There is no control ⇒ Fig. 110 ① for headlight range if the vehicle has dynamic headlight range control. The headlight range is automatically adapted to suit the vehicle load level as soon as the headlights are switched on ⇒ **⚠️**.

## WARNING

Heavy objects in the vehicle can cause the headlights to dazzle and distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- The light cone should always be adjusted to the load level of the vehicle to ensure that other road users are not dazzled.

## WARNING

Failure or malfunction in the dynamic headlight range control can cause the headlights to dazzle or distract other road users. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.





- The headlight range control should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

a) If you have different loads, you can select a position between the settings.

## Interior and reading lights



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

Button	Function
	Switches the front interior lights on or off.
	Switches the rear interior lights on or off.
	Switches the door contact switch on and off. The interior lights are switched on automatically when the vehicle is unlocked, a door is opened or the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock.
	Switches the reading lights on or off.

## Lights in the stowage compartments and luggage compartment

A light will be switched on and off automatically when the stowage compartment on the front passenger side, or the boot lid, is opened or closed.



The lights go out when the vehicle is locked or after a delay of a few minutes when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock. This prevents the battery from discharging.


## Light functions

### Light functions

#### Parking light

When the parking lights (left and right turn signals) are switched on, the headlight on the corresponding side of the vehicle lights up along with the tail light and parts of the tail light cluster.


#### Side lights

If the light switch is in position  both headlights with side lights light up, along with parts of the rear light cluster, the number plate lighting and the buttons in the centre console and the dash panel. The daytime running lights also switch on when the ignition is switched on.


If the vehicle is **not** locked from the outside, and the ignition is switched off, the continuous parking light on both sides switches on automatically after about 10 minutes to reduce vehicle battery discharge ⇒ *Continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle* .

### Continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle


Both headlights with side lights and parts of the tail light clusters light up if a continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle is switched on.


- Turn light switch to position .
- Switch off the ignition.
- Lock the vehicle from outside.


### Automatic switch-off of side lights and parking lights

The side lights and parking lights drain the vehicle battery. The side lights and parking lights are switched off automatically to ensure that the engine can be restarted if the battery charge level is so low that a restart may be difficult. The side lights and parking lights are switched off after 2 hours at the earliest ⇒ .

Depending on the equipment level, a new, fully charged vehicle battery contains enough power for the continuous parking light on both sides of the vehicle to be switched on for 4 to 16 hours, and the parking light on one side to be on for 8 to 32 hours. All vehicle batteries age through use and service time, which results in a reduction of their capacity. This affects the duration of the continuous parking lights on both sides of the vehicle, and the parking light on one side.

The side lights and parking lights will not switch off automatically if there is insufficient battery capacity for them to remain switched on for 2 hours. In this case, the side lights and parking lights will remain switched on until the vehicle battery is fully discharged. It will no longer be possible to restart the engine ⇒ .

Automatic switch-off of the side lights is deactivated if they are switched on when the ignition is switched off. The side lights will remain on until the battery is completely empty. It will no longer be possible to restart the engine ⇒ .

- If the vehicle lighting is required for several hours, switch on the right or left parking light if possible. The illumination time of the one-sided parking light is generally double that of the continuous parking light on both sides.
- Always park the vehicle safely and with sufficient lighting. Observe any country-specific legal requirements ⇒ .


### Lane change flash


To operate the lane change flash, push the lever up or down to the point where you incur resistance and then release the lever. The turn signal flashes 3 times.

To cancel the lane change flash, immediately move the lever in the opposite direction up to the pressure point and then release it.

The lane change flash can be activated and deactivated using the  button and the  and  function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system* .

### Daytime running lights


There are separate lights in the headlights or in the front bumper for the daytime running lights. The daytime running lights cannot be switched on or off manually ⇒ .

When the light switch is in position  or **AUTO**, the daytime running lights are switched on every time the ignition is switched on.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the rain/light sensor will switch the dipped beam and lighting in the instruments and switches on and off automatically to suit ambient light conditions.

## Automatic headlight control **AUTO**

The automatic headlight control is merely an aid and will not always be able to detect all driving situations.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the vehicle lights and the lighting in instruments and switches will switch on and off automatically ⇒ .

*Automatically switched on:* when the rain/light sensor detects rain or darkness, e.g. when driving through tunnels or in twilight.

*Automatically switched off:* when the rain/light sensor detects that there is sufficient light or the wipers have not wiped for several minutes.




If the front or rear fog lights are switched on while the automatic headlight control **AUTO** is running, the dipped beam headlights will also be switched on irrespective of the current light conditions outside.

## Dynamic cornering light (AFS)

When driving round bends, the road is automatically better illuminated by the swivelling bulbs. The dynamic cornering light only works at speeds above approximately 10 km/h (6 mph) and when the dipped beam headlights are switched on.

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the selected driving profile can affect the swivelling motion of the lights. For example, the dynamic cornering light is switched off in the **Eco** driving profile ⇒ [Driving Profile Selection](#).

The dynamic cornering light does not work when travel mode ⇒ [Switching over headlights for driving abroad \(travel mode\)](#) is activated.

If fitted, the dynamic cornering light function can be activated and deactivated using the  button and the  and  function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#).



## Static cornering light

When cornering slowly or travelling around very tight bends, a static cornering light is switched on automatically. The static cornering light is integrated into either the fog light or the front headlight, and only lights up at speeds below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

When reverse gear is engaged, the static cornering light on both sides of the vehicle may switch on to provide better illumination of the area when manoeuvring.

## Signal tones if lights are not switched off

If the key is removed from the ignition lock and the driver door is opened, a signal tone will sound in the following situations:

- If the parking light is switched on ⇒ [Switching lights on and off](#), ⇒ [Parking light](#).
- If the light switch is in position  or .

When the Coming Home function is switched on, no signal tone will be given as a reminder that a light is still switched on when the driver door is opened.



## WARNING

Never drive with daytime running lights if the street is not sufficiently lit due to weather and lighting conditions.

- The daytime running lights are not bright enough to illuminate the road ahead and to ensure that other road users are able to see you.
- The rear lights will not be switched on with the daytime running lights. If the rear lights are not switched on, the vehicle may not be visible to other road users if it is dark, raining, or if visibility is poor.

## WARNING

The automatic headlight control (**AUTO**) switches the dipped beam headlights on and off only when there is a change to the level of brightness.

- Switch on the dipped beam headlights manually if this is necessary due to particular weather conditions, e.g. fog.

## WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can occur if the vehicle is parked without sufficient illumination, as other road users might have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or may not see it at all.

- Always park the vehicle securely and with sufficient lighting. Observe any applicable local legislation.



The headlights of vehicles with dynamic cornering light function occasionally swivel independently of cornering while driving for better illumination of the road.




You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

## Main beam control

---

Main beam control can help to prevent other road users from being dazzled.


The function is controlled by a camera located on the inside of the windscreen above the interior mirror.

Within the limits of the system, the main beam control automatically switches the main beam on at speeds of over approximately 60 km/h (37 mph), depending on environmental and traffic conditions, and switches it off again at speeds under approximately 30 km/h (18 mph) ⇒ .

Main beam control normally recognises illuminated areas such as towns and deactivates the main beam while driving through them.

### Switching on main beam control

- Switch on the ignition and turn the light switch to position **AUTO** if necessary.
- Push the turn signal and main beam lever forwards from its initial position ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*.

When the main beam control or the dynamic main beam control is activated, the indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster display lights up.

### Switching off main beam control

- Switch off the ignition.
- **OR:** turn the light switch to a position other than **AUTO** ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*.

- **OR:** with the main beam switched on, pull the turn signal and main beam lever backwards.
- **OR:** push the turn signal and main beam lever forwards to switch on the manual main beam. The main beam control is then switched off.

### Main beam control (Light Assist)




The main beam control switches main beam on and off automatically.

### Dynamic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist)

The system detects other road users and their distance from your vehicle and covers part of the headlights appropriately. If dazzling other road users cannot be prevented, the light distribution is automatically set to dipped beam headlights.

The main beam is switched on and off only automatically in the following situations:

- When the dynamic cornering light function is deactivated ⇒ *Dynamic cornering light (AFS)* .
- **OR:** when travel mode is activated ⇒ *Switching over headlights for driving abroad (travel mode)* .
- **OR:** when the **Eco** driving profile is selected on vehicles with driving profile selection ⇒ *Driving Profile Selection* .

If fitted, the dynamic main beam control function can be activated and deactivated using the  button and the  and  function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system* .

### System limits

The main beam must be switched off manually under the following conditions because it is not switched off in time or not switched off at all by the main beam control:

- In poorly lit streets where there are highly-reflective signs.
- When encountering other road users with insufficient lighting, such as pedestrians or cyclists.
- In tight bends, brows of hills or depressions in the land or half-hidden oncoming traffic.
- With oncoming traffic on streets with a central barrier where the driver can see clearly over the central barrier e.g. truck drivers.
- If the camera is broken or the power supply is interrupted.
- In fog, snow or heavy rain.
- In dusty or sandy areas.
- Damage to the windscreen in the camera's vision field.
- If the viewing field of the camera is misted up, dirty, covered by a sticker, snow or ice.



## WARNING

Do not let the extra convenience afforded by main beam control tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Always check the lights yourself and adjust them to the prevailing conditions for lights, vision and road traffic.
- The main beam control may not be able to recognise all driving situations correctly and may not work properly in certain situations.
- If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of the main beam control may be impaired. This also applies if changes are made to the vehicle's lighting system, for example if additional headlights are fitted.



## NOTICE

Please observe the following points in order to avoid impairing the proper function of the system:

- Regularly clean the camera's field of view, and keep it free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Regularly check the area of the windscreen that is in the camera's field of view for damage.



Light-emitting objects in the camera's field of operation, e.g. mobile navigation devices, could impair the functions of the dynamic main beam control (Light Assist).

## Coming Home and Leaving Home functions (orientation lighting)

The Coming home and Leaving home functions illuminate the area directly next to the vehicle when getting into and leaving the vehicle in darkness.

The Coming Home function is switched on manually. However, the Leaving Home function is controlled automatically by a rain/light sensor.

### Switching on the Coming home function

- Switch off the ignition.
- Activate the headlight flasher for approximately one second ⇒ *Switching lights on and off*.

The Coming Home lighting is switched on when the driver door is opened. The *switch-off delay* starts when the last vehicle door or the boot lid has been closed.

### Switching off the Coming home function



- Automatically after the set switch-off delay has elapsed.
- **OR:** automatically if a vehicle door or the boot lid is still open approximately 30 seconds after switching on.
- **OR:** turn light switch to position **0**.
- **OR:** switch on the ignition.

### Switching on the Leaving home function

- Unlock the vehicle when the light sensor is in position **AUTO** and the rain/light sensor detects *darkness*.

## Switching off the Leaving home function

- Automatically after the switch-off delay.
- **OR:** lock the vehicle.
- **OR:** turn light switch to position **0**.
- **OR:** switch on the ignition.

 The length of the switch-off delay can be set and the function can be activated or deactivated using the **CAR** button and the  and **Light** function buttons in the infotainment system → *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

## Background lighting

---

When the side or dipped headlights are switched on, background lighting illuminates the control elements in the doors from above.

The footwell and, where applicable, the closed blind of the glass roof may also be illuminated.


The brightness of the background lighting can be adjusted using the **CAR** button and the  and **Light** function buttons in the infotainment system → *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

## Headlights


### Switching over headlights for driving abroad (travel mode)

---

If you have to drive a right-hand drive vehicle in a left-hand drive country, or vice versa, the asymmetric dipped beam of headlights with gas discharge bulbs may dazzle oncoming traffic. Therefore the headlights need to be switched over when you travel to these countries.

On vehicles with dynamic main beam control, the headlight orientation can be adjusted using the **CAR** button and the  and **Light** function buttons in the infotainment system → *Operation and display in the infotainment system* (travel mode).

The function of the dynamic cornering light → *Dynamic cornering light (AFS)* and dynamic main beam control → *Dynamic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist)* is deactivated once the travel mode is activated. The main beam is then only switched on and off automatically.

 Travel mode may only be used for a short period. Please contact a qualified workshop for a permanent alteration. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Vision

### Wipers

#### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Indicator lamps*
- ⇒ *Windscreen wiper lever*
- ⇒ *Wiper function*
- ⇒ *Rain/light sensor*

## ⚠ WARNING

Without adequate anti-freeze, the washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and obscure your view.

- In winter temperatures, the windscreen washer system should only be used when adequate frost protection has been added.
- Never use the windscreen washer system at winter temperatures before the windscreen has been heated by the ventilation system or the windscreen heating. This could lead to the anti-freeze mixture freezing on the windscreen and restrict the driver's vision.


## ⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty windscreen wiper blades reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries.

- Always change windscreen wiper blades if they are damaged or worn and no longer clean the windscreens properly.




## ! NOTICE

In icy conditions, always check that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before using the wipers. When parking the vehicle in cold weather, it may be helpful to leave the front windscreen wipers in the service position ⇒ *Service position*.

 You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

## Indicator lamps

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

 Windscreen washer fluid level too low. Fill up the washer fluid reservoir as soon as possible ⇒ *Washer fluid*.  Fault in the rain/light sensor. Switch the ignition on and off. If the indicator lamp lights up permanently after you switch on the ignition, seek expert assistance.  Fault in windscreen wipers. Switch the ignition on and off. If the indicator lamp lights up permanently after you switch on the ignition, seek expert assistance.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## ! NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Windscreen wiper lever

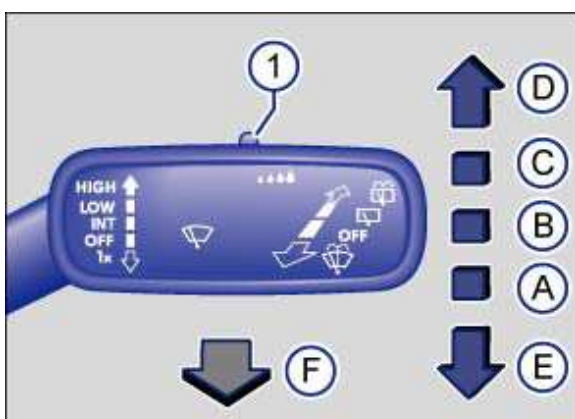


Fig. 111 On the steering column, right: operating the front windscreen wipers.

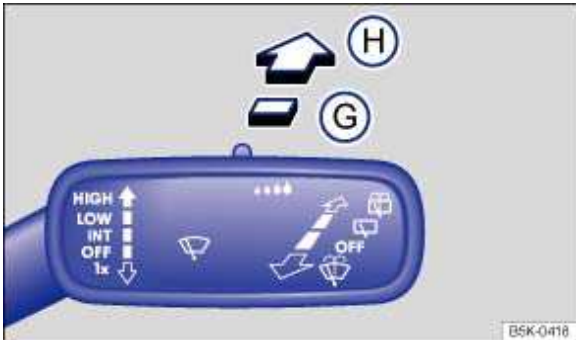


Fig. 112 On the left of the steering column: operating the rear window wiper.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ [Introduction](#)

Move the lever into the required position ⇒ :

- A** **OFF** Wipers switched off.
- B** **INT** Interval wipe for the windscreen or rain/light sensor mode. The interval wipe for the windscreen depends on the speed of the vehicle. The wipers will wipe more frequently as the vehicle moves faster.
- C** **LOW** Slow wipe.
- D** **HIGH** Fast wipe.
- E** **1x** Flick wipe – wiper briefly. Push and hold the lever down for longer to wipe more quickly.
- F** Pulling the lever activates the wash and wipe system for cleaning the windscreen. The Climatronic will switch to air recirculation mode for approximately 30 seconds to prevent the smell of the windscreen washer fluid from entering the vehicle interior.
- G** Interval wipe for the rear window. The windscreen wiper will wipe the window approximately every 6 seconds.
- H** Pushing the lever activates the wash and wipe system for cleaning the rear window.
- 1** Use the switch to set the interval lengths (vehicles without a rain/light sensor) or adjust the sensitivity of the rain/light sensor.

The windscreen wipers will only function when the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot lid are closed.

The automatic switch-on function when in reverse gear can be activated and deactivated using the **CAR** button and the and **Mirrors and wipers** function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#).

## ! NOTICE

If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are still switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue to wipe on the same setting when the ignition is switched on again. Frost, snow and other obstructions on the windscreen can cause damage to the windscreen wipers and wiper motor.

- Remove any snow and ice from the wipers before setting off.
- Carefully loosen wiper blades that have become frozen onto the glass. Volkswagen recommends using a de-icer spray for this.

## ! NOTICE

Do not switch on the wipers when the windscreen is dry. Using the wipers when the glass is dry can damage the glass.

**i** The rear window wiper is switched on automatically if the windscreen wipers are switched on and reverse gear is engaged.

**i** The wipers will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windscreen. The wipers will stop moving if the obstacle blocks their path. Remove the obstacle and switch the wipers back on again.

## Wiper function

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Wiper behaviour when the vehicle is stationary

When switched on, the wipers will temporarily be switched to the next setting down.

### Heated washer jets

The heating defrosts frozen washer jets. The heating output is regulated automatically when the ignition is switched on depending on the ambient temperature. Only the jets are heated and not the hoses carrying the washer fluid.

### Headlight washer system

The headlight washer system cleans the headlight lenses and only works when the vehicle lighting is switched on.

Once the ignition has been switched on, the headlights will be washed the first time the wash and wipe system is used, and every tenth time thereafter. Firmly attached dirt, e.g. insect residue, should be removed from the headlight lenses at regular intervals.

In winter, you should remove any snow from the headlight washer system covers in the bumper prior to use to keep the system in working order. Remove any ice with a de-icer spray.

## Rain/light sensor

---





Fig. 113 On the windscreen wiper lever on the steering column, right: setting the rain/light sensor ①.

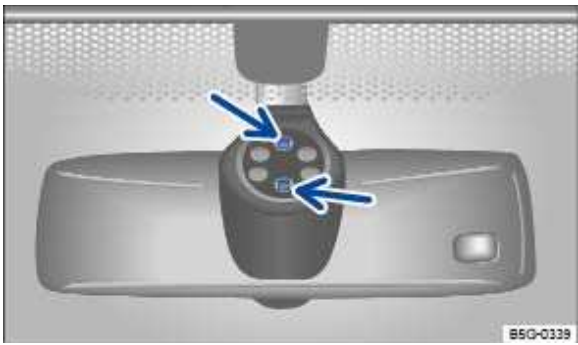


Fig. 114 On the windscreen above the interior mirror: sensitive surfaces of the rain/light sensor.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction




When the rain/light sensor is activated, it automatically controls the frequency of the wiper intervals, depending on the intensity of the rain.

If the rain/light sensor is deactivated, the intervals are set at fixed levels.


### Activating and deactivating the rain/light sensor

- Position ② - The rain/light sensor is deactivated.
- Position ③ - The rain/light sensor is activated – automatic wiping when necessary.

The rain/light sensor will remain active after the ignition is switched off and back on again and will function again if the windscreen wiper lever is in position ③ and if the vehicle is travelling at speeds above 4 km/h (2 mph).

The automatic wipe function can be activated and deactivated using the  button and the  and  function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

### Setting the sensitivity of the rain/light sensor

The sensitivity of the rain/light sensor can be adjusted manually using the switch in the wiper lever ⇒ Fig. 113 ① ⇒ .

- Switch to the right – high sensitivity.
- Switch to the left – low sensitivity.

### Changes in the activation of the rain/light sensor

Possible causes for faults and misinterpretations relating to the sensitive surfaces ⇒ Fig. 114 (arrows) of the rain/light sensor might include:

- **Damaged wiper blades:** a film of water or smears caused by damaged wiper blades can increase the time the wipers are switched on, can shorten the length of the intervals between wiper cycles or cause the wipers to run quickly and continuously.
- **Insects:** insects hitting the windscreen surface can cause the wipers to be activated.
- **Salt deposits:** in winter, salt deposits on the windscreen can cause the wipers to continue to wipe the windscreen when it is almost dry.
- **Dirt:** dry dust, wax, windscreen coatings (lotus effect), or detergent deposits (from an automatic car wash) can cause the rain/light sensor to become less sensitive and react too slowly, or prevent it from reacting at all.
- **Crack in the windscreen:** a wiper cycle will be triggered if the rain/light sensor is on when the windscreen is impacted by a stone. The rain/light sensor will then register the reduction in sensitivity of the surfaces and adjust accordingly. The size of the crack can affect the way in which the rain/light sensor activates the wipers.



Clean the sensitive surfaces of the rain/light sensor ⇒ *Fig. 114* (arrows) at regular intervals and inspect the wiper blades for damage.



## WARNING

The rain/light sensor cannot always detect every rain shower and activate the windscreen wipers.

- If necessary, switch on the windscreen wipers manually if the water on the windscreen restricts the field of vision.



We recommend that you use an alcohol-based glass cleaner to remove wax and polish.

## Mirrors



### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Interior mirror*

⇒ *Exterior mirrors*

You can use the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror to observe traffic behind you and adjust driving style accordingly.

For safety reasons it is important that the driver positions the exterior and interior mirrors correctly before starting a journey ⇒ .

Looking in the exterior mirrors and the interior mirror does not allow the driver to see the entire side and rear area of the vehicle. The area that cannot be seen is known as the blind spot. There may be objects and other road users in the blind spot.

## WARNING

Adjusting the exterior and interior mirrors while driving may cause the driver to become distracted. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Exterior and interior mirrors should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stationary.
- When parking, changing lane, or performing an overtaking or turning manoeuvre, always pay careful attention to the area around the vehicle as objects and other road users may be located in the blind spot.
- Always ensure that the mirrors are positioned correctly and that the rear view is not restricted by ice, snow, condensation or any other objects.


## WARNING

Automatic anti-dazzle mirrors contain an electrolyte fluid which could leak if the mirror is broken.

- The leaking electrolyte fluid can cause irritation to the skin, eyes and respiratory organs, especially in people who suffer from asthma or similar illnesses. Immediately ensure that there is a sufficient supply of fresh air and get out of the vehicle. If this is not possible, open all of the windows and doors.
- If the electrolyte fluid gets into the eyes or onto the skin, immediately wash the area with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor.
- If the electrolyte fluid gets onto shoes or clothing, wash immediately with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Clean shoes and clothes thoroughly before wearing them again.
- If the electrolyte fluid is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a doctor. Seek medical assistance immediately.

## NOTICE

If the glass of an automatic anti-dazzle mirror is broken, electrolyte fluid can leak from the mirror. This fluid corrodes plastic surfaces. Remove the fluid as soon as possible, e.g. using a wet sponge.

 You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system* .

## Interior mirror

---

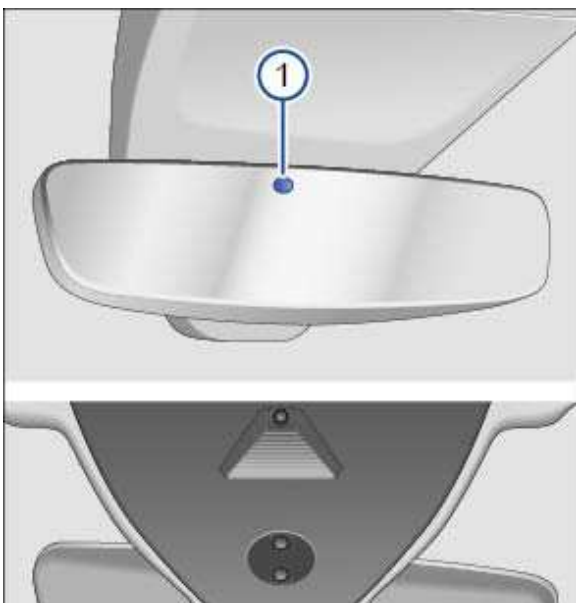




Fig. 115 On the windscreen: automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror.

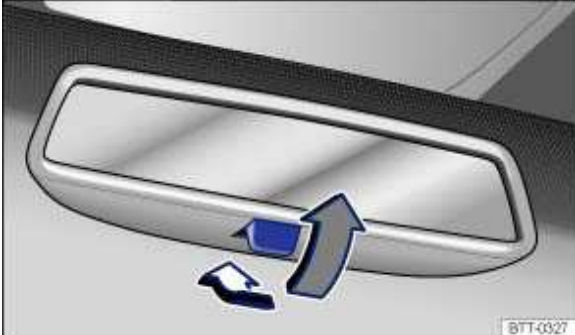


Fig. 116 On the windscreen: manual anti-dazzle interior mirror.


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The driver must adjust the interior mirror so that they can see clearly through the rear window.

### Automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror

When the ignition is switched on, the sensors measure the amount of incident light from the rear ⇒ Fig. 115 ① and from the front ②.

The interior mirror darkens *automatically* depending on the measured values.

If the light on the sensors is hindered or interrupted, e.g. by a sun blind, the automatic anti-dazzle interior mirror will not function or will not function correctly. Mobile navigation devices on the windscreen or near the interior automatic anti-dazzle mirror can also influence the function of the sensors ⇒ .

The automatic anti-dazzle function is deactivated when the reverse gear is selected.

### Manual anti-dazzle interior mirror

- Basic position: the lever on the lower part of the mirror is pointing towards the windscreen.
- Pull the lever to the back to select the anti-dazzle function ⇒ Fig. 116 .

## **WARNING**

The illuminated display from a mobile navigation device can lead to functional impairment of the interior automatic anti-dazzle mirror and cause accidents or serious injuries.

- You may not be able to precisely determine the distance from vehicles travelling behind you or from other objects if the automatic anti-dazzle function is impaired.

## Exterior mirrors





Fig. 117 In the driver door: rotary knob for the exterior mirrors.

**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒ *Introduction*

The exterior mirrors can be adjusted using the rotary knob in the driver door ⇒ Fig. 117 when the ignition is switched on.

Fold exterior mirrors into the body electrically ⇒ Switch on the exterior mirror heating. Will only heat at ambient temperatures below +20°C (+68°F). **L** Tap and hold the rotary knob to set the left exterior mirror to the front, rear, right or left. **R** Tap and hold the rotary knob up or down or left or right to set the right exterior mirror. **O** Neutral position. Exterior mirrors are folded out, exterior window heating is switched off. It is not possible to adjust the exterior mirrors.

### Synchronised mirror adjustment

- Select synchronised adjustment of the exterior mirrors using the **CAR** button and the and **Mirrors and wipers** function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.
- Turn the rotary knob to the **L** position.
- Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror. The right-hand exterior mirror will be adjusted at the same time (synchronised).
- If necessary, correct the settings for the right-hand mirror by turning the rotary knob to the **R** position.

### Folding in the exterior mirrors while parking

The rotary knob for the electric exterior mirrors must be in , **L**, **R** or **O** position to enable automatic folding in and out of the mirrors.

- When parking, select the option for folding in the exterior mirror via the **CAR** button and and **Mirrors and wipers** in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.
- The exterior mirrors fold in automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside.
- The exterior mirrors fold out automatically if the vehicle is unlocked from the outside.

The exterior mirrors will remain folded in if the rotary knob for the electric exterior mirrors is in the fold-in position .

### Storing front passenger exterior mirror settings for reversing

- Select a valid vehicle key to which the settings should be assigned.
- Unlock the vehicle using this key.
- Switch on the electronic parking brake.
- Switch on the ignition.
- Put the gearbox into neutral.
- To activate the reverse gear exterior mirror lowering function, press the **CAR** button and the and **Mirrors and wipers** function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.
- Select reverse gear.
- Adjust the exterior mirror on the front passenger side so that you have a good view of the kerb area.
- The settings for the mirror position will be saved automatically and assigned to the vehicle key that is used to unlock the vehicle.

### Selecting the settings for the front passenger exterior mirror

- Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirrors to position **R**.

- When reverse gear is selected with the ignition switched on, the right exterior mirror will move to the stored position.
- The front passenger exterior mirror will move out of the position saved for reversing when the vehicle is driven forwards faster than approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or when the rotary knob is moved out of position **R** into another position.

## WARNING

Injuries can be sustained if you do not take care when folding the exterior mirrors in and out.

- Only fold the exterior mirrors in or out when there is no obstacle in the path of the mirror.
- Always ensure that no fingers are caught between the exterior mirror and the foot of the mirror when the exterior mirror is moved.

## WARNING

If you estimate the distance from traffic behind you incorrectly, you can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Curved mirrors (convex or aspheric) enlarge the field of vision and can make objects in the mirror seem smaller and further away than they actually are.
- Using curved mirrors to estimate the distance from other vehicles behind you when changing lanes can provide inaccurate results and can lead to accidents and severe injuries.
- Whenever possible, use the interior mirror to check the exact distance between your vehicle and following traffic or other objects.
- Ensure that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.

## NOTICE

- Always fold in exterior mirrors before using an automatic car wash.
- Do not fold electrically folding exterior mirrors in or out manually as this can damage the electric motor.



The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed. Fuel is otherwise wasted.



Initially, the exterior mirror heating will heat at maximum temperature. After approximately two minutes, the temperature will be adjusted according to the ambient temperature.



In the event of a fault, the electric exterior mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the outer edge of the mirror.

## Protection from the sun

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Sun visors*

⇒ *Sun blind in the glass roof*

⇒ *Windscreen made of heat-insulating glass*

## WARNING

Driving with the sun visors folded down and the sun blinds pulled out can reduce your view of the road.

- Sun visors and sun blinds should always be replaced in their holder if they are not being used.

### Sun visors

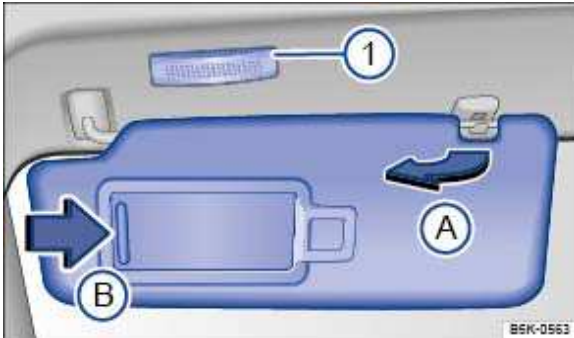


Fig. 118 In the front headliner: sun visor.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)


#### Various positions for the driver and front passenger sun visors:

- Folded down over the windscreen.
- Pulled out of the bracket and swung over towards the door ⇒ [Fig. 118](#) @.

#### Illuminated vanity mirror

There is a vanity mirror behind a cover on the inside of the sun visor. When you open the cover ⇒ [Fig. 118](#) @, a lamp ⇒ [Fig. 118](#) ① lights up.

The lamp goes out when the vanity mirror cover is pushed back or the sun visor is folded upwards or rotated forwards as far as it will go.

 In certain circumstances, the lamp above the sun visor will go out automatically after a few minutes. This prevents the battery from discharging.

### Sun blind in the glass roof

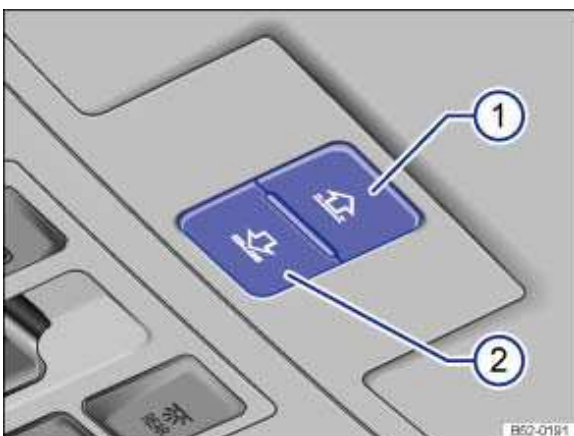


Fig. 119 In the headliner: button for controlling the sun blind.



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  **Introduction**

The electric sun blind works when the ignition is switched on.

When the glass roof is fully tilted, the sun blind is automatically moved to a ventilation position. The sun blind remains in the ventilation position even after the glass roof has closed.

## Opening and closing the sun blind


Buttons ⇒ Fig. 119 ①② have 2 positions. In the first position the sun blind can be completely or partially opened or closed.

In the second position, the sun blind automatically moves to the final position when the button is pressed briefly. Press the button again to stop the one-touch function.

- *Opening the sun blind:* Push button ① to position 1. One-touch function: Push the button ① briefly to position 2.
- *Closing the sun blind:* Push button ② to position 1. One-touch function: Push the button ② briefly to position 2.
- *Stopping one-stop function of the opening or closing procedure:* Push button ① or ② again.

The sun blind can be operated several minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided that the driver door and front passenger door are not opened.

## Roll-back function of the sun blind

The roll-back function can reduce the risk of crush injuries when closing the sun blind ⇒ . The glass roof or sun blind will open again immediately if the sun blind is unable to close because it is stiff or obstructed.

- Check to see why the sun blind has not closed.
- Try to close the sun blind again.
- The sun blind will open again immediately if it is still unable to close because it is stiff or obstructed. After opening, the sun blind can be closed again within a short period of time without the roll-back function.
- If the sun blind still cannot be closed, close it without the roll-back function.

## Closing the sun blind without the roll-back function

- Within approximately 5 seconds of the roll-back function being triggered, press and hold button ⇒ Fig. 119 ② until the sun blind has closed completely.
- **The sun blind will now close without the roll-back function.**
- Please go to a qualified workshop if the sun blind still cannot be closed.



### WARNING

**Closing the sun blind without the roll-back function can cause serious injuries.**

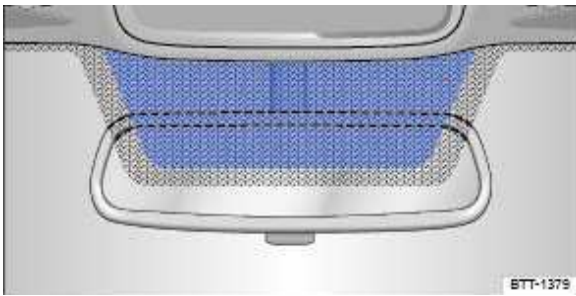
- **Always close the sun blind carefully.**
- **Ensure that nobody obstructs the path of the sun blind, especially if the roll-back function is not active.**
- **The roll-back function does not prevent fingers or other body parts from being pressed against the roof frame and sustaining injury.**



When the glass roof is open, the electric sun blind can be closed only up to the front edge of the glass roof.

## Windscreen made of heat-insulating glass





**Fig. 120** Windscreen made of heat-insulating glass: communication window above the interior mirror.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

With some equipment levels, windscreens made of heat-insulating glass may have an infrared-reflecting coating and can be heated.

There is a non-coated area above the interior mirror (communication window) ⇒ [Fig. 120](#) which ensures that electronic accessories, for example remote controls, can function properly.

The uncoated area should not be covered either from the outside or the inside, nor should any stickers be applied to this area as this could cause a malfunction in the electronic components.

## Heating and air conditioning system

### Heating, ventilation and cooling

#### [Introduction](#)

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ [Operation using the front controls](#)
- ⇒ [Climatronic operation via the infotainment system](#)
- ⇒ [Setting the temperature for the rear seats](#)
- ⇒ [Air recirculation mode](#)
- ⇒ [Vents](#)
- ⇒ [Seat heating](#)
- ⇒ [Windscreen heating](#)
- ⇒ [Steering wheel heating](#)
- ⇒ [Tips and operating information](#)

The following systems may be installed in your vehicle:

- Heating and fresh air system or
- manual air conditioning system or
- Climatronic.

The **heating and fresh air system** warms up and supplies fresh air to the vehicle interior. The heating and fresh air system does not cool down the vehicle interior.

The **manual air conditioning system** or **Climatronic** cools down and dehumidifies the air. It works most effectively when the windows and the glass roof are closed. If heat has built up in the vehicle interior, ventilating can speed up the cooling process.

#### How the vehicle displays active functions

Lit up LEDs on rotary knobs and buttons indicate that a function has been switched on.

If the checkbox in the function button on the infotainment system display is ticked , the function is switched on.



## WARNING

Poor visibility through the windows increases the risk of collisions and accidents, which can cause serious injuries.

- Keep all windows free of ice, snow and misting to ensure good visibility.
- Set the heating and fresh air system, air conditioning system and windscreen and rear window heating so that condensation does not build up on the windscreen, door windows and rear window.
- Only set off once all door windows, the windscreen and the rear window are clear.
- Use air recirculation mode only for short periods. If the cooling system is switched off, the door windows, rear window and windscreen can mist up very quickly in air recirculation mode and reduce visibility considerably.
- Switch off the air recirculation mode when it is no longer required.


## WARNING

Stale air can quickly make the driver tired and affect their concentration, which in turn can cause collisions, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never switch off the blowers or switch on the air recirculation mode for longer periods as this prevents fresh air from entering the vehicle interior.

## NOTICE

If the air conditioning system is not working, immediately switch off both the air conditioning system and defrost function (with a manual air conditioning system) and have the system checked by a qualified workshop. This can help to prevent secondary damage.

 You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation → *Instrument cluster*.

## Operation using the front controls



Fig. 121 In the upper part of the centre console: controls for the manual air conditioning system and/or heating and fresh air system.





Fig. 122 In the upper section of the centre console: Climatronic controls.




First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Some functions and buttons may vary according to the vehicle equipment and the type of system installed.

## Switching off

Proceed as follows to switch off the systems:

- Using the **OFF** button (vehicles without auxiliary heater).
- **OR:** by turning the middle rotary control anticlockwise to position  ⇒ [Fig. 121](#) or as far as it will go ⇒ [Fig. 122](#).
- **OR:** using the infotainment system ⇒ [Climatronic operation via the infotainment system](#).

## A/C – Cooling mode

Press the **A/C** button to switch the cooling mode of the manual air conditioning system or Climatronic on or off.

## AUTO –Automatic mode

Press the **AUTO** button to switch the Climatronic automatic mode on and off.

The automatic mode ensures constant temperatures in the vehicle interior. The air temperature, air quantity and air distribution are regulated automatically. The automatic mode is switched off as soon as you adjust the ventilation manually.

## MAXA/C – Maximum cooling

Switch on maximum cooling by turning the left rotary knob to the **MAXA/C** position or by pressing the **MAXA/C** button. Air recirculation mode is switched on automatically.

With Climatronic, the air distribution is set to  position.

## – Temperature

*Heating and fresh air system or manual air conditioning system:* adjust the temperature using the left rotary control ⇒ [Fig. 121](#).

*Climatronic:* use the outer rotary controls ⇒ [Fig. 122](#) to set the temperatures for the driver and front passenger sides. The displays above the outer rotary knobs show the set temperatures. Depending on the equipment level, you can also adjust the temperature for the rear seats ⇒ [Setting the temperature for the rear seats](#).

## – Blower

Adjust the power of the blower using the middle rotary control.


*Climatronic:* the blower speed is not indicated on the rotary control when the system is in automatic mode.


## Air distribution


Adjust the air distribution with the buttons ,  or  ⇒ [Fig. 122](#), or with the right rotary control ⇒ [Fig. 121](#):

: air distribution to the upper body via the air vents in the dash panel.



: air distribution to the footwell.

: air distribution to the upper body and the footwell.

: air distribution to the windscreen and the footwell.

: air distribution to the windscreen.


## – Defrosting the windscreen/the windows

Use the right rotary control  ⇒ Fig. 121 or the  button ⇒ Fig. 122 to defrost the windscreen as quickly as possible and clear condensation from the windows (defrost function):


*Manual air conditioning system:* in the defrost function, the air recirculation mode switches off and the air conditioning compressor for the cooling system switches on in order to dehumidify the air. Air recirculation mode cannot be switched on and the air conditioning compressor cannot be switched off while the defrost function is switched on<sup>1</sup>.

*Climatronic:* the air is dehumidified at temperatures above +3°C (+38°F) and the blower is set to a high blower speed.


## – Air recirculation mode


Press the  button to switch air recirculation mode on and off ⇒ *Air recirculation mode* .

## **MENU** – Infotainment system


You can access the air conditioning settings for Climatronic in the infotainment system using the  button ⇒ *Climatronic operation via the infotainment system* .

## **SYNC** – Synchronising the temperature settings

You can synchronise the temperature settings using the  button.



When the indicator lamp in the  button lights up, the temperature settings for the driver's seat are applied for all seats.

## **REST** – Residual heat


Use the  button to switch the residual heat function of Climatronic on and off.

If the ignition is switched off and the engine is warm, the residual heat from the engine is used to continue to heat the vehicle interior. The function switches off after 30 minutes and in case of low battery.


## – Seat heating

You can switch the seat heating on and off with the buttons  or  ⇒ *Seat heating* .


## – Steering wheel heating

Press the  button to switch the steering wheel heating on and off ⇒ *Steering wheel heating* .

## – Immediate heat button for auxiliary heater

Press the  button to switch the immediate heat function of the auxiliary heater on and off ⇒ *Auxiliary heating and ventilation* .

## – Rear window heating

Press the  button to switch the rear window heating on and off when the engine is running. The rear window heating will switch off after a maximum of 10 minutes.

### **NOTICE**

To prevent damage to the rear window heating system, do not put stickers over the heating elements on the inside of the window.


<sup>1)</sup> In some countries, the air conditioner compressor can be switched off.

## Climatronic operation via the infotainment system

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

### Opening the Air conditioning menu

Press the  button on the control panel.

### Display of air conditioning settings







The current air conditioning settings are shown in the top part of the display.







Cooling system operating conditions are highlighted in colour:

- Blue: cooling.
- Red: heating.
- Grey: ventilation (without heating or cooling).

### Operation via the infotainment system

Adjusting settings

- **OFF** – Switches Climatronic on and off.
- **SYNC** – Apply temperature settings of driver's seat to all seats.
-  – The temperature selectors at the rear are disabled ⇒ *Setting the temperature for the rear seats* .
- **Aircare** – Switches on and off ⇒ *Air recirculation mode* .
-  – Opens the auxiliary heater menu ⇒ *Auxiliary heating and ventilation* .
-  – Switches windshield heating on and off ⇒ *Windscreen heating* .
-  – Switches the steering wheel heating on and off ⇒ *Steering wheel heating* .
-  – Switches the seat heating on and off ⇒ *Seat heating* .
-  – Submenu for general settings:

- **Automatic auxiliary heater** – Activates/deactivates additional heating settings ⇒ *Fuel*.
- **Automatic air recirculation** – Switches automatic air recirculation mode on and off ⇒ *Air recirculation mode*.
- **Automatic windscreen heating** – Switches automatic windscreen heating on and off.
-  – Closes the submenu.
-  – Submenu for air conditioning settings:
  -  – Blower level.
  - **A/C** – Switches cooling system on and off.
  -  – Air distribution.
  -  – Switches air recirculation mode on and off.
- **Presettings** – Submenu for presettings:
  - **AUTO** – Switches automatic mode on.
  - **MAX A/C** – Switches maximum cooling output on or off.
  - **MAX**  – Switches defrost function on or off.
  - **manuel** – Display for manual control of the cooling system.
- **Air conditioning profile** – Sets the blower speed in **AUTO** mode. You can choose between **Low**, **Medium** and **High**.

## Setting the temperature for the rear seats



---




Fig. 123 In the rear centre console: controls for setting the temperature for the rear seats.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Set the temperature for the rear seats using the  or  ⇒ Fig. 123 buttons or using the infotainment system.

- Open the **Air conditioning** menu on the infotainment system display.
- Touch the function button for the temperature of the rear seat row.
- Adjust the temperature by means of the  or  function buttons.
- Touch the function button for the temperature of the rear seat row once more.

The display now shows the set temperature.

 If the **REAR** function button has been activated in the infotainment system, the rear controls are locked. It is no longer possible to adjust the temperature and increase the power of the seat heating.


## Air recirculation mode

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)




In air recirculation mode, no outside air enters the vehicle interior.

### Manual air recirculation mode

Press the  button on the control panel to switch the manual air recirculation mode on or off.


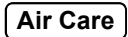

### Automatic air recirculation mode (Climatronic only)

In automatic air recirculation mode, fresh air will enter the vehicle interior. The air recirculation mode will switch on automatically if the system detects an increase in the concentration of noxious substances in the outside air. The air recirculation mode will switch off as soon as this level has returned to normal. The system cannot detect unpleasant odours.


- Press the  button on the control panel.
- Touch the  function button on the infotainment system display.
- Switch the automatic air recirculation mode on or off by touching the  function button.



### Air recirculation mode with Air Care Climatronic

The vehicle is fitted with an allergen filter. The Air Care function of the Climatronic system can further increase the effectiveness of the allergen filter. Upon activation, the air recirculation mode of the air conditioning system is maximised as far as possible taking into account the misting risk of the windows based on the interior humidity and outside temperature. The amount of recirculated air is regulated automatically and includes continuous adaptation of the amount of recirculated air in order to prevent fatigue of the vehicle occupants.

- Press the  button on the control panel.
- Touch the  function button on the infotainment system display.
- Switch the Air Care function on or off by touching the  function button.

### When is the air recirculation mode deactivated?

Air recirculation mode switches off in the following situations →  :

- The  button on the control panel is pressed (in vehicles with Climatronic) or the air distribution regulator is moved to the  position (in vehicles with a manual air conditioning system).
- A sensor detects the danger of condensation building up on the windscreen, door windows or rear window.


## WARNING


Stale air can quickly make the driver tired and affect their concentration, which in turn can cause collisions, accidents and serious injuries.

- Never use the air recirculation mode for an extended period as no fresh air will enter the vehicle interior.
- If the cooling system is switched off, the door windows, rear windows and windscreen can mist up very quickly in air recirculation mode and reduce visibility considerably.
- Switch off the air recirculation mode when it is no longer required.

## NOTICE

In vehicles with an air conditioning system, do not smoke when the air recirculation mode is switched on. The smoke can leave a residue on the evaporator and the dust and pollen filter with pollution filter insert, producing a lasting unpleasant odour.

 When reversing the vehicle, or when the wash and wipe system is being used, the air recirculation mode will switch on temporarily to prevent odours from entering the vehicle interior.

 If the outside temperature is very high, the manual air recirculation mode should be activated for a short time in order to cool the vehicle interior more quickly.

## Vents





Fig. 124 In the dash panel: vents.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The vents must remain open to ensure sufficient heating output, cooling and fresh air supply to the vehicle interior.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 124 :

 Adjustable vents: turn the thumb wheel in the desired direction to open and close the vents. The vent is closed in the  position. Adjust the air flow direction using the handle in the air intake grille.

 Fixed vents.

Further vents are located in the footwells and in the rear of the vehicle interior.

## NOTICE







Do not place any food, medicine or any other temperature-sensitive items in front of the vents. Heat-sensitive food, medicine and other items could be either damaged or rendered useless.

## Seat heating

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The seat cushions and backrests can be heated electrically when the ignition is switched on.

- *Switching on:* press the  or  button on the control unit. The seat heating is switched on with the maximum heating output. All indicator lamps light up.
- *Adjusting:* repeatedly press the  or  button until the desired level has been set.
- *Switching off:* press the  or  button until the indicator lamps in the button no longer light up.

The seat heating systems will be switched off when the ignition is switched off. If the ignition is turned on again within roughly 10 minutes, the most recent driver seat temperature setting is automatically activated.

### When is it not advisable to switch on the seat heating?

Do not switch on the seat heating if one of the following conditions applies:

- The seat is not occupied.
- The seat is fitted with a protective cover.
- A child seat is installed on the seat.
- The seat cushion is damp or wet.
- The interior or exterior temperature is above +25°C (77°F).



## WARNING

Anyone experiencing reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature due to medication, paralysis or chronic illness (e.g. diabetes) could sustain burns on the back, buttocks and legs when using the seat heating. These burns may take a long time to heal or may never heal fully. Please consult a doctor if you have questions about your own state of health.

- Anyone experiencing reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature should never use the seat heating.

## WARNING

Wet upholstery can cause a fault in the seat heating and increase the risk of burns.

- Ensure that the seat cushion is dry before the seat heating is used.
- Do not sit on the seat when wearing damp or wet clothing.
- Do not set any damp or wet objects or items of clothing on the seat.
- Do not spill any liquids on the seat.

## NOTICE

- To avoid damaging the heating elements, do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point on the seat cushion and backrest.
- Liquids, sharp objects and insulating materials such as a protective cover or child seat could damage the seat heating.
- If the system starts to produce an odour, switch off the seat heating immediately and have it checked by a qualified workshop.



The seat heating should be switched off as soon as it is no longer needed. Fuel is otherwise wasted.




## Windscreen heating



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The windscreen heating works when the engine is running.




### Manual windscreen heating

- *Manual air conditioning system:* press the  button in the infotainment system.
- *Climatronic:* press the  button on the control panel.
- Touch the  function button to switch the windscreen heating on or off.

The windscreen heating switches itself off depending on the outside temperature or after 8 minutes at the latest.


### Automatic windscreen heating

The windscreen heating switches on automatically if there is a risk of condensation building up on the windscreen or windows.

- Press the  button on the control panel.
- Press the  function button in the infotainment system.
- Switch automatic windscreen heating on or off by touching the  function button.

The automatic windscreen heating is also active when the air conditioning system is switched off.

## Windscreen heating using the defrost function

The front windscreen heating is switched on when the defrost function is switched on via the  button, and when there is a chance that a window might mist up.

## Switch-off conditions

The windscreen heating will switch off automatically when **one** of the following conditions applies:

- If the current consumption is too high.
- Malfunctions in the air conditioning system.
- After the time specified has elapsed.




## Steering wheel heating

---





 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The steering wheel heating works when the engine is running.



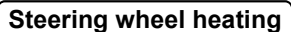
## Switching steering wheel heating on and off automatically via the infotainment system

- *Manual air conditioning system*: press the  button in the infotainment system.
- *Climatronic*: press the  button on the control panel.
- Touch the  function button to switch the steering wheel heating on or off.

## Switching the steering wheel heating on or off together with the seat heating (only in vehicles with Climatronic)

- Press the  button on the control panel.
- Press the  function button in the infotainment system.
- Press the  function button to specify whether the steering wheel heating should be switched on or off in conjunction with the seat heating.
- Press the  button to switch the steering wheel heating on or off in conjunction with the seat heating.

## Selecting a temperature setting (only in vehicles with Climatronic)

- Press the  button on the control panel.
- Press the  function button.
- Press the  function button to select a temperature level.

You can choose from 3 different temperature levels. The selected setting will remain stored after the ignition has been switched off. The temperature setting for the steering wheel heating is unrelated to the temperature setting for the seat heating.

## Switch-off conditions

The steering wheel heating will switch off automatically when **one** of the following conditions applies:

- After the seat heating for the driver seat has been switched off (when the relevant function has been activated).
- If the current consumption is too high.

- Faults in the steering wheel heating system.

## Tips and operating information

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

The following tips and operating information will help you use the system correctly.

### Why does the cooling system switch off automatically or cannot be switched on?

- The engine is not running.
- The blower is switched off.
- The air conditioning system fuse has blown.
- The ambient temperature is lower than approximately +3°C (+38°F).
- The air conditioning compressor of the cooling system has been temporarily switched off because the coolant temperature is too high.
- There is a different fault in the vehicle. The air conditioning system should be checked by a qualified workshop.

### Settings for optimal road visibility

- Keep the air intake in front of the windscreen free of ice, snow and leaves to improve the heating and cooling output and prevent condensation from building up on the windscreen, door windows and rear window.
- Do not cover the air vents in the rear of the luggage compartment to allow air to flow through the vehicle from the front to the rear.
- The maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows as quickly as possible, is only available when the coolant has reached its operating temperature.

### Recommended setup for the heating and fresh air system and manual air conditioning system

- Switch off air recirculation mode.
- Set the blower to speed **1** or **2**.
- Adjust the temperature selector to the middle position.
- Open all vents in the dash panel and adjust their directions.
- Turn the air distribution regulator to the desired position.
- *Manual air conditioning system:* press the **A/C** button on the control panel to switch on the cooling system. In cooling mode, the air is dehumidified.

### Recommended Climatronic setup

- Press the **AUTO** button on the control panel.
- Set the temperature to +22°C (+72°F).
- Open the vents in the dash panel and adjust their directions.

### Filter systems

Different filter systems may be installed depending on the equipment level:

- *Dust and pollen filter:* vehicles with heating and fresh air system and manual air conditioning system.
- *Air Care Climatronic:* vehicles with Climatronic with 3-zone temperature control and allergen filter.

The dust and pollen filter with activated charcoal reduces the level of impurities in the outside air entering the vehicle. The allergen filter of Air Care Climatronic can additionally reduce the amount of pollutants and also allergens that enter the vehicle interior.

The filters must be changed regularly to avoid impairing the performance of the air conditioning system.

If you drive the vehicle frequently when the outside air is heavily polluted, the filter may need to be replaced between services.

## Water under the vehicle

If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the cooling system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and does not indicate a leak.

# Auxiliary heating and ventilation

## Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Switching the auxiliary heater on and off*
- ⇒ *Remote control*
- ⇒ *Programming the auxiliary heater*

The auxiliary heater is supplied with fuel from the vehicle fuel tank and can be used when the vehicle is in motion or stationary.

The auxiliary heater ventilates the vehicle interior in the summer or clears the windscreen of ice, mist or a thin layer of snow in the winter.

## Auxiliary heater exhaust system

The emissions produced by the auxiliary heater are removed via an exhaust pipe fitted underneath the vehicle. The exhaust pipe must not be blocked by snow, mud or other objects.

### WARNING

The fumes from the auxiliary heater contain among other things carbon monoxide, which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness. It can also cause death.

- Never start or run the auxiliary heater in unventilated or closed rooms.
- Never programme the auxiliary heater so that it is switched on and run in unventilated or enclosed spaces.

### WARNING

Parts of the auxiliary heater exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires.

- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.

### NOTICE

Do not place any food, medicine or any other temperature-sensitive items in front of the vents. Heat-sensitive food, medicine and other items could be either damaged or rendered useless.

## Switching the auxiliary heater on and off


---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Switching on the auxiliary heater




The auxiliary heater can be switched on in the following ways:

- Manually with the immediate heat button  on the control panel ⇒ [Heating and air conditioning system](#).
- Manually with the remote control ⇒ [Remote control](#).
- Automatically with a programmed and activated departure time ⇒ [Programming the auxiliary heater](#).

The auxiliary heater cannot be switched on if the charge level of the vehicle battery is too low or if the fuel tank is empty.

### Switching off the auxiliary heater

The auxiliary heater can be switched off in the following ways:

- Manually with the immediate heat button  on the control panel ⇒ [Heating and air conditioning system](#).
- Manually with the remote control ⇒ [Remote control](#).
- Manually by touching the function button on the infotainment system display ⇒ [Programming the auxiliary heater](#).
- Automatically when the programmed departure time is reached, or after the programmed operating period has elapsed ⇒ [Programming the auxiliary heater](#).
- Automatically if the indicator lamp  or  lights up (fuel gauge) ⇒ [Filling the tank](#).
- Automatically if the charge level of the vehicle battery is too low ⇒ [Vehicle battery](#).

The auxiliary heater runs on for a short time after it is switched off so that the remaining fuel in the system can be burnt off. The exhaust gases from the system are also released into the outside air.



When the vehicle is at a standstill, the auxiliary heater can be activated up to three times in succession for the maximum operating duration. The vehicle needs to be moved before you can use the auxiliary heater again.



Operating noises can be heard if the auxiliary heater is switched on.



The vehicle battery will discharge if the auxiliary heater runs several times in an extended period. Drive the vehicle for an appropriate distance in order to recharge the vehicle battery. As a rule of thumb, drive the vehicle for the length of time you ran the system.



If you park the vehicle on an upwards or downwards slope when the fuel tank level is low (just above reserve level), the auxiliary heater functions may be limited.



The auxiliary heater may switch on automatically when the engine is started at temperatures below +5°C (+41°F). The auxiliary heater switches off again automatically after a short time.



At high levels of humidity in the outside air, but at low temperatures, condensation from the heating and fresh air system may evaporate through the active auxiliary heater. If this is the case, steam may appear underneath the vehicle. The vehicle is not damaged.

## Remote control

---

1

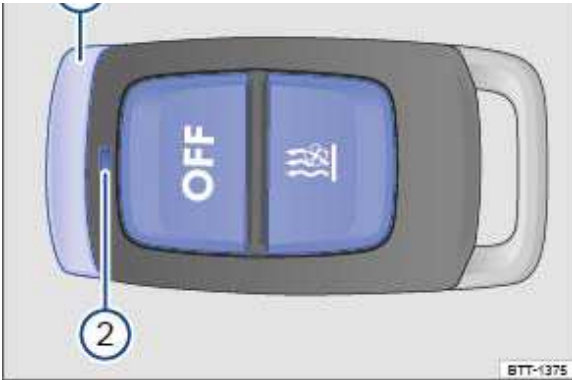


Fig. 125 Auxiliary heater: remote control.

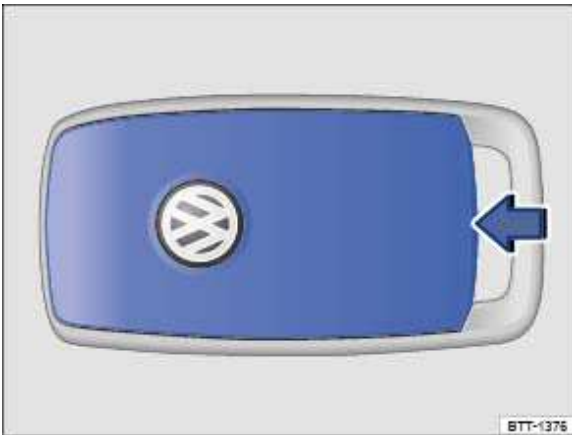




Fig. 126 Auxiliary heater: battery cover for the remote control.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

### Switching the auxiliary heater on and off

- *Switching on:* press the  button ⇒ Fig. 125. If the indicator lamp lights up green for approximately 2 seconds, the auxiliary heater is switched on.
- *Switching off:* press the  button. If the indicator lamp lights up red for approximately 2 seconds, the auxiliary heater is switched off.

### Indicator lamp in the remote control

The indicator lamp ⇒ Fig. 125 ② will give you feedback on various situations after you press a button.

Operation of the auxiliary heater has been disabled if the indicator lamp flashes green *irregularly* for approximately 5 seconds. The fuel tank is nearly empty, the charge level of the vehicle battery is too low or there is a fault. Refuel, drive a sufficient distance in order to charge the vehicle battery or go to a qualified workshop.

If the indicator lamp flashes red or green *regularly* for approximately 4 seconds, the signal has not been received. Move closer to the vehicle.

If the button cell (battery) in the remote control is weak, the indicator lamp will light up orange for around two seconds and then light up (switch on or off signal received) red or green respectively. The button cell should be replaced because the range may be reduced.

### Range

The remote control has a range of several hundred metres when the button cell is fully charged. The range of the remote control can be considerably reduced by obstacles between the remote control and the vehicle, bad weather conditions and a weak button cell.

The distance between the remote control and the vehicle must be *at least* 2 metres.

An optimal range is achieved when you hold the remote control with the aerial ⇒ [Fig. 125](#) ① vertically upwards. Do not cover the aerial.

## Changing the button cell in the remote control

If the indicator lamp in the remote control flashes quickly orange for approximately 6 seconds when the button is pressed, or does not light up, the button cell in the remote control needs to be replaced.

Volkswagen recommends having the button cell changed at a Volkswagen dealership or by a qualified workshop. Use brand-name batteries if possible in order to ensure the optimum battery life.

- Insert a suitable object, e.g. screwdriver, into the recess at the side in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 126](#).
- Lever open the battery cover in upward direction with this object.
- Push the battery cover slightly in the direction of the arrow.
- Remove the battery cover.
- Remove the button cell.
- Replace the button cell with another one of the same type. Ensure that the button cell is fitted the right way round.
- Insert the battery cover in the remote control housing.
- Push the battery cover in the opposite direction to the arrow until it engages in position.

### DANGER

Swallowing batteries with a diameter of 20 mm, or other button cells, can result in severe or even fatal injuries within a very short period of time.

- Always keep the remote control key, key ring with batteries, spare batteries, round cells and other batteries that are larger than 20 mm out of the reach of children.
- Call for medical help immediately you suspect that someone has swallowed a battery.

### NOTICE

- The remote control contains electronic components. Protect the remote control from moisture, excessive vibration and direct sunlight.
- Unsuitable batteries can damage the remote control. Only replace discharged batteries with a new battery of the same voltage rating, size and specification.
- Ensure that the battery is fitted the right way round.



Dispose of discharged batteries in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.



The battery in the remote control may contain perchlorate. Please comply with legislation regarding disposal.




## Programming the auxiliary heater



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

## Opening the Auxiliary heater menu







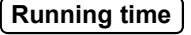


The auxiliary heater is programmed in the infotainment system.

- *Manual air conditioning system:* press the  button in the infotainment system.
- *Climatronic:* press the  button on the control panel.
- Touch the  function button.

## Programming the auxiliary heater

Activation is for one heating period only. The departure time must be activated for every start.


**Before** programming, check that the date and time set in the vehicle are correct.

-  – switch off auxiliary heater immediately.
-  ,  – Using  , set whether the vehicle interior should be heated or ventilated when the auxiliary heater is switched on.
-  – open the **Set auxiliary heater** menu.
  -  – program up to three departure times (hh.mm). If you want to switch on the auxiliary heater only on a certain day of the week, select the day of the week in addition to the departure time.
  -  – set the running time when the auxiliary heater is switched on with the immediate heat button  or using the remote control. The running time is also used to determine the departure time in vehicles with manual air conditioning system. The running time is 10 to 60 minutes.
-  – back to the main menu.

*Manual air conditioning system:* the programmed departure time determines the time at which the auxiliary heater should switch off. The point at which the auxiliary heater begins the heating process depends on the programmed operating period.

*Climatronic:* the programmed departure time determines the time at which the set temperature should be reached in the vehicle. The point at which the auxiliary heater begins the heating process is determined automatically in relation to the exterior temperature.

## Programming check

If a departure time has been activated, the indicator lamp in the immediate heat button  on the Climatronic control panel will light up for approximately 10 seconds after the ignition is switched off.

### **WARNING**

**Never programme the auxiliary heating system so that is switched on and run in unventilated or enclosed spaces. The fumes from the auxiliary heater contain among other things carbon monoxide, which is an odourless and colourless poisonous gas. Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness. It can also cause death.**

## Driving

### Notes on driving

#### **Introduction**


This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:



- ⇒ *Driving through water on roads*
- ⇒ *Pedals*
- ⇒ *Gear-change indicator*
- ⇒ *Things to note with engaged reverse gear*
- ⇒ *Driving economically*
- ⇒ *Driving in a fuel-efficient manner*
- ⇒ *Think Blue. Trainer.*
- ⇒ *Information on the brakes*
- ⇒ *Driving a loaded vehicle*
- ⇒ *Driving with an open boot lid*
- ⇒ *Running in the engine*
- ⇒ *Using the vehicle in other countries and continents*

## **WARNING**

Driving with worn brake pads or with a faulty brake system can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- If the warning lamp  lights up either individually or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately, have the brake pads checked and any worn brake pads replaced.

## **WARNING**

Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and skidding, particularly on slippery roads. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- The kickdown function or fast acceleration should only be used if the visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

## Driving through water on roads

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

## Checklist

---

Please follow these rules to help prevent damage to your vehicle when driving through water, for example if the road is flooded:

- ✓ Check the depth of the water before driving through it. The water level must be no higher than the lower edge of the vehicle body Dimensions .
- ✓ Do not drive faster than walking speed.
- ✓ Never stop the vehicle, reverse or switch off the engine while in water.
- ✓ Oncoming vehicles will create waves that could increase the water level for your vehicle to such an extent that it is not safe to drive through the water.
- ✓ Always deactivate the start/stop system manually when driving through water Start/stop system.

## WARNING

After driving through water, mud, slush etc., the brakes may react slowly and the braking distance will be increased as the brake discs and pads will be wet, or possibly iced up in winter.

- You can dry and de-ice the brakes by performing careful braking manoeuvres. Ensure that you do not endanger any other road users or violate any legal regulations when doing so.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden braking manoeuvres directly after driving through water.

## NOTICE

- If you drive through water, parts of the vehicle, such as the engine, drive train, running gear and vehicle electrics, can sustain severe damage.
- Never drive through salt water as salt can cause corrosion. Rinse all components that have been exposed to salt water immediately with fresh water.

## Pedals

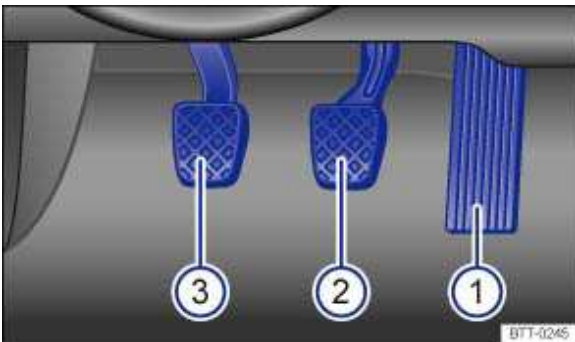


Fig. 127 Pedals in vehicles with a manual gearbox: ① accelerator, ② brake pedal, ③ clutch pedal.

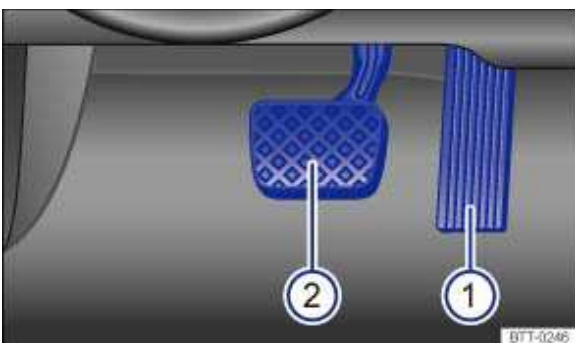


Fig. 128 Pedals in vehicles with a dual clutch gearbox: ① accelerator, ② brake pedal.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The operation and freedom of movement of all pedals must never be impaired by objects or floor mats.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be securely fastened in the footwell.

If a brake circuit fails, you will have to depress the brake pedal further than normal in order to bring the vehicle to a stop.

## WARNING

Objects in the driver footwell can hinder pedal operation. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious injury.

- Please ensure that all pedals can always be operated without any hindrance.
- The floor mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.
- No additional floor mats or other floor coverings should be placed over the fitted floor mat.
- Ensure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- If there are any objects in the footwell, remove them when the vehicle is parked.

## NOTICE

The pedals must be freely operable at all times. For example, a larger brake pedal travel will be necessary in order to stop the vehicle if a brake circuit fails. The brake pedal will have to be depressed further and harder than normal.

## Gear-change indicator

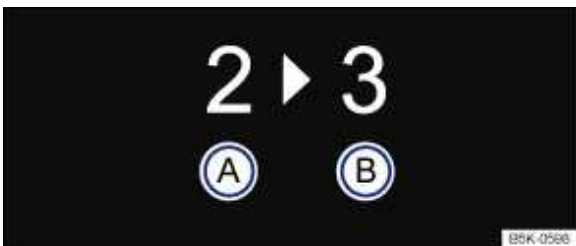



Fig. 129 On the instrument cluster display: gear-change indicator.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The instrument cluster display may, depending on the vehicle's equipment level, indicate which gear should be selected to reduce fuel consumption while the vehicle is in motion.

In vehicles with *DSG*<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox, the selector lever must also be in the Tiptronic position ⇒ [Changing gear using Tiptronic](#) .

Key to ⇒ [Fig. 129](#) :

 Currently selected gear.

 Recommended gear.

No recommended gear is indicated if the most suitable gear is already selected. The currently selected gear is displayed.

## Information on cleaning the diesel particulate filter

The exhaust management system detects when a diesel particulate filter is filling up and aids the filter's self-cleaning process by recommending the most suitable gear when driving. This may mean driving with increased engine speed in exceptional cases ⇒ [Engine management system and exhaust purification system](#) .

## CAUTION

The gear-change indicator is only designed to assist the driver and cannot replace the driver's own judgement.

- The driver has full responsibility for selecting the correct gear in all situations (e.g. when overtaking, driving up and down hills ⇒ *Towing a trailer* and when towing a trailer).



Driving in the correct gear can help to reduce fuel consumption.



Gear-change indicator display goes out when the clutch is depressed in vehicles with a manual gearbox or when Tiptronic position is deselected in vehicles with a DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox.

## Things to note with engaged reverse gear



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ *Introduction*

- The reverse light comes on.
- The Climatronic switches automatically to air recirculation mode when the vehicle is reversing.
- The ParkPilot, the ParkPilot display and the rear view camera system (Rear View) are switched on as required.
- The rear window wiper is switched on if the windscreen wipers are switched on.

## Driving economically



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ *Introduction*

The fuel consumption, pollution and wear of the engine, brakes and tyres are reduced by an appropriate driving style. A few tips are provided below which will help you protect the environment and also save money.

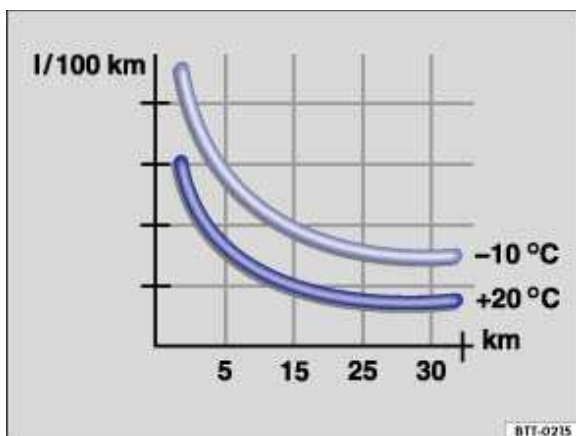


Fig. 130 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at two different outside temperatures.

## Think ahead when driving

The fuel consumption will increase if you do not adopt a steady driving style. It is possible to avoid frequent acceleration and braking by paying careful attention to the traffic situation on the road. Keeping a sufficient distance from the vehicle in front will help you anticipate the driving situation.

Cruise control system ⇒ *Cruise control system*.

Allow the vehicle to coast to a stop with engaged gear in order to exploit the engine braking effect, e.g. when approaching a traffic light.

### **Change gears in an energy-saving way**

Early upshifts at an engine speed of 2,000 rpm save energy. Do not drive gears to the limit and avoid high revs.

Manual gearbox: change from first to second gear immediately after driving off. Change to higher gears rapidly.

Automatic gearbox: accelerate slowly and avoid activating the kickdown function.

Gear change indicator ⇒ [Notes on driving](#) .

Eco driving profile ⇒ [Driving Profile Selection](#) .

### **Avoid full throttle**

Never fully use the maximum speed of the vehicle. The drag coefficient increases at excessively high speeds. This in turn increases the force needed to move the vehicle, e.g. at speeds above 130 km/h on the motorway.

### **Reduce idling**

Drive off immediately with low revs. If you are stopped for a long period, do not allow the engine to idle but switch it off, e.g. when in a traffic jam or at a railway crossing.

In vehicles with an activated start/stop system, the engine will switch off automatically when the vehicle is stationary ⇒ [Start/stop system](#) .

### **Refuel with moderation**

A full fuel tank increases the weight of the vehicle. A fuel tank that is half to three-quarters full is sufficient particularly for urban driving.

### **Avoid short journeys**

A cold engine has a very high fuel consumption. The optimum operating temperature is reached only after driving a few miles. The fuel consumption is above average at very low ambient temperatures, e.g. in winter ⇒ [Fig. 130](#) . Plan journeys economically and combine short distances.

### **Carry out regular maintenance**

Regular maintenance, e.g. of the engine management system or air filter, is a precondition for economic driving and also increases the service life of the vehicle.

### **Observe the correct tyre pressures**

An inadequate tyre pressure does not just mean greater wear, but also increases the rolling resistance of the tyres and thus the fuel consumption. Use optimised rolling resistance tyres.

Adjust the tyre pressure according to the vehicle load. Observe the information on the tyre pressure sticker ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .

Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator or tyre monitoring system ⇒ [Tyre monitoring system](#) .

## Use low viscosity engine oil

Fully synthetic engine oils with a low viscosity decrease frictional resistance in the engine and spread better and more quickly, especially for cold starts.

## Do not drive with unnecessary loads in the vehicle

The fuel consumption can be reduced if you tidy up the luggage compartment before a journey, e.g. remove empty drinks crates or child seats that are not needed.

In order to keep the drag coefficient of the vehicle as low as possible, remove attachments and add-on parts such as ski, bicycle or roof carriers after use.

## Save electrical energy

The alternator is driven by the engine and generates electric power for convenience systems such as the air conditioning system, window heating or ventilation. Saving electrical energy is easy, e.g.:

- At high ambient temperatures, ventilate the car before starting a journey and drive a short distance with open window. Only then switch on the air conditioning system.
- Switch off convenience systems as soon as they have served their purpose.



## WARNING

Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.



Inform yourself about other ways of protecting the environment. Think Blue. is the global Volkswagen brand for sustainability and environmental friendliness.



Your Volkswagen dealership will gladly provide you with further information on correct maintenance and replacement parts that are particularly energy-efficient, e.g. new tyres.



On vehicles with active cylinder management (ACT<sup>®</sup>), individual engine cylinders can be deactivated in driving situations with a low power requirement. When a cylinder is deactivated, no fuel is injected into that cylinder, which leads to an overall reduction in fuel consumption.

## Driving in a fuel-efficient manner

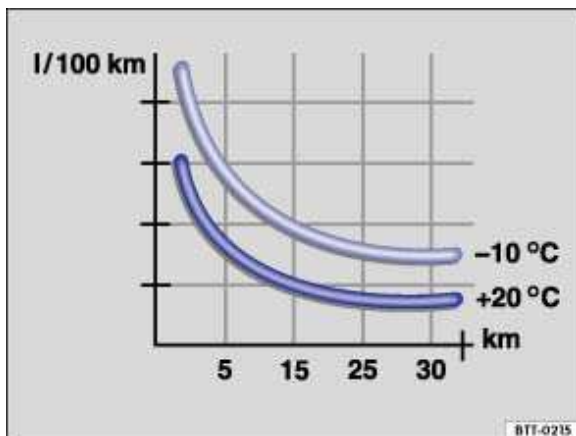


Fig. 131 Fuel consumption in litres per 100 km at two different outside temperatures.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Cars use most fuel when accelerating. If you think ahead when driving, you will need to brake less and thus accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the car roll slowly to a stop, for instance when you can see that the next traffic lights are red.

### **Avoid short journeys**

The engine will consume considerably more fuel immediately after a cold start. The engine reaches its working temperature after a few kilometres, when fuel consumption will return to a normal level.

The engine and catalytic converter need to reach their proper **working temperature** in order to minimise fuel consumption and emissions. The **outside temperature** is a key factor.

The different rates of fuel consumption for the same distance at both +20°C (+68°F) and at -10°C (+14°F) are shown in ⇒ [Fig. 131](#) .

Therefore, avoid making too many short journeys and car share whenever possible.

Under the same conditions, the vehicle will use more fuel in winter than in summer.

From a technical viewpoint, idling the engine to warm it up is unnecessary and wastes fuel. It is even prohibited by law in some countries.

### **Adjust the tyre pressure**

The correct tyre pressure reduces rolling resistance and therefore also fuel consumption.

Make sure that any new tyres purchased have optimised rolling resistance ⇒ [Wheels and tyres](#) .

### **Use low viscosity engine oils**

Fully synthetic low viscosity engine oils reduce fuel consumption. Low viscosity engine oils decrease frictional resistance in the engine and spread better and more quickly, especially for cold starts. They are especially effective in vehicles that make a lot of short journeys.

Always ensure that the engine oil level is correct and that you keep to the service intervals (oil change intervals).

When buying engine oil, always ensure that it complies with engine oil norms and has been approved by Volkswagen.

### **Avoid unnecessary loads**

Lighter vehicles are more economical and have lower environmental impact.

Remove all unnecessary objects and loads from the vehicle.

### **Remove any unnecessary special equipment and accessories**

The more aerodynamic a vehicle, the lower its fuel consumption. Special equipment and accessories, such as roof carriers or bicycle carriers, make the vehicle less aerodynamic.

You should therefore remove any special equipment and luggage carriers that are not in use, especially if you are going to be driving at high speeds.

## **Think Blue. Trainer.**

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The Think Blue. Trainer analyses and visualises your driving style and helps you to drive more economically.

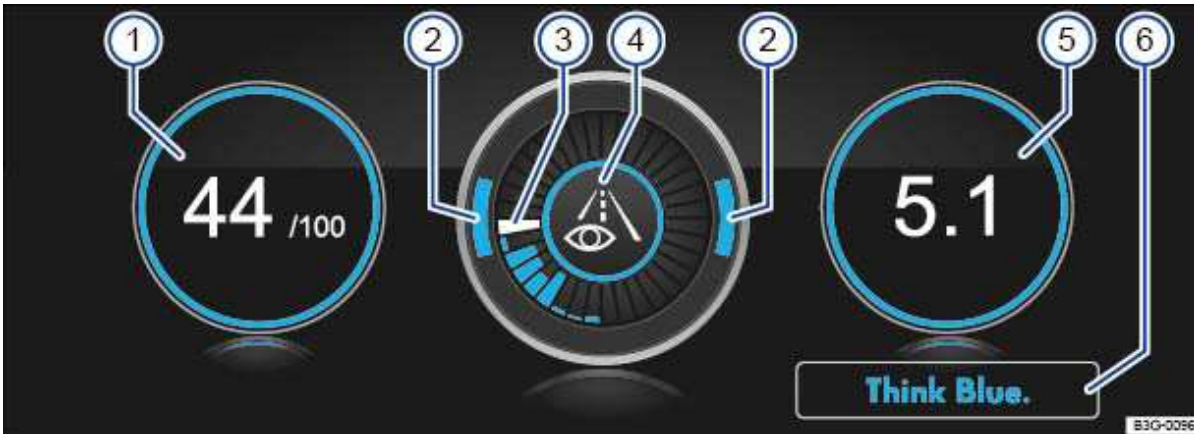


Fig. 132 In the infotainment system: Think Blue. Trainer.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 132 :

- ① Blue Score: The higher the displayed value on a scale from 0 to 100, the more efficient your driving style. A blue border symbolises an efficient and constant driving style. A grey border indicates an inefficient driving style. Touch the display to open the statistics of the last 30 driving minutes **Since start**.
- ② Acceleration and braking: At a constant speed, the two arcs appear in the central area. The arcs move up and down during acceleration and braking.
- ③ History display: The efficiency of the driving style is indicated by the blue bars. The white bar saves a blue bar around every five seconds. The larger the bar, the more efficient the driving style has been.
- ④ Driving tips: Think ahead when driving. Gear-change indicator. Adapt your speed. **eco** Economic driving style.
- ⑤ Fuel consumption: The display shows the average fuel consumption **Since start** in l/100 km. A blue border symbolises an efficient and constant driving style. A grey border indicates an inefficient driving style. Touch the display to open the statistics of the last 30 driving minutes **Since start**.
- ⑥ Tips for saving energy: Press the **Think Blue.** function button to access additional tips.

### Selecting Think Blue. Trainer.

- Press the **CAR** button in the infotainment system repeatedly until the Think Blue. Trainer. is displayed.
- **OR:** press the **CAR** button in the infotainment system.
- Touch the function button.
- Press the **Think Blue. Trainer.** button.

### WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the infotainment system can distract you from the road.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.




## Information on the brakes


---





First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

**New brake pads** cannot generate the full braking effect during the first 200 to 300 km (124 to 186 miles) and must first be run in ⇒ . However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. **During the run-in period, the braking distance is longer when the brakes are depressed fully or during emergency braking** than with brakes that have been fully run in. In the run-in period, the brakes should not be depressed fully and situations that create a heavy load on the brakes should be avoided. For example, when driving too close to the vehicle ahead.


The **rate of wear** of the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is used for regular urban trips, short journeys, and is driven with a sporty driving style, the brake pads must be checked by a qualified workshop more regularly.

When driving with **wet brakes**, for example after driving through water, after heavy rainfall or after washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed as the brake discs will be wet, or possibly iced up (in winter). The brakes must be dried as quickly as possible by careful braking at higher speed. Ensure that no vehicle behind you or no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action ⇒ .

Any **salt layer accumulating on the discs and pads** will delay the braking effect and increase the braking distance. If the brakes on the vehicle have not been applied for a long time on roads that have been gritted with salt, the layer of salt must be reduced through careful braking ⇒ .


**Corrosion** on the brake discs and **dirt** in the brake pads are facilitated through long periods of inactivity, low mileage and low load levels. If the brake pads have been hardly used, or if they are at all corroded, Volkswagen recommends that the brake discs and brake pads be cleaned by braking strongly several times from high speed. Ensure that no vehicle behind you or no other road user is put at risk as a result of this action ⇒ .

### Fault in the brake system

A brake circuit may have failed if you have to reduce speed and the vehicle does not brake as normal (sudden increase in braking distance). This will be indicated by the warning lamp  and in some cases a text message. Go to the nearest qualified workshop immediately to have the fault corrected. Drive at low speed when doing this and anticipate much longer braking distances and an increase in the pressure required on the pedal.

### Brake servo

The brake servo will only function when the engine is running and reinforces the pressure applied by the driver on the brake pedal.

If the brake servo is not functioning or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal will have to be depressed more forcefully as the braking distance will be increased due to the lack of assistance for the brake system ⇒ .

## WARNING

New brake pads will not have the optimal braking effect when first fitted.

- New brake pads cannot generate the full braking effect during the first 300 km (186 miles) and must first be run in. A reduced braking effect can be increased by applying more pressure to the brake pedal.
- You must drive particularly carefully when driving with new brake pads in order to reduce the risk of accidents, serious injuries and loss of control of the vehicle.
- Never drive too close to other vehicles when running in new brake pads, and never create a driving situation that will place a heavy load on the brakes.

## WARNING

Overheated brakes reduce the braking effect and considerably increase the braking distance.

- When driving downhill the brakes are placed under particular strain and become hot very quickly.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear or move the selector lever to a lower position. This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes.
- Non-standard or damaged front spoilers could restrict the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat.

## WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react more slowly and require longer braking distances.

- Carefully apply the brakes to test them.
- Always dry brakes and clean off any coating of ice and salt with a few cautious applications of the brake when visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit.

## WARNING

Driving without the brake servo can considerably increase the braking distance and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never switch the engine or ignition off while the vehicle is in motion.
- If the brake servo does not function or the vehicle is being towed, the brake pedal will have to be depressed more forcefully as the braking distance will be increased due to the lack of assistance for the brake system.



## WARNING

Never ride the brake pedal. Do not overuse the brake pedal. Constant braking will cause the brakes to overheat. This can considerably reduce the brake effect, increase the braking distance and, in certain circumstances, cause the brake system to fail completely.



## NOTICE

- Never let the brakes rub by applying light pressure to the brake when it is not necessary to brake. Continual pressure on the brake pedal will cause the brakes to overheat. This can considerably reduce the brake effect, increase the braking distance and, in certain circumstances, cause the brake system to fail completely.
- Before driving down a long, steep gradient, reduce speed and change to a lower gear or move the selector lever to a lower position. This will make use of the engine braking effect and relieve the load on the brakes. The brakes could otherwise overheat and possibly fail. The brakes should only be used to slow or stop the vehicle.



If the front brake pads are tested, the rear brake pads should be tested at the same time. Regularly check the thickness of the brake pads through the openings in the rims or from the underside of the vehicle. If necessary, remove the wheels to carry out a comprehensive check. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Driving a loaded vehicle



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

For good vehicle handling when driving a loaded vehicle, please observe the following:

- Stow all items of luggage securely ⇒ [Transporting items](#).
- Accelerate particularly cautiously and carefully.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than in normal driving.
- If applicable, observe the information about driving with a trailer ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#).
- If applicable, observe the information concerning the roof carrier ⇒ [Roof carrier](#).



## WARNING

Moving loads can severely impair the vehicle's stability and driving safety which could cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Secure objects properly to prevent them from sliding.
- Use suitable straps when securing heavy objects.
- Engage the rear seat backrest and the adjustable rear bench seat securely.

## Driving with an open boot lid



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Driving with an open boot lid is particularly dangerous. All objects and the open boot lid must be secured properly. Take the appropriate measures to reduce the amount of poisonous exhaust fumes that could enter into the vehicle.



## WARNING

Driving with an unlocked or open boot lid can cause serious injuries.

- Always drive with the boot lid closed.
- Always stow all items in the luggage compartment securely. Loose objects can fall out of the luggage compartment and injure other road users.
- Always drive carefully and ensure that you think ahead.
- Avoid any abrupt or sudden driving and braking manoeuvres as this could cause the open boot lid to move unpredictably.
- Any objects protruding from the luggage compartment must be marked to ensure that they are visible to other road users. Comply with legal regulations.
- If items protrude out of the luggage compartment, never use the boot lid to wedge them into place or hold them in position.
- If you drive with the boot lid open, you must remove any racks and luggage from the boot lid.



## WARNING

Poisonous exhaust fumes could enter the vehicle interior if the boot lid is open. This can result in loss of consciousness, carbon monoxide poisoning, serious injury and accidents.

- You should always drive with the boot lid closed in order to prevent poisonous gases from entering the vehicle.
- If exceptional circumstances require you to drive with an open boot lid, you must do the following to reduce the amount of poisonous exhaust fumes that could enter into the vehicle:
  - Close all windows and the glass roof.
  - Switch off the air recirculation mode of the heating and fresh air system or switch off the air conditioning system.
  - Open all vents in the dash panel.
  - Switch the blowers for the heating and fresh air system or of the air conditioning system to the highest setting.



## NOTICE

The vehicle height is different when the boot lid is open.

## Running in the engine

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Any new engine has to be run in during the first 1,500 kilometres. All moving parts have to adapt themselves to each other. The engine is subject to higher internal friction during the first hours of operation than later on.

- Do not depress the accelerator fully.
- Do not drive the vehicle at more than 2/3 of the top engine speed.
- Do not drive with a trailer attached ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#).
- Increase the driving speed and engine speed *gradually*.

The style of driving during the first 1,500 kilometres will also affect the engine quality. Even after this time – and especially with a cold engine – drive the vehicle at moderate speeds in order to reduce engine wear and to increase the mileage that the engine can cover.

Do not drive at engine speeds that are too low. Always shift down gear if the engine is not running smoothly.

New tyres → *Wheels and tyres* and brake pads → *Notes on driving* have to be run in carefully.



If the engine is run in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and its oil consumption reduced.

## Using the vehicle in other countries and continents

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒ *Introduction*

The vehicle has been manufactured specifically for a particular country and complies with the registration regulations that applied in that country at the time of vehicle production.

If you want to use the vehicle abroad for a short period, all relevant information and instructions should be followed ⇒ *General information*.

If the vehicle is going to be sold in another country or used in another country for an extended period, the legal requirements applicable in that country must be observed.

In some cases, certain equipment will have to be fitted or removed and functions deactivated. The service scope and service types could also be affected. This is particularly important if the vehicle is driven in another climate region for a long period of time.

Because different frequency bands are used in different countries, the factory-fitted infotainment system may not work in other countries.



### NOTICE

- Volkswagen is not responsible for any vehicle damage caused by low-quality fuel, inadequate servicing work or lack of Genuine Parts.
- Volkswagen cannot be held responsible if the vehicle does not comply with or only partly complies with the relevant legal requirements in other countries and continents.

## Starting and stopping the engine



### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Indicator lamps*
- ⇒ *Ignition lock*
- ⇒ *Starter button*
- ⇒ *Starting the engine*
- ⇒ *Stopping the engine*
- ⇒ *Electronic immobiliser*

**Notes in this chapter concerning the automatic gearbox apply to both the automatic gearbox and the dual clutch gearbox**

**DSG®** ⇒ *Driving with the DSG® dual clutch gearbox*.

### Immobiliser display

If the vehicle key is not valid or there is a fault in the system, this will be displayed in the instrument cluster. The engine cannot be started.

## Push-starting or towing

For technical reasons, your vehicle **must not** be push-started or tow-started. Use jump leads to start the engine instead.

### WARNING

Switching the engine off while the vehicle is in motion makes it more difficult to stop the vehicle. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and to accidents and severe injuries.

- Braking and steering support systems, the airbag system, the belt tensioners and other items of safety equipment in the vehicle are only active when the engine is running.
- The engine should only be switched off when the vehicle is stationary.

### WARNING

The risk of serious injury can be reduced with the engine running or when starting the engine.

- Never start or run the engine in unventilated or closed rooms. The exhaust fumes contain carbon monoxide, an odourless and colourless toxic gas. Carbon monoxide can cause people to lose consciousness. It can also cause death.
- Never start or run the engine if oil, fuel or any other highly flammable fluids are under or near the vehicle, or are leaking out of the vehicle, e.g. as the result of damage.
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running, particularly if a gear or position has been selected. The vehicle could move suddenly or something unexpected may happen that may cause damage, fire and serious injuries.
- Never use a start booster. Start boosters may explode and cause the engine to suddenly run at high revs.




### WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle where parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. undergrowth, leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel, oil etc.
- Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, diesel particulate filter or the heat shields on the exhaust system.

## Indicator lamps

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause/action
	Diesel engine is preheating before starting ⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i> .
	Brake pedal not depressed. Press the brake pedal to start the engine.
<b>SAFE</b>	Immobiliser active. Use the authorised vehicle key ⇒ <i>Electronic immobiliser</i> .
	The engine is starting. Pre-heating period in diesel engines ⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i> .

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- If the vehicle breaks down or has to be parked for repairs, always park the vehicle at a safe distance from the road, switch on the hazard warning lights, switch off the engine and take other precautionary measures in order to warn traffic behind you.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

### Ignition lock



Fig. 133 To the right of the steering wheel: positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

The steering lock can be activated when there is no vehicle key in the ignition lock.

Vehicle key positions ⇒ Fig. 133

- ① Initial position of the ignition lock. Ignition switched off. The vehicle key can be removed.
- ① Ignition switched on. Diesel engine glow plugs are preheating. The steering lock can be released.
- ② Start the engine. Release the vehicle key as soon as the engine starts. Once released, the vehicle key moves back to position ①.

### Non-authorized vehicle key


If a non-authorized vehicle key has been inserted in the ignition lock it can be removed as follows:


- *Dual clutch gearbox DSG®*: press the lock button in the selector lever and release. The vehicle key can be removed.
- *Manual gearbox*: remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.


## **WARNING**

Careless or unsupervised use of the vehicle key can lead to accidents or injuries.

- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and electrical equipment such as the window controls can be operated. This can cause serious injury.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, locked vehicles may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.
- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock when the vehicle is in motion. The steering lock may be activated and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.
- The key bit in the vehicle key needs to be folded out fully and locked in position.
- Only attach light objects weighing up to 100 g to the vehicle key.

 If the ignition key is left in the ignition lock for long periods when the engine is switched off and the selector lever is *not* in the **P** position, the vehicle battery discharges.

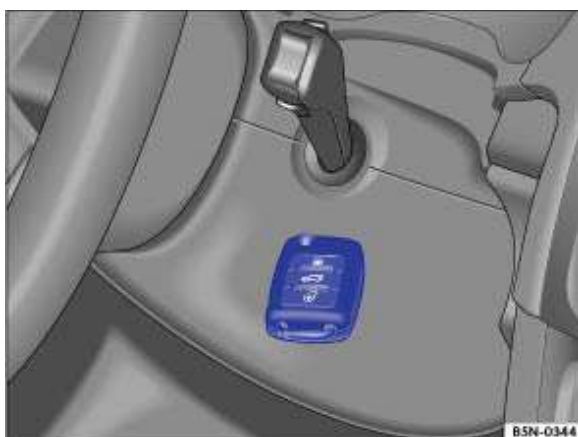
 Components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily while the engine starts ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.

 In **vehicles with an automatic gearbox**, the vehicle key can only be removed from the ignition lock if the selector lever is in position **P**. If necessary, press the lock button in the selector lever and then release it.

## Starter button




**Fig. 134** In the lower section of the centre console: starter button for switching on the engine.





**Fig. 135** On the right of the steering column: emergency start function in vehicles with the Keyless Access locking and starting system.


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

 m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with Keyless Access locking and starting system: the vehicle can be started with the starter button (Press & Drive) or with the vehicle key in the ignition lock ⇒ [Ignition lock](#).

The starter button can only be operated if there is a valid key in the vehicle.

**When leaving the vehicle**, the electronic steering column lock will be activated when the ignition is switched off and the driver door is opened ⇒ [Steering](#).

## Switching the ignition on and off

Press the starter button once briefly without depressing the brake or clutch pedals ⇒ .


## Emergency start function

Use the emergency start function if no valid vehicle key is detected in the vehicle interior. A corresponding display will appear in the instrument cluster. This could be the case, for example, if the button cell in the vehicle key is weak or discharged:

- Hold the vehicle key to the right of the steering column trim directly after pressing the starter button ⇒ [Fig. 135](#).
- The ignition is switched on automatically, and in some cases the engine is started.

## Emergency switch-off function

If the engine cannot be switched off by pressing the starter button briefly, an emergency switch-off procedure is required:

- Press the starter button twice within a few seconds or press once and hold briefly.
- The engine will switch off automatically ⇒ .

## Switching off the ignition automatically

If the driver is detected as having left the vehicle with active engine stop, the ignition will be switched off automatically after a certain time has elapsed.



### WARNING

**Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.**

- **Do not depress the brake or clutch pedal when switching on the ignition as the engine will then start immediately.**



### WARNING

**Careless or unsupervised use of the vehicle key can lead to accidents or injuries.**


- **Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. Children or third parties could lock the vehicle, start the engine, switch on the ignition or operate electrical equipment such as the electric windows.**




In vehicles with diesel engines and Keyless Access, the engine start may be delayed if the engine has to be preheated.






After the ignition is switched off automatically, the side lights remain switched on for about 30 minutes if the dipped beam is switched on. The side lights are switched off if the driver locks the vehicle or manually switches the light off.

 Before leaving the vehicle, always switch off the ignition manually and note any information shown in the instrument cluster display.

 Leaving the vehicle stationary for long periods with the ignition switched on can discharge the vehicle battery and prevent the engine from starting.

## Starting the engine

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Step	Vehicles without Keyless Access	Vehicles with Keyless Access
1.	Depress the brake pedal and hold it until step 5 has been completed.	
1 a.	 m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox: fully depress the clutch pedal and hold it until the engine has been started.	
2.	Shift the selector lever to position <b>P</b> or <b>N</b> .	
3.	 m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with diesel engines: to preheat the engine, turn the vehicle key in the ignition lock to position ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 133</a> ①. The indicator lamp  lights up in the instrument cluster.	
4.	Turn the vehicle key in the ignition lock to position ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 133</a> ② – do not depress the accelerator.	Press the starter button briefly ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 134</a> without depressing the accelerator. There must be a valid vehicle key in the vehicle before the engine can be started.
6.	If the engine does not start, stop the start procedure and repeat it after approximately one minute.	
7.	Switch off the electronic parking brake if you wish to pull away.	

### WARNING

Never leave the engine running if you leave the vehicle unattended, particularly not if a gear or position has been selected. The vehicle could move suddenly or something unexpected may happen that may cause damage, fire or serious injuries.

### WARNING

Start boosters may explode or suddenly cause the engine to run at high revs.

- Never use a start booster.

### NOTICE

- The starter and the engine can be damaged if you attempt to start the engine while the vehicle is in motion or if the engine is started again immediately after it has been switched off.
- When the engine is cold, avoid high engine speeds, driving at full throttle and overloading the engine.
- Do not push-start or tow-start the vehicle. Unburnt fuel can damage the catalytic converter.



Do not warm up the engine by running it while the vehicle is stationary. Instead, pull off as soon as there is good visibility through the windows. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions.



Components with a high power consumption are switched off temporarily when the engine is started.



The engine cannot, for example, be started with the starter button if the cell battery in the vehicle key is weak or flat. In this case, start the vehicle using the vehicle key.



When starting from cold, the engine may be a little noisy for the first few seconds. This is quite normal, and no cause for concern.



At outside temperatures of less than +5°C (+41°F), fumes may be detected under a vehicle with a diesel engine if the fuel-powered supplementary heater is switched on.

## Stopping the engine



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ [Introduction](#)

Step	Vehicles without Keyless Access	Vehicles with Keyless Access
1.	The vehicle must be completely stationary ⇒ .	
2.	Depress the brake pedal and hold it until step 5 has been completed.	
3.	Switch on the electronic parking brake.	
4.	m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with automatic gearbox: move the selector lever to <b>P</b> .	
5.	Turn the vehicle key to position ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 133</a> .	Briefly press the starter button ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 134</a> . If the engine cannot be switched off, carry out the emergency switch-off procedure ⇒ <a href="#">Emergency switch-off function</a> .
6.	m/k/a995MK Applies to: vehicles with manual gearbox: select the first or reverse gear.	
7.	Open the driver door to activate the electronic steering column lock and switch off all consumers.	



## WARNING


Never switch off the engine while the vehicle is in motion. This can lead to a loss of vehicle control, accidents and serious injuries.


- The airbags and belt tensioners will not work if the ignition is switched off.
- The brake servo will not work when the engine is switched off. More force is required on the brake pedal to stop the vehicle.
- The power steering will not function if the engine is switched off, and more force will be required to steer the vehicle.
- If the vehicle key is removed from the ignition, the steering lock can activate and you will no longer be able to steer the vehicle.



## NOTICE

If the vehicle has been driven at high load for a long period, the engine can overheat when it is switched off. In order to avoid damage to the engine, allow the engine to run in neutral for approximately two minutes before switching it off.

 In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the vehicle key can be removed from the ignition lock only if the selector lever is in position **P**.

 After the engine is switched off, the radiator fan in the engine compartment may run on for some minutes, even if the ignition is switched off or the vehicle key has been removed. The radiator fan will switch itself off automatically.

## Electronic immobiliser

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)


The immobiliser helps to prevent the engine from being started and driven with an unauthorised vehicle key.

There is a chip in the key. It automatically deactivates the immobiliser when the vehicle key is inserted into the ignition lock.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock. In vehicles with Keyless Access, the vehicle key must be outside the vehicle.

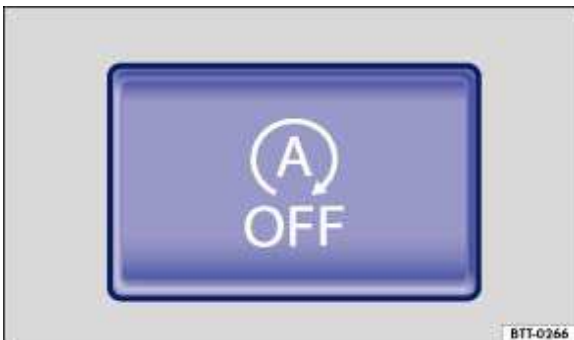
The engine can only be started using a genuine Volkswagen vehicle key with the correct code. Coded vehicle keys are available from a Volkswagen dealership ⇒ [Vehicle key set](#).

If a non-authorised vehicle key has been used, this will be displayed in the instrument cluster. The vehicle cannot be used if this occurs.



 The vehicle cannot be operated properly if you do not have a genuine Volkswagen key.

## Start/stop system



The start/stop system automatically switches the engine off when the vehicle is coming to a stop and when stationary. When required, the engine restarts automatically.



**Fig. 136** In the lower part of the centre console: button for the start/stop system.

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy
	The start/stop system is available, automatic engine stop is active ⇒ <a href="#">Start/stop system</a> .
	The start/stop system is not available. <b>OR:</b> the start/stop system has switched on the engine automatically. Check whether all technical requirements have been fulfilled. If not, remedy any missing technical requirements ⇒ <a href="#">Start/stop system</a> .

The function is automatically activated every time the ignition is switched on. The instrument cluster display will show information about the current status.

You can find additional information on the start/stop mode by pressing the  button and the  function button in the **Vehicle status** menu in the infotainment system.

In addition, start/stop information on the current status of the start/stop system is displayed as required in infotainment systems with navigation function. Touch the *i* in the start/stop information to obtain further information on the status.

### Vehicles with a manual gearbox

- Disengage the gear and release the clutch pedal when the vehicle is coming to a stop, or when it is stationary. The engine is stopped.
- Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

### Vehicles with DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox

- To stop, press and hold the brake pedal. The engine switches off shortly before the vehicle reaches a complete standstill or when the vehicle is stationary.
- Take your foot off the brake pedal, or depress the accelerator, to restart the engine.

### Important preconditions for automatic engine switch-off

- The driver is wearing their seat belt.
- The driver door is closed.
- The bonnet is closed.
- A minimum engine temperature has been reached.
- *For vehicles with Climatronic:* the temperature inside the vehicle is within the pre-set temperature range.
- *For vehicles with Climatronic:* the humidity is not too high.
- The defrost function of the air conditioning system is not switched on.
- The charging state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.
- The temperature of the vehicle battery is not too low or too high.
- The vehicle is not on a steep incline.
- The windscreen heating is not switched on.
- *For vehicle with DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox:* the steering wheel is not angled too sharply.
- Reverse gear is not engaged.
- Park Assist is not activated.
- The Off-road or Off-road Individual driving profile is activated.

When the conditions for automatic engine switch-off are only fulfilled when the vehicle is stationary, the engine can also switch off subsequently, e.g. by switching off the defrost function.

### Conditions for an automatic restart

The engine can start automatically under the following conditions:



- If the temperature inside the vehicle substantially increases or decreases.
- If the vehicle rolls on.
- If the voltage of the vehicle battery falls.
- If the steering wheel is moved.


## Conditions that require a manual engine start


The engine must be started manually under the following conditions:

- If the driver door is opened.
- If the bonnet is opened.

## Activating and deactivating the start/stop system manually

- Press the  button in the lower part of the centre console ⇒ *Fig. 136* to switch off the system. If the start/stop system has been deactivated, the indicator lamp in the button lights up.
- Press the  button in the lower part of the centre console ⇒ *Fig. 136* to switch the system on again.

The instrument cluster shows the status of the start/stop system every time the  button is pressed.

If the start/stop system has switched the engine off, it will start again as soon as the system has been deactivated manually with the  button.

Always deactivate the start/stop system manually when driving through water.

## Start/stop mode for Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

The engine will be switched off after the Adaptive Cruise Control has brought the vehicle to a standstill ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* with an active braking intervention.

In the following instances, the engine will restart when the Adaptive Cruise Control is active:

- If the accelerator is depressed.
- When the Adaptive Cruise Control has resumed speed and distance control.
- If the vehicle ahead has moved on.

The engine is also restarted if Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is deactivated.



### WARNING

The brake servo and the steering will not function if the engine is switched off.

- Never switch the engine or ignition off while the vehicle is in motion.
- The start/stop system must be deactivated if work is to be carried out in the engine compartment.



### NOTICE

If the start/stop system is used in very high outside temperatures over a long period, the vehicle battery can be damaged.



The following applies to vehicles without keyless access locking and starting system: in some cases, it will be necessary to restart the engine manually with the vehicle key. Follow any corresponding messages on the instrument cluster display.



The start/stop system is automatically activated when the **Eco** driving profile is selected in vehicles with driving profile selection ⇒ *Driving Profile Selection*.

## Manual gearbox: selecting a gear

---

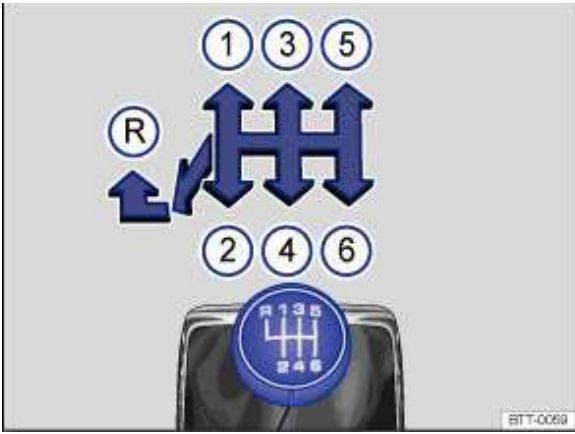




Fig. 137 Gear shift pattern of a 6-speed manual gearbox.

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy ⇒ ⚠
	Clutch temperature high. It is possible to continue driving. Clutch faulty. <b>Drive on carefully!</b> Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so could result in considerable damage to the clutch.
	Clutch does not transmit the entire engine torque. If necessary, remove foot from clutch pedal.

The positions of the individual driving gears are shown on the gearshift lever ⇒ Fig. 137 .

- Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal.
- Move the gear lever to the required position ⇒ ⚠ .
- Release the clutch to engage.

In some countries, the clutch pedal will have to be depressed fully in order to start the engine.

### Selecting reverse gear

- Reverse gear should only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.
- Fully depress and hold the clutch pedal ⇒ ⚠ .
- Move the gear lever to the neutral position and push down.
- Push the gearshift lever fully to the left and then to the front in the reverse gear position ⇒ Fig. 137@ .
- Release the clutch to engage.

### Shifting down

You should always select the next immediate gear when shifting down a gear whilst the vehicle is in motion. The engine revs should not be too high when doing this ⇒ ⚠ . Damage to the clutch and the gearbox could occur if at high speeds or high engine revs one or more gears are skipped when shifting down gear, even if the clutch is not released when doing this ⇒ ❶ .

### Kickdown



In vehicles with a speed limiter ⇒ *Speed limiter* , the kickdown function allows the driver to intentionally exceed the stored regulated speed, e.g. when overtaking.

When the accelerator is fully depressed, the speed limiter regulator is temporarily switched off when the vehicle exceeds the stored speed.

Once the vehicle returns to a speed below the stored speed and the accelerator is no longer fully depressed, speed limiter regulation becomes active again.

When the **Eco** driving profile is selected in vehicles with driving profile selection ⇒ *Driving Profile Selection* and the accelerator is depressed fully beyond the pressure point, the engine output is automatically regulated to ensure maximum vehicle acceleration.

## Clutch overheating

The clutch can overheat when the vehicle pulls off frequently, travels at a crawl for long periods, or in stop and go traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning lamp  and in some cases by additional warning lamps and a text message in the instrument cluster display. A signal tone may also be given ⇒ .

### **WARNING**

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- A broken-down vehicle poses a high accident risk, for you, your passengers and for other road users. If the situation requires, switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle as a warning to other road users.

### **WARNING**

When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released. This also applies when the electronic park brake has been switched on.

- Never engage reverse gear while the vehicle is in motion.

### **WARNING**

Shifting gears incorrectly to a lower gear can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, which can cause accidents and serious injuries.

### **NOTICE**

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.



## NOTICE

Serious damage to the clutch and gearbox can occur if the gear stick on the manual gearbox is shifted to too low a gear when travelling at high speeds or at high revs. This also applies if the clutch remains depressed and the gears do not engage.

## NOTICE

Please note the following to help avoid damage and premature wear:

- Do not rest your hand on the gear lever when driving. The pressure from your hand is passed onto the selector forks in the gearbox.
- Ensure that the vehicle has come to a full stop before engaging reverse gear.
- Always fully depress the clutch pedal when changing gear.
- Do not hold the vehicle by riding the clutch on a hill with the engine running.

# DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox

## Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Function of the DSG dual clutch gearbox*
- ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*
- ⇒ *DSG dual clutch gearbox: selecting a gear*
- ⇒ *Changing gear using Tiptronic*
- ⇒ *Driving with the DSG dual clutch gearbox*
- ⇒ *Malfunction in the DSG dual clutch gearbox*
- ⇒ *Unlocking the selector lever lock manually*

The DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox is a **gearbox which uses dual-clutch technology to change gear automatically**. It uses a dual clutch and two independent gearboxes to enable very fast gear changes with no loss of torque. The DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox thus combines the performance and economy of a manual gearbox with the comfort and convenience of an automatic transmission.

## Function of the DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox

---

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

When driving, engine power is transferred to the drive axle via the gearbox. In order to change gears, the power transmission between the engine and the gearbox has to be interrupted. This is what the clutch is for.

With the DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox with its two gear train halves, the engine power is always connected to one gear train half when driving. Before you change gear, the next gear up or down is always preselected in the non-driven second gearbox. The clutch on the non-driven gear is closed and the other is opened at the same time. This is what makes very fast gear changes possible.






Thanks to its design, the DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox is more efficient than an automatic gearbox. Whereas in an automatic gearbox the torque converter is constantly in use, in the DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch system the clutch can be opened at idling speed, thus saving fuel. With its efficiency, low weight and intelligent control system, the DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox usually enables fuel consumption equal to or lower than a manual gearbox.

However, just like the manual gearbox, the clutch in the DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox is subject to wear. Regular maintenance is necessary, depending on the type of DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox installed. For more information, see the service schedule. In the event of

a fault in one gear train half, the DSG® dual clutch gearbox also allows one gear train half to be deactivated and the journey to be continued using the other gear train half ⇒ *Malfunction in the DSG® dual clutch gearbox*. If this happens, have the system checked as soon as possible by a qualified workshop.

## Warning and indicator lamps

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause/action
	<p>Gearbox fault.</p> <p> <b>Do not drive on!</b></p> <p>Allow the gearbox to cool down in selector lever position <b>P</b>.</p> <p>If the warning lamp does not go out, do not drive on. Seek professional assistance. Failure to do so can cause considerable damage to the gearbox ⇒ <i>Malfunction in the DSG® dual clutch gearbox</i>.</p>
	<p>Brake pedal not depressed.</p> <p>Fully depress the brake pedal.</p> <p>Also see Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i>.</p>
	<p>Brake pedal not depressed.</p> <p>To select a position, press the brake pedal.</p> <p>See also electronic parking brake ⇒ <i>Electronic parking brake</i>.</p>
Flashes	Possible cause/action
	<p>The lock button in the selector lever is not engaged. The vehicle cannot drive off.</p> <p>Engage the selector lever lock ⇒ <i>Selector lever lock</i>.</p>

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

### WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.
- If the vehicle breaks down or has to be parked for repairs, always park the vehicle at a safe distance from the road, switch on the hazard warning lights, switch off the engine and take other precautionary measures in order to warn traffic behind you.

### NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## DSG® dual clutch gearbox: selecting a gear



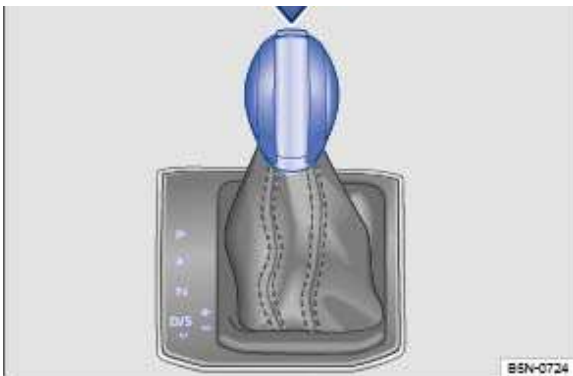


Fig. 138 Left-hand drive: selector lever for the automatic gearbox with lock button.

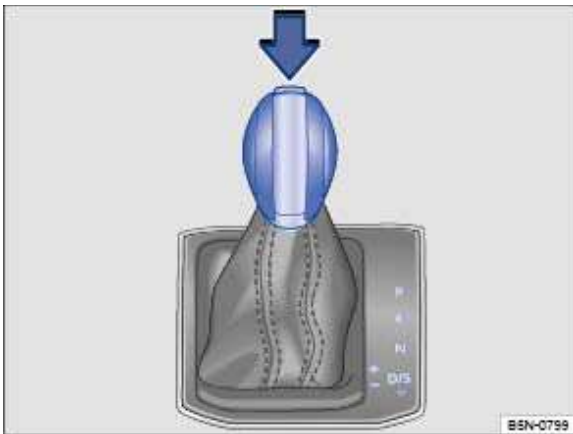





Fig. 139 Right-hand drive: selector lever for the automatic gearbox with lock button.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The selector lever is equipped with a selector lever lock. When changing the selector lever position from **P** to a driving gear, depress the brake pedal and push the lock button in the selector lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 138 or ⇒ Fig. 139. To move the selector lever out of position **N** to position **D/S** or **R**, first depress and hold the brake pedal.

The current selector lever position will be shown in the instrument cluster display if the ignition is switched on.

Selector lever position	Designation	Meaning ⇒ 
<b>P</b>	<b>Parking lock</b>	The drive wheels are locked mechanically. May only be selected when the vehicle is <i>stationary</i> . To disengage this selector lever position, depress the brake pedal and also switch on the ignition.
<b>R</b>	<b>Reverse gear</b>	Reverse gear is selected. May only be selected when the vehicle is <i>stationary</i> .
<b>N</b>	<b>Neutral</b>	The gearbox is in the neutral position. No force is transmitted to the wheels and the braking effect of the engine is not available.
<b>D/S</b>	<b>Standard forward driving position</b>  <b>D</b> = normal programme  <b>S</b> = sport programme	Normal programme <b>D</b> :  All forward gears are shifted up and down automatically. The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.  Sport programme <b>S</b> :  The forward gears are automatically changed up <i>later</i> and down <i>earlier</i> than in selector lever position <b>D</b> . This exploits the engine's full power.


Selector lever position	Designation	Meaning ⇒ 
		The timing of the gear shift is determined by the engine load, your individual driving style and the speed of the vehicle.
	<p><b>Change</b> between</p> <p>Normal programme <b>D</b> and</p> <p>Sport programme <b>S</b>.</p>	<p>You change between the normal programme <b>D</b> and sport programme <b>S</b> by tapping back the selector lever <i>once</i> out of gear position <b>D/S</b> ⇒ <i>Fig. 138</i> or ⇒ <i>Fig. 139</i>. The selector lever will always fall back into selector lever position <b>D/S</b>. It is not possible to shift into <b>S</b> position in the Off-road and Snow driving profiles.</p> <p>Using this function, it is possible to access the Tiptronic gate from both the sport programme <b>S</b> and from the normal programme <b>D</b> ⇒ <i>Changing gear using Tiptronic</i>.</p>

### Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock in position **P** or **N** prevents gears from being engaged inadvertently, which would cause the vehicle to move.

To release the selector lever lock with the ignition switched on, depress and hold the brake pedal. Press the lock button in the selector lever at the same time.

The selector lever lock is not engaged if the selector lever is moved quickly through position **N** (e.g. when shifting from **R** to **D/S**). This makes it possible, for instance, to rock the vehicle backwards and forwards if it is stuck in snow or mud. The selector lever lock engages automatically if the brake pedal is not depressed and the lever is in position **N** for more than approximately 1 second and the vehicle is travelling no faster than approximately 5 km/h (3 mph).

In rare cases, the selector lever lock may not engage in vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox. The drive is then deactivated to prevent the vehicle from accidentally pulling away. The green indicator lamp  flashes and an information message is also displayed. Use the following procedure to engage the selector lever lock:

Move selector lever to position **P** or **N** and then select a driving position.

## WARNING

Engaging an incorrect selector lever position can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never depress the accelerator pedal when selecting a position.
- When the engine is running, the vehicle starts moving as soon as a selector lever position is engaged and the brake pedal is released.
- Never select reverse gear or engage the parking lock while the vehicle is in motion.


## WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.

- The driver must never leave the driver seat when the engine is running and a position has been selected. If you have to leave the vehicle while the engine is running, always switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to position P.
- If the engine is running and the selector lever is in position D/S or R, the vehicle must be held on the foot brake. The vehicle will creep forward even when the engine is idling, as power transmission is even then not fully interrupted.
- Never select positions R or P when the vehicle is in motion.
- Never leave the vehicle in driving mode N. The vehicle will roll downhill irrespective of whether or not the engine is running.

## NOTICE

If the electronic parking brake is not switched on when the vehicle is stationary and the brake pedal is released when the selector lever is in position P, the vehicle may move a few centimetres forwards or backwards.

 If the lever is moved accidentally to N when driving, take your foot off the accelerator. Wait for the engine revs in the neutral position before selecting a position again.

## Changing gear using Tiptronic

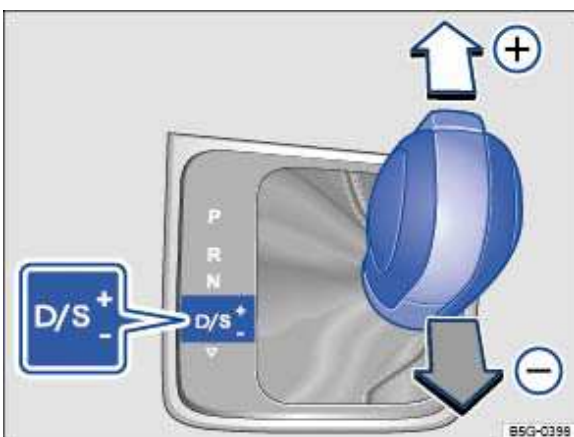


Fig. 140 Selector lever in Tiptronic position.





**Fig. 141** Steering wheel with paddles for Tiptronic.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Using Tiptronic, the gears can be shifted up and down manually in an automatic gearbox.

### Operating Tiptronic with the selector lever

- Push the selector lever from position **D/S** to the right into the Tiptronic gate.
- Gently push the selector lever forwards ⊕ or back ⊖ to shift gear up or down ⇒ *Fig. 140*.

When moving the selector lever in the Tiptronic gate, do not press the lock button on the selector lever.

### Operating Tiptronic with the paddles

- Pull the right paddle ⇒ *Fig. 141* towards the steering wheel to change up a gear.
- Pull the left paddle towards the steering wheel to change down a gear.
- To leave Tiptronic mode, pull the right paddle towards the steering wheel for approximately one second.

The Tiptronic mode will automatically be closed if the paddles are not used for some time.

### **NOTICE**

- **When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine speed is reached.**
- **When shifting down a gear manually, the gearbox will not change gear until the engine can no longer be overrevved.**

## Driving with the DSG® dual clutch gearbox

---

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The gearbox changes the forward gears up and down automatically.

### Driving down hills


The steeper the gradient, the lower the gear you will need. Lower gears increase the braking effect of the engine. Never allow the vehicle to roll down mountains or hills in the neutral position **N**.

- Reduce your speed.
- Push the selector lever from position **D/S** to the right into the Tiptronic gate ⇒ *Changing gear using Tiptronic*.
- Gently push the selector lever to the rear to change down gear.
- **OR:** shift down a gear using the paddles on the steering wheel ⇒ *Operating Tiptronic with the paddles*.

## Stopping the vehicle and pulling away when driving uphill

The steeper the incline, the lower the gear that is required.

If you wish to stop the vehicle or pull away when driving uphill you should use the Auto Hold function ⇒ [Auto Hold function](#).

When you stop the vehicle on an incline and the vehicle remains in gear, the vehicle must always be prevented from rolling by depressing the brake pedal or by applying the electronic parking brake. The brake pedal or the electronic parking brake should not be released until you pull away ⇒ .

## Coasting with DSG® dual clutch gearbox


In coasting mode, the momentum of the vehicle can be used to save fuel in conjunction with a foresighted driving style. The engine is declutched and no longer brakes the vehicle – the vehicle can roll out over a longer distance. The function is only available at speeds of 20 – 130 km/h (12 mph – 80 mph).

Switch-on condition: the selector lever must be in position **D/S**.

### Triggering coasting


- Select the **Eco** driving profile from the driving profile selection menu ⇒ [Driving Profile Selection](#).
- Remove your foot from accelerator pedal. The engine is disengaged and runs in coasting mode. The vehicle rolls without the braking effect of the engine.

### Cancelling coasting mode

- Press the brake pedal briefly or pull the left-hand paddle  towards the steering wheel.

## Kickdown

The kickdown mechanism enables maximum acceleration in the selector lever positions **D** and **S**, or in the Tiptronic position.


If the accelerator pedal is depressed fully, the gearbox will automatically shift to a lower gear, depending on the speed and engine revs. This will make use of the full vehicle acceleration ⇒ .

The gearbox does not shift up to the next gear until the engine reaches the maximum engine speed for the gear.

When the **Eco** driving profile is selected in vehicles with driving profile selection ⇒ [Driving Profile Selection](#) and the accelerator is depressed fully beyond the pressure point, the engine output is automatically regulated to ensure maximum vehicle acceleration.

## Launch Control Programme

The Launch Control Programme permits maximum acceleration from a standing start in vehicles with a 6-speed DSG® dual clutch gearbox.

- Switching off the traction control system ⇒ [Brake support systems](#).
- Depress and hold the brake pedal with your left foot.
- Move the selector lever to position **D/S** or into gearbox programme **S**. Alternatively, select the Tiptronic position, or in vehicles with driving profile selection select the **Sport** driving profile.
- With your right foot, depress the accelerator until the engine speed reaches approximately 3,200 rpm.
- Take your left foot off the brake ⇒ . The vehicle will start with maximum acceleration.
- Switch the traction control system back on after acceleration.



## WARNING

Rapid acceleration can cause loss of traction and skidding, particularly on slippery roads. This can cause you to lose control of the vehicle, which can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Always adjust your driving style in accordance with the flow of traffic.
- Only use kickdown or fast acceleration if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions permit, and other road users are not put at risk due to the acceleration and the driving style.
- Only use the launch control programme, if the road and traffic conditions allow for it.
- You should never endanger other road users through the acceleration of your vehicle or through your driving style.
- Please note that the drive wheels can start to spin and the vehicle can skid if the traction control system is switched off, especially if the road is slippery.
- Switch the traction control system on again after acceleration.



## NOTICE

- If you stop the vehicle on an incline, do not attempt to stop it from rolling back by depressing the accelerator while a position is still selected. The automatic gearbox could overheat and be damaged.
- Never allow the vehicle to roll in position N, particularly if the ignition is switched off. The automatic gearbox will not be lubricated and could be damaged.
- Accelerating with the Launch Control programme places heavy strain on all vehicle components. This can lead to higher rates of wear.

## Malfunction in the DSG® dual clutch gearbox



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)



### Emergency programme

There is a fault in the system if all the displays on the instrument cluster for the selector lever positions have a light background. The DSG® dual clutch gearbox is running in an emergency programme. The vehicle can still be driven in the emergency programme, but only at reduced speed and not in all gears.

In vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, you may **no longer be able to select reverse gear**. The gearbox should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

In all cases you should have the DSG® dual clutch gearbox checked by a qualified workshop immediately.

### Overheating of the DSG® dual clutch gearbox

The DSG® dual clutch gearbox can become too hot, for example if the vehicle regularly pulls off from the starting position, during long periods at crawling speed, or in stop-and-go traffic. Overheating is indicated by the warning lamp  and in some cases by a text message in the instrument cluster display. A signal tone may also be given. Stop the vehicle and allow the gearbox to cool down ⇒ .

### The vehicle will not move forwards or backwards even though a gear has been selected

If the vehicle will not move in the required direction, the system may have selected the position incorrectly. Depress the brake pedal and reselect the position.



If the vehicle still does not move in the required direction, there is a system fault. Seek expert assistance and have the system checked.

## ! NOTICE

- If the display indicates that the gearbox is overheating for the first time, the vehicle will have to be parked safely or driven faster than 20 km/h (12 mph).
- Safely park the vehicle immediately and switch the engine off if the text message and signal tone are repeated approximately every 10 seconds. Allow the gearbox to cool down.
- In order to prevent damage to the gearbox, you should not drive on until the acoustic warning stops. You should not pull away or drive the vehicle at very low speeds while the gearbox is overheated.

## Unlocking the selector lever lock manually

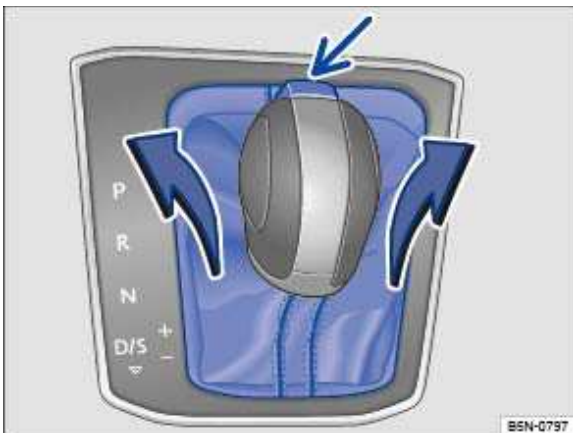


Fig. 142 Removing the cover of the gearshift gate.

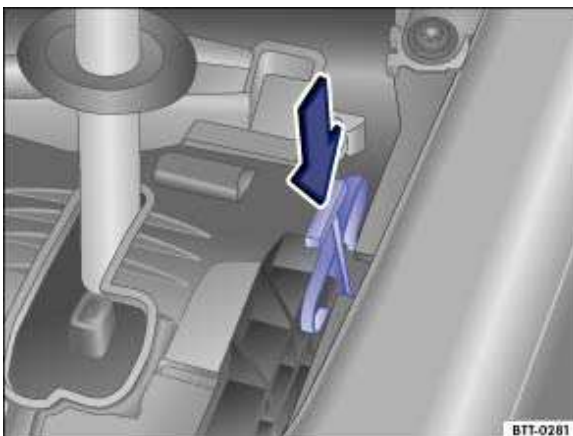


Fig. 143 Unlocking the selector lever lock manually.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

If the power fails in the vehicle (for example if the battery is flat) and the vehicle has to be pushed or towed, the selector lever lock must be released manually. Seek professional assistance.


The manual release mechanism is located under the cover of the gearshift gate.

## Preparation

- Switch on the electronic parking brake. If the electronic parking brake cannot be switched on, the vehicle will have to be prevented from rolling off using other means.

- Switch off the ignition.

### Removing the cover of the gearshift gate

- Carefully pull the cover upwards in the area around the selector lever gaiter with connected electrical wiring ⇒ *Fig. 142*.
- Pull the cover up and over the selector lever ⇒ .

### Unlocking the selector lever lock manually

- Using the flat blade of the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit, carefully push the release lever in the direction of the arrow and hold it in this position.
- Press the lock button on the selector lever and put the selector lever into position **N**.
- After manual unlocking, carefully press the cover onto the centre console while ensuring that the electrical wires are positioned correctly.

### **WARNING**

**Never move the selector lever out of the position P if the electronic parking brake is not switched on. Otherwise the vehicle could move unexpectedly if it is stopped on an incline, which could lead to accidents and serious injuries.**

### **NOTICE**

**The automatic gearbox will become damaged if the vehicle is allowed to roll for a long period of time or at a high speed (for example while being towed) with the selector lever in position N and the engine switched off.**

### **NOTICE**

**The electric drive will be damaged if the vehicle rolls for an extended period or at high speed with the ignition switched off, the electric drive switched off or the 12-volt vehicle battery discharged, or with no 12-volt vehicle battery and the selector lever in position N. The vehicle can be towed only subject to certain conditions ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing*.**

## Steering

### **Introduction**

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*

⇒ *Information on steering*

The power steering is not hydraulic. It is an electromechanical system. The advantage of this steering system is that no hydraulic hoses, hydraulic oil, pumps, filter or other parts are required. The electromechanical system reduces fuel consumption. A hydraulic system requires constant oil pressure in the system, whereas an electromechanical steering system only needs an energy supply while steering.

The power steering provided by the electromechanical steering system automatically adjusts to the vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle. The electromechanical steering only functions when the engine is running.

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the selected driving profile can affect the behaviour of the power steering ⇒ *Driving Profile Selection*.

## WARNING






If the power steering is not working, the steering wheel is difficult to turn, which makes it difficult to steer the vehicle.

- The power steering only functions when the engine is running.
- Never switch the engine or ignition off while the vehicle is in motion. The electronic steering column lock may be activated and it will no longer be possible to steer the vehicle.

## Warning and indicator lamps



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause/action
	<p>Electromechanical steering not functioning.</p> <p>The steering should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.</p>
	<p>Electromechanical steering function reduced.</p> <p>The steering should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.</p> <p>If the yellow warning lamp remains off after the ignition has been restarted and you have driven a short distance, you <b>do not</b> need to consult a qualified workshop.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> the vehicle battery has been disconnected and reconnected.</p> <p>Drive a short distance at a speed of 15 – 20 km/h (9 – 12 mph).</p>
Flashes	Possible cause/action
	<p>Fault in the steering column lock.</p> <p> <b>Do not drive on!</b></p> <p>Seek expert assistance.</p>
	<p>Steering column is wound-up.</p> <p>Turn the steering wheel back and forth.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> steering column is not unlocked/locked.</p> <p>Take the vehicle key out of the ignition and switch the ignition back on again. Follow any messages that are on the instrument cluster display.</p> <p><b>Do not drive on</b> if the steering column remains locked when the ignition is switched on.</p> <p>Seek expert assistance.</p>

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.



## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.



## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Information on steering



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The steering should be locked every time you leave the vehicle to make it more difficult for the vehicle to be stolen.

### Electronic steering column lock

*Vehicles with Keyless Access:* the steering column will be locked if the driver door is opened with the ignition switched off. For this, the vehicle should be stationary and, if necessary, the gear selector lever should be in position **P**.

If the ignition is not switched off until after the driver door is opened, the electronic steering column lock will only be activated when the vehicle is locked using the sensor in the door handle or the vehicle key.

### Mechanical steering column lock

*Vehicles without Keyless Access:* the steering column is locked if the vehicle key is removed from the ignition lock when the vehicle is stationary.


Steering lock Activate	Steering lock Deactivate
Park the vehicle ⇒ <a href="#">Brake support systems</a> .	Turn the steering wheel slightly to take the load off the steering lock mechanism.
Remove the vehicle key.	Insert the vehicle key into the ignition lock.
Turn the steering wheel slightly until the steering lock clicks into place.	Hold the steering wheel in this position and turn the ignition on.

### Electromechanical steering

The power steering provided by the electromechanical steering system automatically adjusts to the vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle. The electromechanical steering only functions when the engine is running.

You will need considerably more strength than normal to steer the vehicle if the power steering is reduced or has failed completely.

### Counter steering assistance

Counter steering assistance provides the driver with power steering in critical driving situations. Additional steering power helps the driver when counter steering ⇒ .

## Progressive steering

The optionally available progressive steering reduces the required steering angle for all driving situations. Progressive steering functions only when the engine is running.

In *urban driving*, smaller steering movements are required when parking, manoeuvring, or turning sharply.

When driving on *country roads* or on the *motorway*, the progressive steering provides a more sporty, direct steering response, and a dynamic feel.



### WARNING

In conjunction with the Electronic Stability Control, counter steering assistance provides the driver with assistance when steering in critical driving situations. The driver must steer the vehicle at all times. Counter steering assistance does not steer the vehicle.

## Driving Profile Selection

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*

⇒ *Function and operation*

⇒ *Adjusting the driving profile to suit your requirements*

The driver can use driving profile selection to activate a variety of vehicle settings as required.



### WARNING

Selecting a driving profile while the vehicle is in motion can distract you from the road and cause accidents.



You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation.

## Warning and indicator lamps



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause/action
	Fault in the adaptive chassis control (DCC). <sup>a)</sup> Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.



Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

<sup>a)</sup> Displayed in colour on an instrument cluster with colour display.

## Function and operation



Fig. 144 In the lower section of the centre console: driving profile selection button.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the driver can choose from up to five different driving profiles with a variety of characteristics:

Driving profile	Recommended driving situations
Comfort <sup>a)</sup>	Comfortable vehicle setting. For instance, suitable for bad road conditions or long motorway journeys.
Normal	Balanced setting, e.g. for everyday use.
Sport	Gives the vehicle a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.
Eco	Switches the vehicle into economical mode and helps the driver to drive the vehicle in a fuel-efficient manner.
Individual	Individual systems can be adjusted to suit your personal requirements ⇒ <a href="#">Adjusting the driving profile to suit your requirements</a> .

Four-wheel drive vehicles feature a wider selection of driving profiles. In this case, you can select the driving profiles with the control of the 4MOTION Active Control ⇒ [Fig. 145](#).


The effect on the vehicle settings in the individual driving profiles depends on the vehicle equipment level.

The driving profile can be changed while the vehicle is stationary or when in motion. After selecting a driving profile, the associated vehicle settings are adjusted immediately, except for the engine.

To activate the engine coordination when driving, briefly take your foot off the accelerator when traffic conditions allow.

### Adaptive chassis control (DCC)

While the vehicle is in motion, the adaptive chassis control constantly adjusts the suspension characteristics to match the road surface and the current driving situation, in accordance with the settings of the preset driving profile.

If there is a fault in the adaptive chassis control, the  indicator lamp appears on the instrument cluster display along with the message **Fault: damper control**.

### Steering

In the **Sport** driving profile, power steering is reduced and the effort required to steer the vehicle increases. The vehicle's driving response becomes more agile.

### Powertrain (engine and gearbox)

The engine and gearbox will give either a more dynamic or more balanced response to the movement of the accelerator, depending on the selected driving profile. In vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, the gear shift points and the coasting mode will also change. An active cruise control system can affect the acceleration response.

### Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

When the Adaptive Cruise Control is active, acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle becomes more ecological or sporty.




### Dynamic cornering light and dynamic main beam control (Dynamic Light Assist)

The dynamic cornering light and the dynamic main beam control will give either a more dynamic or more balanced response to the current driving situation, depending on the selected driving profile.

### Air conditioning system



In **Eco** mode, the air conditioning will be set to run even more economically.

### Displaying the driving profile

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on.
- Press the driving profile selection button  ⇒ Fig. 144 . The driving profile selection menu appears on the infotainment system screen. The active driving profile is highlighted.
- Touch the  function button to display additional information about the active driving profile.
- Touch the  function button to close the menu.

The indicator lamp in the driving profile selection button lights up when Normal driving profile is not selected.

### Selecting the driving profile

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on.
- Press the driving profile selection button  ⇒ Fig. 144 . The driving profile selection menu appears on the infotainment system screen.
- Touch the function button for the desired driving profile on the infotainment system screen.
- **OR:** press the driving profile selection button  ⇒ Fig. 144 again to automatically select the next non-active driving profile.

The selected driving profile and individual settings will remain selected even after the ignition has been switched off.

The driving profile **Sport** will remain set even after the ignition has been switched off. However, when the ignition is switched back on, the engine or DSG® dual clutch gearbox could change to the driving profile **Normal** or the gear position **D/S**.

In order to switch back to gearbox mode **S** and activate the engine sport functions, select the **Sport** driving profile or tap the selector lever for the DSG® dual clutch gearbox towards the rear → *DSG® dual clutch gearbox*.

## **WARNING**

Changing the driving profile can alter the vehicle handling. Never allow driving profile selection to tempt you into taking any risks when driving.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.


## **WARNING**


Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.


- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## **NOTICE**

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

 The **Eco** mode is blocked when the vehicle is towing a trailer. If the vehicle is in **Eco** mode when a trailer is hitched and electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket, the system will automatically switch to **Normal** mode.

 In vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, the system automatically switches to gear position **S** when the **Sport** driving profile is selected. The system automatically switches to gear position **D** when the **Eco** driving profile is selected.


 The driver can adjust certain vehicle functions irrespective of the selected driving profile. For example, the driver can switch to gear position **S** when the **Eco** driving profile is selected.

<sup>a)</sup> Available with equipment level with adaptive chassis control (DCC).

## Adjusting the driving profile to suit your requirements


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The systems that can be adjusted to your individual requirements vary according to the vehicle equipment.

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, switch on the infotainment system.
- Press the driving profile selection button  and touch the **Individual** function button on the infotainment system screen.
- Touch the **Adapt** function button to open the **Individual** menu.

If the checkbox in the function button is ticked , the function is switched on.



Press the  function button to return to the previously active menu.

Menu	Settings options
DCC:	Comfort Normal Sport
Steering:	Normal Sport
Drive: <sup>a)</sup>	Normal Sport Eco
ACC:	Normal Sport Eco
Dynamic cornering light:	Normal Sport Eco
Air conditioning system:	Normal Eco
Reset profile:	Settings are reset to <b>Normal</b> .

Changes to settings menus are applied immediately, with the exception of engine settings.

## **WARNING**

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the infotainment system can distract you from the road.

<sup>a)</sup> Only the engine is activated on vehicles with manual gearbox. The gearbox is activated additionally on vehicles with automatic gearbox.

## 4MOTION Active Control

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*
- ⇒ *Function and operation*
- ⇒ *Adjusting the driving profile*

The driver can use 4MOTION Active Control to activate a variety of vehicle settings in a four-wheel drive vehicle as required. This involves a selection between various driving profile groups and driving profiles.

## ⚠ WARNING

Selecting a driving profile while the vehicle is in motion can distract you from the road and cause accidents.

## Warning and indicator lamps



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ ⚠ Introduction

Lit up	Possible cause/action
	Fault in the adaptive chassis control (DCC). <sup>a)</sup> Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.
	<i>When displayed in white:</i> Hill Descent Control active. <i>When displayed in grey:</i> Hill Descent Control not active. System switched on, does not regulate.
	Off-road or Off-road Individual driving profile active.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## ⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## ⓘ NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

<sup>a)</sup> Displayed in colour on an instrument cluster with colour display.

## Function and operation

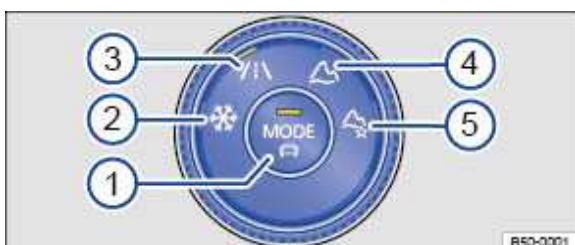


Fig. 145 In the lower section of the centre console: control for the 4MOTION Active Control.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ ⚠ Introduction

Key to ⇒ Fig. 145:

①

MODE button for selecting an on-road driving profile or opening the menu in the infotainment system.

2 Snow driving profile.

3 On-road driving profile.

4 Off-road driving profile.

5 Off-road Individual driving profile.

In vehicles with front-wheel drive, the driving profiles are selected via the driving profile selection button ⇒ [Function and operation](#) .

## Snow

The Snow driving profile provides better accelerator sensitivity on icy or snow-covered roads. In addition, the lane holding when cornering and the power in straight driving are also improved. The dynamic of the Adaptive Cruise Control is restricted. The dynamic cornering light is adjusted to provide better support in poor visibility.

It is not possible to shift into S position in the Snow driving profile.

## On-road

In the upgradeable On-road driving profile, you can choose between the Eco, Comfort, Normal, Sport and Individual driving profiles ⇒ [Driving Profile Selection](#) .

## Off-road

The Off-road driving profile provides better accelerator sensitivity in off-road terrain. The engine brake is always available and gearshifts can be prevented in critical situations. In the Off-road mode, the hill start assist and Hill Descent Control are active. The vehicle is therefore given a dynamic parking brake auto release function for inclines and the acceleration is regulated when driving downhill. The dynamic cornering light is adjusted to provide better support in the Off-road mode.

It is not possible to shift into S position in the Off-road driving profile.



## Off-road Individual

The upgradeable Off-road Individual driving profile makes it possible to make further settings in the Off-road mode ⇒ [Adjusting the Off-road Individual driving profile](#) . In this way, you can benefit from the advantages of the Off-road mode, while also selecting individual characteristics for various systems. The settings in Off-road Individual are stored for the active personalisation user account.


## Selecting the driving profile

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on.
- Turn the control ⇒ [Fig. 145](#) of the 4MOTION Active Control until the LED next to the desired driving profile lights up.

The selected driving profile is displayed in the infotainment system screen.

- Touch the  function button to display additional information about the active driving profile.
- Touch the  function button to close the menu.

With the menu inactive:

- Press in the centre of the control on  ⇒ [Fig. 145](#) .

The selection is displayed on the infotainment system screen.

If one of the driving profiles Snow, Off-road or Off-road Individual was the last active profile, the most recently active On-road driving profile is activated if the ignition remains switched off for a relatively long period.

## WARNING

Changing the driving profile can alter the vehicle handling. Never allow driving profile selection to tempt you into taking any risks when driving.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE


Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Adjusting the Off-road Individual driving profile





First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The systems that can be adjusted to your individual requirements vary according to the vehicle equipment.

- Ensure that the ignition is switched on.
- If necessary, turn the control ⇒ [Fig. 145](#) of the 4MOTION Active Control until the LED next to the Off-road Individual driving profile lights up.
- If Off-road Individual was already selected, simply press in the centre of the control on  ⇒ [Fig. 145](#).
- Touch the **Adapt** function button to open the **Off-road Individual** menu.

If the checkbox in the function button is ticked , the respective characteristic is active.

Touching the function button  always takes you back to the previously active menu.

Menu	Settings options	Impact
<b>DCC:</b>	<p><b>Comfort</b></p> <p><b>Normal</b></p> <p><b>Sport</b></p>	While the vehicle is in motion, the adaptive chassis control constantly adjusts the suspension characteristics to match the road surface and the current driving situation, in accordance with the settings of the preset driving profile. If there is a fault in the adaptive chassis control, the  indicator lamp appears on the instrument cluster display along with the message <b>Fault: damper control</b> .
<b>Steering:</b>	<p><b>Normal</b></p> <p><b>Sport</b></p>	In the <b>Sport</b> driving profile, power steering is reduced and the effort required to steer the vehicle increases. The vehicle's driving response becomes more agile.
<b>Drive:</b>	<p><b>Normal</b></p> <p><b>Off-road</b></p>	The engine and gearbox will give either a more dynamic or more balanced response to the movement of the accelerator, depending on the selected driving profile. The gear shift points are changed in vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox.
<b>ACC:</b>	<b>Normal</b>	






Menu	Settings options	Impact
	<b>Sport</b>	When the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active, acceleration and deceleration of the vehicle becomes more ecological or sporty.
	<b>Eco</b>	
<b>Four-wheel drive:</b>	<b>Normal</b>	The Off-road mode guarantees traction that is adapted to the terrain.
	<b>Off-road</b>	
<b>Dynamic cornering light:</b>	<b>Normal</b>	The dynamic cornering light and the dynamic main beam control will give either a more dynamic or more balanced response to the current driving situation, depending on the selected driving profile.
	<b>Sport</b>	
	<b>Eco</b>	
	<b>Off-road</b>	
<b>Hill start assist:</b>	On	—
	Off	
<b>Hill Descent Control:</b>	On	—
	Off	
<b>Park Assist:</b>	on	—
	off	
<b>Air conditioning system:</b>	<b>Normal</b>	In <b>Eco</b> mode, the air conditioning will be set to run even more economically.
	<b>Eco</b>	
<b>Reset profile:</b>	The settings are equivalent to the Off-road driving profile.	

Changes to settings menus are applied immediately, with the exception of engine settings.


## WARNING

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the infotainment system can distract you from the road.

## Downhill speed control

Lit up	Possible cause/action
	The vehicle is being held by the Auto Hold function. Switch off the Auto Hold function if necessary ⇒ <i>Auto Hold function</i> .
	<i>When displayed in white:</i> Hill Descent Control active ⇒ <i>Hill Descent Control</i> .
	<i>When displayed in grey:</i> Hill Descent Control not active. System switched on, but not regulating ⇒ <i>Hill Descent Control</i> .
	The start/stop system is available, automatic engine stop is active ⇒ <i>Start/stop system</i> .
	The start/stop system is not available.
	<b>OR:</b> the start/stop system has switched on the engine automatically. Check whether all technical requirements have been fulfilled. If not, remedy any shortfalls ⇒ <i>Start/stop system</i> .
	The engine is starting. Pre-heating period in diesel engines. Check whether all technical requirements have been fulfilled. If not, remedy any shortfalls ⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i> .

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

In vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the downhill speed control system helps brake the vehicle when travelling downhill → . This system uses the braking power of the engine, rather than the brakes directly.

The automatic gearbox selects the best gear for the driving conditions, depending on the steepness of the downhill gradient and the current speed. The selector lever must be in position **D/S**. The downhill speed control is **not** active in Tiptronic mode.

As the downhill speed control can only shift down as far as third gear, it may be necessary to activate the Tiptronic mode when driving down particularly steep inclines. When in Tiptronic mode, select second or first gear manually in order to make use of the braking effect of the engine and to relieve the brakes.

### Activating downhill speed control automatically:

- If the downhill gradient is greater than approximately 6%.
- **AND:** if the selector lever is in position **D/S**.
- **In addition, if the cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control is switched off:** if the vehicle speed is less than approximately 80 km/h (50 mph) or the brake pedal is depressed.
- **In addition, if the cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control is active:** if the stored speed is exceeded.

### Deactivating downhill speed control automatically:


- If the downhill gradient becomes less steep.
- **OR:** if the gearbox shifts up a gear because the engine speed is higher than approximately 4,500 rpm.
- **Or in addition if the cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control is active:** if the stored speed can be maintained.

## **WARNING**

**Always be prepared to brake the vehicle. Accidents and injuries could occur if this is not ensured.**

- **The downhill speed control is only a support function and may not be able to brake the vehicle sufficiently in all situations when driving downhill.**
- **The vehicle may become faster despite the downhill speed control being in operation.**

## Hill Descent Control


Lit up	Possible cause/remedy
	<i>When displayed in white:</i> Hill Descent Control active ⇒ <i>Hill Descent Control</i> . <i>When displayed in grey:</i> Hill Descent Control not active. System switched on, but not regulating ⇒ <i>Hill Descent Control</i> .

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

The Hill Descent Control system automatically brakes all 4 wheels by means of a braking intervention to limit the speed when driving forwards and reversing on steep slopes. The wheels will not lock as the anti-lock brake system remains active. In vehicles with a manual gearbox, Hill Descent Control adjusts the target speed so that the engine speed does not drop below the idling speed.

If you enter a downhill slope travelling at a speed under 30 km/h (18 mph), the vehicle speed will be limited to a speed between min. 2 km/h (1 mph) and max. 30 km/h (18 mph). The driver can use the accelerator pedal and the brakes to alter the speed in this range. The control speed will be set again as soon as the driver takes their foot off the accelerator or brake pedal.

However, this can work only if the tyres have sufficient grip on the road. The function of the Hill Descent Control system will be restricted, for example, if the vehicle is driven down an icy or slippery slope.

The function display  in the instrument cluster shows that the Hill Descent Control system is ready to use .

Hill Descent Control is automatically activated if the following conditions are met:

- The engine is running.
- The **Off-road** driving profile is selected ⇒ [Driving Profile Selection](#) .
- The speed is under 30 km/h (18 mph) (the  function display is visible on the instrument cluster display).
- The downhill gradient is at least 10 %.
- You do not brake or accelerate.

The Hill Descent Control function will be deactivated when the downhill gradient is less than 5 %.

## WARNING

**Always be prepared to brake the vehicle. Accidents and injuries could occur if this is not ensured.**

- **The Hill Descent Control system is only a support function and may not be able to brake the vehicle sufficiently in all situations when driving downhill.**
- **The vehicle may accelerate despite the Hill Descent Control system.**

## Off-road driving

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Safety information for driving off-road*
- ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*
- ⇒ *Explanation of technical terms*
- ⇒ *Checklist*
- ⇒ *General rules and driving tips*
- ⇒ *Useful accessories for off-road driving*
- ⇒ *Changing gear*
- ⇒ *Rough terrain*
- ⇒ *Driving through water*
- ⇒ *Off-road driving in snow*
- ⇒ *Driving in steep terrain*
- ⇒ *Traversing a slope*
- ⇒ *Driving through ditches*
- ⇒ *Driving in sand and mud*
- ⇒ *If your vehicle gets stuck*
- ⇒ *After off-road driving*
- ⇒ *Off-road display*

You can also drive four-wheel drive vehicles off-road in addition to normal roads. It is very important to read the contents of this section before driving off-road.

The vehicle is not built for expeditions.

The examples given in this chapter are an aid for safe off-road driving. However, we cannot predict whether these guidelines will be valid for all situations that could occur.

The large variety of landscapes and the associated risks and dangers make it impossible to describe all possible driving situations. The examples are only general guidelines which should help you to drive safely off-road. It is crucial that you know what to expect when you drive into off-road terrain you are unfamiliar with. This will enable you to assess potential danger in advance.

The driver can use 4Motion Active Control to activate a variety of vehicle settings in a four-wheel drive vehicle as required ⇒ [4MOTION Active Control](#).

## Checklist

---

**Before driving for the first time, take the following steps so you can operate and drive the vehicle safely off-road:**

Observe the basic safety notes Safety information for driving off-road.

Familiarise yourself with the vehicle controls.

Check and, if necessary, adjust the seat position Sitting position and fit the seat belts Seat belts.

Check your distance from the steering wheel and adjust it as needed Steering.

Always wear suitable, well-fitting shoes that provide good grip for your feet when using the pedals.

## Safety information for driving off-road

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### WARNING

The intelligent vehicle technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Despite input from the ABS, adverse terrain can cause instability through locked wheels, e.g. if you brake hard when driving on a loose gravel road. The ESC system will have difficulty stabilising the vehicle in these circumstances.

### WARNING

Driving off-road can be dangerous and could cause accidents, serious injury, damage to the vehicle and also a vehicle breakdown far from any assistance.

- Never select a dangerous route and never take risks that could endanger you and your passengers. If you cannot drive on or if you are in any doubt about the safety of the route, turn round and choose another route.
- Even terrain that looks harmless can be difficult and dangerous, and could get you and your passengers into difficulties. It is preferable to walk over the terrain before driving over it.
- You should drive particularly carefully and think ahead when driving off-road. If you drive too fast or if a driving manoeuvre is unsuccessful this could result in serious injuries and vehicle damage.
- Never drive faster than the current terrain, road conditions, the traffic and the weather allow.
- Never drive too fast along embankments, ramps or slopes. This could cause the vehicle to lose contact with the ground. If this happens, you will be unable to steer and will lose control of the vehicle.
- If the vehicle does lose contact with the ground, always point the front wheels straight ahead. If the wheels are not pointing straight ahead when the vehicle lands, it could roll over.
- Terrain might look harmless, but there could be hidden dangers. Potholes, hollows, ditches, precipices, obstacles, shallows, soft and boggy surfaces are often not recognisable as such and can be covered either fully or partly by water or grass or branches lying on the ground. Inspect terrain on foot.



## WARNING

The terrain might look harmless, but there could be hidden dangers. Potholes, hollows, ditches, precipices, obstacles, shallows, soft and boggy surfaces are often not recognisable as such and can be covered either fully or partly by water or grass or branches lying on the ground. Driving off-road over such terrain could cause accidents, serious injury and also a vehicle breakdown.

- Check any unknown sections of the route on foot carefully before driving.
- Never choose an unsafe route or take a risk which could endanger you or your passengers. If you are in any doubt about the safety of the route, turn back and choose another route.
- Always adjust your speed and driving to match vehicle load levels and off-road, visibility and weather conditions.

## WARNING

Sports SUVs are subject to a considerably higher risk of rolling over than normal road passenger vehicles ⇒ [Explanation of technical terms](#).

- In the event of an accident, vehicle occupants not wearing seat belts are subjected to a considerably higher risk of fatal injury than those wearing seat belts.
- The vehicle has a higher centre of gravity and is more prone to rolling over than a normal on-road vehicle which is unsuited for off-road driving.
- Never drive too fast, especially when driving through bends, or carry out any extreme driving manoeuvres.
- Always adjust your speed and driving style to the terrain.
- Luggage and other items transported on the roof of the vehicle raise the centre of gravity and will make the vehicle more likely to roll over.

## WARNING

- Always avoid traversing a slope ⇒ [Traversing a slope](#).
- Vehicle occupants should never leave the vehicle via the doors facing down the hill when parked sideways on a steep hill. The combined centre of gravity of the vehicle and its payload (vehicle occupants and payload) can shift and cause the vehicle to roll over and roll down the incline. Always leave the vehicle slowly via the doors which open up the incline ⇒ [Traversing a slope](#).

## WARNING

The cruise control system was developed for use on normal roads. It is completely unsuitable for use in off-road situations and can even be very dangerous.

- Never use the cruise control system when driving off-road in order to reduce the risk of losing control over the vehicle and of serious injuries.

## WARNING

The area monitoring system (Front Assist) was developed for use on normal roads. It is completely unsuitable for use in off-road situations and can even be dangerous if used off-road.

- Never use the area monitoring system when driving off-road in order to reduce the risk of losing control over the vehicle and of serious injuries.

## WARNING

Driving the vehicle when the fuel level is too low could lead to your vehicle breaking down off-road, accidents and serious injuries.



- When the fuel level is too low, the fuel supply to the engine could be irregular, especially when driving up or down hills and inclines.
- The steering, all driver assist systems and brake support systems will not function if the engine sputters or stops completely due to a lack of fuel or irregular fuel supply.
- Always fill the tank when it is still 1/4 full. This reduces the risk of running out of fuel and breaking down.

## NOTICE

Any rain entering the vehicle when the windows or glass roof are open can soak the interior equipment and cause damage to the vehicle. The windows and glass roof should be kept closed when the vehicle is driven off-road.

## Warning and indicator lamps

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause/action
	Hill Descent Control switched on. $\Rightarrow$ <i>4MOTION Active Control</i> .
Flashes	Possible cause/action
	Hill Descent Control is regulating. $\Rightarrow$ <i>4MOTION Active Control</i> .

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Explanation of technical terms

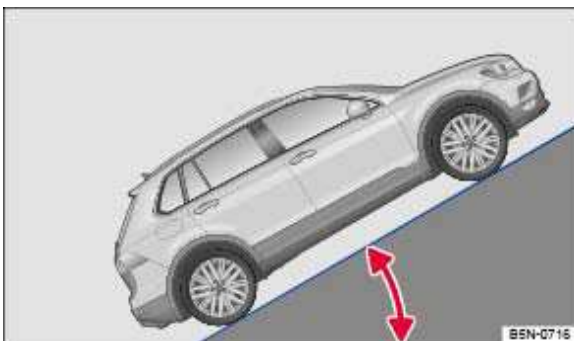


Fig. 146 Illustration: angle of gradient.



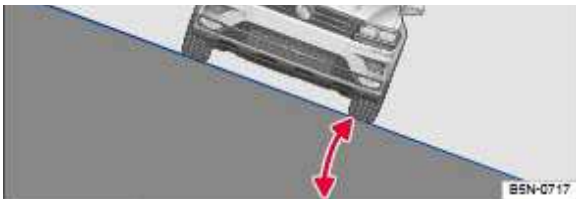


Fig. 147 Illustration: angle of tilt.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

**Centre of gravity** The centre of gravity of a vehicle influences its propensity to roll over. The vehicle has greater ground clearance for off-road driving, and thus a higher centre of gravity than a normal vehicle. The high centre of gravity means that there is a greater danger of roll-over when driving. Always remember this fact when driving and follow the safety tips and warnings given in this owner's manual. **Ground clearance** This is the vertical distance between the level ground and the lowest item on the vehicle. **Angle of rising gradient** The number of metres in height gained over a distance of 100 m will be given as a percentage or degree ⇒ Fig. 146 . Indication of gradient that the vehicle can drive up under its own power. Depends on road surface and engine power, among other factors. **Tilt angle** Maximum angle at which the vehicle may be driven across a slope without the vehicle toppling over (determined by centre of gravity) ⇒ Fig. 147. **Breakover angle** Maximum permitted angle given in degrees that a vehicle driven at low speed can clear a ramp without the underbody of the vehicle scraping the ramp. **Ramp angle** Crossover from the horizontal level surface to an uphill gradient, or from a downhill gradient back to the level surface. Angle at which the vehicle underbody will come into contact with the edge of the ramp. **Fall line** This is the vertical drop route. **Torsional flexibility** The vehicle's torsional flexibility when driving over objects with just one side of the vehicle.

## Checklist Before driving off-road

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

### Checklist

---

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following points before driving off-road:

- ✓ Obtain sufficient information before driving into off-road terrain with the vehicle.
- ✓ Do not plan day tours that are too long. Take increased fuel requirements for off-road driving into account.
- ✓ Refill tank completely. Fuel consumption is considerably higher off-road.
- ✓ Check that your tyres are suitable for the off-road journey you have planned. Recommendation for difficult off-road terrain: always have off-road tyres fitted to your vehicle.
- ✓ Check the tyre pressure on all tyres and correct them if necessary. This includes the temporary spare wheel, if fitted.
- ✓ Check engine oil level and refill engine oil as necessary. The engine will only be supplied with engine oil when it is driven on or across a steep slope if the engine oil level is sufficient.
- ✓ Completely refill washer fluid reservoir with water and washer fluid.
- ✓ Fit the towing eye at the front and rear. It is not always possible to fit a towing eye when the vehicle is stuck.
- ✓ Check the vehicle tools and add tools according to individual requirements Useful accessories for off-road driving.
- ✓ Pack luggage in the vehicle as evenly and as low as possible. Secure all loose items.

Volkswagen recommends completing an off-road driver training course before driving off-road. This is particularly important if you have no or only little experience in driving off-road. Even drivers with experience of off-road driving can benefit from off-road driver training.

A good driving course will teach you how to handle the vehicle in a variety of off-road situations and how to drive safely in difficult terrain. Driving off-road demands different skills and response in comparison to driving on roads. The safety of the driver and the vehicle passengers depends on the driver being informed, skilled and careful.

## General rules and driving tips

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

## Code of conduct for off-road driving

A responsible driver should respect the environment when driving off-road. Remember that driving through undergrowth and on meadows can destroy animal and plant habitats.

- Always stay on designated routes and paths.
- Do not create any unnecessary noise or dust.
- Leave nature as you found it.
- Avoid sensitive natural habitats.
- Give way to drivers coming uphill or who are overtaking.

## Driving tips

Special rules apply when driving off-road:

- Never drive off-road alone. Always drive off-road in a team of at least two other off-road vehicles. Unexpected situations can always occur. We recommend that you carry equipment you can use for calling for help.
- Stop your vehicle when you reach difficult sections, and walk along the path ahead to reconnoitre it.
- Drive slowly over the brows of hills so the vehicle does not lose contact with the ground as this could cause damage, leaving you unable to manoeuvre.
- Drive slowly when the route is difficult. Shift up a gear when on slippery ground and always keep the vehicle in motion.
- Always look for flat and firm surfaces. The ground is predominantly soft when driving off-road meaning the tyres could sink into the ground. This will reduce ground clearance and the wading depth.
- Even when driving at low speeds, always keep your distance from other vehicles. If the first vehicle suddenly gets stuck, the following vehicle can stop without getting stuck.



### NOTICE

- **Always ensure that there is enough ground clearance underneath the vehicle. Serious damage to the underbody could occur if the vehicle is scraped. This damage could cause the vehicle to break down and thus make it impossible to drive on.**
- **Do not slip the clutch or rest your foot on the clutch when driving off-road. When travelling over uneven ground, you could press the clutch by mistake, and lose control of the vehicle. A slipped clutch also prevents power being transferred from the engine to the gearbox. Driving with the clutch partially engaged causes premature wear to the clutch lining.**

## Useful accessories for off-road driving

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The checklist contains just a few items of equipment that can be very useful for off-road driving. If you have an instruction manual or fitting instructions for these accessories you should always take them with you and consult them as necessary when driving off-road.

## Checklist

---

**Useful items when driving off-road:**

- ✓ Water, compass, maps and torch with spare batteries.
- ✓ Winch, tow bar or rope with sufficient strength.
- ✓ Mobile telephone, shovel, blankets and rubber boots.
- ✓ Electrical air compressor for connection to the 12-volt plugs to inflate the vehicle tyres.
- ✓

A plank of wood, approx. 4 cm thick and approx. 1 metre long or an aluminium frame of similar size: this will help to free a vehicle stuck in the mud and provide a platform for a vehicle jack.



Snow chains, additional spare wheels, a breakdown set, jack and box spanner.

## Changing gear

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The choice of gear depends on the terrain off-road.

Before attempting to drive through difficult terrain it can be helpful to stop and consider which gear you should select. After some time driving off-road, you will learn which gear to select in conjunction with the low range and the differential lock for different types of terrain.

### Basic points

- With the correct gear selected, the vehicle will normally not have to be braked so much using the foot brake when driving downhill as the engine braking effect will normally be sufficient.
- You should only depress the accelerator as much as is required. If you accelerate too hard, the wheels could lose traction and you could lose control of the vehicle.

### Automatic gearbox

- Select position **D** when driving in normal, flat off-road terrain.
- Adjust your speed when driving on soft or slippery ground, and select the highest suitable position for the Tiptronic.
- If driving through mud, sand, water or hilly terrain, select the Tiptronic in the positions **3** or **2** ⇒ [DSG® dual clutch gearbox](#).
- Use off-road mode ⇒ [4MOTION Active Control](#).

## Rough terrain


---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Use off-road mode ⇒ [4MOTION Active Control](#).

You should drive through rocky terrain at walking pace.

If you are not able to drive around a stone, drive carefully onto the stone with one front wheel and drive over it slowly ⇒ .



### NOTICE

- **You should never drive straight over large obstacles, e.g. boulders or tree stumps, or drive over such obstacles with one side of the vehicle. Obstacles which require more ground clearance than is available could damage vehicle components when you drive over them and thus cause the vehicle to break down.**
- **Even obstacles that are smaller than the ground clearance selected could come into contact with the vehicle underbody and thus cause damage which could lead to a vehicle breakdown. This applies in particular if there is a ditch or soft ground either in front of or behind the obstacle. This also applies in cases when you drive too quickly over the obstacle, causing the vehicle to bounce.**



Escaping engine oil and brake fluid can pollute the environment. Spilt service fluids must be collected and then disposed of properly and in an environmentally responsible way.

## Driving through water

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Driving through flooded terrain could damage the vehicle ⇒ [Checklist Before driving off-road](#).

You can drive the vehicle carefully through water with a depth reaching to the bottom edge of the body, for example puddles or shallow water. Never stop in the water, do not drive in reverse, and never switch off the engine.

## WARNING

Strong flowing water can develop enormous power and sweep the vehicle away. This can lead to very dangerous situations which can cause accidents and serious or even fatal accidents.

- Never allow the vehicle to stand still in water.
- Water in the engine compartment can cause the vehicle to breakdown in the water.
- Soft ground surface, underwater obstacles and shallows can cause accidents and can cause the vehicle to breakdown in the water. This could lead to critical situations.

## NOTICE

If you drive through water, parts of the vehicle, such as the engine, drive train, running gear and vehicle electrics, could sustain severe damage.

- When driving through water, always select an area where the ground is solid, and where the depth of the water does not exceed the maximum permitted wading depth of the vehicle.
- Never drive through salt, salty surfaces or salt water as salt can cause corrosion. Rinse all components that have been exposed to salt or salt water thoroughly with fresh water.

## Off-road driving in snow

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Fit snow chains to the **front wheels only** before driving on snow-covered terrain.

Terrain might look harmless, but there could be hidden dangers. This is particularly true of sections where there are no tyre tracks.

## WARNING

Driving through snowy terrain is very dangerous.

- Both shallow and deep potholes, hollows, ditches, precipices, frozen surfaces and other obstacles can be fully or partially covered by snow.
- Dangers concealed by snow can cause an accident, serious injuries, or cause the vehicle to break down in extreme weather conditions.
- Always adjust your speed and driving to match vehicle load levels and off-road, visibility and weather conditions.

## Driving in steep terrain

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Driving up and down hills

Get out of the vehicle and assess the situation **before** you attempt to drive up or down a hill:

- Walk along the section and check the firmness of the ground. Look out for obstacles and other hidden dangers ⇒ .

- Check the section beyond the hill.
- You should not follow the route if it is too steep, uneven or if the ground surface is too loose. Select another route.
- Drive slowly and at constant speed straight up or down a slope.
- Accelerate only to the speed you need to climb the slope. Too much acceleration can cause the wheels to spin and lead to a loss of control of the vehicle. Too little acceleration increases the probability of stalling the engine.
- Never attempt to stop or turn on a slope.
- Avoid allowing the engine to stall.
- Do not change gear or engage the clutch when climbing a slope.
- Use off-road mode → *4MOTION Active Control*.

### If you cannot continue to drive up a hill

- Never turn the vehicle around on an incline.
- If the engine has stalled, depress the footbrake and start the engine again.
- Select the reverse gear and reverse back in a straight line slowly.
- Use the foot brake to keep a constant speed until you have reached a safe place.

### Driving downhill

Never exceed the inclination angle of the vehicle! If, in an emergency, you have to traverse the slope when driving down it and the vehicle threatens to tip over, steer downhill along the maximum gradient.

There is an increased risk of rolling over when driving downhill. Concentrate on steering the vehicle in particular when driving downhill.

Use off-road mode on steep downhill stretches → *4MOTION Active Control*.

- Drive down steep inclines in first gear.
- Use the foot brake sparingly in order not to lose control of the vehicle.
- If it is possible and not dangerous, drive straight down the slope on the maximum gradient (in the fall line).
- Do not press the clutch and do not select neutral.

## WARNING

**Never try driving up or down an incline if it is too steep for the vehicle. The vehicle could slide away, tip over or roll.**

- **The gradient of the slope up or downhill may be no greater than the maximum permissible gradient for the vehicle.**
- **Always drive up and downhill along the maximum gradient only.**
- **Never turn the vehicle when driving up or downhill. The vehicle could tip over or slide away sideways.**
- **If the engine stops or if you cannot drive on for any reason: stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal. Start the engine again. Select the reverse gear, release the brake pedal and using the engine braking effect to carefully reverse in a straight line along the fall line. Keep the vehicle speed low and constant.**
- **If you are unable to start the engine, keep your foot steady on the brake pedal and allow the vehicle to roll back down the track you made when driving up the hill. Keep the vehicle speed low and constant.**
- **Never let the vehicle coast out of gear backwards down a slope. You could lose control over the vehicle.**

### Traversing a slope





Fig. 148 Steering downhill along the maximum gradient.

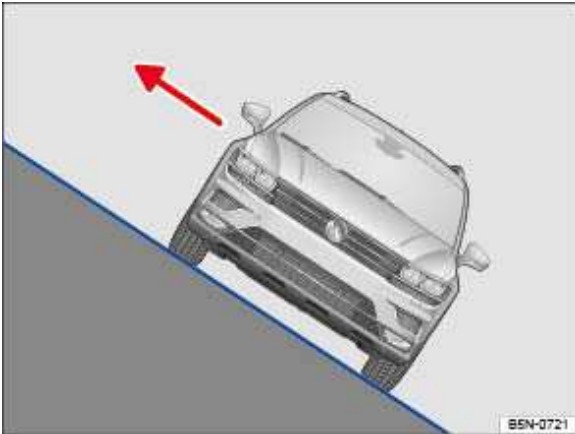


Fig. 149 On steep slopes, you should always use the doors pointing up the hill to get out of the vehicle.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*

Traversing a slope is one of the most dangerous off-road situations ⇒ ⚠.

It may look harmless, but you should not underestimate the difficulty and danger of traversing a slope. A vehicle could slide away, tip over or roll when in this position. This can cause severe or fatal injuries for all vehicle occupants.

Check whether you can use a safer route **before driving across a slope**.

If you have to drive at an angle, make sure the ground is as firm as possible. The vehicle is more likely to slip, dip and tip over on slippery or soft ground. Always be aware that uneven ground makes the slope steeper. The vehicle could otherwise tip over and start to roll.

When driving across a slope, the wheels on the lower side of the vehicle must never enter dips or hollows. The wheels on the upper side of the vehicle must never roll over bumps, for example stones, tree trunks or other obstacles.

If the vehicle threatens to tip over, steer immediately along the maximum gradient and depress the accelerator slightly ⇒ Fig. 148. If it is not possible to drive along the fall line, then steer uphill and depress the accelerator slightly.

The centre of gravity should be as low as possible. The weight of all vehicle occupants should be evenly distributed. People with a larger or heavier build should sit on the higher side of the vehicle. Remove the roof carrier and secure heavy items. The vehicle could tip over if items were to slide suddenly ⇒ ⚠.





## WARNING

Never try to traverse a slope. Particularly if the incline is too steep for the vehicle. The vehicle could slide away, tip over or roll. Please note the following points in order to reduce the risk of accidents and serious injuries:

- You should never underestimate the difficulty and danger of traversing a slope. Never choose an unsafe route or take a risk which could endanger you or your passengers. If you are in any doubt about the safety of the route, turn back and choose another route.
- The vehicle can lose its grip and slide away sideways, tip over or roll over and roll down the hill.
- The wheels on the lower side of the vehicle must never enter dips or hollows. The wheels on the upper side of the vehicle must never roll over bumps, for example stones, tree trunks or other obstacles.
- Please ensure that you can steer in the fall line on a route driving across a slope. Choose another route if this is not guaranteed. If the vehicle threatens to tip over, steer immediately along the maximum gradient and depress the accelerator slightly ⇒ *Fig. 148*.
- If the vehicle is stopped when traversing a slope, avoid sudden movements in the vehicle. The vehicle can lose its grip and slide away sideways, tip over or roll over and roll down the hill.
- Vehicle occupants should never leave the vehicle via the doors facing down the hill when parked sideways on a steep hill. This could cause the centre of gravity to move. The vehicle could otherwise tip over or roll over and roll down the hill. To avoid this, always leave the vehicle carefully on the side that is facing uphill ⇒ *Fig. 149*.
- When getting out the vehicle, please ensure that the vehicle door which opens uphill does not close with its own weight or through carelessness thus potentially causing injury.

## Driving through ditches

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

- Check whether the tilt angle and gradient entry/exit angles are small enough to drive through the ditch with the vehicle ⇒ .
- If possible, drive through the ditch at an acute angle ⇒ .
- The tilt angle may not get too large when driving through the ditch.

## WARNING

Never drive through a ditch if the entry/exit angle is too steep for the vehicle and the ditch is too deep. The vehicle could slide away, tip over or roll.



## NOTICE

If you drive into the ditch at a right angle, the front wheels will fall in. The underbody of your vehicle could get stuck and damaged which means that the vehicle could break down. It is then almost impossible to get out of the ditch despite having four-wheel drive.

## Driving in sand and mud

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Always drive at a steady speed through sand or mud and, if you have a manual gearbox, do not change gear.

- Check whether ESC is active. The indicator lamp  or  in the instrument cluster display should not light up ⇒ *Brake support systems*.
- Keep the vehicle moving constantly.

- Use off-road mode ⇒ *4MOTION Active Control* .
- Select a suitable gear and remain in this gear until you have reached more solid ground ⇒ *Changing gear* .

If the tyres have lost their grip, turn the steering wheel back and forth quickly. This can briefly give the tyres on the front wheels better grip for this ground surface condition.

## Driving in sand

Do not under any circumstances reduce the tyre pressure to drive through sand ⇒ ⚠️ . If however the tyre pressure has been reduced for driving through sand, the correct tyre pressure must always be reset before driving on. Driving with reduced tyre pressure can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle and increase the risk of serious and fatal injuries.

## Driving in mud

Do not change speed or direction. The tyres can lose their traction when driving through mud. If the vehicle slides, steer in the direction needed to get the vehicle under control.

### WARNING

**Driving through mud, sand and slush can be dangerous. The vehicle can slide uncontrollably. This increases the risk of injury. Always drive carefully through sand, mud and slush.**

- **Never choose an unsafe route or take a risk which could endanger you or your passengers. If you are in any doubt about the safety of the route, turn back and choose another route.**

### WARNING

**Incorrect tyre pressure can cause severe or even fatal accidents.**

- **Incorrect tyre pressures will increase the levels of wear on the tyres and will negatively affect the vehicle's driving response.**
- **An incorrect tyre pressure can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts and ripping of the tread surface and thus to a loss of control over the vehicle.**

## If your vehicle gets stuck

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒ ⚠️ *Introduction*

Rocking out a vehicle requires a great deal of training and feeling for the vehicle.

If you make a mistake when rocking the vehicle, it can sink deeper and you will need assistance to get out of the mud.

## When you cannot proceed ...

- Carefully dig out all the wheels and check that no other parts of the vehicle are stuck in the sand.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Reverse over your own tracks, accelerating gently.

If this does not help, place brushwood, floor mats or sacking directly in front of the wheels to increase grip ⇒ ⚠️ .

## Rocking the vehicle

Never allow the wheels to spin for long periods as this will cause the vehicle to sink deeper ⇒ ⚠️ .

- Switch off TCS ⇒ *Brake support systems* .
- Position the steering wheel so that it is facing straight ahead.
- Reverse until the point where the wheels just start to spin.
- Quickly select first gear and drive forwards until the wheels start to spin again.
- Repeat driving back and forth until you have enough momentum to free yourself.
- Switch the TCS on after the rocking procedure is completed ⇒ *Brake support systems* .
- Use off-road mode.

## **WARNING**

**Nobody may stand either in front or behind the vehicle, particularly if you are attempting to free a stuck vehicle.**

- **Spinning wheels can propel stones, brushwood, pieces of wood or other objects that are in front or behind the wheels at enormous speed and cause potentially fatal injury.**
- **People standing in front of or behind the vehicle could be run over if the stuck vehicle starts to move suddenly.**

## After off-road driving

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

## Checklist

- ✓ Clean the turn signals, headlight system, the number plate and all windows.
- ✓ If necessary, remove the towing eye and the snow chains.
- ✓ Check the tyres, struts and axles for damage and remove dirt, stones and other foreign bodies from the tyre tread.
- ✓ Inspect the vehicle underbody and remove all items that are jammed in the brake system, on the wheels, in the running gear, in the exhaust system and in the engine, such as branches, leaves or pieces of wood . If you see any damage or leaks, take your vehicle to a qualified workshop.
- ✓ Clean heavy soiling from the radiator grille and the vehicle underbody Vehicle care.
- ✓ Check the engine compartment to see if any dirt is affecting the engine operation In the engine compartment.
- ✓ Switch off OFF-ROAD mode 4MOTION Active Control.
- ✓ Switch on TCS again Brake support systems.

## **WARNING**

**Objects caught underneath the vehicle underbody are a danger. The vehicle underbody must always be examined for trapped objects after every journey off-road.**

- **Never drive if objects are trapped in the underbody, in the brake system, the wheels, in the running gear, in the exhaust system and in the engine.**
- **Inflammable materials, such as dry leaves or twigs, could ignite on hot vehicle components. A fire can cause serious injuries.**
- **Trapped objects could damage the fuel lines, brake system, seals and other components. This could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and cause accidents.**

## Off-road display

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The off-road display contains digital instruments that show additional information about the vehicle and its surroundings. This makes it possible to assess the current driving situation more precisely.

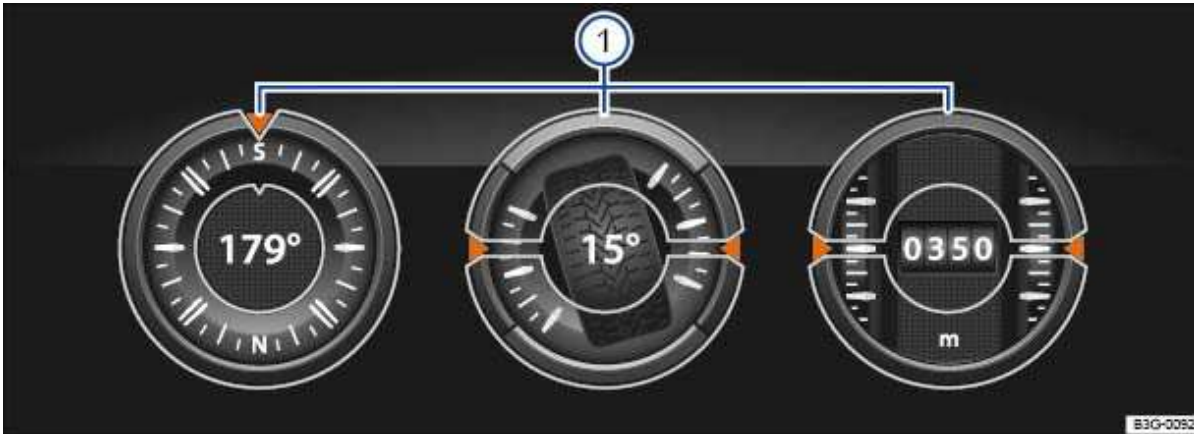


Fig. 150 In the Infotainment system: off-road display.

### Opening the off-road display

- Press the **CAR** button on the infotainment system.
- Touch the **Selection** function button.
- Touch the **Off-road** function button.
- **OR:** press the **MENU** button on infotainment system.
- Touch the **Vehicle** function button.
- Touch the **Selection** function button.
- Touch the **Off-road** function button.
- **OR:** press the **CAR** button on the infotainment system repeatedly until the off-road display is displayed.

### Selecting instruments and setting units


The display can show a maximum of three instruments at the same time. Each instrument can be selected for each display area ⇒ Fig. 150 ① (left, middle, right).


To change instruments, swipe vertically over the display. The currently selected instrument will then disappear and a new instrument will appear.

The units can be set for some instruments in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

### The following instruments can be displayed (depending on equipment level):

- **Altimeter:** the altimeter shows the current altitude above sea level (in the unit m or ft).
- **Steering angle display:** the steering angle of the vehicle is display in the range between  $-49^\circ$  and  $49^\circ$  corresponding to the amount by which the steering wheel is turned. The value is positive for a left steering angle and negative for a right steering angle. If the wheel on the display is aligned vertically, the vehicle wheels are practically straight.
- **Compass:** the compass shows the current driving direction.
- **Coolant temperature display:** the display corresponds to the temperature display on the instrument cluster ⇒ *Warning lamp and coolant temperature display*. A yellow transition range is also marked. The needle may move further in clockwise direction under

high engine loads and with high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern unless the  indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is lit up or flashing.

- **Oil temperature display:** the needle is in the middle area under normal driving conditions. If the needle is in the bottom left area, this means that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid excessively high speeds and acceleration when the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. The needle may move further in clockwise direction under high engine loads and with high outside temperatures. This is no cause for concern unless the  indicator lamp in the instrument cluster is lit up or flashing ⇒ *Engine oil*.

## Adapting the display areas to the driving situation

Select the three possible instruments corresponding to the driving situation and the environmental or terrain conditions, e.g.:

- **Sandy terrain:** oil, steering angle and coolant temperature display
- **Inclines:** steering angle and coolant temperature display, altimeter
- **Alpine terrain:** steering angle display, altimeter, compass

### **WARNING**

Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted. Operating the Infotainment system can distract you from the road.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.

## Driver assist systems

### Cruise control system

#### Introduction


---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Display and indicator lamps*
- ⇒ *Operating the Cruise Control System (CCS)*

The cruise control system helps to maintain a speed set by the driver.

The cruise control system can maintain an individual set speed at forward speeds from about 20 km/h (12 mph)<sup>1)</sup>.

The cruise control system only slows the vehicle by easing off the accelerator, not through braking intervention ⇒ .

## WARNING

The use of the Cruise Control System can lead to accidents and serious injuries if traffic does not allow you to drive at a safe distance from the vehicle in front at a constant speed.

- Never use the cruise control system in heavy traffic, when there is insufficient distance from the vehicle in front, on steep or winding roads, on slippery road surfaces, e.g. on snow, ice, wet roads or loose chippings, or on flooded roads.
- Never use the cruise control system when driving off-road or on unsurfaced roads.
- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Always switch off the cruise control system after use to avoid unintentional speed regulation.
- It is dangerous to use a set speed that is too high for the prevailing road, traffic or weather conditions.
- When travelling down hills, the cruise control system cannot maintain a constant speed. The vehicle speed can increase under its own weight. Shift down a gear or brake the vehicle using the foot brake.

<sup>1)</sup> The mph figure in brackets relates solely to instrument clusters that display distances/speeds in miles.

## Display and indicator lamps



Fig. 151 Instrument cluster display: cruise control system status display.


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\Rightarrow$   [Introduction](#)

### Displays

Status  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 151:

- A** The cruise control system has been switched off temporarily. The stored speed is shown in small numbers or the display is darkened.
- B** System fault. Go to a qualified workshop.
- C** The cruise control system is switched on. Speed memory is empty.
- D** The cruise control system is active. Stored speed in large figures.

### Indicator lamp

Lit up	Possible cause
	Cruise control system switched on and active.

Lit up	Possible cause
	OR: Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) switched on, active.
	OR: the speed limiter is switched on, active.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## **!** WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.

## **!** NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

**i** If the cruise control system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) or speed limiter were switched on when the ignition was switched off, the cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will be switched on automatically the next time the ignition is switched on. However, no speed is stored. The speed limiter's last set speed remains stored.

**i** Displays can vary as different versions of the instrument cluster are available.

## Operating the Cruise Control System (CCS)



Fig. 152 On the left of the steering column: cruise control system lever.





Fig. 153 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel: buttons for operating the cruise control system.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

Function	Button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 153 /action	Lever position, lever operation for the cruise control system (CCS) ⇒ Fig. 152
Switch on the cruise control system (CCS).	Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.  The system is switched on. No speed has yet been stored and the speed is not yet being controlled.	Move the lever to position ① <b>ON</b> .
Switching between the cruise control system and the speed limiter.	Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.  This switches between the cruise control system and the speed limiter ⇒ <i>Speed limiter</i> .	
Activate the cruise control system (CCS).	Press the <b>SET</b> button on the multifunction steering wheel.  The current speed is stored and controlled.	Press the <b>SET</b> button ③.
Switching off the CCS control temporarily.	Press the <b>CNL</b> button on the multifunction steering wheel.  <b>OR:</b> briefly press the  button in the multifunction steering wheel.  <b>OR:</b> depress the brake pedal.  Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory.	Press the lever ① to position <b>CANCEL</b> .
Resuming CCS control.	Press the <b>RES</b> button on the multifunction steering wheel.  The stored speed is reactivated and controlled.	Move the lever to position ① <b>RESUME</b> .
Increasing the set speed (during CCS control).	Press the <b>RES</b> button on the multifunction steering wheel <i>briefly</i> to increase the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.  Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel <i>briefly</i> to increase the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.  Press and <i>hold</i> the  button on the multifunction steering wheel to increase the speed continuously until the button is released, and to store this speed.  The vehicle accelerates actively until it reaches the new set speed.	Tap the lever to position ① <b>RESUME</b> <i>repeatedly</i> to increase the set speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.  Press the pressure point <b>SPEED + ⊕</b> <i>briefly</i> to increase the set speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.  Press and <i>hold</i> the <b>SPEED + ⊕</b> button to increase the set speed continuously. The new speed setting will be stored when you release the button.
Decreasing the set speed (during CCS control).	Press the <b>SET</b> button on the multifunction steering wheel <i>briefly</i> to reduce the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.  Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel <i>briefly</i> to reduce the stored speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.  Press and <i>hold</i> the  button on the multifunction steering wheel to decrease the speed continuously until the button is released, and to store this speed.  The system will decrease the speed until the new set speed is reached by easing off the acceleration <i>without</i> a braking intervention.	Tap the <b>SET</b> button ③ <i>repeatedly</i> to decrease the set speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.  Press the pressure point <b>SPEED - ⊖</b> <i>briefly</i> to decrease the set speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.  Press and <i>hold</i> the pressure point <b>SPEED - ⊖</b> to decrease the set speed continuously. The new speed setting will be stored when you release the button.
		Move the lever to position ① <b>OFF</b> .



Function	Button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 153 /action	Lever position, lever operation for the cruise control system (CCS) ⇒ Fig. 152
Switch off the cruise control system (CCS).	<p>With active regulation, briefly press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel <i>twice</i>.</p> <p><b>OR:</b> in any operating mode, press the  button in the multifunction steering wheel <i>and hold for an extended period</i>.</p>	<p>The system is switched off. The stored speed will be deleted.</p>

The mph figures given in brackets in the table relate exclusively to instrument clusters with mile readings.

## Changing gear in cruise control system mode

The cruise control system reduces acceleration as soon as the clutch is depressed, and automatically continues to regulate the speed after a gear change.

## Driving downhill with the cruise control system (CCS)

If the cruise control system cannot maintain the vehicle speed when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the foot brake and shift down gear if necessary.

## Automatic switch-off

The cruise control system control will be switched off automatically or switched off temporarily:

- If the system detects a fault that could impair the function of the cruise control system.
- If the vehicle speed is higher than the stored speed for an extended period with the accelerator pedal depressed.
- If regulation related to the driving dynamics is taking place, e.g. by the traction control system and ESC.
- If the brake pedal is depressed.
- If the airbag is triggered.
- If the selector lever for DSG® dual clutch gearbox is moved out of position **D/S**.

# Speed limiter


## Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Display and warning and indicator lamp*

⇒ *Operating the speed limiter*

The speed limiter helps to maintain a speed limitation set by the driver.

The speed limiter helps to prevent the driver from exceeding an individually stored speed when driving forwards at speeds of approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) and above ⇒ .

## ⚠ WARNING

Always switch off the speed limiter after use to avoid unintentional speed regulation.

- The speed limiter does not relieve the driver of their responsibility for the speed of the vehicle. Do not drive at full throttle if it is not required.
- Use of the speed limiter in adverse weather conditions is dangerous and can cause serious injury, e.g. through aquaplaning, snow, ice, or leaves. Only use the speed limiter when the road and weather conditions allow it to be used safely.
- The speed limiter cannot limit the vehicle speed when travelling downhill. The vehicle speed can increase under its own weight. Shift down a gear or brake the vehicle using the foot brake.

## Display and warning and indicator lamp



Fig. 154 On the instrument cluster display: speed limiter status displays.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ [Introduction](#)

### Speed limiter displays

Status ⇒ [Fig. 154](#) :

- (A)** The speed limiter is active. The last stored speed is displayed in large digits.
- (B)** The speed limiter is inactive. The last stored speed is shown in small digits or the display is darkened.
- (C)** The speed limiter is switched off. The total mileage is displayed.

### Warning and indicator lamp

Lit up	Possible cause
	The speed limiter is switched on, active. <b>OR:</b> Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) switched on, active ⇒ <a href="#">Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</a> . <b>OR:</b> Cruise control system switched on and active ⇒ <a href="#">Cruise control system</a> .
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and speed limiter active.

Flashes	Possible cause
	The set speed of the speed limiter has been exceeded.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.


## **WARNING**


Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.

## **NOTICE**

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

 Displays can vary as different versions of the instrument cluster are available.

 If the cruise control system, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) or speed limiter were switched on when the ignition was switched off, the cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) will be switched on automatically the next time the ignition is switched on. However, no speed is stored. The speed limiter's last set speed remains stored.

## Operating the speed limiter

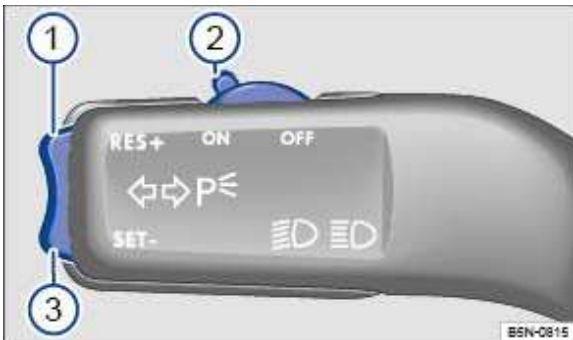


Fig. 155 On the left of the steering column: switch and buttons for operating the speed limiter.
















Fig. 156 Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel: buttons for operating the speed limiter.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)


The speed limiter may be installed in the vehicle either together with the cruise control system or with the Adaptive Cruise Control or without these two systems.

If the speed limiter is installed without the two systems, operation is not possible by means of the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 156.

Function	Button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 156	Switch position, switch control in the turn signal lever ⇒ Fig. 155
Switching on the speed limiter.	Press the  button or  button.  The system is switched on. The speed limiter's last set speed is stored. No control takes place yet.	Move switch ② to position <b>ON</b> .
Changing between the speed limiter and cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (when the speed limiter is switched on).	Press the  button.  This switches between the speed limiter and the cruise control system or Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).	
Activating the speed limiter.	Press the  button.  The speed at which the vehicle is currently travelling is stored in the memory as the maximum speed and the speed limiter is activated.	Press button ③ in area <b>SET/-</b> .
Switching off the speed limiter regulation temporarily.	Press the  or  button.  Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory.	
Switching off speed limiter regulation temporarily using the kickdown function.	Fully depress the accelerator beyond resistance (e.g. for overtaking). The speed limiter is switched off temporarily when the stored speed is exceeded.  Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory. Speed limiter regulation switches on again automatically as soon as the vehicle falls below the originally stored speed.	
Resuming speed limiter control.	Press the  button.  The speed is limited to the stored speed as soon as the speed at which the vehicle is currently travelling falls below the stored maximum speed.	Press button ① in area <b>RES/+</b> .
Increasing the stored speed.	Press the  button <i>briefly</i> to increase the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.  Press and <i>hold</i> the  button on the multifunction steering wheel to increase the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.  The speed is limited to the stored value.	Press button ① in area <b>RES/+</b> <i>briefly</i> to increase the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.  Press and <i>hold</i> button ① in area <b>RES/+</b> to scroll the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.
Reducing the stored speed.	Press the  button <i>briefly</i> to reduce the speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.  Press and <i>hold</i> the  button to reduce the stored speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.  The speed is limited to the stored value.	Press button ③ in area <b>SET/-</b> <i>briefly</i> to reduce the stored speed in small increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) and to store the speed.  Press and <i>hold</i> button ③ in area <b>SET/-</b> to scroll the speed in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) and to store the speed.
Switching off the speed limiter.	With active regulation, briefly press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel <i>twice</i> .  <b>OR:</b> in any operating mode, press the  button in the multifunction steering wheel <i>and hold for an extended period</i> .  The system is switched off. The stored speed remains stored in the memory.	Move switch ② to position <b>OFF</b> .

The mph figures given in brackets in the table relate exclusively to instrument clusters with mile readings.

## Driving downhill with the speed limiter

When the speed limiter's stored set speed is exceeded when travelling downhill, the warning and indicator lamp  ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamp* will begin to flash after a short time, and a signal tone may also be sounded. Apply the foot brake to slow the vehicle down, and change down a gear as required.

## Automatic switch-off

Speed limiter regulation is automatically switched off:

- If the system detects a fault that could impair the function of the speed limiter.
- If the airbag is triggered.

### NOTICE

In the event of automatic switch-off due to a system fault, the speed limiter is completely deactivated only when the accelerator is released once or the driver deliberately deactivates the system. This is for safety reasons.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)


### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Displays, warning and indicator lamps*
- ⇒ *Radar sensor*
- ⇒ *Operating Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*
- ⇒ *Switch off the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) temporarily in the following situations*
- ⇒ *Special driving situations*

Adaptive cruise control combines cruise control and distance control.

The **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)** can be used to maintain a speed set by the driver ⇒ . The ACC function can also maintain a set time interval to a vehicle travelling ahead. Two factory-fitted versions of the system are available:

- System version 1 functions at speeds of 30 – 160 km/h (20 mph – 100 mph).
- System version 2 functions at speeds of 30 – 210 km/h (20 mph – 130 mph).

In vehicles with a dual clutch gearbox DSG<sup>®</sup>, the Adaptive Cruise Control can brake the vehicle **until it comes to a complete standstill** behind a vehicle in front that is stopping.

## Request for driver to take control

There are system-specific limits on the Adaptive Cruise Control when driving. This means that the driver may have to control the speed and distance between the vehicle and other vehicles in certain circumstances.

The *request for the driver to take control* is indicated by a message on the instrument cluster display with a request to brake and by a signal tone ⇒ *Displays, warning and indicator lamps*.

## WARNING


The intelligent technology used in the Adaptive Cruise Control cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the ACC tempt you into taking any risks when driving. Careless or unintentional use of the Adaptive Cruise Control can cause accidents and lead to serious injury. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.


- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not use the Adaptive Cruise Control in poor visibility, on steep or winding roads, on slippery road surfaces, e.g. on snow, ice, wet roads or loose chippings, or on flooded roads.
- Never use the Adaptive Cruise Control off-road or on non-surfaced roads. Adaptive cruise control is designed for use on surfaced roads only.
- Adaptive cruise control does not react to stationary obstacles, e.g. the tail end of a traffic jam, a vehicle that has broken down, or vehicles waiting at traffic lights.
- The Adaptive Cruise Control without pedestrian monitoring does not react to persons. In addition, the system does not react to animals or crossing vehicles or to vehicles that are approaching in the same lane.
- If the Adaptive Cruise Control speed reduction is insufficient, you should brake the vehicle immediately by depressing the foot brake.
- Brake the vehicle by depressing the brake if the vehicle starts rolling unintentionally after the driver has been prompted to take control of the vehicle.
- If the instrument cluster display displays a *request for the driver to take control*, you have to regulate the distance yourself.
- The driver must be prepared to take control of the vehicle (by accelerating or braking) at all times.


## NOTICE


Switch off the Adaptive Cruise Control if you suspect that the radar sensor has been damaged. This can help to prevent secondary damage.

- Repair work on the radar sensor requires special knowledge and tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

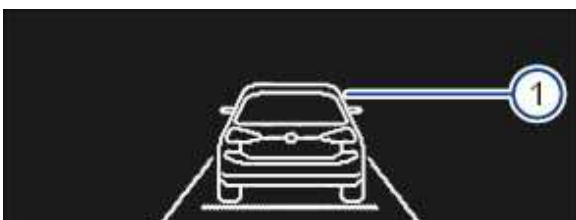
 If the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) does not function as described in this chapter, do not use it, and have the system checked by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

 The maximum vehicle speed when the Adaptive Cruise Control is active is 160 km/h (99 mph).

 If the Adaptive Cruise Control is active, unfamiliar noises may be heard during the automatic braking procedure. These are caused by the braking system.

 You can save some settings in the user accounts in personalisation ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system* .

## Displays, warning and indicator lamps



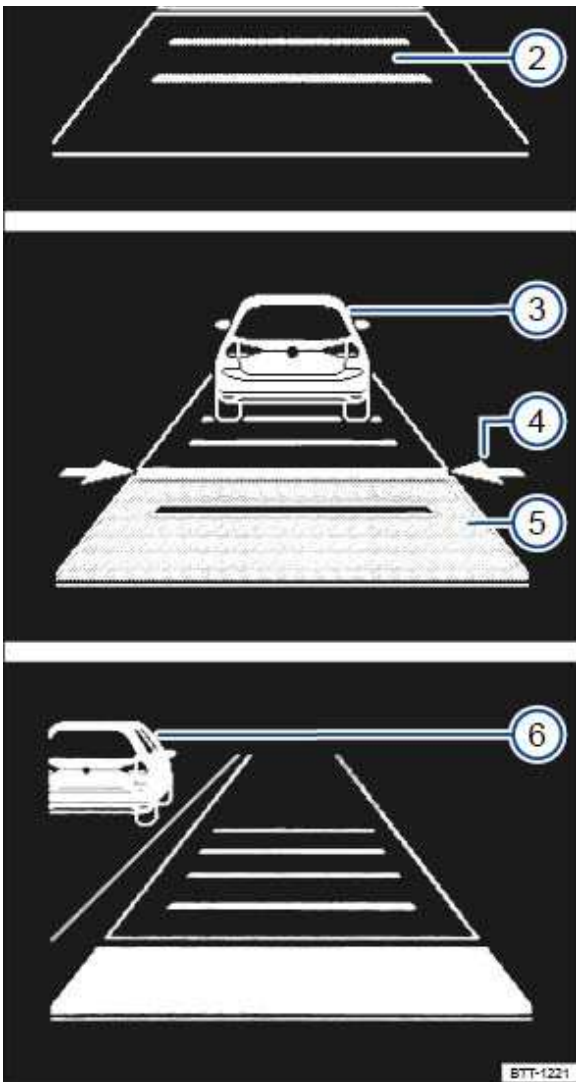


Fig. 157 Instrument cluster display: status displays of the Adaptive Cruise Control.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ [Introduction](#)









## Displays

Display fields ⇒ Fig. 157 :

- ① Vehicle ahead. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) inactive.
- ② Selected clearance range. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) inactive.
- ③ Vehicle detected ahead. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) active.
- ④ Setting the time interval to the vehicle in front while travelling at stored speed.
- ⑤ Set time interval to the vehicle in front while travelling at stored speed.
- ⑥ Identified vehicle ahead on the inside lane. Inside Overtaking Prevention System of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) active.

## Warning and indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy ⇒
	Brake pedal not depressed.

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy ⇒ 
	<p>The speed reduction of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) to the vehicle ahead is insufficient.</p> <p><b>Brake!</b> Depress the brake pedal. Request for the driver to take control.</p>
	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) currently not available.</p>
	<p>Switch off the engine and restart it while stationary. Inspect the radar sensor (for dirt, ice etc.). Go to a qualified workshop immediately and have the system checked if it is permanently unavailable.</p>
	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) switched on, active ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i> .</p>
	<p><b>OR:</b> Cruise control system switched on and active ⇒ <i>Cruise control system</i> .</p>
	<p><b>OR:</b> the speed limiter is switched on, active ⇒ <i>Speed limiter</i> .</p>
	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) active. No vehicle has been detected ahead. The set speed is kept constant.</p>
	<p><i>When displayed in white:</i> Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) active. Vehicle detected ahead.</p>
	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) regulates the speed and the distance from the vehicle ahead.</p>
	<p><i>When displayed in grey:</i> Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) not active. System switched on, does not regulate.</p>
	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and speed limiter active.</p>
	<p>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and cruise control system active.</p>

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.


## WARNING

Failure to observe the warning lamps and text messages could lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

 When the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is switched on, some system-related displays on the instrument cluster can be overwritten by other functions, e.g. incoming telephone calls.

## Radars sensor







**Fig. 158** In the radiator grille behind the Volkswagen badge: radar sensor and area around the radar sensor to be kept clear.



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*

A radar sensor is installed in the radiator grille behind the Volkswagen badge to monitor the traffic situation ⇒ *Fig. 158*. Vehicles travelling ahead can thus be detected up to a distance of approximately 120 m.

The view of the radar sensor can be impaired by contamination such as slush or snow, or by environmental conditions such as heavy rain or spray. This means that the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) also will not work. The instrument cluster display shows the message **ACC: no sensor view!**. If necessary, clean the Volkswagen badge in front of the radar sensor ⇒ ⚠.

The Adaptive Cruise Control will automatically be available again as soon as the radar sensors are no longer impaired. The message on the instrument cluster display goes out, and the Adaptive Cruise Control can be reactivated.

Strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, e.g. in multi-storey car parks, can impair the function of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).

The area in front of and around the radar sensor must not be covered by objects such as stickers, auxiliary headlights, face plates for number plates or the like, as this can impair the function of the Adaptive Cruise Control. The installation position of the radar sensor must not be altered.

Any structural modifications to the vehicle, e.g. lowering the vehicle or modifying the front end trim, can impair the function of the Adaptive Cruise Control. Structural modifications should therefore always be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Incorrectly performed repairs to the front end of the vehicle can alter the position of the radar sensor and therefore impair the function of the Adaptive Cruise Control. Repair work should therefore be carried out only by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## ⚠ NOTICE

**Switch off the Adaptive Cruise Control if you suspect that the radar sensor has been damaged or is incorrectly positioned. This can help to prevent secondary damage. Have the radar sensor re-adjusted.**

- The radar sensor could be moved if it is hit, for example in parking manoeuvres. Displacement of the sensor could impair the performance of the system or cause it to be switched off.
- Repair work on the radar sensor requires special knowledge and tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- Remove snow with a hand brush, and remove ice preferably with a solvent-free de-icer spray.

## Operating Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

---



**Fig. 159** Left-hand side of the multifunction steering wheel: buttons for operating the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

When the Adaptive Cruise Control is switched on, the green indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster display, and the speed memory and the status of the Adaptive Cruise Control are shown.




### Conditions for activating the Adaptive Cruise Control

- The selector lever must be in position **D/S** or be in the Tiptronic gate. A forward gear, but not first gear, must be selected in the manual gearbox.
- In vehicles with a manual gearbox, the actual speed should be at least 25 km/h (16 mph) if no speed is stored.

### Controlling speed


When switched on, the speed can be stored and set. The stored speed can vary from the speed actually being driven if the distance is being actively controlled.


Function	Button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 159 /action
Switching on Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).	Press the  button. The system is switched on. No speed has yet been stored and the speed is not yet being controlled.
Switch between the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and the speed limiter.	Press the  button. This switches between the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and the speed limiter ⇒ <i>Speed limiter</i> .
Activating Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).	Press the  button. The current speed is stored and controlled. <b>When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is already active:</b> <i>Press briefly:</i> reduces the speed by 1 km/h (1 mph) and stores it. <i>Press and hold:</i> the stored speed is reduced in increments of 1 km/h (1 mph) for as long as the button is held. A reduction in speed is achieved by accelerator release or automatic braking.
Switching off Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) temporarily.	<i>Briefly press</i> the  button. <b>OR:</b> depress the brake pedal. <b>OR:</b> depress the clutch for longer than 30 seconds. Control is switched off temporarily. The speed is stored in the memory.
Resuming Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).	Press the  button. The stored speed is reactivated and controlled. If no speed has yet been stored, the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) adopts and regulates the current speed at which the vehicle is travelling. <b>When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is already active:</b> <i>Press briefly:</i> increases the speed by 1 km/h (1 mph) and stores it. <i>Press and hold:</i> As long as you keep pressing, the stored speed is increased incrementally by 1 km/h (1 mph).
Accelerating (while Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active).	Press the  button. <i>Press briefly:</i> increases the speed by 10 km/h (5 mph) and stores it. <i>Press and hold:</i> the stored speed is increased in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) for as long as the button is held.

Function	Button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 159 /action
Decelerating (while Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is active).	<p>Press the  button.</p> <p><i>Press briefly:</i> reduces the speed by 10 km/h (5 mph) and stores it.</p> <p><i>Press and hold:</i> the stored speed is reduced in increments of 10 km/h (5 mph) for as long as the button is held. A reduction in speed is achieved by accelerator release or automatic braking.</p>
Switching off Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).	<p><i>Press and hold</i> the  button. <i>Briefly press</i> the  button on the multifunction steering wheel if the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is temporarily switched off.</p> <p>The system is switched off. The stored speed will be deleted.</p>

The mph figures given in brackets in the table relate exclusively to instrument clusters with mile readings.

### Stop-and-go traffic and automatic pulling away

If the **ACC ready to start** driver message is displayed in the instrument cluster and the vehicle ahead starts to move, the vehicle will also pull away. **ACC ready to start** can be reactivated or extended by pressing the  button ⇒ Fig. 159. It is displayed for approximately 3 seconds.

If the display **ACC ready to start** is no longer displayed, the vehicle will not start automatically. If the vehicle ahead has already moved on, you can pull off by pressing the  button ⇒ Fig. 159 or by depressing the accelerator briefly. The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) then continues regulating.

Automatic pulling away is not available for all vehicles and countries.

### Setting the distance setting

The speed-dependent distance from the vehicle travelling ahead can be set to one of 5 levels.




In wet road conditions, you should always set a larger distance than when driving in dry road conditions.

The following distances can be pre-selected:

- Very small
- Small
- Medium
- Large
- Very large

The distance setting to the vehicle ahead is set using the  button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 159. The Adaptive Cruise Control display appears when the button is operated ⇒ *Displays, warning and indicator lamps*. To set the distance setting, press the  button.

When the highest level is reached, the distance returns to the lowest level when the button is pressed again.

The distance setting can also be set using the  or  buttons on the multifunction steering wheel immediately after the  button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ Fig. 159 has been pressed.

The  button and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons in the infotainment system can be used to set the distance setting that should be selected when the Adaptive Cruise Control is switched on ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

## Setting the gearbox programme

In vehicles with driving profile selection, the selected driving profile can affect the acceleration response.

### The following conditions can prevent the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) from reacting:

- If the accelerator is depressed.
- If no gear is selected.
- If the Electronic Stability Control is intervening.
- If the driver has not fastened their seat belt.
- If there is a fault in several brake lights on the vehicle or in a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle ⇒ *Towing a trailer*.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- If the vehicle is travelling faster than approximately 160 km/h (99 mph).

### WARNING

If you do not maintain the minimum distance to a vehicle in front and the difference in speed between the two vehicles is so great that the braking action of the Adaptive Cruise Control is insufficient, you are in danger of colliding with the vehicle in front. You should reduce the vehicle speed immediately with the foot brake.

- The ACC may not be able to detect all driving situations correctly.
- Leaving your foot on the accelerator will mean that the ACC will not brake automatically. This is because manual acceleration overrides the system.
- You should always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- Observe country-specific regulations regarding the minimum distance.



The set speed will be deleted if the ignition or the Adaptive Cruise Control is switched off.



The Adaptive Cruise Control is automatically deactivated when the traction control system is deactivated.



In vehicles with a start/stop system, the engine is switched off automatically during the stationary phase of Adaptive Cruise Control and is then restarted for moving off.

## Switch off the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) temporarily in the following situations



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Switch off the Adaptive Cruise Control in the following situations due to the system limitations ⇒  :

- When driving in turn-off lanes, tight bends, roundabouts, motorway entrances and motorway exits or in road works, to prevent undesired vehicle acceleration to the set speed in these situations
- When driving through a tunnel as this situation could impair the system function.
- On roads with more than one lane, if other vehicles are driving more slowly in the overtaking lane. The slower vehicles in the other lane would be overtaken on the passenger side in this case.
- In heavy rain, snow or spray as vehicles travelling ahead cannot be monitored sufficiently or maybe cannot be monitored at all.

## WARNING

Failure to switch off the ACC in the above-mentioned situations can cause accidents and result in serious injuries.

- Always switch off the ACC in critical driving situations.



Failure to switch off the Adaptive Cruise Control in the above-mentioned situations can cause a violation of legal requirements.

### Special driving situations

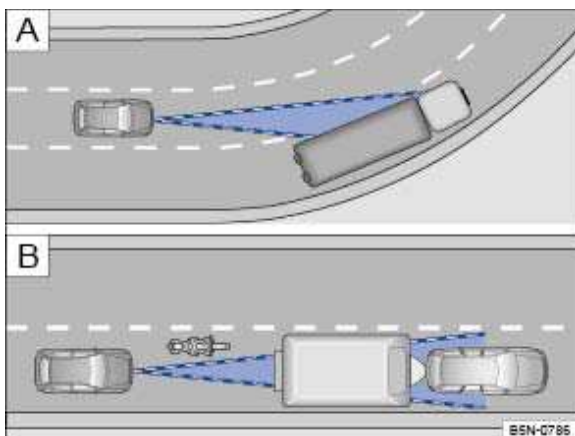


Fig. 160 Vehicle in a bend. Motorcycle driving ahead.

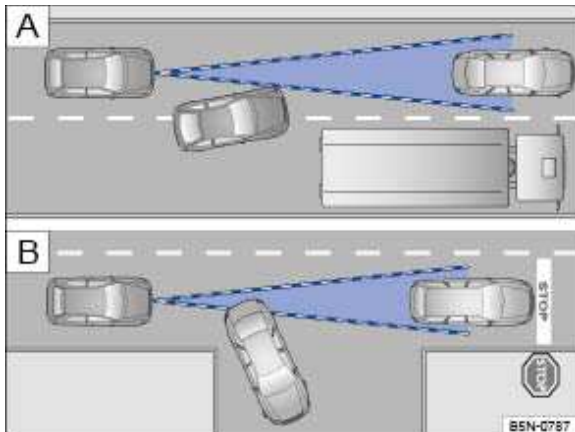


Fig. 161 A vehicle is changing lanes. Turning vehicle and stationary vehicle.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The Adaptive Cruise Control has physical and system-specific limits. This means that certain ACC system reactions may occur unexpectedly or with a delay under certain conditions from the driver's point of view. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle if necessary.

The following traffic situations, for example, require particular vigilance:

#### Deceleration to standstill, only vehicles with DSG® dual clutch gearbox

If a vehicle travelling ahead brakes to a standstill, the ACC will also decelerate your vehicle to a standstill. The vehicle is then held stationary.

## Stationary phase, only vehicles with DSG® dual clutch gearbox

If the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) has decelerated the vehicle to a standstill, the Adaptive Cruise Control will not be switched off automatically when the brake pedal is depressed.

The electronic parking brake will be activated automatically and the Adaptive Cruise Control switched off if one of the following situations occurs while the vehicle is stationary:

- The seat belt is unfastened.
- The driver door is opened.
- The ignition is switched off.
- The stationary phase lasts longer than approximately 3 minutes.


## Driving off after a stationary phase (only vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox)

After a stationary phase, the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can start the vehicle moving automatically as soon as the vehicle in front begins to move again.

## Overtaking

If the turn signal is activated when starting an overtaking manoeuvre, the Adaptive Cruise Control accelerates the vehicle automatically and thus reduces the distance to the vehicle in front.

If you move your vehicle into the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle ahead of you, the ACC will automatically increase the speed to your set level and maintain it.



Acceleration can be stopped at any point by depressing the brake pedal or pressing the  button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ *Operating Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* .

## Inside Overtaking Prevention System

In countries where they drive on the right: if the Adaptive Cruise Control identifies a slower vehicle in the left-hand lane ⇒ *Fig. 157* , the speed is reduced to prevent illegal undertaking in the right-hand lane.

In countries where they drive on the left, the speed is reduced to prevent illegal undertaking in the left-hand lane.


## When driving through bends

While driving through bends, the radar sensor may sometimes lose the vehicle travelling ahead or may react to a vehicle in the next lane ⇒ *Fig. 160*  . In such situations, the vehicle might decelerate unnecessarily or not react to the vehicle in front. In this case the driver must override the Adaptive Cruise Control by depressing the accelerator, or interrupt the braking procedure by depressing the brake pedal or pressing the  button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇒ *Operating Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* .

## Driving in tunnels

The radar sensor function may be restricted in tunnels. Switch off the Adaptive Cruise Control in tunnels.

## Narrow vehicles and offset vehicles driving on left or right

Narrow vehicles and offset vehicles travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle will be recognised by the radar sensor only once they have entered the radar range ⇒ *Fig. 160*  . This applies in particular to narrow vehicles such as motorbikes. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

## Vehicles with special loads or special attachments

Any loads or accessories on other vehicles that protrude from the side, rear or over the roof of the vehicle may not be detected by the ACC.

Switch off the ACC when the vehicle ahead has a special load or special attachments or while overtaking such vehicles. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

## When other vehicles change lanes

Vehicles that are very close when they move into your lane can be detected by the radar sensors only when they have moved into the sensor range. This means that the Adaptive Cruise Control may have a delayed reaction ⇒ Fig. 161 **A**. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

## Stationary vehicles

The ACC does not detect stationary objects during a journey, such as stationary traffic or a vehicle that has broken down.

If a stationary vehicle is hidden behind a vehicle that has been detected by the Adaptive Cruise Control and this vehicle turns off the road or changes lane, the Adaptive Cruise Control will not be able to react to the stationary vehicle ⇒ Fig. 161 **B**. If required, brake the vehicle yourself.

## Oncoming vehicles and vehicles crossing your path

The Adaptive Cruise Control does not react to approaching vehicles or vehicles crossing your path.

## Metal objects

Metal objects, such as tracks in the road or metal plates used in roadworks, can confuse the radar sensor and cause incorrect reactions from the Adaptive Cruise Control.

## Possible radar sensor function impairments

The Adaptive Cruise Control will switch off temporarily if the radar sensor function is impaired, e.g. due to heavy rain, spray, snow, ice or mud. A corresponding message will appear on the instrument cluster display. Clean the radar sensor as required.

The Adaptive Cruise Control will automatically be available again as soon as the radar sensors are no longer impaired. The message on the instrument cluster display goes out, and the Adaptive Cruise Control can be reactivated.

Strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, e.g. in multi-storey car parks, can impair the function of the radar sensor.

## Towing a trailer

The Adaptive Cruise Control operates with reduced dynamics when the vehicle is towing a trailer.

## Overheated brakes

If the brakes overheat, e.g. following heavy braking or when driving down steep inclines for long periods, the Adaptive Cruise Control may be deactivated temporarily. A corresponding message will appear on the instrument cluster display. It is then not possible to activate the Adaptive Cruise Control.

As soon as the temperature of the brakes has decreased sufficiently, the Adaptive Cruise Control can be activated again. The message on the instrument cluster display goes out. If the message **ACC not available** does not go out for a long time, there is a fault. Go to a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Eco ACC

The Adaptive Cruise Control possesses an Eco mode. The instrument cluster display shows how different routes can be driven in a particularly economical way in terms of fuel. Looking ahead to consider speed limits in and outside urban areas, as well as junctions, corners, traffic lights and priority signs, the Adaptive Cruise Control adjusts the vehicle speed automatically. The reason for the speed adjustment is indicated in the instrument cluster display.



### WARNING

If the message ACC ready to start appears on the instrument cluster display and the vehicle in front moves off, your vehicle will move off automatically. In some cases, the radar sensor may be unable to detect obstacles that are located in the vehicle's path. This can result in serious injury and accidents.

- Always check the road ahead before the vehicle pulls away. If necessary, cancel the pulling away procedure by depressing the brake pedal.

## Area monitoring system (Front Assist) incl. City Emergency Brake

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Displays*
- ⇒ *Radar sensor*
- ⇒ *Operating the area monitoring system (Front Assist)*
- ⇒ *Temporarily switch off the area monitoring system (Front Assist) in the following situations*
- ⇒ *City Emergency Brake*
- ⇒ *Pedestrian Monitoring*
- ⇒ *System limits*

The area monitoring system, including City Emergency Brake, can help to avoid rear-end collisions.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the vehicle may possess a pedestrian monitoring system in addition to the area monitoring system.

Within the limits of the system, the area monitoring system can warn the driver about imminent collisions, prepare the vehicle for emergency braking in case of danger, assist with braking, and initiate automatic braking.

The City Emergency Brake and the pedestrian monitoring system are components of the area monitoring system.

**The area monitoring system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.**

### Distance warning


If the system detects danger from driving too close to the vehicle in front, within the speed range of approx. 60 km/h (37 mph) up to 250 km/h (155 mph), the system warns the driver by showing a corresponding message on the instrument cluster display ⇒ *Fig. 162*.

The warning time varies according to the traffic situation and the driver's response.

### Advance warning

If the system detects a danger of collision with the vehicle ahead, within the speed range of approx. 30 km/h (19 mph) up to 250 km/h (155 mph), the system warns the driver by emitting a signal tone and showing a corresponding message on the instrument cluster display ⇒ *Fig. 163*.



The warning time varies according to the traffic situation and the driver's response. At the same time, the system prepares the vehicle for possible emergency braking ⇒ .

## Urgent warning

If the driver fails to respond to the advance warning, the system can initiate a quick jolt of the brake via an active braking intervention in order to draw the driver's attention to the increasing danger of a collision within a speed range of approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) to 250 km/h (155 mph). The warning time varies according to the traffic situation and the driver's response.

## Automatic braking

If the driver does not react to the acute warning, the vehicle can brake automatically using brake pressure with gradually increasing intensity within a speed range of approx. 4 km/h (2.5 mph) to 250 km/h (155 mph). By reducing the speed in the event of a possible collision the system can help to minimise the consequences of an accident.

## Braking intervention

If the system detects that the driver is not braking sufficiently when there is a risk of collision, the system can increase the braking force and thereby help to prevent a collision from speeds of approximately 4 km/h (2.5 mph) to 250 km/h (155 mph). The braking intervention works only for as long as the brake pedal is pressed hard.

## City Emergency Brake function

If the driver does not react to a possible collision when driving at speeds between approximately 4 km/h (2.5 mph) and 30 km/h (19 mph), the system can – without prior warning – brake the vehicle automatically by increasing the braking force. By reducing the speed in the event of a possible collision the system can help to minimise the consequences of an accident.



### WARNING

The intelligent technology used in the area monitoring system cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the area monitoring system tempt you into taking risks when driving. The driver is always responsible for braking in time. Depending on the traffic situation, apply the foot brake to slow the vehicle down or avoid the obstacle if the area monitoring system warns you to do so.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The area monitoring system cannot independently prevent accidents and serious injuries.
- The area monitoring system can issue unnecessary warnings and carry out unwanted braking interventions in certain complex situations, e.g. at traffic islands.
- The area monitoring system can issue unnecessary warnings and carry out unwanted braking interventions when its function is impaired, e.g. if the radar sensor is dirty or its position has been altered.
- The area monitoring system without pedestrian monitoring does not react to persons. In addition, the system does not react to animals or crossing vehicles or to vehicles that are approaching in the same lane.
- If you are unsure whether your vehicle possesses pedestrian monitoring, please enquire about this at a qualified workshop before starting your journey.
- The driver must be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times.



The brake pedal feels harder when the area monitoring system triggers the brakes.



Automatic braking intervention by the area monitoring system can be stopped by depressing the accelerator or through steering intervention.

**i** The area monitoring system can decelerate the vehicle to a standstill. The vehicle will not be held for any extended period by the braking system. Depress the brake.

**i** Deactivate the area monitoring system if it does not function as described in this chapter. For example, if multiple unexpected interventions occur, deactivate the area monitoring system and have the system checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Displays

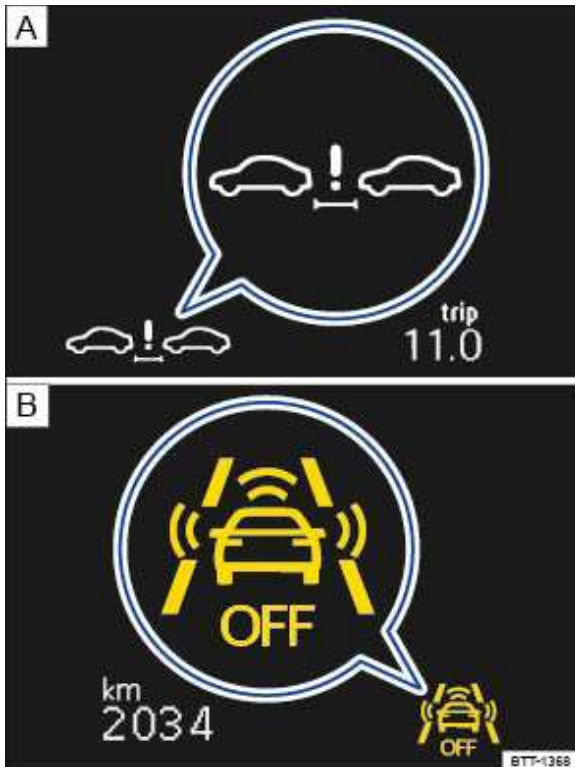


Fig. 162 On the instrument cluster display: distance warning display. Area monitoring system deactivated.



Fig. 163 On the instrument cluster display: advance warning display.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Distance warning

If the vehicle's distance from the vehicle in front drops below the minimum safe level, a distance warning will appear on the instrument cluster display ⇒ Fig. 162 **A** (close-up).


Increase the distance.

## Advance warning

The system detects a potential collision with a vehicle in front ⇒ Fig. 163<sup>1)</sup>.

**Brake or take avoiding action!** Depress the brake pedal if necessary.


## Area monitoring system (Front Assist) deactivated

When the area monitoring system is deactivated, a confirmatory symbol is shown in the instrument cluster display ⇒ Fig. 162  (close-up)<sup>1)</sup>.

### **WARNING**

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and displays can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore illuminated warning lamps and displays.

 When the area monitoring system is switched on, the display in the instrument cluster can be overwritten by displays related to other functions, e.g. an incoming telephone call.

<sup>1)</sup> Displayed in colour on an instrument cluster with colour display.


## Radar sensor



Fig. 164 In the radiator grille behind the Volkswagen badge: radar sensor and area around the radar sensor to be kept clear.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

A radar sensor is installed in the radiator grille behind the Volkswagen badge to monitor the traffic situation ⇒ Fig. 164. Vehicles travelling ahead can thus be detected up to a distance of approximately 120 m.

The view of the radar sensor can be impaired by contamination such as slush or snow, or by environmental conditions such as heavy rain or spray. In this case, the area monitoring system will not work. The instrument cluster display shows the message **Front Assist: no sensor view!**. If necessary, clean the Volkswagen badge in front of the radar sensor ⇒ .

The area monitoring system is automatically available again as soon as the radar sensor is no longer impaired.

Strong reflected radiation of the radar signal, e.g. in multi-storey car parks or tunnels, can impair the function of the area monitoring system.

The area in front of and around the radar sensor must not be covered by objects such as stickers, auxiliary headlights, face plates for number plates or the like, as this can impair the function of the area monitoring system.

Any structural modifications to the vehicle, e.g. lowering the vehicle or making alterations to the front end trim, can impair the function of the area monitoring system. Structural modifications should therefore always be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Incorrectly performed repairs to the front end of the vehicle can alter the position of the radar sensor and therefore impair the function of the area monitoring system. Repair work should therefore be carried out only by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## NOTICE

**Switch off the area monitoring system if you suspect that the radar sensor has been damaged or its position has been altered. This can help to prevent secondary damage. Have the radar sensor re-adjusted.**

- The radar sensor could be moved if it is hit, for example in parking manoeuvres. Displacement of the sensor could impair the performance of the system or cause it to be switched off.
- Repair work on the radar sensor requires special knowledge and tools. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- Remove snow with a hand brush, and remove ice preferably with a solvent-free de-icer spray.

## Operating the area monitoring system (Front Assist)

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)




The area monitoring system and the advance warning are activated automatically once the ignition is switched on ⇒ [Starting and stopping the engine](#).

The advance warning and distance warning are deactivated as well when the area monitoring system is deactivated.

Volkswagen recommends that the area monitoring system is switched on at all times. For exceptions see ⇒ [Temporarily switch off the area monitoring system \(Front Assist\) in the following situations](#).

### Activating or deactivating the area monitoring system (Front Assist)

The area monitoring system can be activated or deactivated as follows when the ignition is switched on:

Activate or deactivate the system using the  button and the  and  function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#).

If the area monitoring system is deactivated, a corresponding symbol is shown in the instrument cluster display ⇒ [Displays](#).

### Activating, deactivating and configuring the advance warning

The advance warning can be activated or deactivated using the  button and the  and  function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#).


Volkswagen recommends that the advance warning system is switched on at all times.

Depending on the infotainment system installed in the vehicle, the warning time can be adjusted as follows:

- Early.
- Medium.

- Late.

## Activating or deactivating the distance warning

The distance warning display can be activated or deactivated using the **CAR** button and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.


The system also retains the programmed setting when the ignition is next switched on.

Volkswagen recommends that the distance warning is switched on at all times.

## Temporarily switch off the area monitoring system (Front Assist) in the following situations



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Due to the limitations of the system, switch off the area monitoring system in the following situations ⇒  :

- If the vehicle is being towed.
- If the vehicle is on a rolling road test bed.
- If the vehicle is utilised in a capacity beyond usage on public roads, e.g. off-road or racing.
- If the radar sensor is faulty.
- After external force on the radar sensor, e.g. after a rear-end collision.
- In the event of multiple unwanted interventions.
- If the radar sensor is covered temporarily by any auxiliary equipment, e.g. auxiliary headlights.
- If the vehicle is loaded onto a truck, car ferry or motorail train.



### **WARNING**

Accidents and serious injuries can occur if the area monitoring system is not switched off in the above-mentioned situations.

## City Emergency Brake



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*


If the driver does not react to a possible collision when driving at speeds between approximately 4 km/h (2.5 mph) and 30 km/h (19 mph), the system can – without prior warning – brake the vehicle automatically by increasing the braking force.






Fig. 165 On the instrument cluster display: advance warning display.

If the area monitoring system is switched on, the City Emergency Brake is active as a component of the area monitoring system.

Depending on the equipment level, the area monitoring system and City Emergency Brake function can be activated or deactivated using the **CAR** button and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system* .

The City Emergency Brake function gathers information on the traffic situation up to a distance of about 15 m in front of the vehicle within a speed range of about 4 km/h (2.5 mph) to 30 km/h (19 mph).

The system prepares the vehicle for emergency braking if it detects a possible collision with a vehicle ahead ⇒  .

If the driver does not react to a possible serious collision, the system can automatically stop the vehicle with brake pressure with increasing intensity so as to reduce the speed in a possible collision. Hence the system can help minimise the consequences of an accident.

## Display


Automatic deceleration by the City Emergency Brake function will be shown by the advance warning display in the instrument cluster ⇒ Fig. 165 .


### WARNING


**The intelligent technology used in the City Emergency Brake cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the City Emergency Brake tempt you into taking any risks when driving. The driver is always responsible for braking in time.**

- **Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.**
- **The City Emergency Brake function cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries by itself.**
- **The City Emergency Brake function can carry out unwanted braking interventions in certain complex driving situations, e.g. at building sites and metal tracks.**
- **The City Emergency Brake can carry out unwanted braking interventions when its function is impaired, e.g. if the position of the radar sensor has been contaminated or changed.**
- **The City Emergency Brake without pedestrian monitoring does not react to persons. In addition, the system does not react to animals or crossing vehicles or to vehicles that are approaching in the same lane.**

 The brake pedal feels harder when the City Emergency Brake function triggers the brakes.

 Automatic braking intervention by the City Emergency Brake function can be stopped by using the accelerator or through steering intervention.

 The City Emergency Brake function can brake the vehicle to a standstill. The vehicle will not be held for any extended period by the braking system. Depress the brake.

 Switch off the area monitoring system and thus the City Emergency Brake in the event of multiple unwanted interventions. Go to a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Pedestrian Monitoring



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

The Pedestrian Monitoring system can help to avoid accidents with pedestrians, or to mitigate the consequences of an accident.

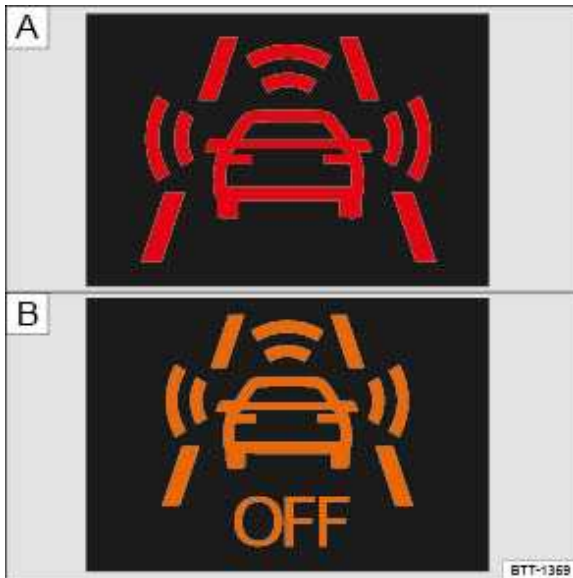


Fig. 166 The display in the instrument cluster: advance warning display. Pedestrian Monitoring.

The system gives a warning when there is a risk of collision, prepares the vehicle for emergency braking, helps to brake the vehicle or performs an automatic brake intervention.

When the driver is warned by a system advance warning, the corresponding display appears in the instrument cluster display ⇒ Fig. 166

If the area monitoring system is switched on ⇒ *Operating the area monitoring system (Front Assist)*, the Pedestrian Monitoring is active as a component of the area monitoring system.

The Pedestrian Monitoring system is not available in all countries, depending on the vehicle equipment level.



### WARNING

The intelligent Pedestrian Monitoring technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the Pedestrian Monitoring system tempt you into taking any risks when driving. The driver is always responsible for braking in time. Depending on the traffic situation, immediately apply the foot brake to slow the vehicle down or avoid the pedestrian if the Pedestrian Monitoring system warns you to do so.

- The Pedestrian Monitoring system cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries on its own.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system can issue unnecessary warnings and carry out unwanted braking interventions in complex driving situations, e.g. on a twisting main road.
- The Pedestrian Monitoring system can issue unnecessary warnings and carry out unwanted braking interventions when its function is impaired, e.g. if the radar sensor is covered or its position has been changed.
- The driver must be prepared to take full control of the vehicle at all times.



The brake pedal feels harder when the Pedestrian Monitoring function system triggers the brakes.



Automatic braking interventions by the Pedestrian Monitoring system can be stopped by using the accelerator or through steering intervention.



Deactivate the Pedestrian Monitoring system if it does not function as described in this chapter, e.g. if multiple unwanted interventions occur, deactivate the Pedestrian Monitoring system and have the system checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## System limits

---



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The area monitoring system has physical and system-related limitations. As such, under certain circumstances certain area monitoring system reactions may occur, from the driver's perspective, unexpectedly or with some delay. You should therefore always be prepared to take full control of the vehicle if necessary.

**In certain cases, the following conditions could prevent the area monitoring system from reacting or cause it to react with a delay or when not required:**

- In tight bends.
- If the accelerator is fully depressed.
- If the area monitoring system has been switched off or is damaged.
- If the traction control system or the Electronic Stability Control is switched off manually.
- If the Electronic Stability Control is intervening.
- If there is a fault in several brake lights on the vehicle or in a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#).
- If the radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- If there are metal objects, e.g. tracks in the road, metal plates used in roadworks or road signs above and next to the road.
- If the vehicle is reversing.
- Under hard acceleration.
- In snow or heavy rain.
- In case of narrow vehicles, e.g. motorbikes.
- If vehicles are travelling slightly to the left or right of your vehicle.
- If vehicles are crossing in front of your vehicle.
- If there is oncoming traffic.
- In uncertain traffic situations, e.g. when a vehicle in front brakes heavily or makes a turn.
- When loads or attachment parts on other vehicles protrude to the side, rear or above the normal dimensions of the vehicle.

## Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)



### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Display and indicator lamps](#)

⇒ [Function](#)

⇒ [Switch off the lane keeping system \(Lane Assist\) in the following situations](#)

The lane keeping system helps the driver stay in lane.



## WARNING


The intelligent technology used in the lane keeping system cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Always take care when using the lane keeping system otherwise you could cause accidents or injuries. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.


- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for staying in lane.
- The lane keeping system cannot recognise all lane markings. Poor road surfaces, road structures or objects could be recognised incorrectly as lane markings by the lane keeping system. The lane keeping system should be switched off immediately in these situations.
- Follow the information on the instrument cluster display and respond according to the commands.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around the vehicle.
- If the camera's field of view is dirty, covered or damaged, the function of the lane keeping system may be impaired.


## NOTICE

Please observe the following points in order to avoid impairing the proper function of the system:

- Regularly clean the camera's field of view, and keep it free from snow and ice.
- Do not cover the camera's field of view.
- Check the area of the windscreen that is in the camera's field of view for damage.
- Do not fit anything on the steering wheel.

 The lane keeping system has been developed for use only when driving on motorways and good main roads.

 If the lane keeping system does not function as described in this chapter, do not use the lane keeping system and go to a qualified workshop.

 If there is a fault in the system, go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.

 You can save some settings in the user accounts in personalisation ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#).

## Display and indicator lamps

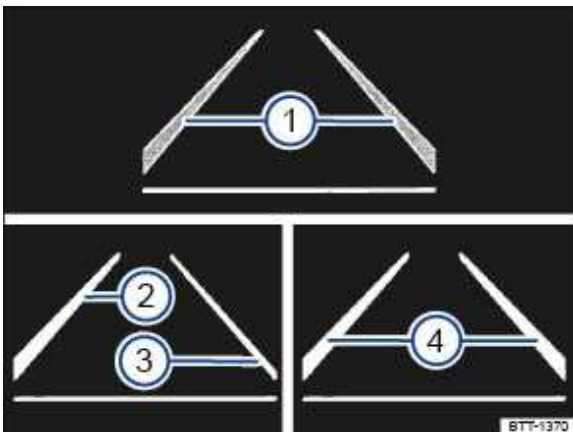


Fig. 167 On the instrument cluster display: lane keeping system display.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*



## Display

The lane keeping system functions are displayed on the instrument cluster.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 167 :

- 1 Lane markings detected. System not regulating.
- 2 Lane markings detected. System is regulating.
- 3 No lane markings detected. System not regulating.
- 4 Lane markings detected. System is regulating. Adaptive lane guidance active.

## Indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause
	Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) switched on but not active ⇒ <i>Switching lane keeping system (Lane Assist) on or off.</i>
	Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) is switched on and active.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Function



Fig. 168 Windscreen: lane keeping system camera window.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The system works at speeds above 65 km/h (40 mph).

Using a camera in the windscreen, the lane keeping system detects lane markings on the road. If the vehicle gets too close to a detected lane marking, the system warns the driver by taking *corrective steering intervention* and helps to keep the vehicle in lane. The corrective steering intervention can be overridden by the driver at any time.

When adaptive lane guidance is active ⇒ *Activating or deactivating adaptive lane guidance*, the lane keeping system does not just provide assistance when the vehicle is at risk of leaving the lane. If the system detects both lane markings to the left and right of the vehicle, the function provides permanent assistance while the vehicle is in motion.

The system adopts the preferred position within the lane in which the vehicle is travelling. For example, if the vehicle is being driven slightly off-centre in the lane, the system will learn to adopt the new position within a short period of time.

No warning will be given if the turn signal is switched on as the lane keeping system will presume the lane change is deliberate.

## Lane change system (Side Assist) PLUS

If the vehicle is equipped with a lane change system ⇒ *Lane change system (Side Assist) incl. Rear Traffic Alert* and the system is activated, the driver is warned by corrective steering intervention when changing lanes during a possible critical situation (information level, warning level). If the turn signal is operated in the corresponding direction, the steering intervention also takes place. If the steering intervention is overridden by the driver, the steering wheel vibrates to give an additional warning.

## Request for driver to take control

In the absence of any steering input, the system prompts the driver with acoustic warnings and a text message on the instrument cluster display to take over active steering.



If the driver does not respond, the system will give another warning by initiating a quick jolt of the brake before switching to passive mode or activating Emergency Assist ⇒ *Emergency Assist*.

## Steering wheel vibration

The following (very rare) situations will cause the steering wheel to vibrate and demand active steering intervention by the driver:

- If the corrective steering intervention is not sufficient to keep the vehicle in its lane.
- If the system can no longer detect a lane during a significant steering intervention.

## Switching lane keeping system (Lane Assist) on or off

- Using the button for driver assist systems, select the corresponding menu option ⇒ *Instrument cluster*.
- **OR:** activate or deactivate the lane keeping system using the  button and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

**Self-deactivation:** If there is a system fault, the lane keeping system can deactivate itself automatically. The indicator lamp goes out.

## Activating or deactivating adaptive lane guidance

Adaptive lane guidance can be activated or deactivated using the  button and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

Depending on the equipment level, adaptive lane guidance may not be available in some countries.

## Lane keeping system (Lane Assist) is not active (the indicator lamp lights up yellow)

- The lane keeping system may not be able to detect the lane marking due to snow, dirt, water or oncoming light.
- If the radius of a bend is too small.
- If the distance to the nearest lane marking is too great.

- If the system does not detect any clear steering activity by the driver over an extended period.
- Temporarily if the driving style is very dynamic.
- If the turn signal is switched on.<sup>1)</sup>



Before starting a journey, check that the camera window is not covered ⇒ *Fig. 168*.



The camera window must be kept clean at all times.

<sup>1)</sup> Does not apply to vehicles with Lane change system (Side Assist) PLUS ⇒ *Lane change system (Side Assist) PLUS*.

## Switch off the lane keeping system (Lane Assist) in the following situations

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ *Introduction*

The lane keeping system should be switched off due to system limitations in the following situations:

- When a high level of concentration is required by the driver.
- Very sporty driving.
- In poor weather conditions, e.g. snow or heavy rain.
- Poor road conditions.
- Driving through road works.
- Before hill crests.

## Traffic Jam Assist

---

Traffic Jam Assist helps the driver to keep in lane, and also provides assistance when following other vehicles in congestion or slow-moving traffic.

Traffic Jam Assist is an extension of the lane keeping system (Lane Assist) ⇒ *Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)*, and combines this function with the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*. Please therefore read both related chapters carefully and observe the information about the system limits and warnings.

The Traffic Jam Assist applies only to vehicles with DSG dual clutch gearbox.



### Traffic Jam Assist function

At speeds under 60 km/h (35 mph) Traffic Jam Assist can maintain a time interval, set by the driver, to a vehicle in front, and help the vehicle to stay in lane ⇒ .

The system automatically controls acceleration, braking, steering and, if required, will decelerate **to a stop** behind a vehicle that is stopping, and then drive away again automatically.

Traffic Jam Assist has been developed for use only on motorways and good main roads. Never use Traffic Jam Assist in city traffic.

## Switching Traffic Jam Assist on and off

When the lane keeping system is active, Traffic Jam Assist is switched on and off via adaptive lane guidance ⇒ *Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)* by pressing the  button and the  and **Driver assistance** function buttons on the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system* .

Traffic Jam Assist can also be switched off together with the lane keeping system by pressing the button for driver assist systems.

## Technical requirements for using Traffic Jam Assist

- The lane keeping system must be activated with adaptive lane guidance ⇒ *Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)* .
- The Adaptive Cruise Control must be switched on and active ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* .
- The selector lever must be in position **D/S** or be in the Tiptronic gate.
- The system must have detected a lane marking on both the right and left sides of the vehicle.
- The speed must be under 60 km/h (37 mph).

The Traffic Jam Assist is available only for vehicles with DSG® dual clutch gearbox.

## Traffic Jam Assist is not active (the indicator lamp for the lane keeping system (Lane Assist) lights up yellow)

- As soon as one of the conditions indicated in ⇒ *Technical requirements for using Traffic Jam Assist* is no longer fulfilled.
- If one of the conditions for the proper functioning of the lane keeping system is no longer fulfilled ⇒ *Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)* .
- If one of the conditions for the proper functioning of the Adaptive Cruise Control is no longer fulfilled ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* .

## Switch off Traffic Jam Assist in the following situations

Traffic Jam Assist should always be switched off due to system limitations in the following situations:

- When a high level of concentration is required by the driver.
- Very sporty driving.
- In poor weather conditions, e.g. snow or heavy rain.
- Poor road conditions.
- Driving through road works.
- In urban areas.



## WARNING

The intelligent technology of Traffic Jam Assist cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Always take care when using Traffic Jam Assist as you could otherwise cause accidents or injuries. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in urban traffic.
- Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in poor visibility, on steep or winding roads, or on slippery road surfaces e.g. on snow, ice, wet roads, loose chippings or flooded roads.
- Never use Traffic Jam Assist off-road or on unsurfaced roads. Traffic Jam Assist is designed solely for use on surfaced roads.
- Traffic Jam Assist without pedestrian monitoring does not react to persons. In addition, the system does not react to animals or crossing vehicles or to vehicles that are approaching in the same lane.
- If the speed reduction achieved by Traffic Jam Assist is insufficient, brake the vehicle immediately by depressing the foot brake.
- If the vehicle starts to roll unintentionally after the driver has been prompted to take control of the vehicle, brake the vehicle immediately using the foot brake.
- If a prompt instructing the *driver to take control of the vehicle* appears on the instrument cluster display, take control of the vehicle immediately.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time. The driver is always responsible for staying in lane.
- The driver must be prepared to take control of the vehicle (by accelerating or braking) at all times.



If Traffic Jam Assist does not function as described in this chapter, do not use the system and go to a qualified workshop.



If there is a fault with the system, go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked.

## Emergency Assist


---

Emergency Assist detects a lack of activity on the part of the driver and can keep the vehicle in lane automatically, or brake the vehicle to a standstill if required. The system can therefore actively help to prevent an accident.

Emergency Assist is an extension of the lane keeping system ⇒ *Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)*, and combines this function with the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*. Please therefore read both related chapters carefully and observe the information about the system limits and warnings.

### Emergency Assist function

Emergency Assist detects a lack of activity on the part of the driver and issues repeated visual and acoustic warnings, and initiates a quick jolt of the brake, to request the driver to take control of the vehicle again.

If the driver remains inactive, the system automatically controls braking and steering to slow the vehicle down and keep it in lane ⇒  .  
If there is sufficient stopping distance, the system decelerates the vehicle **to a complete stop** and switches on the electronic parking brake automatically ⇒ *Electronic parking brake* .

When Emergency Assist is actively controlling the vehicle, the hazard warning lights ⇒ *In an emergency* are switched on and the vehicle performs a slight snaking motion within its lane to warn other road users.

## Switching Emergency Assist on and off

Emergency Assist is activated automatically when the lane keeping system ⇒ *Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)* is switched on.

## Technical requirements for using Emergency Assist

- The Adaptive Cruise Control must be switched on ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* .
- The lane keeping system must be switched on ⇒ *Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)* .
- The selector lever must be in position **D/S** or be in the Tiptronic gate.
- The system must have detected a lane marking on both the right and left sides of the vehicle ⇒ *Fig. 167* .

## The following conditions can prevent Emergency Assist from reacting, or can cause it to deactivate automatically:

- If the driver activates the accelerator, brake or steering.
- As soon as one of the conditions indicated in ⇒ *Technical requirements for using Emergency Assist* is no longer fulfilled.
- If one of the conditions for the lane keeping system is no longer fulfilled ⇒ *Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)* .
- If one of the conditions for the Adaptive Cruise Control is no longer fulfilled ⇒ *Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* .

## WARNING


The intelligent technology used in Emergency Assist cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. The driver is always responsible for controlling the vehicle.


- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Emergency Assist cannot prevent accidents and serious injuries on its own.
- Emergency Assist can carry out unexpected braking or steering interventions when its function is impaired, e.g. if the radar sensor for the Adaptive Cruise Control or the camera for the lane keeping system has been covered or its position has changed.
- Emergency Assist without pedestrian monitoring does not react to persons. In addition, the system does not react to animals or crossing vehicles or to vehicles that are approaching in the same lane.


## WARNING


If Emergency Assist is triggered unexpectedly, it can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- If there is a malfunction in the Emergency Assist system, switch off the lane keeping system ⇒ *Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)* . This will also switch off Emergency Assist.
- Go to a qualified workshop and have the system checked. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

 Automatic braking interventions by Emergency Assist can be stopped by depressing the accelerator, the brake, or through steering intervention.

 When the hazard warning lights are switched on automatically, they can be deactivated depending on the situation by depressing the accelerator, the brake, making a steering intervention, or by pressing the button for the hazard warning lights.

 Emergency Assist can decelerate the vehicle to a complete stop if required.

 When Emergency Assist has been triggered, the system is unavailable until after the ignition has been switched off and then on again.

## Lane change system (Side Assist) incl. Rear Traffic Alert

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Functional description*

⇒ *Driving situations*

⇒ *Rear Traffic Alert*

⇒ *Operating lane change system incl. Rear Traffic Alert*

The lane change system with Rear Traffic Alert provides assistance for the driver when checking for traffic behind the vehicle.

The integrated Rear Traffic Alert provides assistance when reversing out of a parking space and manoeuvring.

The lane change system has been designed for use on surfaced roads only.




## WARNING


The intelligent technology of the lane change system including Rear Traffic Alert cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Always take care when using the lane change system and the Rear Traffic Alert as you could otherwise cause accidents or injuries. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and distance from the vehicles ahead to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Your hands should always be on the steering wheel so that you can steer at any time.
- Pay attention to the visual displays in the exterior mirror housing and in the instrument cluster display, and respond to the commands.
- The lane change system may react to special roadside structures, e.g. high or offset crash barriers. This can lead to error warnings.
- Never use the lane change system including Rear Traffic Alert on unsurfaced roads. The lane change system including Rear Traffic Alert has been designed exclusively for use on surfaced roads.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around the vehicle.
- Never use the lane change system including Rear Traffic Alert if the radar sensors are dirty, covered or damaged. These circumstances can impair the proper functioning of the system.
- It may be hard to see the display in the exterior mirror in direct sunlight.

## NOTICE

- The radar sensors in the rear bumper can be shifted or damaged through impacts, e.g. when parking or leaving a parking space. As a result the system may switch itself off or at least be impaired.
- The radar sensors in the rear bumper must be kept free of ice and snow and not be covered up to ensure that the system functions correctly.

 Only Volkswagen-approved vehicle paints may be used on the rear bumper. Other vehicle paints could limit or even distort the function of the lane change system.

 If the lane change system with Rear Traffic Alert does not work as described in this chapter or the vehicle has been involved in a collision, do not use the system and go to a qualified workshop.

## Functional description

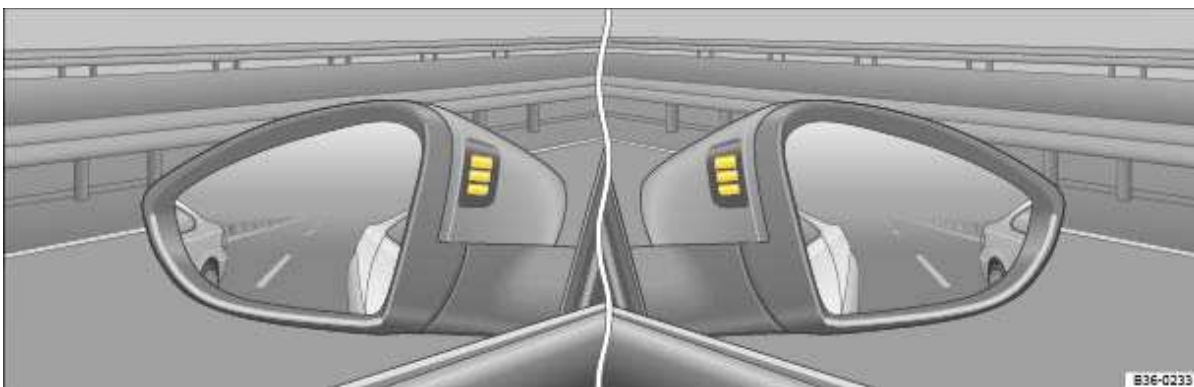


Fig. 169 In the exterior mirror housing: visual displays for the lane change system.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction





The lane change system uses radar sensors to monitor the area behind the vehicle ⇒ *Exterior views*. The system then measures the distance and the difference in speed to other vehicles. The lane change system is active only at speeds from approx. 15 km/h (9 mph).

In very tight corners, the lane change system will automatically switch to passive mode without feedback as proper functioning cannot be guaranteed in this case. The system will not warn the driver that this is happening. The function is automatically reactivated after driving through the bend.

### Visual display in the exterior mirror housing

The visual displays ⇒ *Fig. 169* in the exterior mirror housing notify the driver of following traffic on either side of the vehicle whenever a traffic situation is classified as critical when the driver intends to change lanes.

Tinted side windows or retrofitted tinting foils can negatively affect or distort the visual displays in the exterior mirror.

Visual display in the exterior mirror housing	Situation
 Lights up once briefly.	The lane change system is switched on and ready for use.
 Lit up (information level).	The lane change system has detected a potentially critical situation.
 Flashes several times (warning level).	The turn signal is active and the lane change system has detected a potentially critical situation on the corresponding side of the vehicle ⇒  .

### Lane change system Side Assist Plus

If the vehicle is equipped with a lane keeping system ⇒ *Lane keeping system (Lane Assist)* and this system is activated, the driver is warned by corrective steering intervention when changing lanes during a potentially critical situation (information level, warning level). This also occurs when the turn signal is activated for the corresponding direction. If the steering intervention is overridden by the driver, the steering wheel vibrates to give an additional warning.

### Radar sensors

The radar sensors are on the left and right behind the rear bumper and are not visible from outside. They monitor an area of approximately 70 metres behind the vehicle and the blind spots to the right and left of the vehicle. The monitored area to the side of the vehicle is approximately one lane wide.

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Take any necessary action.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

### Driving situations

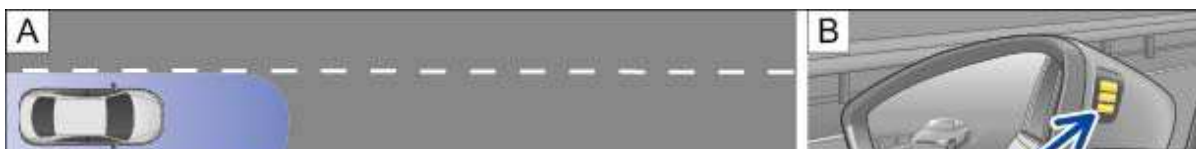








Fig. 170 Driving situation when overtaking with traffic behind the vehicle. Visual display in the left-hand exterior mirror.



Fig. 171 Driving situation when overtaking and changing lanes. Visual display in the right-hand exterior mirror.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

The following driving situations trigger a display in the exterior mirror ⇒ Fig. 170  (arrow) or ⇒ Fig. 171  (arrow):

- When another vehicle is overtaking your vehicle ⇒ Fig. 170 .
- When overtaking another vehicle ⇒ Fig. 171  with a speed difference of up to approximately 15 km/h (9 mph). No display will be shown if the takeover manoeuvre is much faster.

The display in the exterior mirror will be shown earlier the faster you are nearing another vehicle as the lane change system calculates the speed difference to other vehicles. For this reason, the display could be activated at different times despite your vehicle being at the same distance from other vehicles.

### Physical and system-specific limits

The lane change system might, for example, interpret the traffic situation incorrectly in certain driving situations. In the following situations, for example:

- In tight bends.
- When road lanes are of varying width.
- At the brow of a hill.
- In poor weather conditions.
- Where there are special roadside structures, e.g. high or offset crash barriers.

## Rear Traffic Alert

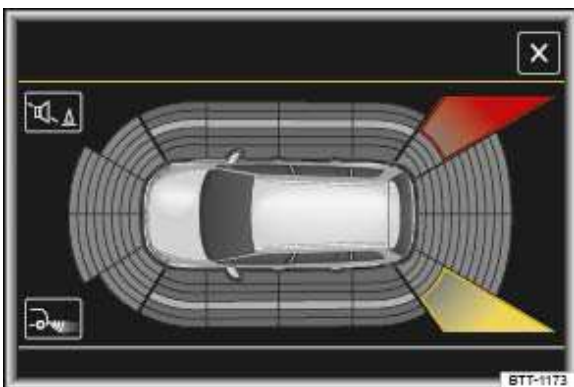





Fig. 172 Monitored area around the vehicle leaving the parking space.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

Key for ⇒ Fig. 172	Meaning

Key for ⇒ Fig. 172	Meaning
	Red segment indicates a critical situation behind the vehicle.
	Yellow segment indicates a potentially critical situation behind the vehicle.
	System fault in the monitored area (not shown).

The Rear Traffic Alert uses radar sensors in the rear bumper for monitoring purposes when reversing out of a parking space or negotiating the crossing traffic behind the vehicle, e.g. in traffic situations with poor visibility ⇒ Fig. 172.

An acoustic signal is given if the system detects a relevant approaching road user behind your vehicle ⇒ Fig. 172 (red area) while reversing.

- In vehicles without ParkPilot, a warning signal will sound and a text notification will be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- A sustained warning signal will sound for vehicles with built-in ParkPilot. If the ParkPilot is deactivated, no warning will be given to the driver and the Rear Traffic Alert system will also be switched off temporarily.


### Automatic braking intervention to minimise damage

If the Rear Traffic Alert detects an approaching road user and the driver has not activated the brakes, the system can initiate an automatic braking intervention.

The Rear Traffic Alert helps the driver to prevent damage by initiating an automatic braking intervention. Automatic braking intervention is activated when reversing at speeds of between 1 – 12 km/h (1 – 7 mph). The vehicle is held stationary for up to 2 seconds after it stops.

After automatic braking intervention is activated to prevent damage to the vehicle, the system requires approximately 10 seconds before it can activate automatic braking intervention again.

The automatic braking intervention can be interrupted by pressing the accelerator or brake pedal sharply and taking control of the vehicle.

** WARNING**

**The intelligent technology of the lane change system including Rear Traffic Alert cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the auxiliary function of the Rear Traffic Alert tempt you to take any risks while driving – this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.**

- **Never use the system with impaired vision or in unpredictable traffic situations, e.g. on extremely busy roads or across several lanes.**
- **Always pay attention to the area around the vehicle – cyclists and pedestrians are often not clearly detected.**
- **The Rear Traffic Alert will not always independently bring the vehicle to a complete stop.**

## Operating lane change system incl. Rear Traffic Alert

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Activating and deactivating


The lane change system and Rear Traffic Alert can be activated or deactivated in the Volkswagen information system or, depending on the equipment level, using the button for driver assist systems in the turn signal and main beam lever.

Open the **Assist systems** menu.

- Side Assist
- Rear Traffic Alert

If the check box in the instrument cluster display is activated , the function will activate automatically when the ignition is switched on.




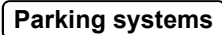
Once the lane change system is ready for use, the visual displays in the exterior mirror housings briefly light up as confirmation.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display  provides information on the system status.

The last-stored system settings will remain after the vehicle is switched off and on again.

If the lane change system has been automatically deactivated, the system can be activated again only after the ignition is switched off and on (except when towing a trailer).

### Activating and deactivating the lane change system including Rear Traffic Alert in the infotainment system

- Press the  button.
- Touch the  function button.
- Touch the  function button and activate  Side Assist.
- Touch the  function button and activate the  Rear Traffic Alert.

If the check box is activated , the function will activate automatically when the ignition is switched on.

Once the lane change system is ready for use, the display in the exterior mirrors briefly lights up in confirmation.

The indicator lamp in the instrument cluster display provides information on the system status.

The last-stored system settings will remain after the vehicle is switched off and on again.

If the lane change system has been automatically deactivated, the system can be activated again only after the ignition is switched off and on.

### Brightness

The basic brightness level can be set in the infotainment system ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#) .

The brightness of the visual display will automatically adapt to the light levels. Therefore, it is best to adjust the brightness in conditions with *average* ambient brightness so that the changes in the display are visible.

Volkswagen recommends setting the brightness so that the display can be seen well in normal surroundings, but does not distract when looking through the windscreen.

The lane change system is not active during the setting procedure.

### Automatic deactivation of the lane change system

The radar sensors for the lane change system including Rear Traffic Alert will switch off automatically if, for example, the system detects that a radar sensor is permanently covered. This can, for example, be caused by a layer of ice or snow in front of the radar sensor on the rear bumper.

A corresponding text notification is shown on the instrument cluster display.

## Towing a trailer

The lane change system and the Rear Traffic Alert deactivate automatically and cannot be switched on if the factory-fitted towing bracket is electrically connected to a trailer or similar.

Once a trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle and the driver pulls away, a notification appears in the instrument cluster display to inform the driver that the lane change system and the Rear Traffic Alert have been deactivated. After the trailer is separated from the vehicle, the lane change system and the Rear Traffic Alert must be reactivated via the menu.

The lane change system and the Rear Traffic Alert must be deactivated manually if a non-factory-fitted towing bracket is used.

# Parking and manoeuvring


## Parking

---

Please adhere to relevant legislation when stopping and parking your vehicle.

### Stopping the vehicle

The steps should **be carried out only in the specified order**.

- Stop the vehicle on a suitable surface ⇒ .
- Depress and hold the brake pedal until the engine has stopped.
- Switch on the electronic parking brake ⇒ *Operating the electronic parking brake*.
- With a DSG<sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox, move the selector lever to position **P**.
- Switch off the engine and take your foot off the brake pedal.
- Remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
- If necessary, turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering column lock mechanism.
- With a manual gearbox, select first gear for flat ground and uphill inclines, or reverse gear for downhill inclines, and then release the clutch.
- Please ensure that all occupants, in particular children, leave the vehicle.
- Take all vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle.
- Lock the vehicle.

### Additional points for ascending and descending inclines

Before switching off the engine, turn the steering wheel so that the front wheels will roll against the kerb if the parked vehicle starts to move.

- When facing downhill, turn the wheels so that they face the kerb.
- When facing uphill, turn the wheels so that they face the centre of the road.



## WARNING

The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires and serious injuries.

- Never park the vehicle where parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. undergrowth, leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel, oil etc.



## WARNING


Exiting the vehicle incorrectly when the selector lever is not in position P (in an automatic gearbox) can cause the vehicle to roll away. This can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always park the vehicle in the specified order.
- Ensure that the electronic parking brake is switched on.



## WARNING

Driving with worn brake pads or with a faulty brake system can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- If the warning lamp  lights up either individually or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately and have the brake pads checked and any worn brake pads replaced.



## WARNING

Incorrect parking can cause serious injuries.

- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock when the vehicle is in motion. The steering lock may be activated and you will no longer be able to steer or control the vehicle.
- Never park the vehicle where parts of the exhaust system can come into contact with inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. undergrowth, leaves, dry grass, spilt fuel, oil etc.
- Always switch on the electronic parking brake when the vehicle is parked.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could switch off the electronic parking brake, or move the selector lever or gearshift lever, and thus set the vehicle in motion. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.
- Always take all vehicle keys with you every time you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and electrical equipment such as the window controls can be operated. This can cause serious injury.
- Never leave children or people requiring assistance alone in the vehicle. They could become trapped in the vehicle in an emergency and may not be able to get themselves to safety. For example, locked vehicles may be subjected to very high or very low temperatures, according to season. This can cause serious injuries and illness or fatalities, especially for small children.



## NOTICE

- To avoid unintentional movement when parking the vehicle, first switch on the electronic parking brake and then remove your foot from the brake pedal.
- Always take care when driving in car parks with protruding kerbstones or bollards. Objects that protrude from the ground can damage the bumper and other components when parking the vehicle. In order to avoid any damage, stop the vehicle before the wheels can touch the bollards or kerbs.
- Drive carefully through dips in the road, over driveways, ramps, kerbstones and other objects. Low-lying vehicle components such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the running gear, engine or exhaust system could be damaged.

## Warning and indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy ⇒
	<p>Brake pedal not depressed.</p> <p>Fully depress the brake pedal. Also see Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ⇒ <i>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</i>.</p>
	<p>Brake system fault.</p> <p> <b>Do not drive on!</b></p> <p>Seek expert assistance immediately ⇒ <i>Fault in the brake system</i>.</p>
	<p>Brake fluid level is too low.</p> <p> <b>Do not drive on!</b></p> <p>Check the brake fluid level ⇒ <i>Brake fluid</i>.</p>
	<p>Together with ABS indicator lamp : anti-lock brake system (ABS) not functioning.</p> <p>Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without the anti-lock brake system (ABS).</p>
	Brake pads worn.



Lit up

Possible cause/remedy ⇒ ⚠

Go to a qualified workshop immediately. **All** brake pads should be checked and renewed as necessary.

## ⚠ WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## ⚠ WARNING

Driving with poor brakes can result in accidents and serious injuries.





- If the brake warning lamp (ⓘ) does not go out, or if it lights up when driving, the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Stop the vehicle immediately and seek expert assistance ⇒ *Brake fluid*.
- If the brake warning lamp (ⓘ) lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp (ABS), the control function of the anti-lock brake system may have failed. This can cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. Locked rear wheels can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle. If possible, reduce your speed and drive carefully at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop in order to have the brake system tested. Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres on the way.
- The anti-lock brake system is not functioning correctly if the ABS indicator lamp (ABS) does not go out or lights up while the vehicle is in motion. The vehicle can be stopped using the normal brakes only (without anti-lock brake system). The protection provided by the anti-lock brake system is no longer available. Go to a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
- If the warning lamp (ⓘ) lights up either individually or together with a text message in the display of the instrument cluster, go to a qualified workshop immediately to have the brake pads checked or any worn brake pads replaced.

## ⓘ NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Electronic parking brake

### Warning and indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy ⇒ ⚠
	The electronic parking brake is switched on.  <b>Do not drive on!</b> Switch the electronic parking brake off ⇒ <i>Operating the electronic parking brake</i> .
	Electronic parking brake fault. <sup>a)</sup> Go to a qualified workshop.
	The vehicle is being held by the Auto Hold function. Switch off the Auto Hold function if necessary ⇒ <i>Auto Hold function</i> .

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

<sup>a)</sup> Displayed in colour on an instrument cluster with colour display.

## Operating the electronic parking brake



---

The electronic parking brake replaces the handbrake.





Fig. 173 In lower part of centre console: button for the electronic parking brake.

### Switching on the electronic parking brake

- Always park the vehicle properly ⇒ *Parking* .
- Pull and hold the  button ⇒ Fig. 173 .
- The electronic parking brake is switched on when the indicator lamp in the button ⇒ Fig. 173 (arrow) and the *red* indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster display are lit up.
- Release the button.


### Switching off the electronic parking brake


- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the  ⇒ Fig. 173 button. At the same time depress the brake pedal with some force or depress the accelerator pedal slightly when the engine is running.
- The indicator lamp in the button ⇒ Fig. 173 (arrow) and the *red* indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster display will go out.

## Automatic switch-off for the electronic parking brake when driving off

The electronic parking brake switches off automatically if **one** of the following situations occurs when the driver door is closed:

- In vehicles with an automatic gearbox: engage or change a gear.
- In vehicles with a manual gearbox: fully depress the clutch before pulling off.

You can prevent the electronic parking brake from switching off automatically by pulling and holding the  button ⇒ *Fig. 173* while pulling away.


The electronic parking brake will only be switched off after releasing the  button. This makes pulling away with a heavy trailer load easier ⇒ *Towing a trailer*.



## Automatic switch-on of the electronic parking brake if not activated properly when the driver leaves the vehicle

In vehicles with a DSG® dual clutch gearbox, the electronic parking brake switches itself on automatically when leaving the vehicle in the following circumstances:

- Selector lever position **D/S** or **R** is engaged or the selector lever is in the Tiptronic gate.
- **AND:** when the vehicle is stationary.
- **AND:** if the driver door is open.

## Emergency braking function

The emergency braking function should only be used in those situations where the vehicle cannot be stopped using the foot brake ⇒ !

- Pull and hold the  button ⇒ *Fig. 173* to brake the vehicle **sharply**. A signal tone can be heard at the same time.
- To stop the braking procedure, release the  button or depress the accelerator pedal.


### **WARNING**


The incorrect use of the electronic parking brake can cause accidents and serious injuries.


- **Never use the electronic parking brake to brake the vehicle, except in emergencies. The braking distance can be considerably longer as only the rear wheels are braked in some circumstances. Always use the foot brake.**
- **Never activate the accelerator from the engine compartment if a position or gear has been selected and the engine is running. The vehicle could move, even if the electronic parking brake is applied.**


### **NOTICE**

To avoid unintentional movement when parking the vehicle, first switch on the electronic parking brake and then remove your foot from the brake pedal.

 In vehicles with a manual gearbox: when the clutch pedal is released and the accelerator pedal is depressed at the same time, the electronic parking brake will switch off automatically.

 If the vehicle battery is flat it will not be possible to release the electronic parking brake. Use jump leads ⇒ *Jump starting*.

 Some noises may be heard when the electronic parking brake is switched on or off.

 If the electronic parking brake has not been used for a long period, the system will carry out occasional automatic and acoustic checks when the vehicle is parked.

## Auto Hold function

---

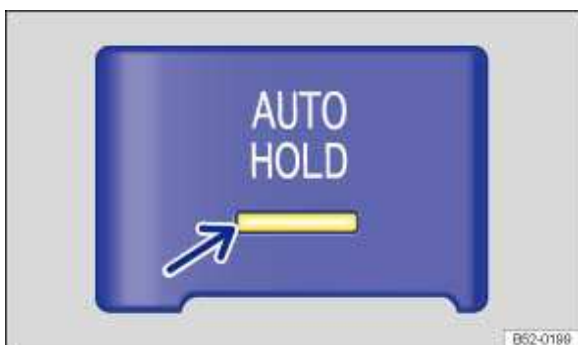


Fig. 174 In lower part of centre console: button for Auto Hold function.

The indicator lamp in the **AUTO HOLD** button  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 174 (arrow) lights up when the function is switched on.


When switched on, the Auto Hold function automatically prevents the vehicle from rolling away without having to depress the foot brake.

The Auto Hold function holds the vehicle as soon as it detects that the vehicle is not moving and the brake pedal is released. The *green* indicator lamp **(P)** on the instrument cluster display showing that the vehicle is being held on the service brake will light up.

When the driver pulls away, the Auto Hold function releases the electronic parking brake. The *green* indicator lamp **(P)** on the instrument cluster display will go out again and the vehicle will start to move in accordance with the incline of the road.

### Conditions for switching the Auto Hold function on and off, and for keeping the vehicle stationary with the Auto Hold function:

- The driver door is closed.
- The engine is running.

If the selector lever is moved to position **N** in vehicles with an automatic gearbox, the Auto Hold function will **not** switch on and will remain deactivated. As a result, the vehicle will not be held securely in a stationary position  $\Rightarrow$  .


### Switching Auto Hold function on manually

Press the **AUTO HOLD** button  $\Rightarrow$  .

If any of the conditions for the Auto Hold function change while the vehicle is stationary, the Auto Hold function will switch off automatically and the *green* indicator lamp **(P)** on the instrument cluster display will go out, along with the *yellow* indicator lamp in the **AUTO HOLD** button.

### Switching Auto Hold function off manually

Press the **AUTO HOLD** button  $\Rightarrow$  .


The indicator lamp in the button  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 174 (arrow) goes out when the Auto Hold function is switched off. The electronic parking brake switches on automatically to park the vehicle securely. However, the electronic parking brake will **not** switch on if the brake pedal is depressed when the Auto Hold function is switched off  $\Rightarrow$  .

## Switching Auto Hold function on and off automatically

If the Auto Hold function has been switched on using the **AUTO HOLD** button before switching the ignition off, the Auto Hold function switches on automatically when the ignition is switched on the next time. The same applies if the Auto Hold function is switched off – it will remain switched off when the ignition is switched on again.

## Switching off the Auto Hold function temporarily using the button

It can sometimes be necessary to turn the Auto Hold function off temporarily to enable the vehicle to roll more easily, for example when manoeuvring.

- With the engine switched on, depress the brake pedal.
- Press the  ⇒ Fig. 174 button. The Auto Hold function is deactivated.

The Auto Hold function will be reactivated as soon as the brake pedal is depressed when the vehicle has come to a standstill.

### **WARNING**

The intelligent Auto Hold function cannot overcome the laws of physics, and operates only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the Auto Hold function tempt you into taking any risks when driving.

- Never leave the vehicle if the engine is running and the Auto Hold function is switched on.
- The Auto Hold function cannot hold the vehicle in all hill start situations or brake it sufficiently on all slopes going downhill, e.g. if the ground is slippery or icy.

### **NOTICE**

Volkswagen recommends that you always switch off the Auto Hold function before driving into a car wash as automatic activation of the electronic parking brake may cause damage.

## ParkPilot

### **Introduction**

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Operating ParkPilot*
- ⇒ *ParkPilot signal tones and displays*
- ⇒ *Vehicle path display*
- ⇒ *Trailer towing*
- ⇒ *ParkPilot menu*

The ParkPilot assists the driver when parking and manoeuvring.

The ParkPilot uses ultrasound sensors to determine the distance from the front or rear bumpers to an obstacle ⇒ *Exterior views* .



## WARNING

The intelligent ParkPilot technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the increased convenience of the parking distance warning system tempt you into taking any safety risks. The ParkPilot cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Ultrasound sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people cannot be detected.
- Always check the area around the vehicle as the ultrasound sensors will not always detect infants, animals and objects.
- Certain surfaces of objects and clothes cannot reflect the signals from the ultrasound sensors. The system is unable to detect these objects or people wearing this type of clothing, or they may be detected incorrectly.
- External sources of sound can affect the signals of the ultrasound sensors. This may prevent the system from recognising people or objects.



## NOTICE

Various factors can negatively affect the ParkPilot functions or lead to damage to the vehicle and objects in the area surrounding the vehicle.

- The ultrasound sensors may not always be able to detect objects such as trailer drawbars, thin rails, fences, posts, trees and open or opening boot lids.
- If the ParkPilot has detected and indicated an obstacle, particularly low or high obstacles will not be detected when the vehicle approaches them. No warning will then be given for these obstacles.
- If the ParkPilot warning is ignored.
- Impacts can displace or damage ultrasound sensors, e.g. when parking.
- In some cases dirt and ice on the ultrasound sensors could be registered as an obstacle. The ultrasound sensors must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects.
- Repainting the ultrasound sensors can impair the function of the ParkPilot.
- The ultrasound sensors should be sprayed only briefly when cleaning with pressure hoses and steam cleaners. The steam/hose nozzle must always be kept more than 10 cm away from the ultrasound sensors.
- Sources of noise can lead to errors in the ParkPilot system, e.g. rough asphalt, cobblestones, induction loops, construction machinery, or interference from other vehicles.
- Any add-on parts that have been retrofitted to the vehicle, e.g. bicycle carriers or number plate holders, can prevent the ParkPilot from functioning properly.




Volkswagen recommends that drivers practise using the ParkPilot in a traffic-calmed area or car park to allow them to familiarise themselves with the system and its functions.



If an ultrasound sensor fails, the sensor area will be switched off and cannot be activated again. This failure can also be recognised by a changed display and signal tones. Visit a qualified workshop to have the fault rectified. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.



ParkPilot malfunctions will be indicated when the system is first switched on by a text message with warning tone and a flashing indicator lamp in the  button. If the ultrasound sensors are soiled or covered, the affected ultrasound sensor group will be shown on the ParkPilot display. A cleaning message (depending on equipment) will also be displayed.

## Operating ParkPilot



Fig. 175 In the centre console: button for switching the ParkPilot on and off (in some models).



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

### Switching ParkPilot on and off

Function	What to do when the ignition is switched on
Switching ParkPilot on and off manually:	Press the  or  button. The indicator lamp in the  or  ⇒ Fig. 175 button lights up while the function is active.
Switching on the ParkPilot automatically:	engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position <b>R</b> . <b>OR:</b> when the vehicle rolls backwards. <b>OR:</b> when slowly driving towards an obstacle located in front in the area of the vehicle path display at a speed lower than 10 – 15 km/h (6 – 9 mph). The obstacle is detected from a distance of approximately 95 cm when automatic activation is switched on in the infotainment system. The miniature view will be displayed.
Switching off the ParkPilot automatically	Move the selector lever to position <b>P</b> . <b>OR:</b> accelerate forwards to a speed greater than approximately 10 – 15 km/h (6 – 9 mph).
Temporarily muting ParkPilot	Touch the  function button. <b>OR:</b> switch on the electronic parking brake. The obstacles will be displayed in grey for as long as the electronic parking brake is switched on.
Changing from the miniature view to full-screen:	engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position <b>R</b> . <b>OR:</b> when the vehicle rolls backwards. <b>OR:</b> touch the miniature view function button.
Switching to the rear view camera system <sup>a)</sup> picture:	engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position <b>R</b> . <b>OR:</b> touch the  function button.

### Manoeuvre braking

As soon as an obstacle is detected during reversing, the manoeuvre braking triggers an emergency braking. The manoeuvre braking function helps to prevent collisions. The speed must be less than 10 km/h (6 mph) and the driver must have fastened their seat belt. The manoeuvre braking is activated or deactivated when the ParkPilot is activated or deactivated. If an emergency braking has been triggered, the function is inactive for the parking procedure. The same restrictions apply as for the ParkPilot ⇒ .



### ParkPilot with switched off Park Assist in the Off-road Individual driving profile

Acoustic and visual warning are switched off when the ParkPilot is deactivated by means of the 4MOTION Active Control ⇒ *4MOTION Active Control* in the Off-road Individual driving profile. The camera image is still displayed, depending on equipment. All parking functions are ended if the camera image is closed. No automatic activation takes place ⇒ *Automatic activation (depending on equipment)* .

## Special features of the ParkPilot

- In some cases, the ParkPilot detects water and ice on the ultrasound sensors as an obstacle.
- The acoustic warning will become quieter after a few seconds if the distance remains the same. The volume will remain constant if the continuous signal tone sounds.
- The intermittent signal tone switches off automatically as soon as the vehicle moves away from an obstacle again. If the vehicle approaches the obstacle again, the intermittent signal tone is switched on automatically.
- A Volkswagen dealership can adjust the volume of the acoustic signals.
- No acoustic signal is given in vehicles with an automatic gearbox if the selector lever is in position **P** or the electronic parking brake is switched on.
- The *rear* ultrasound ParkPilot sensors cannot be switched on if the factory-fitted towing bracket is *electrically* connected to the trailer ⇒ *Trailer Assist*.

## Automatic activation (depending on equipment)

Automatic activation of the ParkPilot when driving slowly towards an obstacle located in front of the vehicle works only when the speed falls below approximately 10 – 15 km/h (6 – 9 mph) for the first time. If the ParkPilot was switched off using the  or  button, performing one of the following actions with the ignition switched on can automatically reactivate the ParkPilot:

- If the vehicle is accelerated to a speed greater than 10 – 15 km/h (6 – 9 mph) and then drops below that speed again.
- **OR:** if the ignition has been switched off and then back on again.
- **OR:** if the selector lever is moved to position **P** and then out of that position again.
- **OR:** if automatic activation is deactivated and then activated in the infotainment system menu.
- **OR:** if the electronic parking brake is switched on and then off again.

Automatic activation with the miniature view can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment system menu ⇒ *ParkPilot menu* .

## WARNING

Automatic activation of the ParkPilot only occurs at very low speeds. An inappropriate driving style can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always bear in mind the time delay between the signals.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe the illuminated text messages can lead to the vehicle being damaged.

<sup>a)</sup> Depending on equipment level

## ParkPilot signal tones and displays

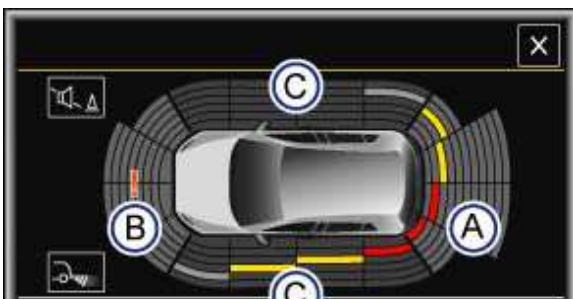











Fig. 176 ParkPilot full-screen mode.



Fig. 177 ParkPilot miniature view.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Key to ⇒ Fig. 176 and ⇒ Fig. 177 :	Meaning
Ⓐ	Monitored area behind the vehicle.
Ⓑ	Scanned area in front of the vehicle.
Ⓒ	Scanned area to the side of the vehicle (depending on the vehicle equipment level).
	Red segment depicts an obstacle close to the vehicle.
	The yellow segment represents an obstacle in the vehicle's path.
	The grey segment represents an obstacle outside of the vehicle's path.
	System fault in the monitored area (depending on equipment level).
	Temporary system fault in the monitored area (depending on equipment level).

The graphic on the screen displays the scanned areas in several segments. The closer the vehicle drives towards an obstacle, the closer the segment will move to the vehicle in the display. The collision area has been reached when the penultimate segment is displayed, if not before. **Do not drive on!**

The yellow segments turn grey if an obstacle moves outside the vehicle's path due to a steering movement.

It can take a few seconds before the area scanned by the sensors is displayed on the screen of the factory-fitted infotainment system.

## Signal tones

When the vehicle approaches an obstacle located in the range of the ultrasound sensors signal tones are given. An intermittent signal tone is given if a sufficiently short distance between the vehicle and an obstacle is detected. The shorter the distance, the shorter the intervals. A constant tone is output when the distance is less than 30 cm (12 inches). **Do not drive on!**

The intermittent signal tone will become quieter after a few seconds if the distance remains the same. The volume will remain constant if the signal tone is continuous. The intermittent signal tone switches off automatically as soon as the vehicle moves away from an obstacle again. If the vehicle moves towards an obstruction again, the intermittent signal tones are given automatically.

If the side areas are not displayed in the infotainment system screen display, signal tones will not be given for these areas.

There are different intermittent signal tones for the front and rear areas.

The warning signals can be adjusted in the infotainment system menu ⇒ [ParkPilot menu](#).

## Muting the ParkPilot signal tones

You can mute the signal tones from the ParkPilot by touching the  function button on the infotainment system screen. Touch the function button again to switch the signal tones back on.


If the ParkPilot display has been switched off manually and ParkPilot remains active, the mute setting is also cancelled.

## Things to note in the area around the vehicle

The scanned area along the side of the vehicle is automatically hidden in the following situations:

- When a vehicle door is opened.
- When the TCS is switched off.
- When the TCS or ESC systems are taking corrective action.
- If the vehicle is stationary for longer than approximately 3 minutes.

The distance range for the constant tone to the rear of the vehicle is slightly larger for vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket  
⇒ *Trailer towing* .

The vehicle must be moved a few metres forwards or backwards in order to be able to show the entire area around the vehicle<sup>1)</sup> ⇒  .  
The missing areas are then scanned and the area around the vehicle is calculated.

### **WARNING**

Do not allow the images shown on the screen to distract you from the traffic around you.

### **NOTICE**

Failure to observe the illuminated text messages can lead to the vehicle being damaged.

<sup>1)</sup> The area around the vehicle is not shown in vehicles with 4 ultrasound sensors each in the front and rear bumpers.

## Vehicle path display

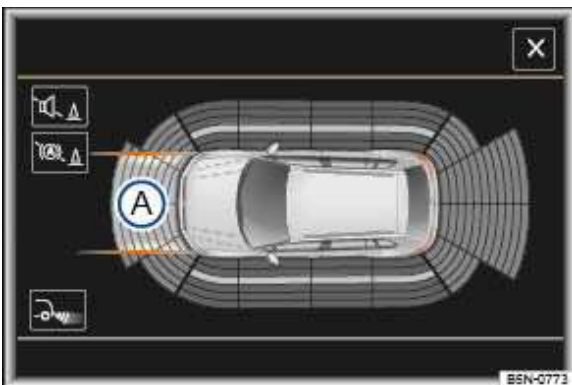


Fig. 178 ParkPilot screen displays: vehicle path displays without steering input.



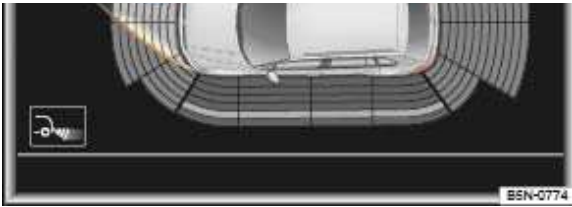



Fig. 179 ParkPilot screen displays: vehicle path displays with steering input.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Depending on the vehicle equipment level and market, not every vehicle is equipped with a vehicle path display.

Key for ⇒ Fig. 178 and ⇒ Fig. 179 :

 Vehicle path display.

When the system detects that the driver wishes to drive forward or back, the vehicle path is displayed corresponding to the amount by which the steering wheel is turned.

## NOTICE

**If an ultrasound sensor fails, the vehicle path display is switched off and cannot be reactivated until the fault has been rectified.**

- The steering wheel angle will no longer determine the segments displayed and the signal tones given.

## Trailer towing

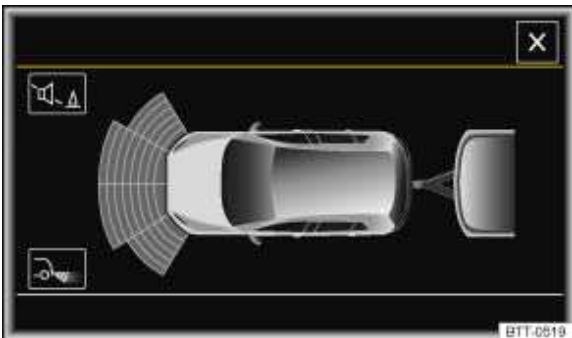


Fig. 180 ParkPilot screen display when towing a trailer.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*


Only the monitored area to the front of the vehicle is shown on the infotainment system screen in vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket and a trailer with an electrical connection to the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 180 .

The vehicle path display is not possible when towing a trailer ⇒ Fig. 179 .

## ParkPilot menu



 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

- Switch on the ignition.
- If necessary, switch on the infotainment system.

- Press the **CAR** button.
- Touch the  function button.
- Touch the **Parking and manoeuvring** function button.
- Select the required settings in the **ParkPilot** menu.

You can save some settings in the user account in personalisation ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system* .

**Activate automatically** : if the checkbox in the function button is ticked  , the ParkPilot display will be switched on automatically when the vehicle slowly approaches an obstacle located to the front. Touch  **Activate automatically** again to switch off this function. After deactivation, the ParkPilot will not be activated automatically when the vehicle approaches an obstacle located to the front.

Various settings can be adjusted by touching the  or  function buttons, or by moving the slider: **Front volume** , **Front tone setting** , **Rear volume** , **Rear tone setting** and **Entertainment fading** .

## Rear view camera system (Rear View)

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Operating information*
- ⇒ *Operating the rear view camera system*
- ⇒ *Parking at a right angle to the road (mode 1)*
- ⇒ *Parking parallel to the road (mode 2)*
- ⇒ *Trailer support (mode 3) and crossing traffic (mode 4)*
- ⇒ *Cleaning the camera lens*

The rear view camera system at the rear of the vehicle makes it easier for the driver to see behind the vehicle when parking, manoeuvring or reversing.

There are different modes for functions and displays of the rear view camera system on vehicles with and without ParkPilot.

- **Perpendicular parking (mode 1)**: reverse parking at a right angle to the road, e.g. in a car park.
- **Parallel parking (mode 2)**: reverse parking parallel to the road, e.g. at the side of the road.
- **Trailer support (mode 3)**: support when hitching a trailer to the vehicle.
- **Crossing traffic (mode 4)**: observing crossing traffic.

The available modes can be changed by pressing the function button on the infotainment system screen.



## WARNING

Using the rear view camera system to estimate the distance from obstacles (people, vehicles etc.) is inaccurate and could cause accidents and severe injuries.

- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision and the objects on the screen will not be depicted as precisely and accurately as they are in reality.
- Certain objects, for example narrow posts or railings, may be difficult or impossible to see on the screen because of its low resolution or poor light conditions.
- The rear view camera system has blind spots within which obstacles and people cannot be detected.
- Keep the camera lens clean, free of snow and ice and do not cover it.



## WARNING

The intelligent rear view camera system technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Never let the extra convenience afforded by the rear view camera system tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents. Careless or unintentional use of the rear view camera system can cause accidents and lead to serious injury. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Keep looking in the direction in which you are parking and at the relevant area surrounding the vehicle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle.
- Do not allow the images shown on the screen to distract you from the traffic around you.
- Always monitor the area around the vehicle as small children, animals and objects will not always be detected by the rear view camera system.
- The rear view camera system may not be able to display all areas clearly.



## NOTICE

- The rear view camera system shows only two-dimensional images on the screen. The lack of depth of field means that potholes and protruding objects on the ground may only be detected with difficulty, or may not be detected at all.
- The reversing camera may not always be able to detect objects such as thin rails, fences, posts, trees etc. This could result in damage to your vehicle.
- The system displays the orientation lines and boxes irrespective of the area surrounding the vehicle. There is no automatic obstacle detection. Drivers must judge for themselves whether the vehicle will fit into the parking space.

## Operating information

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

## Checklist



---




- ✓ The boot lid must be closed.
- ✓ A clear and accurate image is required, e.g. a clean camera lens.
- ✓ The area being used for manoeuvring or parking is on a flat, even surface.
- ✓ There must be a clear and unobstructed view of the area behind the vehicle.
- ✓ The rear of the vehicle must not be heavily loaded.

- ▼ The driver must be familiar with the system.
- ✓ The vehicle must be undamaged. The rear view camera system must be checked by a qualified workshop if the position or angle of the camera has changed, e.g. following a rear impact.
- ✓ Do not exceed a speed of approximately 15 km/h (9 mph).
- ✓ Width of the parking space: vehicle width + 0.2 m.
- ✓ Maintain a distance of approximately one metre from the parking space (mode 2 only).
- ✓ Length of the parking space: approx. 8 m (mode 2 only).

### Rear view camera system settings


Various settings, including *brightness, contrast and colour*, can be adjusted by tapping the  or  function buttons, or by moving the corresponding slider.

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place.
- Switch on the electronic parking brake.
- Switch on the ignition and, if applicable, the infotainment system.
- Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position **R**.
- Touch the  function button.
- Select the required settings in the menu.

### Things to note

If the position or angle of the rear view camera system has changed, e.g. following a rear-end collision, the system should be checked by a qualified workshop.

The rear view camera system's orientation lines and guiding functions are not displayed when the factory-fitted towing bracket is electrically connected to the trailer → [Towing a trailer](#).

 Volkswagen recommends that you practise parking and manoeuvring with the rear view camera system in a traffic-calmed area or car park with good vision and weather conditions, so you can familiarise yourself with the system and their functions in a safer environment.

## Operating the rear view camera system

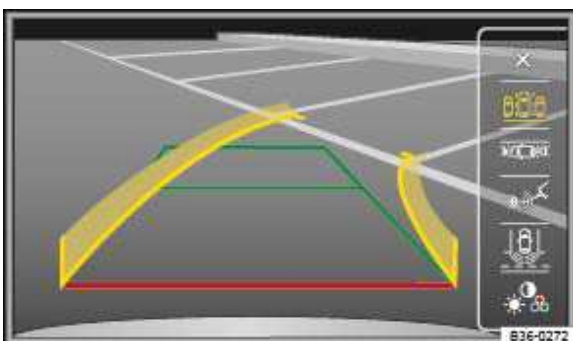


Fig. 181 Display for the rear view camera system: mode 1 selected.

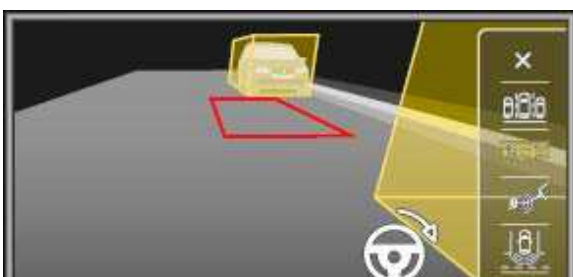




Fig. 182 Display for the rear view camera system: mode 2 selected.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

Key for ⇒ Fig. 181 or ⇒ Fig. 182

Depending on the equipment level: switch the ParkPilot tone on and off. Depending on the equipment level: switch on ParkPilot display. Depending on the equipment level: switch off ParkPilot display. Depending on the equipment level: display ParkPilot.x Close current display. Adjust display: brightness, contrast, colour. Switch to perpendicular parking (mode 1). Switch to parallel parking (mode 2). Switch to off-road support (mode 3). Switch to rear crossing traffic view (mode 4).

### Switching the rear view camera system on and off

Function	What to do when the ignition is switched on	
	Vehicles without ParkPilot	Vehicles with ParkPilot
Switching display on and off manually:		Press the  button.
Switching on the display automatically:	Move the selector lever to position R. Reversing camera Mode 1 is displayed on the infotainment system screen.	The ParkPilot miniature view is also displayed on the left side of the infotainment system display.
Switching the display off automatically:	Switch off the ignition. <b>OR:</b> drive forwards faster than 15 km/h (9 mph).	
Hiding the image from the rear view camera system:	Press on the Infotainment button, e.g.  , on the factory-fitted infotainment system. <b>OR:</b> touch the  function button on the screen.	<b>OR:</b> touch the  function button. ParkPilot full-screen mode is displayed.

### Parking at a right angle to the road (mode 1)

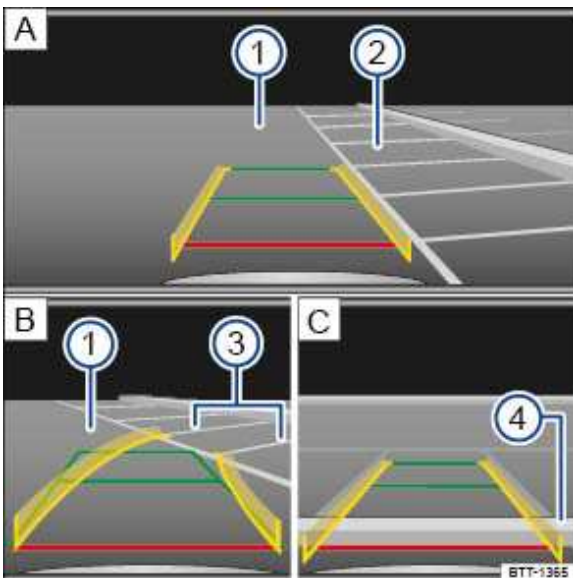


Fig. 183 Screen display: parking using the rear view camera system, mode 1.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction




Key to ⇒ Fig. 183 :

- ① Road.
- ② Selected parking space.
- ③ Lines showing the side limits of the selected parking space.
- ④ Rear limit of the parking space, e.g. kerb.

Key for ⇒ Fig. 183

**A** Looking for a parking space. **B** Driving into the selected parking space. **C** Manoeuvring. **Red line** Indicates the safety clearance. The red line marks a point approximately 0.4 metres behind the vehicle on the road. This orientation line does not change in accordance with the steering wheel angle. **Yellow lines** Indicate the side limits, depending on the steering input. The displayed yellow area ends on the road surface approximately 2 metres behind the vehicle. **Green lines** Show the rearward extension of the vehicle. The displayed green area ends around 2 metres on the road behind the vehicle. These orientation lines do not change in accordance with the steering wheel angle.

### Parking using the rear view camera system (mode 1)

- The requirements for parking using the rear view camera system must be met.
- Press the  button or the  button before driving past the selected parking space.
- Drive past the parking space slowly.
- Position the vehicle in front of the parking space ② ⇒ Fig. 183 **A**.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Reverse slowly and steer the vehicle so that the yellow lines along the side limits ③ are aligned with the selected parking space **B**.
- Observe the following message: **Look! Safe to move?** ⇒ .
- Position the vehicle in the selected parking space so that the green and yellow lines are aligned with the side limits ③ of the selected parking space.
- At the very latest, stop the vehicle **C** when the red line reaches the rear limit, e.g. the kerb ④.

### Parking parallel to the road (mode 2)

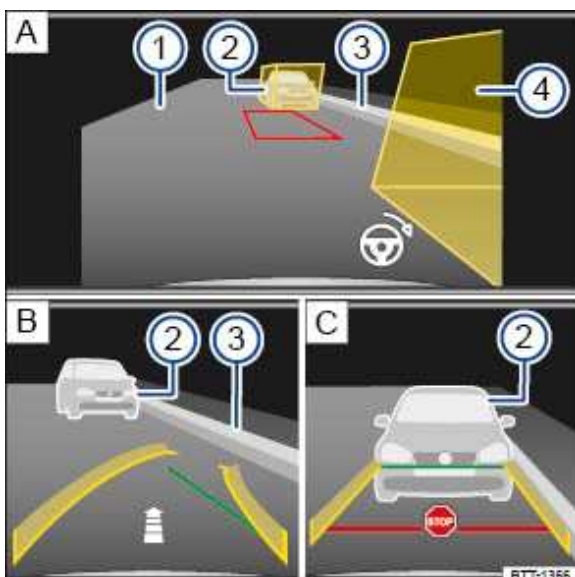


Fig. 184 Infotainment system display: rear view camera system, mode 2.





First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

Key to ⇒ Fig. 184 :

- ① Road.
- ② Selected parking space.
- ③ Lines showing the side limits of the selected parking space.

**A** Looking for a parking space. **B** Driving into the selected parking space. **C** Manoeuvring. **Horizontal red line:** Indicates the safety clearance. The red horizontal line marks a point approximately 0.4 metres behind the vehicle on the road. **Lateral red line:** If a lateral yellow line is highlighted in red, the steering input must be adjusted until the yellow line matches the curved red line. A steering wheel symbol also appears at the bottom of the screen for orientation purposes. **Yellow lines:** Indicate the side limits of the vehicle, depending on the steering input. The displayed yellow area ends on the road surface approximately 2 metres behind the vehicle. **Yellow auxiliary boxes:** Denote the limits of the parking space in the parking row, e.g. stationary vehicles. The limits of the parking space must not protrude beyond the auxiliary boxes. The area between the yellow auxiliary boxes shows the required manoeuvring space and the selected parking space. **Lateral green line:** Indicates the turning point during parking. The turning point has been reached when the lateral green line touches the kerb or any other parking space demarcation. **Horizontal green lines:** Rearward extension of the vehicle. The displayed green area ends around 2 metres on the road behind the vehicle. These orientation lines gradually fade out as the vehicle approaches the rear limit of the parking space.

## Checklist

- ✓ The requirements for parking using the rear view camera system must be met.
- ✓ Press the button or the button before driving past the selected parking space.
- ✓ Touch the function button for mode 2 on the infotainment system screen. When switching to mode 2, the auxiliary boxes are displayed for both sides parallel to the road.
- ✓ Activate the turn signal for the side of the street on which you want to park. Once the turn signal is activated, the auxiliary boxes which are not required disappear from the display.
- ✓ Drive past the parking space slowly.
- ✓ Position the vehicle at a distance of approximately one metre parallel to the parking row, ensuring that the auxiliary boxes displayed on the screen completely cover any obstacles ②. The area between the auxiliary boxes must be clear of any obstacles. Recommendation: if available, orient yourself by the front boundary/vehicle, i.e. the parking vehicle must be contained entirely by the yellow auxiliary box.
- ✓ Depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle.
- ✓ Engage reverse gear. Your vehicle is represented by a red trapezium. If obstacles protrude beyond the auxiliary boxes, the parking space may be too small, or your vehicle may not be positioned correctly. If required, look for a new parking space or reposition the vehicle.
- ✓ Turn the steering wheel until the red trapezium is positioned between the auxiliary boxes and is highlighted in green. You can use the available parking zone marking to position the green trapezium. Keep the steering wheel fixed in this position. The steering wheel symbol on the lower right-hand edge of the screen shows the driver the required steering throughout the parking procedure.
- ✓ Keeping the steering wheel in the same position, reverse slowly until the stop sign appears. OR: until the curved green lateral line corresponds to the side limit of the parking space, e.g. the kerb ③. An arrow indicates the remaining distance to be covered, based on the number of segments shown in the arrow.
- ✓ Observe the following message: Look! Safe to move? .
- ✓ Stop the vehicle and turn the steering wheel as far as it will go in the opposite direction until the direction arrow is no longer shown above the steering wheel symbol.
- ✓ Reverse slowly without changing the current steering input. The horizontal green lines will be displayed.
- ✓ Continue to reverse slowly until the stop sign appears. OR: at the very latest, stop the vehicle when the red line reaches the rear limit, e.g. the stationary vehicle ②. If necessary, align the vehicle parallel to the roadway.

## Trailer support (mode 3) and crossing traffic (mode 4)



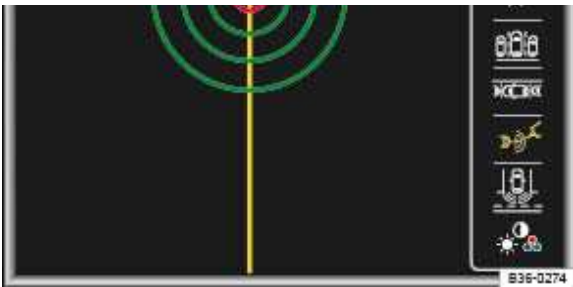


Fig. 185 Rear view camera system display: trailer support

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

## Trailer support

In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket, the trailer support function can be used when approaching a trailer drawbar. The powerful zoom level used in this mode means that obstacles behind the vehicle appear very late. This mode therefore requires the driver to pay very careful attention.

The horizontal red orientation line shown on the screen is level with the towing bracket. The semi-circular green and red orientation lines indicate the distance from the towing bracket. The distance between each green auxiliary line, and between these lines and the red auxiliary line, is approximately 0.1 m. The orange line indicates the predicted path of the towing bracket, depending on the steering angle.

## Crossing traffic

The area in front of or behind the vehicle, and the side areas, are displayed as a fish-eye diagram. Mode 4 (crossing traffic) helps the driver to monitor traffic behind the vehicle and can be used in situations such as driving out of a garage or exiting from a narrow space.

## Cleaning the camera lens

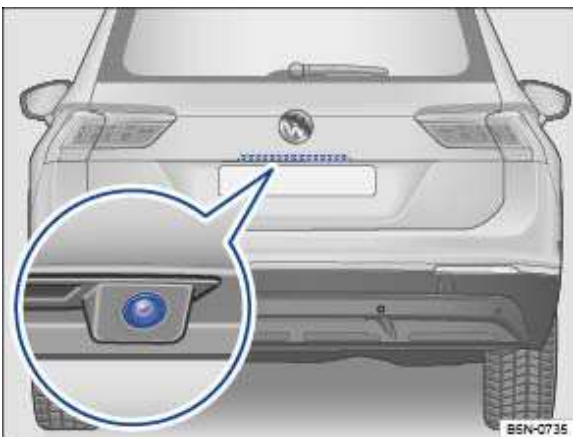


Fig. 186 At rear of vehicle: rear view camera system location.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

## Park Assist

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Function and special features of Park Assist*

⇒ *Parking using Park Assist*

⇒ *Driving out of a parking space using Park Assist*

Park Assist provides active steering inputs when parking or driving out of a parking space.

Park Assist is an extension of ParkPilot → *ParkPilot* and assists the driver when:

- Choosing a suitable parking space,
- Selecting a parking mode,
- Reverse parking in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking spaces
- Parking forwards in a suitable perpendicular parking space,
- Pulling out of a parallel parking space forwards.

In vehicles with ParkPilot optical display, the monitored area to the front, rear and to the sides of the vehicle will be shown on the screen of the factory-fitted infotainment system. Within the scope permitted by the system, the position of obstacles will be shown in relation to the vehicle.

## **WARNING**

The intelligent Park Assist technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by Park Assist tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Certain surfaces of objects and clothes cannot reflect the signals from the ultrasound sensors. The system is unable to detect these objects or people wearing this type of clothing, or they may be detected incorrectly.
- External sources of sound can affect the signals of the ultrasound sensors. In certain circumstances the system may not recognise people or objects.
- Ultrasound sensors have blind spots in which obstacles and people cannot be detected.
- Always check the area around the vehicle as the ultrasound sensors will not always detect infants, animals and objects.


## **WARNING**


Making quick turning movements of the steering wheel when parking or driving out of a parking space using Park Assist can cause serious injuries.


- When parking or driving out of a parking space, do not reach for the steering wheel until prompted to do so by the system.


## **NOTICE**

- The ultrasound sensors may not always be able to detect objects such as trailer drawbars, thin rails, fences, posts, trees and open or opening boot lids. This can result in damage to your vehicle.
- Any equipment that has been retrofitted to the vehicle, e.g. bicycle carriers, can prevent Park Assist from functioning properly and may cause damage.
- Park Assist uses parked vehicles, the kerb and other objects as guidance. Please ensure that the wheels and tyres are not damaged when parking the vehicle. If necessary, stop the parking procedure in good time to prevent damage to the vehicle.
- The ultrasound sensors in the bumper can be displaced or damaged by an impact which occurs for example when parking or driving out of a parking space.

 The ultrasound sensors in the bumpers must be kept clean and free of ice and snow and not be covered up by stickers or other items, as these may prevent the system from working properly.

 If an ultrasound sensor fails, Park Assist is switched off and cannot be reactivated until the fault has been rectified. Consult a qualified workshop in the event of a system fault. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

 Sources of sound can lead to errors in Park Assist or the ParkPilot, e.g. rough asphalt, cobblestones, and interference from other vehicles.

 Volkswagen recommends that you practise using the Park Assist system on a quiet road or in a car park. In this way you can become familiar with the system and the functions in a safer environment.

## Function and special features of Park Assist


---



Fig. 187 In the lower section of the centre console: button for switching on Park Assist.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Park Assist has system-related limitations. For example, if you are on tight bends, Park Assist cannot help you to park the vehicle or drive out of parking spaces.

Park Assist consists of ultrasound sensors in the front and rear bumpers and the  ⇒ Fig. 187 button which turns Park Assist and display on the instrument cluster on and off.

The Park Assist cannot be switched on if the factory-fitted towing bracket ⇒ *Towing a trailer* is electrically connected to the trailer.

### Adapting Park Assist again after a wheel change


If you notice that the results for parking or leaving a parking space have worsened after a wheel has been changed, Park Assist may have to be adapted to the new wheel dimensions by the system. Park Assist automatically adopts the values during driving.

Park Assist can be supported as follows:

- Drive through bends at speeds of less than 20 km/h (12 mph).

### Automatic manoeuvre cancellation when driving into or leaving a parking space

Park Assist cancels the manoeuvre for driving into or leaving a parking space if one of the following situations occurs:


- The  button is pressed.
- Speed of approximately 7 km/h (4 mph) is exceeded.
- The driver intervenes using the steering wheel.
- The parking procedure was not completed within approximately 6 minutes of activating the automatic steering intervention.
- There is a system fault (system is temporarily unavailable).
- TCS is switched off.
- TCS or ESC start to actively intervene.

Park Assist can restart the manoeuvre for driving into or leaving a parking space after automatic cancellation.

Press the  button.

### Park Assist automatic braking intervention

Park Assist helps the driver by triggering an automatic braking intervention in certain situations.

The driver is always responsible for braking in time ⇒ .

## Automatic braking intervention to avoid speeding

An automatic braking intervention may occur to prevent the vehicle from exceeding a speed of approximately 7 km/h (4 mph) when parking or driving out of a parking space. Parking or driving out of a space can be continued after the automatic braking intervention.

The automatic braking intervention function is activated only once per parking manoeuvre. If a speed of 7 km/h (4 mph) is exceeded again the parking manoeuvre/driving off procedure is interrupted.

## Automatic braking intervention to minimise damage

Depending on certain conditions such as weather conditions, vehicle condition, vehicle load or vehicle angle, Park Assist can bring the vehicle to a halt before it reaches an obstruction — Depress the brake pedal ⇒ ⚠!

An automatic braking intervention is activated to minimise damage and ends the parking manoeuvre.

### ⚠ WARNING

Do not let the Park Assist braking intervention function tempt you to take any risks while driving – this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Park Assist has system-related limitations. In some situations, the automatic braking intervention function is only able to intervene in a limited way or not at all.
- You should always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- The automatic braking intervention is ended after approximately 1.5 seconds. Depress the brake pedal of the vehicle yourself following the automatic braking intervention.

## Parking using Park Assist

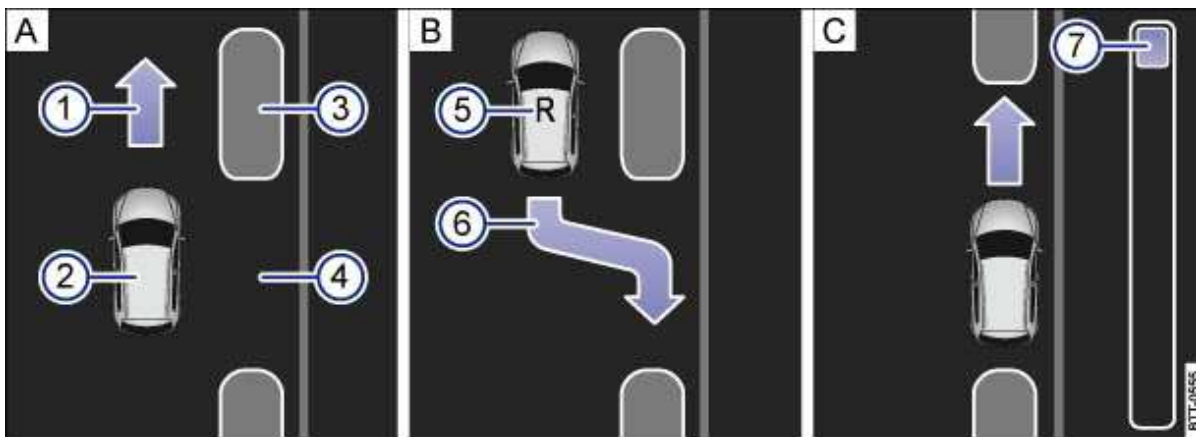
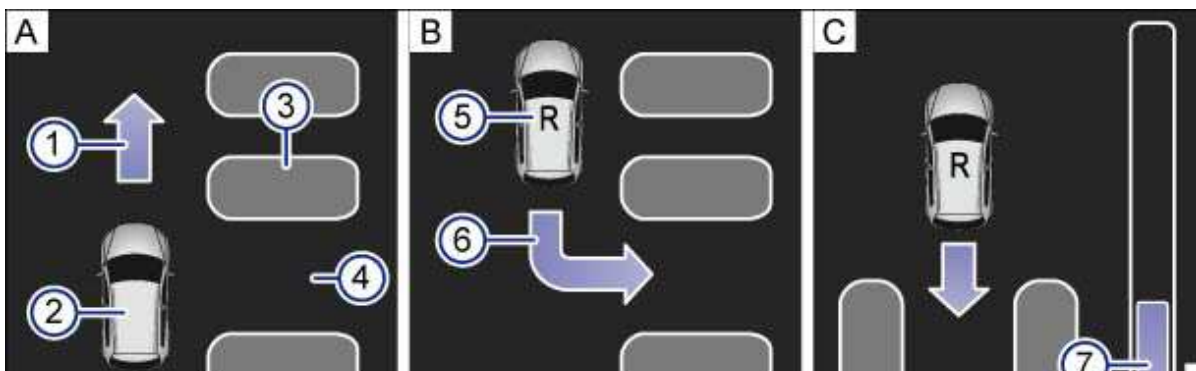


Fig. 188 On the instrument cluster display: parallel parking. Looking for a parking space, positioning the vehicle for parking and manoeuvring.





**Fig. 189** On the instrument cluster display: parking perpendicular to the road. Looking for a parking space, positioning the vehicle for parking and manoeuvring.





First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Key for ⇒ [Fig. 188](#) or ⇒ [Fig. 189](#) :

- ① Prompt to drive forward
- ② Your vehicle
- ③ Stationary vehicle.
- ④ Parking space detected
- ⑤ Parking prompt.
- ⑥ Prompt to press the brake pedal.
- ⑦ Progress bar

### Progress bar

The progress bar ⇒ [Fig. 188](#)  or ⇒ [Fig. 189](#)  in the instrument cluster display indicates the relative remaining distance using symbols. The higher the progress bar is, the longer the remaining distance is. When driving forwards the level of the progress moves up and when driving backwards it moves down.



### Requirements for parking using Park Assist

For parking spaces parallel to the side of the road	For parking spaces perpendicular to the side of the road
The traction control system (TCS) must be switched on ⇒ <a href="#">Brake support systems</a> .	
Do not exceed a speed of approximately <b>40 km/h (25 mph)</b> when driving past the parking space.	Do not exceed a speed of approximately <b>20 km/h (12 mph)</b> when driving past the parking space.
Maintain a distance of <b>0.5–2 metres</b> when driving past the parking space.	
Length of parking spaces: <b>vehicle length + 0.8 metres.</b>	Width of the parking space: <b>vehicle width + 0.8 metres.</b>
Do not exceed a speed of approximately <b>7 km/h (4 mph)</b> when parking.	

### Parking

Complete the following steps:

The **requirements for parking while using Park Assist** must be fulfilled ⇒ [Requirements for parking using Park Assist](#) , and the parking mode must be selected.

Observe the instrument cluster display to see whether the parking space has been determined as suitable and whether the correct position for manoeuvring into the parking space has been achieved ⇒ [Fig. 188](#)  or ⇒ [Fig. 189](#) .

The parking space has been determined suitable only when the prompt to park ⑤ is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Stop the vehicle and engage reverse gear once the vehicle has been stationary for a short period.

Release the steering wheel ⇒  .

Check the area around the vehicle and carefully depress the accelerator pedal – do not exceed 7 km/h (4 mph).

Park Assist will operate **only** the steering wheel during the parking procedure. **The driver controls the accelerator, the brake, and in a manual vehicle the clutch and the gear lever.**


Reverse the vehicle until the ParkPilot gives a continuous tone.

**OR:** reverse until the prompt to drive forward ⇒ Fig. 188 **A** ① / ⇒ Fig. 189 **A** ① appears on the instrument cluster display.

**OR:** reverse until the message **Park Assist finished!** appears in the instrument cluster display.

The progress bar ⑦ shows the remaining distance to be travelled ⇒ *Progress bar*.

Depress the brake pedal until Park Assist has finished steering.

**OR:** until the  symbol in the instrument cluster display disappears.

Select 1st gear.


Drive the vehicle forwards until the ParkPilot gives a continuous tone.

**OR:** drive forward until the prompt to drive backward appears in the instrument cluster display.

Park Assist will steer the vehicle when driving forwards and reversing until the vehicle is parked straight in the parking space ⇒ Fig. 188 **C** or ⇒ Fig. 189 **C**.

Wait until Park Assist has completed the turning movements of the steering wheel at the end of each parking procedure in order to achieve an optimal parking result.

A message is displayed on the instrument cluster once the parking procedure is completed and a signal tone may be given.

 Park Assist detects parking spaces that are suitable for the vehicle even if parking with Park Assist is not possible due to the system limits.

## Driving out of a parking space using Park Assist

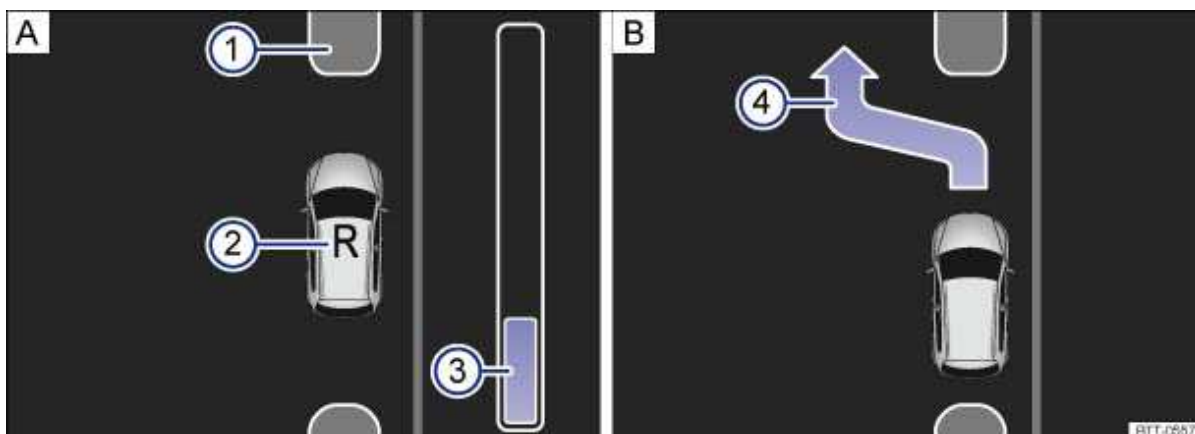


Fig. 190 On the instrument cluster display: driving out of a parallel parking space.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Key to ⇒ Fig. 190 :








- 1 Stationary vehicle.
- 2 Your vehicle with reverse gear engaged
- 3 Progress bar.
- 4 Arrow indicating the suggested procedure for driving out of a space

## Requirements for driving out of a parking space using Park Assist

- Only for parallel parking spaces
- The traction control system (TCS) must be switched on ⇒ *Brake support systems* .
- Length of the parking space: **vehicle length + 0.5 metres**
- Do not exceed a speed of approximately **7 km/h (4 mph)** when driving out of a parking space.

## Driving out of a parking space

Carry out the following steps to drive out of parking spaces that are parallel to the road:

- Requirements for driving out of a parking space using Park Assist must be fulfilled ⇒ *Requirements for driving out of a parking space using Park Assist* .
- Starting the engine ⇒ *Starting and stopping the engine* .
- Press the  button.
- An indicator lamp lights up in the  button when the function is switched on.
- Use the turn signal and main beam lever to select the direction (left or right) in which you would like to drive out of the parking space.
- Engage reverse gear or move the selector lever to position **R**.
- Release the steering wheel when the following message is shown ⇒  :
- Check the area around the vehicle and carefully depress the accelerator pedal – do not exceed 7 km/h (4 mph).
- Park Assist will perform **only** the steering movement while driving out of the parking space. **The driver controls the accelerator, the brake, and in a manual vehicle the clutch and the gear lever.**
- Reverse the vehicle until the ParkPilot gives a continuous tone,
- **OR:** until the prompt to drive forward appears in the instrument cluster display,
- The progress bar ⇒ *Fig. 190*  shows the remaining distance to be travelled.
- **OR:** until the  symbol in the instrument cluster display disappears.
- Drive the vehicle forwards until the ParkPilot gives a continuous tone.
- **OR:** until the prompt to drive backward appears in the instrument cluster display.
- Park Assist steers the vehicle when driving forward or reversing until the vehicle can be driven out of the parking space.
- The vehicle can be driven out of the parking space when the message **Steering interv. finished! Take over steering!** appears in the instrument cluster. A signal tone may also be given.
- Take over steering with the steering angle turned by Park Assist.
- When the traffic situation permits, drive the vehicle out of the parking space.

## Area View

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Special features of Area View*

⇒ *Operating Area View*

⇒ Area View function buttons

⇒ Area View views

Area View helps the driver when parking, manoeuvring or driving off-road.

The system uses several cameras to create an image which is displayed on the infotainment system display. The cameras are positioned in the radiator grille, the exterior mirrors and in the boot lid.

## WARNING

Using cameras to estimate the distance from obstacles (people, vehicles etc.) is inaccurate and could cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Camera lenses enlarge and distort the field of vision and make objects appear different and inaccurate on the screen.
- Certain objects, for example narrow posts or railings, may be difficult or impossible to see on the screen because of its low resolution or poor light conditions.
- The cameras have blind spots within which obstacles and people cannot be detected.
- Keep the camera lens clean, free of snow and ice and do not cover it.

## WARNING

The intelligent Area View technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Always take care when using the Area View system as you could otherwise cause accidents or injuries. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Do not allow the images shown on the screen to distract you from the traffic around you.
- Always check the area around the vehicle as the cameras will not always detect infants, animals and objects.
- The system may not be able to display all areas clearly.

## NOTICE

- The camera only shows two-dimensional images on the screen. The lack of depth of field means that potholes and protruding objects on the ground may only be detected with difficulty, or may not be detected at all.
- The camera may not always be able to detect objects such as thin bars, fences, posts, trees etc. This can result in damage to your vehicle.
- The system displays the auxiliary lines and boxes irrespective of the area surrounding the vehicle. There is no obstacle detection. Drivers must judge for themselves whether the vehicle will fit into the parking space.

## NOTICE

The cameras must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects, as this will prevent the system from working properly.

- Never use an abrasive cleaning product to clean the lenses.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from the camera lenses. This can damage the camera lenses.

## Special features of Area View



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

### Checklist

- ✓ The doors and boot lid must be closed.
- ✓ A clear and accurate image is required, e.g. a clean camera lens.
- ✓ The area around the vehicle must be detected clearly and in full.
- ✓ The area being used for manoeuvring or parking is on a flat, even surface.
- ✓ The rear of the vehicle must not be heavily loaded.
- ✓ The driver must be familiar with the system.
- ✓ The area of the vehicle around the cameras must be undamaged. The system must be checked by a qualified workshop if the position or angle of the cameras has changed, e.g. following a rear impact.

### Things to note

Examples of optical deception by the camera:

The Area View system camera supplies two-dimensional images only. Due to the lack of depth of field on the screen, potholes and dips in the ground, protruding parts on another vehicle or protruding objects on the ground may be difficult or impossible to see on the image.

- If you drive from a level surface onto an upward or downward slope.
- If you drive from an upward or downward slope onto a level surface.
- If the rear of the vehicle is heavily loaded.
- When approaching protruding objects. These objects can disappear from the camera's field of view.

Area View hides all of the auxiliary orientation lines in the area of the rear camera when the factory-fitted towing bracket ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#) is electrically connected to a trailer.

## Operating Area View




Fig. 191 In the upper part of the centre console: button for switching on the Area View.





First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

### Switching the Area View on and off

Switching on the display manually:	Press the  button ⇒ Fig. 191 once. Depending on the vehicle speed, different displays are shown on the infotainment system display after activation.
Switching on the display automatically:	Move the selector lever to position <b>R</b> . The camera view behind the vehicle is displayed in perpendicular parking mode with the miniature version of the bird's eye view.

## Switching the Area View on and off

Switching the display off manually.	Press the  button ⇒ Fig. 191 again.
	<b>OR:</b> press an infotainment button, e.g. <b>RADIO</b> , on the factory-fitted infotainment system. <b>OR:</b> touch the  function button.
Switching the display off automatically.	Drive forwards faster than approximately 15 km/h (9 mph). <b>OR:</b> switch off the ignition. The Area View menu is hidden after a short delay.



Volkswagen recommends that you practise using Area View in a traffic calmed area or in a car park. In this way you can become familiar with the system and the functions in a safer environment.

## Area View function buttons

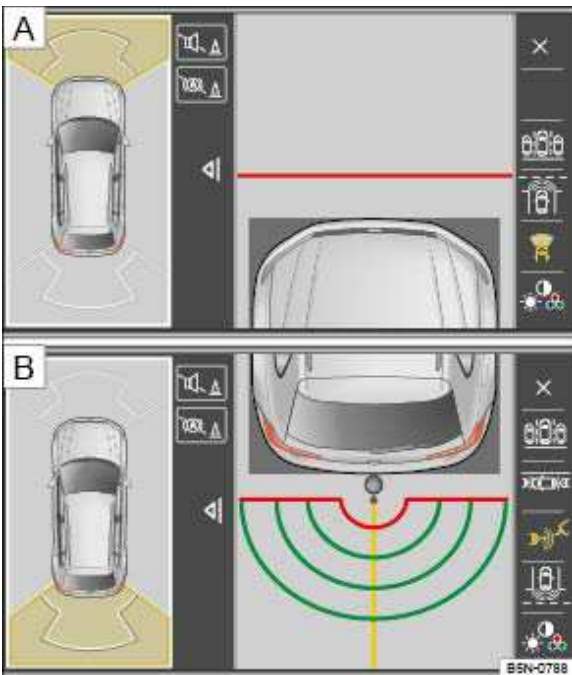










Fig. 192 Area View display: front camera, rear camera.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

Key for ⇒ Fig. 192

-   Depending on the equipment level: switch the ParkPilot tone on and off.
-  Depending on the equipment level: switch on ParkPilot display.
-  Depending on the equipment level: switch off ParkPilot display.
-  Depending on the equipment level: display ParkPilot.xExit Area View display.
-  Adjust display: brightness, contrast, colour.
-  Switch to rear crossing traffic mode.
-  Switch to mode 2.

## Area View views

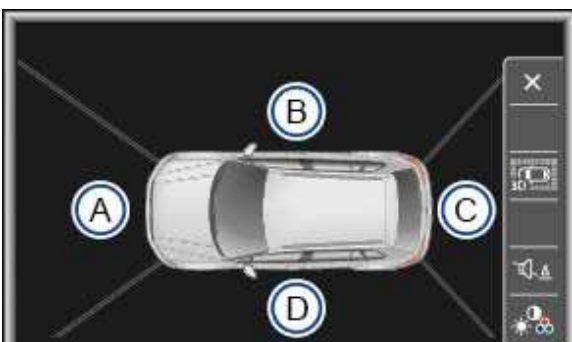




Fig. 193 Area View display: bird's eye view.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\Rightarrow$  Introduction

Key for  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 193

- Front camera area.
- Right camera area.
- Rear camera area.
- Left camera area.

Depending on the equipment level: switch the ParkPilot tone on and off. Close current display. 3D views Adjust display: brightness, contrast, colour.

A bird's eye view is created by combining all camera views  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 193. The bird's eye view can be selected by touching the vehicle within the area on the screen.

Select the respective camera views by touching the individual areas in the bird's eye view  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 193 to or the miniature version of the bird's eye view.

The selected individual camera view is displayed on the right-hand side of the screen. It is marked by a coloured frame in the miniature version of the bird's eye view shown on the left. In addition, the available menu options and possible camera views (modes) for the corresponding camera are shown on the right-hand side of the screen. The view (mode) that is currently active is highlighted.

The miniature version of the bird's eye view can be hidden by pressing the button and the selected single view can be displayed on the entire screen.

### Bird's eye views

View	Screen display of all cameras	
Main mode	The vehicle and immediate area are shown in the bird's eye view. In some models, it may also be possible to show the ParkPilot vehicle path display.	
3D views		The vehicle and surrounding area are shown in the bird's eye view.
		The vehicle and surrounding area are shown at an angle from above.
		The vehicle and surrounding area are shown from the side.




The viewing angle in the 3D views can be switched to the vehicle and the surrounding area by swiping in the direction of the arrows on the infotainment system screen.

### Front camera views (Front View)





View	Display of front camera
Crossing traffic at front	Area on left of screen: intersecting street on the left-hand side. Area in centre of screen: area immediately in front of vehicle. Area on right of screen: intersecting street on the right-hand side.
Perpendicular parking	The area in front of the vehicle is displayed. Orientation lines are displayed as a guide. See rear view camera system mode 1 $\Rightarrow$ <i>Parking at a right angle to the road (mode 1)</i> .
Off-road	

View	Display of front camera
	The area immediately in front of the vehicle is shown in a bird's eye view. This can be used, for example, when crossing a slope so that the area immediately in front of the vehicle can be seen. The displayed red line marks a point approximately 0.4 m from the vehicle.

### Side camera views (side view)

View	Side camera display.
Off-road, left-hand and right-hand side 	Areas immediately next to the vehicle are displayed in a bird's eye view so you can steer the vehicle accurately around obstacles. The red lines displayed are shown at a distance of around 40 cm from the vehicle.
Left side 	Shows the driver or front passenger side immediately next to the vehicle separately as a bird's eye view. This allows you to see the blind spot along the side of the vehicle.
Right-hand side 	

### Rear camera views (rear view)

View	Rear camera display.
Perpendicular parking 	The area behind the vehicle is displayed. Auxiliary lines are displayed to help. See rear view camera system mode 1 → <i>Parking at a right angle to the road (mode 1)</i> .
Parallel parking 	The area immediately behind the vehicle is displayed. The coloured auxiliary boxes and lines are provided for orientation. See rear view camera system mode 2 → <i>Parking parallel to the road (mode 2)</i> .
Off-road 	The rear of the vehicle is displayed, and the red auxiliary line indicates the safety clearance. The distance of the red auxiliary line from the vehicle is around 0.4 metres. No additional auxiliary lines are displayed.
Crossing traffic at rear 	Area on left of screen: intersecting street on the left-hand side. Area in centre of screen: area immediately behind the vehicle. Area on right of screen: intersecting street on the right-hand side.

## Trailer Assist

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:  
⇒ *Operating the trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist)*

Trailer Assist helps the driver when reversing or manoeuvring the vehicle when towing a trailer.



## WARNING

The intelligent Trailer Assist technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Do not let the extra convenience afforded by Trailer Assist tempt you into taking any risks when driving, as this can cause accidents. Trailer Assist cannot replace the full concentration of the driver.

- Unintentional vehicle movements can cause serious injury.
- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Keep looking in the direction in which you are parking and at the relevant area surrounding the vehicle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle.
- Do not allow the displayed images to distract you from the traffic around you.
- Always pay close attention to what is happening around the vehicle and the trailer. The camera cannot monitor the areas behind and to the side of the trailer, or may not be able to monitor them in full. The camera will also not always detect small children, animals and other objects.
- The camera in the hinged Volkswagen badge may not be able to display all areas clearly.
- Keep the camera lens clean, free of snow and ice and do not cover it.
- Trailer Assist should only be used when the boot lid is fully closed.



## WARNING

Fast rotational steering wheel movements can cause serious injury.

- When manoeuvring, do not reach for the steering wheel until prompted to do so by the system.
- Exception: if a dangerous situation occurs, intervene and take over the steering.



## NOTICE

Trailer Assist does not use the area around the vehicle for orientation and does not detect any obstacles. Drivers must judge for themselves whether the trailer can be manoeuvred safely.

- Always pay close attention to the movements of the trailer and, if required, stop the manoeuvre to avoid causing any damage. On rare occasions the trailer may behave differently, even when Trailer Assist is operated correctly.
- Do not rely on the displays in the instrument cluster.

## ! NOTICE

The camera must be kept clean and free of ice and snow, and must not be covered up by stickers or other objects, as this will prevent the system from working properly. The drawbar must not be covered.

- Never use an abrasive cleaning product to clean the lens.
- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from the lens of the camera. This could damage the lens.

## ! NOTICE

Any equipment that has been retrofitted to the vehicle or trailer can prevent Trailer Assist from working properly and can cause damage.

- Equipment that has been fitted to the vehicle can be detected as a trailer, e.g. bicycle carriers.
- Trailers which have unusual structures or additional add-on parts in the area of the drawbar cannot always be detected correctly.

**i** Volkswagen recommends that you practise using the trailer manoeuvring system in an area with less traffic or in a car park. This will allow you to familiarise yourself with the system and its functions in a safer environment.

**i** Consult a qualified workshop in the event of a system fault. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

**i** It is not possible to open the boot lid if the Volkswagen badge is folded out.

## Operating the trailer manoeuvring system (Trailer Assist)

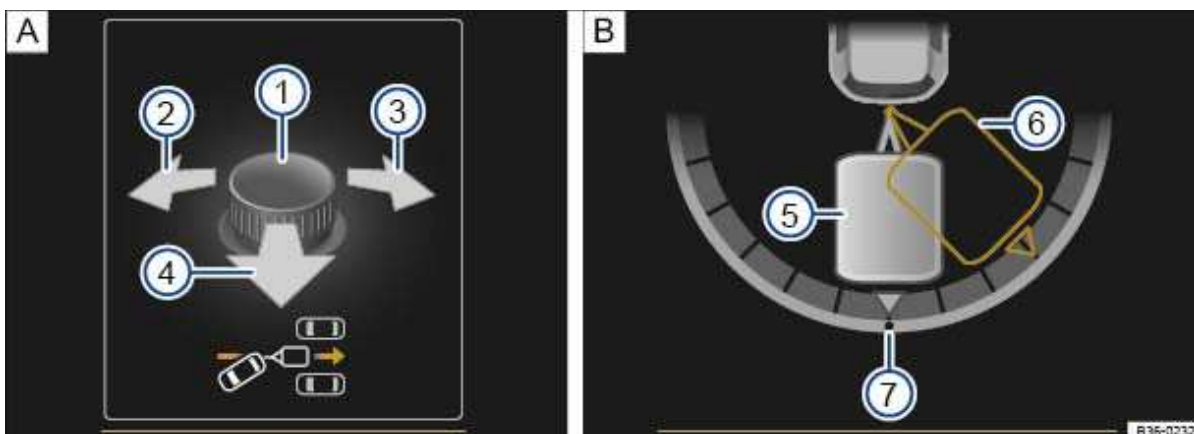


Fig. 194 Operating Trailer Assist on the instrument cluster display: setting the angle; reversing.

**📖** First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ **⚠️ Introduction**

Key to ⇒ Fig. 194 :

- 1 Rotary knob for adjusting the exterior mirror.
- 2 Align the trailer to the left.
- 3 Align the trailer to the right.



- ④ Drive in the direction of the trailer.
- ⑤ Current trailer position.
- ⑥ Target trailer position.
- ⑦ Zero position on the angle display.

The switch for the exterior mirrors can be used to set the direction in which you want to move the trailer.

## Determining the drawbar length

Trailer Assist requires a few turning and cornering manoeuvres to enable it to determine the length of the drawbar. The more accurately it can determine the length of the drawbar, the bigger the angles available when manoeuvring. Trailer Assist divides the available maximum limit positions on the angle display into four levels: approx. 30°, 45°, 60° and 75°.

## Checklist





---


- ✓ Engine running.
- ✓ ESC has not been switched off.
- ✓ Trailer attached and connected to vehicle electrics Towing a trailer.
- ✓ Trailer is stationary.
- ✓ Driver door and boot lid are closed.
- ✓ Exterior mirrors are not folded in.
- ✓ Camera lens is clean.
- ✓ Do not exceed the maximum jack-knifing angle.
- ✓ The area of the vehicle around the camera must be undamaged. The system must be checked by a qualified workshop if the position or angle of the camera has changed, e.g. following a rear impact.

## Things to note

- The trailer manoeuvring system steers the trailer automatically in the set direction ⇒ Fig. 194 . The driver operates the pedals.
- The system only supports one- and two-axle trailers with no steered axles.
- For technical reasons, the trailer manoeuvring system cannot always detect trailers with LED rear lights correctly.
- The exterior mirrors cannot be adjusted while Trailer Assist is active. The stored front passenger mirror setting for reversing can be accessed while the trailer manoeuvring system is active ⇒ Mirrors .
- The function of the trailer manoeuvring system will be automatically ended around 10 minutes after activation.
- The function will also be ended if no driver interaction is detected within approximately 3 minutes of activation.


## Operation

- The checklist conditions must be fulfilled.
- Engage reverse gear.
- Release the steering wheel ⇒ ⚠.
- Press the  button to switch on the Trailer Assist function.
- An indicator lamp lights up in the  button when Trailer Assist is switched on.
- Tilt the rotary knob in the desired direction until the desired direction is reached ⇒ Fig. 194 .
- A diagram showing the current position of the trailer appears on the instrument cluster display for orientation purposes .
- Reverse slowly until the required position is reached ⇒ ⚠. Check area around vehicle!
- While reversing, the set angle can be adjusted using the rotary knob for the exterior mirrors.
- Stop the vehicle combination in the desired position.


- At the end of the parking manoeuvre, wait until Trailer Assist has finished turning the steering wheel.
- The manoeuvre is complete when the message **Steering intervention stopped. Take over steering!** appears in the instrument cluster. A signal tone may also be given.
- Tilt the rotary knob for the exterior mirrors in direction  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 194 (4) .
- The target position of the trailer  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 194 (6) swivels to the zero position on the angle display  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 194 (7).
- Reverse and drive forwards until the required position is reached.

## Automatic braking intervention

Trailer Assist helps the driver by initiating an automatic braking intervention in certain situations.

The driver is responsible for braking in time  $\Rightarrow$  .

An automatic braking intervention may occur and the function may be cancelled in the following situations:

- When a certain speed is exceeded, depending on the length of the drawbar and the angle between the vehicle and the trailer.
- If the driver takes hold of the steering wheel. The vehicle is automatically braked to standstill.
- If the  button is pressed during the manoeuvre.
- If the driver door is opened during the manoeuvre.









## WARNING








**Do not let the automatic braking intervention tempt you to take any risks while driving, as this can cause accidents. The system is not a substitute for the full concentration of the driver.**

- Trailer Assist has system-related limitations. In some situations, the automatic braking intervention function is only able to intervene in a limited way or not at all.
- You should always be prepared to brake the vehicle yourself.
- The automatic braking intervention is ended after approximately 1.5 seconds at vehicle standstill. Depress the brake pedal of the vehicle yourself following the automatic braking intervention.

## Brake support systems

### Warning and indicator lamps

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy $\Rightarrow$ 
	Brake system fault.  <b>Do not drive on!</b> Seek expert assistance immediately $\Rightarrow$ <i>Fault in the brake system</i> .
	Brake fluid level is too low.  <b>Do not drive on!</b> Check the brake fluid level $\Rightarrow$ <i>Brake fluid</i> .
	Together with ABS indicator lamp  : anti-lock brake system (ABS) not functioning. Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without the anti-lock brake system (ABS).
	Electronic Stability Control (ESC) switched off for system-related reasons.

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy ⇒ 
	<p>Switch the ignition on and off. If necessary, drive a short distance.</p> <p>Fault in the Electronic Stability Control (ESC).</p> <p>Go to a qualified workshop.</p> <p>Together with ABS indicator lamp : Anti-lock brake system (ABS) faulty.</p> <p>Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without the anti-lock brake system (ABS).</p> <p>Battery has been reconnected.</p> <p>Drive a short distance at a speed of 15 – 20 km/h (9 – 12 mph). If the indicator lamp remains lit up, the vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop ⇒ <i>Vehicle battery</i>.</p>
	<p>Electronic Stability Control (ESC) switched off manually.</p> <p>Switch the ignition on and off. If necessary, drive a short distance.</p> <p>Traction control system (TCS) switched off manually.</p> <p>Switch on the traction control system (TCS) ⇒ <i>Switching traction control system (TCS), traction control system (TCS) with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or ESC Sport on and off</i>. Switch on the traction control system (TCS) automatically by switching the ignition off and on.</p> <p>ESC Sport switched on manually.</p> <p>Off-road or Off-road Individual driving profile active.</p>
	<p>Together with ESC indicator lamp : anti-lock brake system (ABS) has a fault.</p> <p>Together with the warning lamp : Anti-lock brake system (ABS) not functioning.</p> <p>Go to a qualified workshop. The vehicle can be braked without the anti-lock brake system (ABS).</p>
Flashes	Possible cause/action
	<p>Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or traction control system (TCS) intervening.</p> <p>Remove foot from accelerator pedal. Adapt driving style to suit road conditions.</p>




## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## WARNING

Driving with poor brakes can result in accidents and serious injuries.

- If the brake warning lamp  lights up together with the ABS indicator lamp , the control function of the anti-lock brake system may have failed. This can cause the rear wheels to lock quickly when you brake. Locked rear wheels can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle. If possible, reduce your speed and drive carefully at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop in order to have the brake system tested. Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres on the way.
- The anti-lock brake system is not functioning correctly if the ABS indicator lamp  does not go out or lights up while the vehicle is in motion. The vehicle can be stopped using the normal brakes only (without anti-lock brake system). The protection provided by the anti-lock brake system is no longer available. Go to a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Brake support systems

---

The brake support systems such as Electronic Stability Control, anti-lock brake system, Brake Assist system, traction control system, electronic differential lock (EDL) and XDL only function when the engine is running. They make a considerable contribution to active driving safety.


### Electronic Stability Control (ESC)


The ESC helps to reduce the risk of skidding and to improve driving stability by braking individual wheels in certain driving situations. The ESC detects critical driving situations such as oversteer, understeer and wheelspin. The system supports the stabilisation process for the vehicle by targeted braking intervention or by reducing engine torque.

ESC has its limitations. It is important to realise that ESC cannot overcome the laws of physics. ESC will not be able to assist in every situation faced by a driver. For example, ESC will not be able to assist every time that there is a sudden change in the road surface characteristics. If a section of dry road is suddenly covered with water, mud or snow, ESC will not be able to assist in the same manner as on a dry road. If the vehicle aquaplanes (drives on a layer of water rather than on the road surface), ESC will not be able to assist in steering the vehicle as the contact to the road surface has been interrupted and it is therefore no longer possible to steer or brake the vehicle. When driving at speed through bends, particularly on stretches of road with many bends, the ESC will not always be able to process complicated driving situations as effectively as at lower speeds.

Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. ESC cannot defy the laws of motion, improve the available power output, or keep the vehicle on the road if insufficient care and attention on the part of the driver causes the vehicle to leave the road. Rather, ESC increases the possibility of keeping the vehicle under control and, in extreme on-road driving situations, it assesses the driver's steering input and helps the vehicle to continue in the required direction. If the vehicle is driving at a speed that leads it to leave the road before the ESC can provide any kind of support, the ESC will be unable to provide any assistance.

The anti-lock brake system, Brake Assist system, traction control system and electronic differential lock are integrated into the ESC.

If, in certain driving situations, the level of traction achieved is no longer sufficient, the traction control system (TCS) can be deactivated in the infotainment system using the **CAR** button and the  and **ESC System** function buttons ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, settings can also be adjusted using the  button in the lower part of the centre console ⇒ *Switching traction control system (TCS), traction control system (TCS) with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or ESC Sport on and off*.

In some models, the electronic stability control (ESC) can also be switched off or sport mode (ESC Sport) can be switched on.

Always ensure that the TCS and ESC are switched back on again once sufficient traction has been achieved.

## Automatic Post-Collision Braking System

In the event of an accident, the Automatic Post-Collision Braking System can help the driver to reduce the risk of skidding, and the danger of secondary collisions, through automatic braking.

The Automatic Post-Collision Braking System functions only in frontal, side and rear collisions if the airbag control unit registers the corresponding triggering threshold during the accident, and the accident occurs at a speed greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).

The Electronic Stability Control system brakes the vehicle automatically, provided that the hydraulic braking system, the Electronic Stability Control and the electrical system are undamaged in the accident and remain functional.

The following actions override automatic braking in the event of an accident:

- When the driver depresses the accelerator. No automatic braking occurs.
- When the brake pressure transmitted through the depressed brake pedal is greater than the brake pressure provided by the system. The vehicle is braked manually.

## Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system prevents the wheels from locking when the brakes are applied up until the point where the vehicle is nearly stationary and assists the driver in steering the vehicle and keeping it under control. This means that the vehicle is less likely to spin, even when the brakes are depressed fully:

- Depress and hold the brake pedal with force. Do not take your foot off the brake pedal or reduce the force on the brake pedal.
- Do not pump the brake pedal or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal!
- Steer the vehicle while the brake pedal is fully depressed.
- The anti-lock brake system will switch off when the brake pedal is released or if the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

If the anti-lock brake system is taking corrective action, there is a **pulsing movement in the brake pedal** and some noise. However, the anti-lock brake system will not necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. The braking distance could even be longer if you brake on gravel or on fresh snow covering an icy or slippery surface.

## Brake Assist system

The Brake Assist system can help to reduce the braking distance. The Brake Assist system reinforces brake pressure when the driver depresses the brake pedal quickly in an emergency situation. As a result, full braking power is made accessible very quickly, braking power is reinforced and the braking distance reduced. This means that the anti-lock brake system is activated more quickly and more effectively.

**Do not** reduce the pressure on the brake pedal. The Brake Assist system will switch off the brake servo automatically when the brake pedal is released or if the pressure on the brake pedal is reduced.

## Traction control system (TCS)

The traction control system reduces the engine output if wheelspin occurs and adapts the output to suit road surface conditions. The traction control system helps the car to start moving, accelerate and climb gradients in unfavourable road conditions.

The traction control system can be switched on and off manually ⇒ *Switching traction control system (TCS), traction control system (TCS) with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or ESC Sport on and off*.

## Electronic differential lock (EDL and XDL)

The electronic differential lock is available for normal driving on straight roads. The electronic differential lock brakes the wheel which has lost traction and distributes the driving force to the other drive wheels. To prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating, the electronic differential lock cuts out automatically if subjected to excessive loads. The electronic differential lock will switch on again automatically when the brake has cooled down.

The XDL function is an extension of the electronic differential lock. The XDL does not respond to traction control, but rather to the reduction of load on the inside front wheel when driving through a bend at high speed. XDL will apply the brake on the inside front wheel to prevent it from losing traction. This will improve traction, helping the vehicle to remain in the required lane longer.



### WARNING

The intelligent technology used in brake support systems cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Driving fast on icy, slippery or wet roads can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle and could cause serious injury to the driver and passengers.


- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Do not let the extra safety afforded by the brake support systems tempt you into taking any risks when driving.
- The brake support systems cannot defy the laws of motion. Slippery and wet roads will remain dangerous, even when the Electronic Stability Control and other systems are active.
- Driving too fast on wet roads can cause the wheels to lose contact with the road surface and aquaplane. The vehicle cannot be braked, steered or controlled once it has lost contact with the road surface.
- Brake support systems cannot prevent an accident if, for example, you are driving too close to the vehicle in front or are driving too fast for the individual situation.
- Although the brake support systems are very effective and can help to control the vehicle in difficult driving situations, please always remember that the driving stability of the vehicle depends on the tyre grip.
- When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, press the accelerator carefully. The wheels can spin even when brake support systems are active, and this can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle.





### WARNING

Electronic Stability Control will be considerably less effective if other components and systems that affect driving dynamics are not serviced correctly or are not functioning properly. This also applies, but not exclusively, to the brakes, tyres and other systems named above.

- Please always bear in mind that modifications and changes to the vehicle can affect the way brake support systems operate.
- Alterations to the suspension system or the use of non-approved wheel and tyre combinations can affect the function of brake support systems and reduce their effectiveness.
- The proper effectiveness of the Electronic Stability Control is also determined by the use of suitable tyres ⇒ *Wheels and tyres*.

 The Electronic Stability Control or traction control system can only function properly if all 4 wheels have the same tyres. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tyres can cause the system to reduce engine power unexpectedly.

 If there is a fault in the anti-lock brake system, then the Electronic Stability Control, traction control system and electronic differential lock will not function properly either.

 Operating noises may be heard during the self-regulation processes of the systems explained above.

## Switching traction control system (TCS), traction control system (TCS) with Electronic Stability Control (ESC) or ESC Sport on and off



**Fig. 195** In the lower part of the centre console: button for switching traction control system, traction control system with Electronic Stability Control or ESC Sport on and off manually.





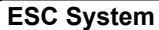
The Electronic Stability Control will only function while the engine is running and is made up of the anti-lock brake system, the electronic differential lock and the traction control system.

The TCS or Electronic Stability Control should only be switched off in certain situations when the traction achieved is not sufficient. For example:


- When driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces.
- When rocking the vehicle backwards and forwards to free it from mud.


The TCS or Electronic Stability Control function should be switched back on again afterwards.


### Switching the TCS function on and off


- With some equipment levels, when the engine is running, the TCS function can be switched off by pressing the  ⇒ Fig. 195 button.
- Switch the TCS function back on by pressing the  ⇒ Fig. 195 button again.
- **OR:** activate or deactivate the TCS function in the infotainment system using the  button and the  and  function buttons ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.


### Switching the TCS and Electronic Stability Control (ESC) function on and off

With some vehicle equipment levels, the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) sport mode (ESC Sport) can also be switched on in addition to switching off the traction control system. The Electronic Stability Control's brake intervention functions are limited when in Sport mode. This can be switched on and off by pressing the  button ⇒ Fig. 195.

Button 	Effect
Press for approximately one second.	TCS function is switched off.
Press for longer than 3 seconds.	TCS function switched off and ESC Sport switched on.

Button 	Effect
Press again.	TCS and Electronic Stability Control (ESC) function switched on.

 With vehicle equipment levels not including a button for switching the traction control system (TCS) on and off manually, the TCS function can be activated or deactivated in the infotainment system ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system* .

 Additional text can be shown on the instrument cluster display to provide further information or to prompt you to carry out certain actions ⇒ *Instrument cluster* .

## Practical equipment

### Stowage area

#### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Stowage compartment on the driver side*
- ⇒ *Stowage compartment in the roof console (glasses compartment)*
- ⇒ *Stowage areas in the roof console*
- ⇒ *Stowage compartment in the dash panel*
- ⇒ *Stowage compartment in the front centre armrest*
- ⇒ *Stowage areas on the front passenger side*
- ⇒ *Drawers*
- ⇒ *Other stowage areas*

Only use stowage compartments to stow light or relatively small objects.

A factory-fitted **CD changer**, **Apple iPod® adapter**, **USB connection** or **Multimedia socket (MEDIA-IN)** may be located in the stowage compartment in the centre armrest.

#### **WARNING**

Loose objects may be flung through the vehicle interior in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre. This can cause serious injury and can also lead to loss of control of the vehicle.

- Do not stow any pets or any hard, heavy or sharp objects in the vehicle's open stowage areas, on the dash panel, on the shelf behind the rear seats, or in items of clothing and bags in the vehicle interior.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.

#### **WARNING**

Objects in the driver footwell can hinder pedal operation. This can lead to loss of control of the vehicle and increase the risk of serious injury.

- Please ensure that all pedals can always be operated without any hindrance.
- The floor mats must always be properly secured in the footwell.
- No additional floor mats or other floor coverings should be placed over the fitted floor mat.
- Ensure that no objects can enter the driver footwell while the vehicle is in motion.
- If there are any objects in the footwell, remove them when the vehicle is parked.




## **WARNING**

Cigarette lighters in the vehicle could be damaged or accidentally lit. This could lead to serious burns and other injuries.

- Before adjusting the seats always ensure that there is no lighter on or near the moveable parts of the seat.
- Before closing stowage areas or compartments always ensure that there is no lighter in the way.
- Never stow lighters in stowage areas, compartments or on other surfaces in the vehicle. Cigarette lighters may self-ignite on high-temperature surfaces, especially in summer.

## **NOTICE**

- Hard objects on the shelf can chafe against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.
- Do not store any heat-sensitive objects, food or medicines inside the vehicle. Hot and cold temperatures could damage them or render them unusable.
- Objects stored in the vehicle that are made from transparent materials, such as glasses, magnifying glasses or transparent suction cups on the windows, can concentrate the sun's rays and thus cause damage to the vehicle.

 Always ensure that the ventilation openings between the rear window and the stowage area are uncovered to allow stale air to escape from the vehicle.

## Stowage compartment on the driver side

---

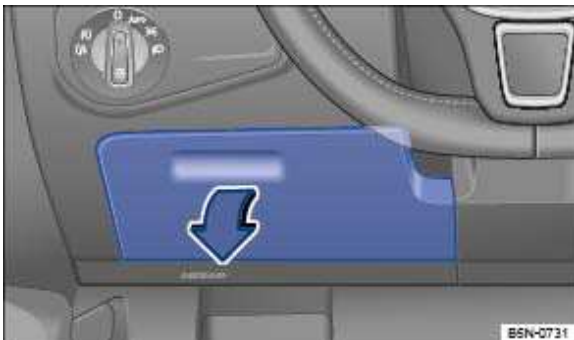


Fig. 196 On the driver side: stowage compartment.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Opening and closing the stowage compartment

To *open*, pull the handle in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 196.

To *close*, push the stowage compartment in the opposite direction of the arrow until it clicks into place.

## Stowage compartment in the roof console (glasses compartment)

---

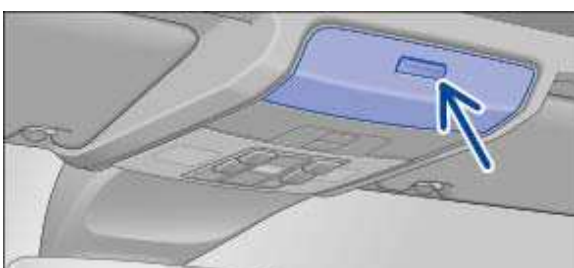




Fig. 197 In the roof console: stowage compartment.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The stowage compartment can be used for storing spectacles or other objects.

### Opening and closing the stowage compartment

To *open*, press and release the button ⇒ [Fig. 197](#) (arrow).

To *close*, press the cover upwards until it engages.

### Stowage areas in the roof console

---

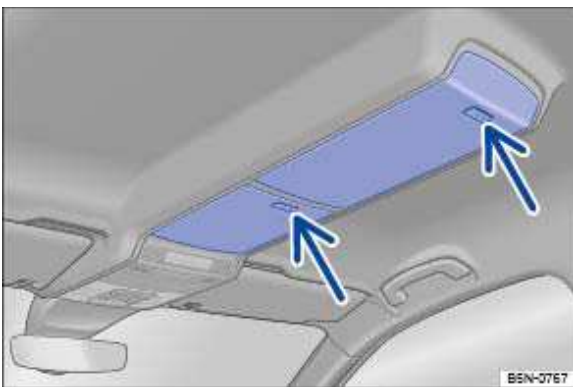


Fig. 198 In the roof console: stowage areas.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Opening and closing stowage compartments

To *open*, press and release the corresponding button ⇒ [Fig. 198](#) (arrow). The corresponding stowage compartment opens automatically.

To *close*, push the stowage compartment up until it clicks into place.

The stowage compartment must be closed when you lock the car to ensure that the interior monitor will work properly ⇒ [Central locking and closing system](#).

### Stowage compartment in the dash panel

---

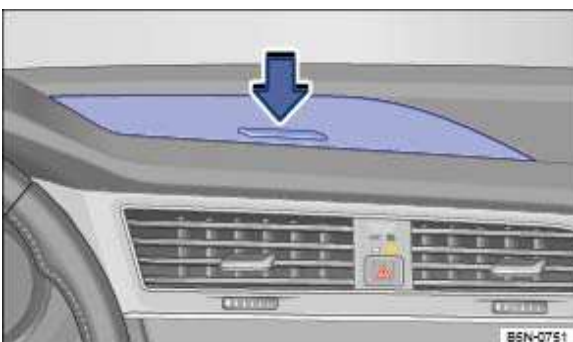


Fig. 199 In the centre of the dash panel: stowage compartment.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

To *open*, press and release the button in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 199 . The stowage compartments are mirrored for right-hand drive vehicles.

To *close*, press the cover of the stowage compartment down until it clicks into place.

## Stowage compartment in the front centre armrest

---



Fig. 200 Between the front seats: stowage compartment in the front centre armrest.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

### Opening and closing the stowage compartment

To *open*, pull the centre armrest all the way up in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 200 .

To *close*, guide the armrest down.

### WARNING

The centre armrest can obstruct the driver's arm movements. This can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always keep the stowage compartments in the centre armrest closed while the vehicle is in motion.

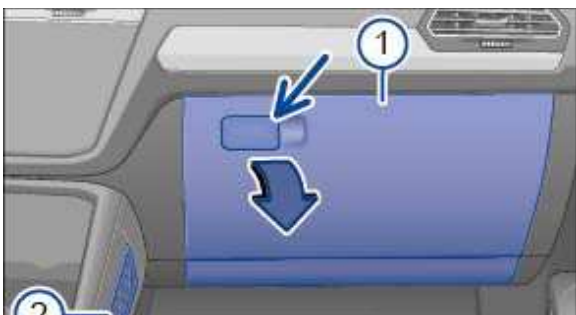
### WARNING

The centre armrest may not be used as a seat, an incorrect sitting position can cause severe injuries.

- Never transport an adult or child on the centre armrest.

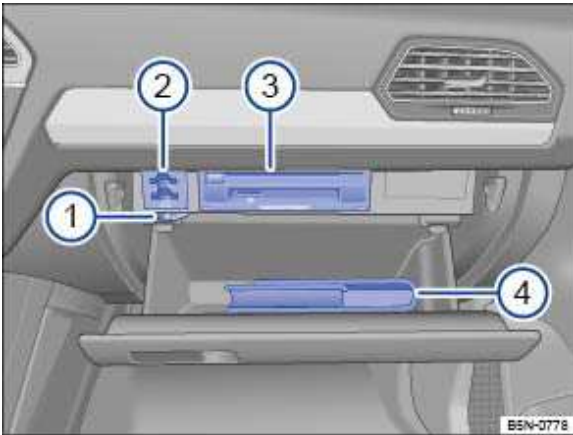
## Stowage areas on the front passenger side

---







**Fig. 201** In the dash panel: stowage areas on the front passenger side.







**Fig. 202** In the dash panel: open stowage compartment on the front passenger side.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 201 :**

-  Stowage compartment.
-  Net.

**Key to ⇒ Fig. 202 :**


-  Control for vent.
-  Holder for memory cards.
-  Infotainment system devices, card reader.
-  Vehicle wallet.

## Opening and closing the stowage compartment

To *open*, pull on the control lever ⇒ *Fig. 201* (arrow) and open in the direction of the arrow.

To *close*, push the stowage compartment upwards.

## Cooling the stowage compartment

There is a vent in the rear panel ⇒ *Fig. 202* . If the air conditioning is switched on, cooled air can be directed into the compartment. Turn the vent to *open* or *close* it.

## Holder for memory cards

A holder for memory cards may be located in the upper area of the stowage compartment ⇒ *Fig. 202* .

## Infotainment system devices, card reader devices

The upper area of the stowage compartment may contain infotainment system devices ⇒ Fig. 202 ③ and card readers  
⇒BookletInfotainment system,.

## Owner's manual

The stowage compartment on the front passenger side is intended for storing the vehicle wallet ⇒ Fig. 202 ④. The vehicle wallet should always be kept in this compartment.

### WARNING

If the stowage compartment on the front passenger side is left open, this can increase the risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during sudden braking or driving manoeuvres.

- Always keep the stowage compartment closed while the vehicle is in motion.

### NOTICE

In some vehicle models, the stowage compartment on the front passenger side contains apertures, for example behind the vehicle wallet compartment. Small items can fall through the apertures and become trapped behind the trim. This could cause unusual noises and damage to the vehicle. Do not store small items in the stowage compartment.

## Drawers

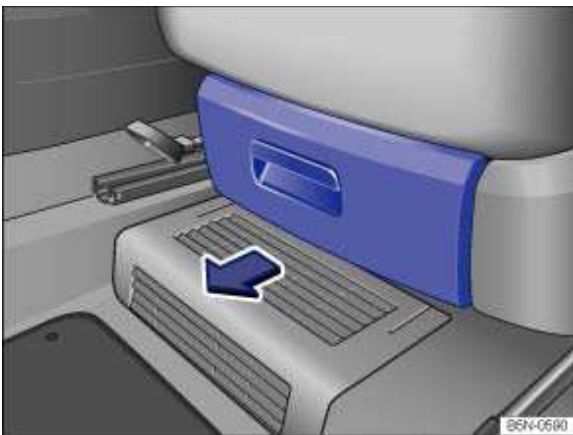


Fig. 203 Drawer under the front seat.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

## Opening and closing drawers

To *open*, operate the button on the drawer handle ⇒ Fig. 203 and open the drawer by pulling it in the direction of the arrow.

To *close*, push the drawer under the front seat until it clicks audibly into place.



## WARNING

If the drawer is left open it can hinder the correct operation of the pedals. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.

- Always keep the drawer closed while the vehicle is in motion. Otherwise the drawer or other items could fall into the driver footwell and obstruct the pedals.



## NOTICE

The drawer is designed for a maximum load of 1.5kg.

## Other storage areas

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Other storage possibilities in the vehicle:

- In the front and rear centre consoles.
- In the door trims (front and rear).
- **Coat hooks** on the centre door pillar and on the rear roof grab handles.
- **Bag hooks** in the luggage compartment ⇒ [Transporting items](#) .
- Under the luggage compartment floor.



## WARNING

Hanging up items of clothing can restrict the driver's field of vision and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always hang items of clothing in such a way that they do not restrict the driver's field of vision.
- The clothes hook in the vehicle should only be used for transporting light items of clothing. Never leave any heavy, hard or sharp objects in the pockets.

## Drink holder



### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Drink holders in the front centre console](#)

⇒ [Drink holder in the rear centre armrest](#)

### Bottle holder

Bottle holders are located in the open storage compartments of the driver and front passenger doors.

There are also drink holders in the folding tables on the front seats ⇒ [Folding table](#) .

## **!** WARNING

Incorrect use of the drink holders can cause injury.

- Do not place any hot drinks in a drink holder. Hot drinks in a drink holder could be spilled and cause scalding in any sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.
- Ensure that drink bottles or any other objects do not enter the driver footwell and obstruct the pedals while the vehicle is in motion.
- Never place heavy cups, food or any other heavy items in the drink holder. These heavy objects could be flung through the vehicle interior during an accident and cause serious injuries.

## **!** WARNING

Closed drink bottles can explode in the vehicle in extreme heat or crack in extremely cold temperatures.

- Never leave closed drink bottles in an extremely hot or extremely cold vehicle for extended periods.

## **!** NOTICE

Do not leave any open drinks in the drink holder while the vehicle is in motion. Drinks that are spilled, for example when braking, can damage the vehicle and the vehicle electric system.

## **!** NOTICE

Objects stored in the vehicle that are made from transparent materials, such as glasses, magnifying glasses or transparent suction cups on the windows, can concentrate the sun's rays and thus cause damage to the vehicle.

**i** The inserts for the drink holders can be removed for cleaning purposes.

## Drink holders in the front centre console

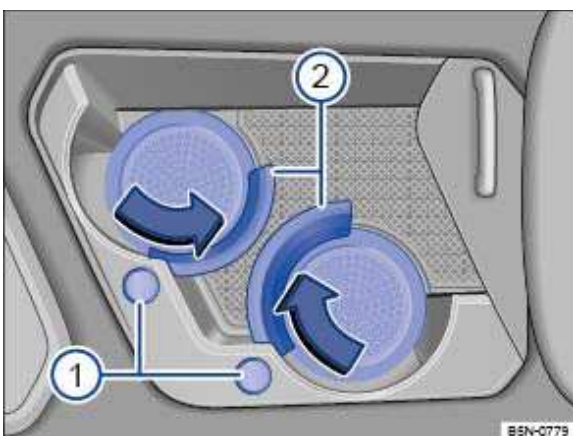


Fig. 204 In the front centre console: drink holders.

**📖** First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ **!** [Introduction](#)

### Opening and closing the drink holder

To *open*, slide the cover to the rear.

To *close*, slide the cover to the front.

## Using the drink holder

Place the drink in the corresponding drink holder ⇒ *Fig. 204*.

To *adjust* the drink holder to match the receptacle size, press button ①. The retaining clips ② open in the direction of the arrow.

If the drink holder is no longer being used, push the corresponding retaining clip ② in the opposite direction to the arrow until it engages.

## Drink holder in the rear centre armrest



**Fig. 205** In the rear centre armrest: drink holders.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

- To *open*, fold the centre armrest down ⇒ *Fig. 205*.
- To *close*, fold the centre armrest up ⇒ *Fig. 205*.

### **WARNING**

The middle armrest in the rear bench seat must always remain closed while the vehicle is in motion in order to reduce the risk of injury.

- The middle seat on the rear bench seat must never be used when the centre armrest is folded down – neither by adults nor children. An incorrect sitting position can cause severe injuries.

## Ashtray and cigarette lighter

### **Introduction**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Removable ashtray in the drink holder*

⇒ *Cigarette lighter*

### **WARNING**

Improper use of the ashtray and cigarette lighter could cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- Never put paper or any other combustible materials in the ashtray.



## Removable ashtray in the drink holder

---

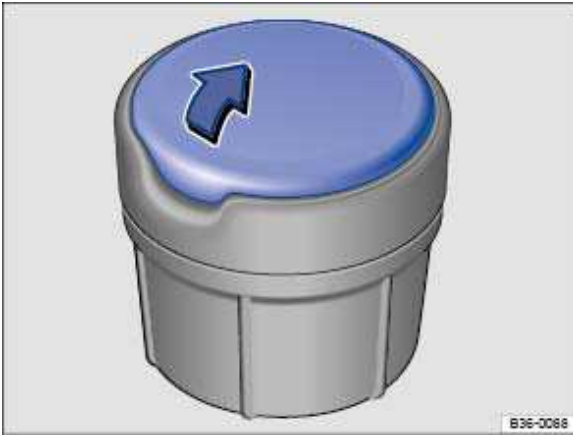


Fig. 206 In the drink holder in the centre console: open ashtray.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

To use, place the mobile ashtray in one of the drink holders in the front centre console or in the rear centre armrest ⇒ *Drink holder*.

### Opening and closing the ashtray

To *open*, fold the cover ⇒ *Fig. 206* open in the direction of the arrow.

To *close*, fold the cover down in the opposite direction to the arrow.

### Emptying the removable ashtray

- Lift the removable ashtray out of the drink holder.
- Open the removable ashtray and empty the cooled ashes into a suitable waste container.
- Once it has been emptied, place the removable ashtray back into the drink holder from above.

## Cigarette lighter


---



Fig. 207 In the lower part of the centre console: cigarette lighter.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

A cigarette lighter is located in the lower part of the centre console ⇒ *Fig. 44*.

- With the ignition switched on, press in the knob on the cigarette lighter ⇒ *Fig. 207*.
- Wait for the button to pop out.
- Pull out the cigarette lighter and light the tobacco product on the glowing spiral ⇒ .
- Insert the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

## WARNING

Improper use of the cigarette lighter can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- Always use the cigarette lighter properly, and only use it to light tobacco products.
- Never leave children in the vehicle unattended. The cigarette lighter can be used when the ignition is switched on.



The cigarette lighter holder can also be used as a 12-volt socket ⇒ [Electrical sockets](#) .

## Electrical sockets

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Sockets in the vehicle](#)

Electrical equipment can be connected to the sockets in the vehicle.

The connected devices must be in good condition. Do not use faulty devices.

## WARNING

Improper use of the sockets and electrical accessories can cause fires and severe injuries.

- Never leave children in the vehicle unattended. Sockets and the devices connected to them can be used when the ignition is switched on.
- If the electrical device gets too hot, switch off the device immediately and disconnect it from the socket.

## NOTICE

- In order to prevent damage to the electrical system, never connect equipment that generates electricity, such as solar panels or battery chargers for charging the vehicle battery, to the 12-volt socket.
- Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with current guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
- In order to avoid damage due to voltage fluctuation, always switch any electrical consumers connected to the 12-volt sockets off before switching the ignition or the engine on or off. When the start/stop system automatically switches off and restarts the engine, it is not necessary to switch off any connected electrical consumers.
- Never connect electrical devices requiring more electrical power to a 12-volt socket. The vehicle's electrical system can be damaged if the maximum power output is exceeded.



Do not leave the engine running when the vehicle is stationary.



Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery.



Unshielded devices can cause interference in the infotainment system and vehicle electronics.



Interference to AM infotainment system reception may occur if electrical devices are used in the vicinity of the side window aerial.

## Sockets in the vehicle

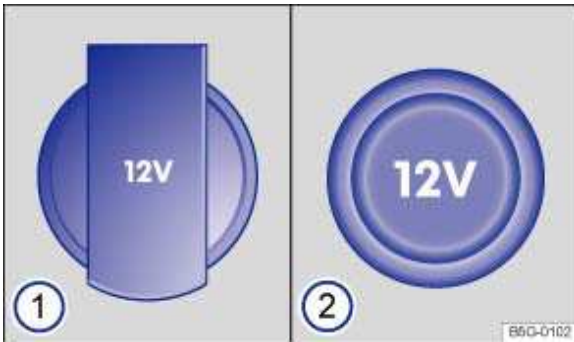


Fig. 208 Variants to the 12-volt socket.

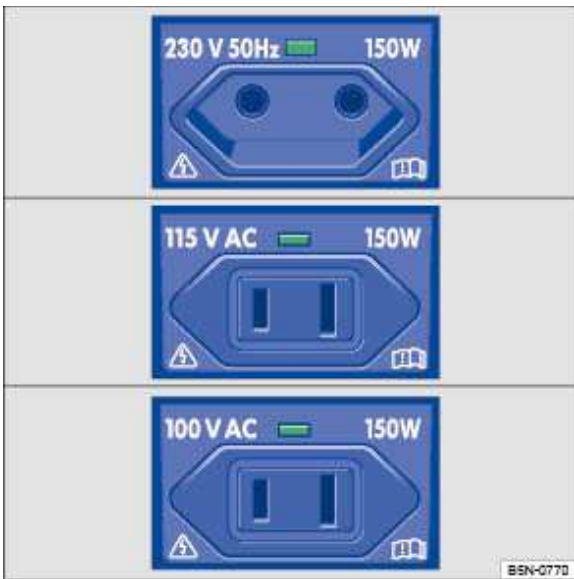


Fig. 209 In the luggage compartment on the left side: 230-volt socket, 115-volt socket or 100-volt socket.


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Key to ⇒ Fig. 208 :

- ① 12-volt socket with cover flap.
- ② 12-volt socket with removable cover.

### Maximum power rating

Electrical socket	Maximum power rating
12 V	120 W
230, 115 or 100 V	150 W (300 W peak power)

If two or more devices are connected at the same time, ensure that the overall power consumption of all connected electrical devices never exceeds 190 watts ⇒ .

The maximum power rating of the individual sockets should never be exceeded. The power rating of each device is stated on its type plate.

## 12-volt socket

The 12-volt socket ⇒ [Fig. 208](#) will work only when the ignition is switched on.

Using electrical appliances with the engine switched off and the ignition switched on will drain the battery. Electrical consumers should therefore only be plugged into the sockets when the engine is running.

To prevent damage due to voltage fluctuation, switch off any connected devices before switching the ignition or engine on or off.

12-volt sockets can be found in the following locations in the vehicle:

- In the front stowage compartment ⇒ [Lower section of the centre console](#) .
- In the rear centre console between the front seats.
- In the luggage compartment at the rear left.

## 230-volt socket, 115-volt socket, 100-volt socket

The socket is activated automatically as soon as a plug is connected when the engine is running. If there is sufficient energy in the system, the socket can also be used when the engine is off ⇒ .

*Connecting an electrical device:* fold open the cover and insert the plug all the way into the socket to unlock the integrated child lock. Electricity will not flow until the child lock has been unlocked.

---

### LEDs on the socket

---

Constant green light:	The child lock is disengaged. The socket is ready for use.
Flashing green light:	The ignition is switched off but there is sufficient energy available to continue to supply the socket with power for up to 10 minutes. If the plug is removed during this time, the socket switches off and cannot be re-used until the ignition is switched on again.
Flashing red light:	A fault has occurred, for example cut-off due to excess current or temperature.

## Temperature switch-off

If a specific temperature is exceeded, the inverter of the 230-, 115- or 100-volt socket switches itself off automatically. The switch-off function prevents the connected device from overheating when the power consumption is too high or if the ambient temperature is too high. The 230-, 115- or 100-volt socket can be used again only after a cool-down phase.

The plug on the connected device must first be removed and then reinserted before using the 230-, 115- or 100-volt socket again after the cool-down phase. This helps prevent the connected electrical devices being switched on accidentally.



## DANGER

High voltage in the electrical system!

- Never pour any liquid over the socket.
- Do not plug any adapters or extension cables into the 230-, 115- or 100-volt socket. Otherwise the built-in child lock will disengage and power will be supplied to the socket.
- Do not insert any items which will conduct electricity, such as knitting needles, into the contacts of the 230-, 115- or 100-volt socket.



## NOTICE

- Observe the operating instructions for any device that you plug into the socket.
- 12-volt socket:
  - Only use accessories that have been approved in accordance with valid guidelines concerning electromagnetic compatibility.
  - Never feed electricity into the socket.
- 230-, 115- or 100-volt socket:
  - Do not plug any heavy devices or connections, such as mains adapters, directly into the socket.
  - Do not connect any lights which use neon tubes.
  - Only connect devices to the socket with a voltage that matches the voltage of the socket.
  - With electrical devices that require a high level of current in the start phase, the built-in excess current switch will prevent the device from being switched on. If this happens, disconnect the device from the power supply and reconnect after waiting approximately 10 seconds.



Unshielded devices can cause interference in the infotainment system and vehicle electronics.



Functional problems may occur with some devices when they are connected to the 230-, 115- or 100-volt socket due to the lower power output (wattage).

## Toll card reader (ETC)



### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Function*

When the toll card system is switched on and functioning, tolls will be charged automatically when driving through a toll booth. The charge will be confirmed by a signal tone. The charges will be given via a spoken announcement and also shown on the infotainment system screen together with the location data.

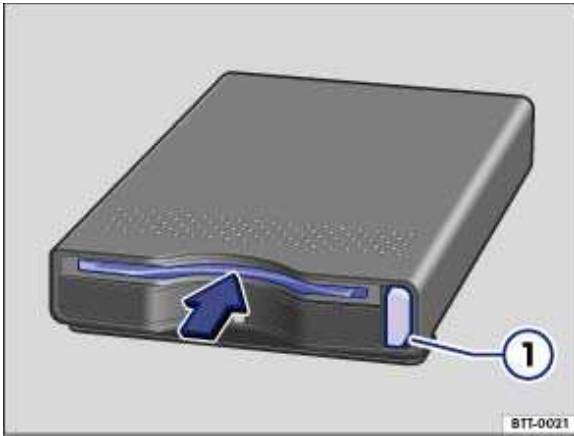


## WARNING

Operating the toll card reader while the vehicle is in motion can distract you from the road and lead to accidents.

### Function

---



**Fig. 210** In the centre console: toll card reader.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Using the toll card system

Switch on the navigation system and insert a suitable ETC card in the toll card reader ⇒ [Fig. 210](#) in the direction of the arrow.

The device readiness will be confirmed with a long signal tone and displayed with the symbol **ETC** in the status bar of the navigation system.

### Ejecting the toll card

To eject, press the toll card button ⇒ [Fig. 210](#) ①.

### Error message

If a short series of tones is heard when switching on the device, there is a fault, e.g. no ETC card, or the card is faulty. The toll card system cannot be used.

## Mobile online services (Car-Net)

### Introduction

---

Information about the Volkswagen Car-Net services, applications, availability, compatible end devices and the service description are available on the Volkswagen website.

In order to use Volkswagen Car-Net, the vehicle needs to have been ordered with Car-Net and factory-fitted with the system. Depending on the service, Volkswagen Car-Net can be operated via the factory-fitted infotainment system, a mobile device or via an online customer portal.

**In the interest of data protection, if a Volkswagen Car-Net service is activated for a vehicle, the person who has signed the contract is obliged to inform anyone who drives the vehicle that the vehicle can transmit and receive online data. Depending on which services are activated, any relevant information must also be given to the driver.**

## WARNING

Failure to observe the information in the service description can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Before using the Volkswagen Car-Net services, please read and observe the information in the service description. This will quickly help you to become familiar with the services and make you aware of potential risks to yourself and others, and how to avoid them.
- Always use the latest edition of the respective service description.

## WARNING

If mobile equipment is loose or not properly secured in the vehicle, it could be flung through the interior during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident. This can cause injuries.

- While the vehicle is in motion, always secure mobile equipment properly outside the airbag deployment zone or stow them away safely.

## WARNING

The display of information in the infotainment system, in the customer portal or on the mobile device may distract you from taking actions that are necessary to ensure safe driving. This can cause breakdowns in traffic, accidents and serious injuries.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.
- Respond to the displayed information in a case-specific manner.
- Heed warning and indicator lamps that are lit up.

## WARNING

Using computers and mobile devices in public or non-secured LAN and WLAN networks can lead to a loss of control over your Volkswagen Car-Net services.

- In addition to the usual precautionary measures to be taken when using the Internet, you should protect your computer and mobile device with suitable anti-virus software and regularly update its signatures.
- Observe the generally recognised rules and information on the use of computers and mobile devices and also on handling and creation of a secure password for accessing the customer portal.

## WARNING

Applications and Volkswagen Car-Net services which are unsuitable or faulty or that are used incorrectly can cause damage to the vehicle, accidents or serious injury.

- Volkswagen recommends that you only use Volkswagen applications and Volkswagen Car-Net services for your vehicle.
- Protect the mobile device and the applications on it from misuse.
- Never make changes to applications or Volkswagen Car-Net services.
- Observe the user guide for your mobile device.

## **!** WARNING

Using applications and Volkswagen Car-Net services while driving can distract you from the road. Accidents and injuries can occur if the driver is distracted.

- Always drive carefully and responsibly.

## **!** NOTICE

Your mobile devices must always be switched off in areas where special regulations apply and when the use of such devices is not permitted. The radiation emitted by these mobile devices when switched on could interfere with sensitive technical and medical equipment, possibly resulting in malfunction of or damage to the equipment.

## Volkswagen Car-Net services

---

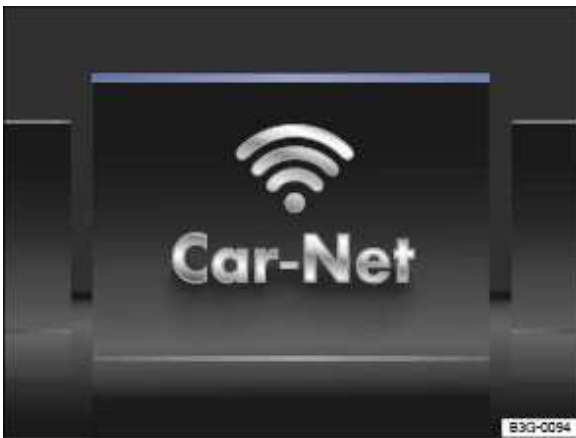


Fig. 211 In the infotainment system: Car-Net function button.



Fig. 212 Illustration: transfer of data and performance of functions.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 212 :

- 1 Car-Net-compatible vehicle with suitable infotainment system and connectivity.
- 2 Server that processes, prepares and forwards the data.
- 3 Performance of the services via computer or a mobile device.



## Data transfer

The network signal allows Volkswagen Car-Net services to receive data online, pass on vehicle data online and transmit additional information, new functions or extended vehicle functions. Volkswagen Car-Net offers the driver or user support functions based on vehicle data together with data obtained from the Internet and IT systems.

The data for using the **Guide & Inform** services are transferred via your mobile device with data option or a SIM card<sup>1)</sup> with data option. Your mobile device or your SIM card needs to support a specific data connection type, e.g. rSAP, for some services.

Data transmission for running **e-Remote** and **Security & Service** services relies on a factory-fitted control unit with an integrated SIM card with data option.

## Availability

Volkswagen Car-Net services can be subject to a limited period or changed, set, deactivated, reactivated and expanded without prior notice.

Some Car-Net services contain external information from third-party suppliers, e.g. maps. Volkswagen AG does not assume any liability either for the correctness of external information or for this being up-to-date and complete and not infringing the rights of third parties.

Volkswagen Car-Net services can be subject to region-specific limitations. Availability also depends on the mobile network coverage in each country.

## Determining the current vehicle position

Some Volkswagen Car-Net services require the exact location of the vehicle in order to provide functions. In this case, the current vehicle position is transmitted either automatically or at the driver's request. When automatic transmission is selected, the current location can also be transmitted at regular intervals.

## Lending or selling the vehicle to others

When the vehicle is being sold or lent, the owner or rental/leasing firm must inform the purchasing or lending party about Volkswagen Car-Net services installed in the vehicle and their functions.

## Interferences

The following points may cause the data transfer or a Volkswagen Car-Net service to be aborted or not to be performed:

- Areas with no or insufficient mobile and GPS reception,
- Maintenance, repairs, software updates and technical changes to your service provider's telecommunication networks and databases,
- Generation change of the mobile communication systems by the telecommunications providers, e.g. from 3G to 4G/LTE,
- Impairment or interruption to mobile and GPS reception, e.g. due to high speeds, weather, landscape, tunnels, garages, car parks, underpasses, interfering devices or intensive use of the mobile network,
- External information from third parties, e.g. maps, is not available, incomplete or contains errors,
- In countries where Volkswagen Car-Net services are not available:
- A fault in the vehicle electrical system,
- Vehicle battery empty or voltage too low,
- If the control unit or infotainment system performing the service is not working properly.

## Exchanging your system

If the factory-fitted infotainment system or control unit is damaged or must be exchanged in a vehicle with Volkswagen Car-Net services installed, go to a qualified workshop. This may require registering or activating again.


## User account on the customer portal


In order to use the services e-Remote, Guide & Inform or Security & Service in Car-Net-capable vehicles, it is first necessary to create a user account at [www.volkswagen.com/car-net](http://www.volkswagen.com/car-net) and to contractually activate Car-Net.


## Description of services

The scope and functions of the e-Remote, Guide & Inform and Security & Service services are explained in a service description in each case. These service descriptions and additional information about all services and Car-Net-capable vehicles are available online at [www.volkswagen.com/car-net](http://www.volkswagen.com/car-net) and on the relevant customer portal following registration after creation of a user account.

All service descriptions are updated at irregular intervals and made available on the customer portal. Always use the latest edition of the respective service description.

 Volkswagen collects, processes, transmits and uses personal data entered by the user within the framework of legal regulations for the purpose of smooth functioning of individual Volkswagen Car-Net services and their provision. Data is not forwarded to third parties. Current terms of use can be found at [www.volkswagen.com/car-net](http://www.volkswagen.com/car-net).

 Volkswagen Car-Net services is a system based on a mobile network. If a fault arises despite the fact that all requirements have been fulfilled, please try using the services again at a later stage.

 The use of Volkswagen Car-Net and the necessary mobile network connection may be subject to a fee. Due to the potentially high volume of data in use, Volkswagen recommends using a mobile phone tariff which includes a data flat rate. For more information contact your mobile telephone provider.


<sup>1)</sup> Data transfer via the factory-fitted SIM card reader (if possible).

## Applications (apps)

---

- Apps that perform services in the vehicle and provide information, such as the Volkswagen Car-Net e-Remote app,
- Apps that are transmitted to the infotainment system display, e.g. with the function Volkswagen Car-Net App-Connect.

Applications, their use and the necessary mobile network connection may be subject to charges.

A wide range of applications may be available and they can be vehicle-specific and country-specific ⇒ . Content, range and provider of applications can vary. Some applications also depend on availability of services offered by third parties. A mobile network with sufficient signal strength for exchange of data must be available for the use of applications.

Due to the high number of mobile devices and the fast pace of software development, the applications on offer cannot be operated on all mobile devices and their operating systems. This may apply even within the model series of a mobile device, e.g. due to a new version of the operating system.

Applications can be changed, set, deactivated, reactivated and expanded without prior notice.


## NOTICE

Volkswagen is not responsible for damage to the vehicle caused by poor quality or faulty applications, insufficient programming of applications, insufficient network strength or loss of data during transmission or by misuse of the mobile equipment.

# Transporting items

## Stowing luggage

---

Heavy objects must always be stowed securely in the luggage compartment and you must ensure that the rear seat backrests are securely engaged in the upright position. Always use suitable securing straps with the fastening rings to secure heavy items. Never exceed the vehicle's maximum payload. Both the payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle will have an effect on the driving response and braking distance ⇒ .

### **Always stow all items of luggage in the vehicle securely.**

- Distribute loads in the vehicle, on the roof and on the trailer ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#) as evenly as possible.
- Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible. Position the rear seat backrests securely.
- Secure luggage in the luggage compartment to the fastening rings with suitable straps ⇒ [Transporting items](#).
- Adjust the headlight range ⇒ [Lights](#).
- Adjust the tyre pressure according to the vehicle load. Observe the information on the tyre pressure sticker ⇒ [Wheels and tyres](#).
- In vehicles with a tyre monitoring system, set the new vehicle load level as necessary ⇒ [Tyre monitoring system](#).



## WARNING


When the vehicle is not in use or is left unattended, always lock the doors and boot lid to reduce the risk of severe or fatal injuries.

- Never leave children unattended, especially when the boot lid is open. Children could make their way into the luggage compartment, close the boot lid and be unable to get out. This can cause severe or fatal injuries.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Do not travel with people in the luggage compartment.



## WARNING

Objects that are not secured, or are secured incorrectly, can cause serious injuries in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident. This applies particularly if objects are struck by the airbag when activated and then flung through the vehicle interior. To reduce the risk of accidents, please observe the following guidelines:

- Always stow all objects in the vehicle securely. Always stow luggage and heavy objects in the luggage compartment.
- Always use suitable straps to prevent luggage from entering the deployment zones of the side airbag or the front airbag in the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or an accident.
- Objects should be stowed in the vehicle interior in such a way that they can never enter the airbag deployment zones while the vehicle is in motion.
- Always keep stowage compartments closed while the vehicle is in motion.
- All objects must be removed from the seat cushion of the front passenger seat if the front passenger backrest is folded forward. Even light and small objects could be pressed into the weight detection mat underneath the seat cushion by the backrest when it is folded forwards and thus send incorrect information to the airbag control units.
- The front airbag must be switched off and the PASSENGER AIRBAG indicator lamp **OFF**  will light up for as long as the front passenger seat backrest is folded forwards.
- Stowed objects must never cause passengers to assume an incorrect sitting position.
- If an item is being stowed on a seat, this seat must not be used by any passengers.
- Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp objects loose in any of the vehicle's open stowage areas, on the luggage compartment cover or on the dash panel.
- Remove any hard, heavy or sharp objects from items of clothing and bags inside the vehicle and stow them securely.



## WARNING

The vehicle handling and braking effect may alter significantly if large or heavy objects are being transported.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Accelerate carefully and gently.
- Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than in normal driving.


## WARNING


Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle's handling and increases the braking distance. Heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured in the vehicle can lead to a loss of vehicle control and can cause serious injury.

- Transporting heavy objects changes the vehicle's handling and the centre of gravity.
- The payload should be distributed as evenly as possible in the vehicle.
- Always secure heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far in front of the rear axle as possible.

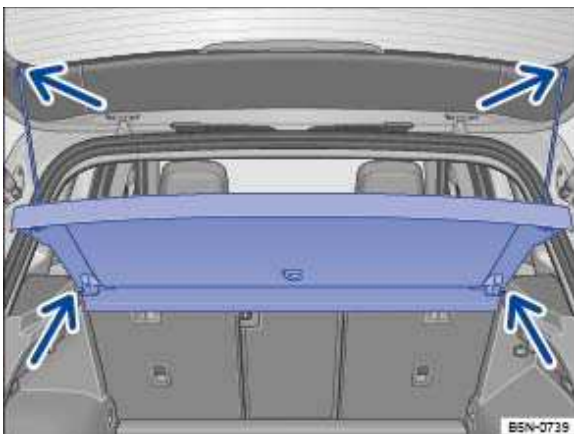
## NOTICE

Hard objects could rub against the wires of the heating element in the rear window and cause damage.

 Observe any information concerning the loading of a trailer ⇒ *Towing a trailer* and a roof carrier ⇒ *Roof carrier*.

 Do not cover the ventilation openings on the rear side windows in the luggage compartment as this would prevent stale air escaping from the vehicle.

## Luggage compartment cover



**Fig. 213** In the luggage compartment: removing the luggage compartment cover.

When attached, the supporting straps will automatically raise or lower the luggage compartment cover when you open or close the boot lid.

Light items of clothing can be stowed on the luggage compartment cover. Please ensure that the view to the rear of the vehicle is not obstructed.

### Removing the luggage compartment cover

- Unhook the retaining straps from the boot lid ⇒ *Fig. 213* (upper arrows).
- Press the luggage compartment cover back and upwards out of the side retainers ⇒ *Fig. 213* (lower arrows).

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, it may be possible to store the removed luggage compartment cover in a stowage area beneath the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Variable luggage compartment floor*.

### Fitting the luggage compartment cover

- Push the luggage compartment cover into the side retainers from above ⇒ *Fig. 213* (lower arrows).

- Hook the retaining straps to the boot lid ⇒ *Fig. 213* (upper arrows).

## **WARNING**

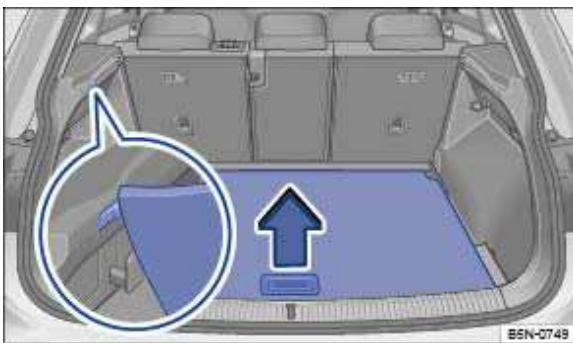
Objects that are not secured or are secured incorrectly, or animals on the luggage compartment cover, could cause serious injuries in any sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident.

- Do not stow any hard, heavy or sharp items either loose or in bags on the luggage compartment cover.
- Never transport pets on the luggage compartment cover.

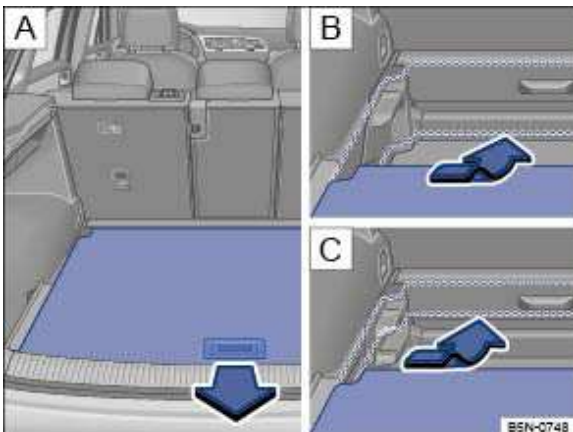
## **NOTICE**

To prevent damage to the luggage compartment cover, do not load it to such a height that the load will press against the luggage compartment cover when the boot lid is closed.

### Variable luggage compartment floor



**Fig. 214** In the luggage compartment: raising the luggage compartment floor.



**Fig. 215** In the luggage compartment: adjusting the height of the luggage compartment floor (depending on the vehicle equipment level).

The variable luggage compartment floor is height-adjustable . Information on the maximum load is provided in ⇒ *Technical data*.

### Opening and closing the luggage compartment floor

- To *open*, grip the recessed handle in the luggage compartment floor with a hand ⇒ *Fig. 214* and fold the luggage compartment floor upwards in the direction of the arrow until it is held in position by the side restraints ⇒ *Fig. 214* (close-up).
- To *close*, guide the luggage compartment floor downwards into position.

## Adjusting the height of the luggage compartment floor

- If necessary, unclip the luggage net ⇒ *Luggage net* and remove the securing straps ⇒ *Fastening rings*.
- Lift the luggage compartment floor and pull it rearwards out of the guides on the sides of the luggage compartment ⇒ *Fig. 215*.
- Insert the luggage compartment floor into the guides at the required height and push it forwards as far as it will go ⇒ *Fig. 215*.

### ! NOTICE

Never drop the luggage compartment floor; guide it slowly back down. The trims or the luggage compartment floor could otherwise be damaged.

## Net partition

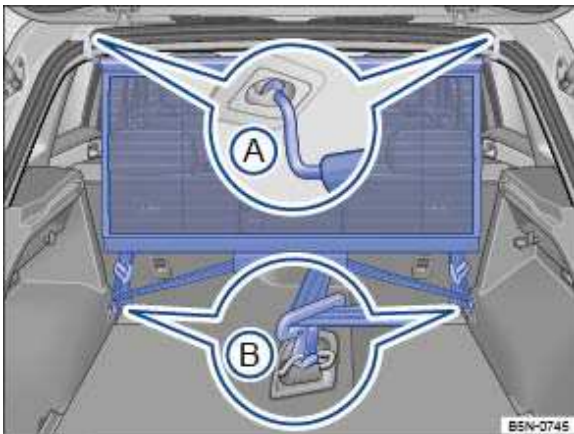


Fig. 216 In the luggage compartment: hooking in the net partition.

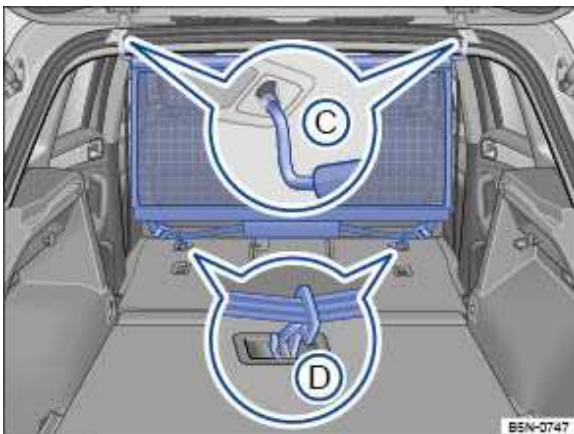


Fig. 217 In the luggage compartment: removing the net partition.

The net partition prevents loose objects from being propelled from the luggage compartment into the passenger compartment, e.g. during sudden braking manoeuvres.

## Folding out the net partition

Fold out the net partition side rods until you hear a click.

## Fitting the net partition behind the second row of seats

- Hook the net partition into the rear left-hand holder in the roof ⇒ *Fig. 216@*.
- Fit the net partition into the rear right-hand holder in the roof by pushing the rod together ⇒ *Fig. 216@*.

- Clip both securing hooks of the net partition into the front fastening rings in the luggage compartment ⇒ [Fig. 216](#)Ⓞ.
- Tighten the strap.

When the ends are securely engaged in the corresponding holders ⇒ [Fig. 216](#)Ⓞ, the net partition is correctly fastened.

### Fitting the net partition behind the front seats<sup>1)</sup>

- 2. Fold the second row of seats into the loading position ⇒ [Seat functions](#).
- Hook the net partition into the front left-hand holder in the roof ⇒ [Fig. 217](#)Ⓞ.
- Fit the net partition into the front right-hand holder in the roof by pushing the rod together ⇒ [Fig. 217](#)Ⓞ.
- Clip both the securing hooks of the net partition into the holders on the rear of the folded rear bench seat ⇒ [Fig. 217](#)Ⓞ.
- Tighten the strap.

When the ends are securely engaged in the corresponding holders ⇒ [Fig. 217](#)Ⓞ, the net partition is correctly fastened.

### Removing the net partition

The net partition can be removed from the passenger compartment or from the luggage compartment.

- Fold the second row of seats into the loading position ⇒ [Seat functions](#).
- **OR:** to remove the net partition from the luggage compartment, remove the luggage compartment cover ⇒ [Luggage compartment cover](#).
- Release the strap tension.
- Unhook the net partition securing hooks from the fastening rings or holders ⇒ [Fig. 216](#)Ⓞ or ⇒ [Fig. 217](#)Ⓞ.
- Detach the net partition from the right-hand holder in the roof ⇒ [Fig. 216](#)Ⓞ or ⇒ [Fig. 217](#)Ⓞ by pushing the rod together.
- Unhook the net partition from the left-hand holder in the roof.

### Folding in the net partition

- Fold the net partition in the middle.
- Roll up the net partition and store in the bag.
- Stow the net partition securely in the vehicle.



## WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, loose objects could be flung through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Ensure that the rods are securely engaged.
- Objects should be secured even when the net partition is correctly fitted.
- While the vehicle is moving, no passengers may travel behind the fitted net partition.



## NOTICE

Failure to fasten the net partition properly to the top tether anchor points on the rear of the rear bench seat may cause damage.

<sup>1)</sup> Depending on equipment level



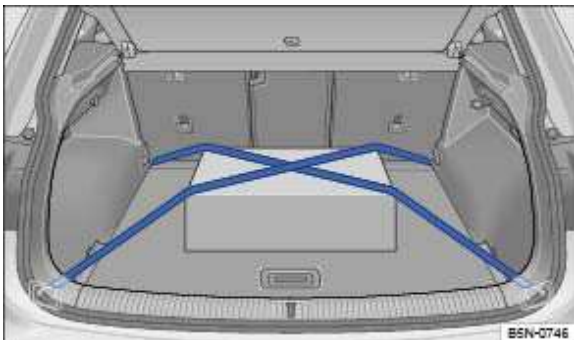
# Luggage compartment equipment

## Fastening rings

---



**Fig. 218** In the luggage compartment: fastening rings.



**Fig. 219** In the luggage compartment: secure the load correctly.

**Note:** If possible, always use the upper luggage compartment floor level.

There are a total of 4 fastening rings in the luggage compartment for securing the load. 2 are foldable in the rear area and 2 are rigid in the front area of the luggage compartment ⇒ *Fig. 218* (arrows).

When securing several pieces of luggage, you should use additional fastening equipment, such as a luggage compartment mat.

- Adjust variable luggage compartment floors according to the height of the load. Make sure that the upper edge of the load stands higher than the fastening rings ⇒ *Fig. 219* ⇒ ⚠. If necessary, insert or remove the luggage compartment floor.
- Attach fastening straps to the front fastening rings. In the case of straps with tension devices, attach them in such a way that the tension device is attached to the rear fastening rings.
- Place the load in the centre of the luggage compartment.
- Attach the securing straps cross-wise and pull them taut over the load. Make sure that the cross-over of the securing straps is positioned in the centre of the load.
- Check whether the load can still be moved. If necessary, tighten the securing straps even more tautly.

The securing straps are under tension ⇒ ⚠.

## **!** WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged securing straps could rip in the event of a braking manoeuvre or accident. This could cause objects to be flung through the interior and lead to severe or fatal injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Attach securing straps securely to the fastening rings.
- Loose objects in the luggage compartment can suddenly slide and change the way the vehicle handles.
- Small and light objects should also be secured.
- Never exceed the maximum load rating of the fastening rings when securing objects.
- Never secure a child seat to the fastening rings.

## **!** CAUTION

When transporting a load that has a lower height than the fastening rings, objects may be propelled through the interior, causing material damage.

- In particular, use the upper luggage compartment floor level for flat objects. Use the illustration that is provided in the luggage compartment.
- Make sure that the load is positioned securely on the luggage compartment floor when using the fastening rings, and that the securing straps are pulled taut over the load. In particular, we recommend using the upper luggage compartment floor for flat objects.
- If necessary, use additional fastening equipment.

## **!** NOTICE

Failure to fasten the fastening straps and securing straps properly to the top tether anchor points on the rear of the rear bench seat may cause damage.

**i** The maximum load rating of the fastening rings is approximately 3.5 kN.

**i** Suitable fastening belts, straps and luggage stowage systems are available from qualified workshops. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Luggage net




**Fig. 220** In the luggage compartment: luggage net fastened to the luggage compartment floor.

The luggage net helps to prevent light items of luggage from sliding around in the luggage compartment. The luggage net also has a built-in pocket with a zip that can hold smaller items.

### Fitting the luggage net

Attach the luggage net to the luggage compartment floor using the retaining clips ⇒ [Fig. 220](#) . The luggage net zip must face upwards.

### Removing the luggage net

When fitted, the luggage net is under tension ⇒  .

- Unhook the luggage net hooks at the luggage compartment floor.
- Store the luggage net in the luggage compartment.

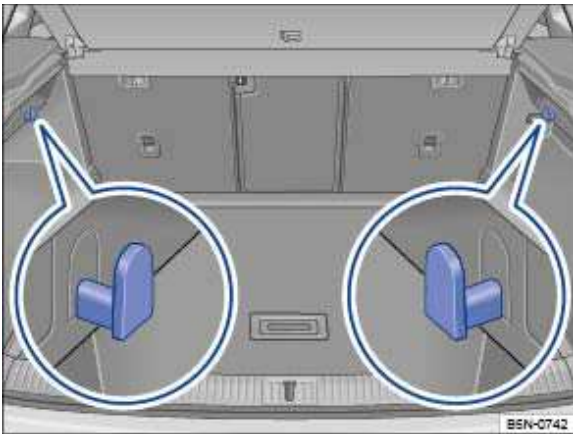
## WARNING

The elastic luggage net must be stretched when it is secured at the fastening rings in the luggage compartment. When fitted, the luggage net is held taut. The luggage net hooks can cause injuries if the luggage net is installed or removed incorrectly.

- Always hold the luggage net hooks tightly to prevent them from falling out of the ring during installation or removal.
- Protect your eyes and face to avoid injuries from any hooks that may spring out during installation or removal.
- Always attach the luggage net hooks in the order described. There is a risk of injury if one of the hooks on the luggage net snaps back.

### Bag hook

---



**Fig. 221** In the luggage compartment: front bag hook.

### Bag hook

Fixed bag hooks are located on the left and right in the rear area of the luggage compartment ⇒ [Fig. 221](#) .

Light shopping bags can be secured to the bag hooks in the luggage compartment ⇒ [Luggage net](#) .

## **WARNING**

Never use the bag hooks as fastening rings for straps. The bag hook could break off during a sudden braking manoeuvre or accident.

## **NOTICE**

Do not load the bag hook with more than 2.5 kg.

## Load-through hatch

---



**Fig. 222** In the rear seat backrest: opening the load-through hatch.

There is a load-through hatch on the rear seat backrest behind the centre armrest. It can be used to transport long objects, such as skis, inside the vehicle.


To prevent soiling the vehicle interior use an item such as a blanket to wrap any dirty objects before pushing them through the load-through hatch.

Do not use the middle seat on the rear bench seat to transport passengers when the centre armrest is folded down.

### Opening the load-through hatch

- Press the release button ⇒ *Fig. 222* in the direction of the arrow and fold the load-through hatch forwards.
- Open the boot lid.
- Push the long objects through the load-through hatch from the luggage compartment.
- Secure any objects, if necessary with the central seat belt.
- Close the boot lid.

### Closing the load-through hatch

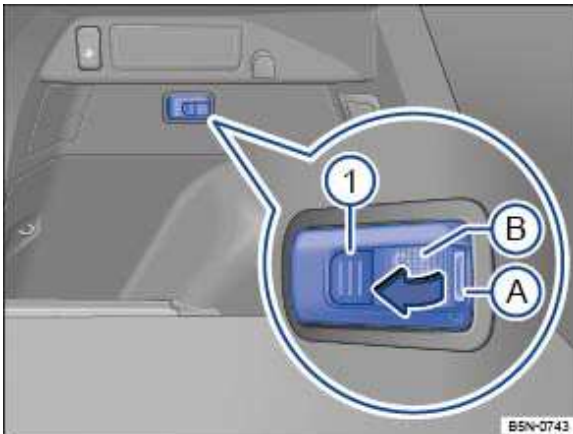
- Fold back the load-through hatch and push it firmly into the catch until it securely engages ⇒ .
- The red marking on the locking indicator ⇒ *Fig. 222* (close-up) must no longer be visible.

## WARNING

Failure to pay attention when folding the load-through hatch forwards or backwards may result in injuries.

- Never fold the load-through hatch forwards or backwards while the vehicle is in motion.
- Ensure that the seat belt is not trapped or damaged when folding back the load-through hatch.
- Always keep hands, fingers, feet and other body parts away from the seat area when folding the load-through hatch forwards and backwards.
- The load-through hatch has not been secured properly if the red marking is still visible on the locking indicator ⇒ [Fig. 222](#) (close-up). Always ensure that the red marking is never visible when the load-through hatch is in the upright position.
- Passengers (children in particular) must not use this seat if the load-through hatch is folded forward or is not clicked securely into place.

## Removable light



**Fig. 223** On the left of the luggage compartment: removable light (depending on the vehicle equipment level).

The removable light is on the left side of the luggage compartment (depending on the vehicle equipment level). The light is charged when it is fitted in the holder and the engine is running.

### Luggage compartment light

When fitted, the removable light lights up in area ⇒ [Fig. 223@](#) when the boot lid is open.

It goes out when the boot lid is closed.

### Removing the light

- Grip the light in the front area ⇒ [Fig. 223](#).
- Pull light in the direction of the arrow out of the holder ⇒ [Fig. 223](#).

### Operating the light

The light is equipped with magnets. After removal, the light can be secured on the vehicle body, for example ⇒ .

The removed light lights up in area ⇒ [Fig. 223@](#). The light has 2 brightness levels:

- Press the button ① to switch the light on. The light is lit with full brightness.
- Press the button ① again to set the light to 50% power.


- Press the button ① again to switch the light off.

## Stowing the light

- Switch the light off.
- Press the light into the holder in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 223*.

## Changing the rechargeable batteries

If the light no longer shines with full power, change the batteries.

The light is powered by 3 commercially available rechargeable batteries of the type AAA. Non-rechargeable batteries or batteries that do not correspond to the specification can lead to damage ⇒ .

Volkswagen recommends having the batteries changed at a Volkswagen dealership or by a qualified workshop.

- Remove light from the holder.
- Lever off the battery cover with a suitable tool under area ⇒ *Fig. 223*⓪.
- Replace the batteries with batteries of the same voltage, size and specification.
- Press the battery cover onto the light until the battery cover audibly clicks into place.

### NOTICE

**To avoid damage, stow the removable light securely in the vehicle before driving off.**

### NOTICE

**Use of conventional batteries or unsuitable rechargeable batteries can damage the removable light and the vehicle electronics.**

- Use only rechargeable batteries with the specification AAA.

## Roof carrier

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the followingsubjects:

⇒ *Attaching the mounts and roof carrier*

⇒ *Loading the roof carrier*

The roof of the vehicle has been designed for optimal aerodynamics. It is therefore no longer possible to attach conventional roof carrier systems to a rain channel on the roof.

As the rain channels have been integrated in the roof for better aerodynamics, only those mounts or roof carriers approved by Volkswagen can be used.

### Removing the roof carrier

- When it is no longer being used.
- When the vehicle is driving through a car wash.
- When the vehicle height exceeds the required clearance height, e.g. in a garage.

## **WARNING**

When transporting heavy or bulky objects in the roof carrier, the vehicle's handling will change due to a shift in the centre of gravity and an increased susceptibility to crosswinds.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a negative effect on the vehicle aerodynamics, centre of gravity and overall handling.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

## **NOTICE**

- Always remove the roof carrier before driving through an automatic car wash.
- The vehicle's height is changed by the installation of the roof carrier system and the load secured on it. Check and compare the height of the vehicle with clearance heights, e.g. for underpasses and garage doors.
- The roof carrier system and its load must not obstruct you from opening and closing the boot lid and glass roof. The roof aerial must also remain unaffected.
- When opening the boot lid take care not to let it hit the roof load.



Driving with a fitted roof carrier will increase air resistance and thus increase fuel consumption.

## Attaching the mounts and roof carrier

---

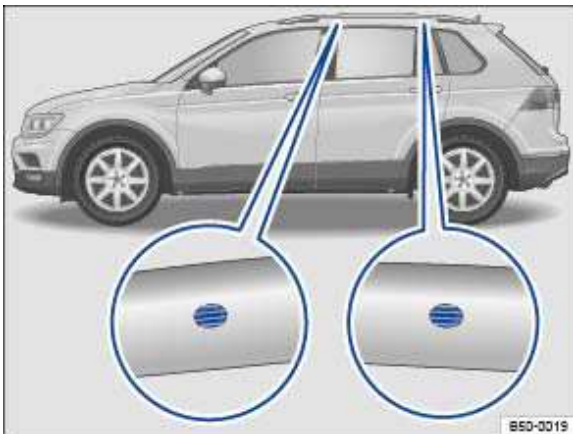


Fig. 224 Vehicle with roof railings: attachment points for the roof carrier.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The mounts are the basis of a complete roof carrier system. Special fixtures must then be added to transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surfboards or boats safely on the roof. Suitable accessories are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

### **Vehicles without roof railings: attaching the mounts and roof carrier**

Mounts and roof carriers must always be attached correctly.

Observe the instructions provided for the roof carrier system and keep them in the vehicle at all times.

The attaching holes are on the underside of the roof side members. They are visible only when the door is open.

The roof carrier may be attached **only** at the holes shown in the illustration.

## Vehicles with roof railings: attaching the roof carrier

Standard roof carriers cannot be used on the roof rail. Only use roof carriers that have been approved by Volkswagen.

Observe the instructions provided for the roof carrier system and carry them in the vehicle at all times.

The attaching holes are located on the inside of the roof railing ⇒ *Fig. 224* (close-ups).

The roof carrier may be attached **only** at the holes shown in the illustration.



### WARNING


**Incorrectly attaching the mounts and roof carrier, and using them inappropriately, can cause the whole system to fall off the roof. This can cause accidents and injuries.**

- Always observe the manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use mounts and roof carriers when they are undamaged and fitted correctly.
- The mounts may only be attached at the markings shown in the illustration ⇒ *Fig. 224*.
- Fit mounts and roof carriers correctly.
- Check the bolts and anchorage points before starting your journey and adjust as necessary after driving a short distance. During a long trip, check all bolts and fasteners at each stop.
- Special fixtures for items such as bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc. should always be properly installed.
- Do not carry out any alterations or repairs to the mounts and roof carrier.


## Loading the roof carrier



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The load can only be secured safely when the roof carrier has been fitted correctly ⇒ .


### Maximum permissible roof load

The maximum permitted roof load is **75 kg**. The roof load limit refers to the combined weight of the roof carrier and the load carried on the roof ⇒ .

Ensure that you know the weight of the roof rack and the items to be transported on the roof, and weigh them if necessary. Never exceed the maximum permissible roof load.

However, you will not be able to carry the maximum roof load if you are using a roof carrier with a lower weight rating. In this instance, do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the roof carrier. This weight limit is listed in the fitting instructions.

### Distributing the load

Distribute the load evenly and secure it correctly ⇒ .

### Checking the fittings

Check the bolted connections and the attachments of the base carrier and the roof carrier after a brief journey and at regular intervals.





## WARNING

Accidents and vehicle damage can occur if the maximum permitted roof load is exceeded.

- Never exceed the quoted roof load, the maximum permissible axle loads, and the permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle.
- Do not exceed the weight rating of the roof carrier, even if the maximum roof load has not been reached.
- Secure heavy objects as far forwards as possible and distribute the load evenly.



## WARNING

Loose and incorrectly secured loads can fall off the roof carrier and cause accidents and injuries.

- Always use suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Secure loads properly.

## Towing a trailer

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Indicator lamp*
- ⇒ *Technical requirements*
- ⇒ *Electrically folding ball head*
- ⇒ *Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball head*
- ⇒ *Hitching and connecting the trailer*
- ⇒ *Loading the trailer*
- ⇒ *Towing a trailer*
- ⇒ *Retrofitting a towing bracket*
- ⇒ *Trailer stabilisation*

Observe any country-specific regulations when towing a trailer and using a towing bracket.

Your car is intended mainly for transporting passengers and luggage. However, it can also be used to tow a trailer or caravan, provided that it is fitted with the necessary equipment. This additional load will affect the durability, fuel consumption and performance of the vehicle and, in certain circumstances, can shorten the service intervals.

Driving with a trailer not only places an extra load on the vehicle, but also requires increased concentration on the part of the driver.

In low temperatures, fit winter tyres to both the vehicle **and** the trailer.

### Drawbar load

The *maximum* permitted drawbar load exerted by the trailer drawbar on the ball head of the towing bracket must not exceed **100 kg**.

### Vehicles with start/stop system

The start/stop system functions as normal if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing bracket or a towing bracket retrofitted by Volkswagen. You do not have to take any extra precautions.

If the connected trailer is not recognised, or when using towing brackets that were not retrofitted by Volkswagen, the start/stop system must be deactivated manually using the button in the lower part of the centre console before starting to tow a trailer, and must remain switched off for as long as the trailer is being towed ⇒ ⚠.

### Vehicles with driving profile selection

When using a factory-fitted towing bracket or a towing bracket retrofitted by Volkswagen, the **Eco** driving profile is not available as soon as a trailer is attached.

If the vehicle is set to the **Eco** driving profile when the trailer is attached, the vehicle automatically switches to the **Normal** driving profile. If the connected trailer cannot be recognised, or when using a towing bracket that was not retrofitted by Volkswagen, the **Normal** driving profile must be selected manually before towing a trailer ⇒ ⚠.

Once the trailer has been unhitched, the ignition must be switched off and on again once to reactivate the **Eco** driving profile.

#### **WARNING**

It is dangerous to transport people in a trailer and it may also be illegal.

#### **WARNING**

Improper use of the towing bracket can cause injury and accidents.

- Only use the towing bracket if it is fitted properly and is not damaged.
- Do not carry out any alterations or repairs to the towing bracket.
- Wherever possible, always swivel in or remove the ball head when a trailer is not being used in order to reduce the risk of injury in rear-end collisions, and the risk of injury to pedestrians and cyclists when the vehicle is parked.
- Never install a weight-distributing or load-balancing towing bracket to the vehicle. The vehicle is not constructed for these kinds of towing brackets. The towing bracket can fail, causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle.



## WARNING

Towing a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky items can change the way the vehicle's handling. This can lead to accidents.

- Always secure loads properly using suitable and undamaged securing straps.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity are more likely to tip over than trailers with a low centre of gravity.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Take special care when overtaking.
- Reduce your speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.
- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) when towing a trailer, or 100 km/h (62 mph) in exceptional cases. This also applies to countries where higher speeds are permitted. Always obey speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers.
- Never try to stop a trailer from snaking by increasing your speed.



## WARNING

The start/stop system must always be switched off manually when towing a trailer using towing brackets that have not been retrofitted by Volkswagen. Otherwise faults can occur in the brake system, possibly resulting in accidents and serious injuries.

- Always switch off the start/stop system manually if a trailer is attached to a towing bracket that has not been retrofitted by Volkswagen.



Always switch off the anti-theft alarm when a trailer is being hitched or unhitched ⇒ [Central locking and closing system](#). The tilt sensor could otherwise trigger an alarm unnecessarily.



In new vehicles, do not tow a trailer during the first 1,000 km ⇒ [Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts](#).



Wherever possible, Volkswagen recommends removing the ball head or swivelling it inwards before driving without a trailer ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#). The level of damage sustained during a rear-end collision could be greater for vehicles with a fitted ball head than for those without.



With some equipment packages, the towing bracket is required for towing vehicles. For this reason, the towing bracket ball head should be stored in the vehicle at all times.

## Indicator lamp



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Lit up



### Possible cause/action

The ball head on the towing bracket is not locked.

Check the latch on the towing bracket ⇒ [Electrically folding ball head](#).

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.



## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.



## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Technical requirements

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

If the vehicle is supplied with a **factory-fitted** towing bracket it will already have the necessary technical modifications and meet the statutory requirements for towing a trailer.

Only use a towing bracket which is approved for the gross weight of the trailer you want to tow as a **retrofit solution**. The towing bracket must be suitable for the vehicle and trailer and be securely bolted to the vehicle's chassis. Only use a towing bracket which has been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Always check and follow the data provided by the towing bracket manufacturer. Never install a weight-distributing or load-balancing towing bracket on the vehicle.

### Towing brackets fitted to the rear bumper

Never fit a towing bracket to the rear bumper or to its fastenings. The towing bracket must not prevent the rear bumper from functioning correctly. Do not carry out any alterations to the exhaust or brake systems. Check regularly to see if the towing bracket is fitted securely.

### Engine cooling system

There is an increased load on the engine and the cooling system when towing a trailer. The cooling system must contain sufficient coolant and be able to cope with the extra load added by the trailer.

### Trailer brake

If the trailer is equipped with its own brake system, comply with the relevant regulations. The trailer's brake system must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

### Emergency breakaway cable

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and the trailer ⇒ [Hitching and connecting the trailer](#).

### Rear trailer lights

The rear lights on the trailer must meet legal requirements ⇒ [Hitching and connecting the trailer](#).

Never connect the trailer lights directly to the electrical system of your vehicle. If you are uncertain whether the trailer has been connected correctly, please contact a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Exterior mirrors

If you are unable to see the traffic behind the trailer in the vehicle's standard exterior mirrors, additional exterior mirrors should be fitted in accordance with any country-specific regulations. Before setting off, adjust the mirrors so that you have a sufficient view of the rear.

## Maximum power consumption of the trailer

Electrical consumers	Europe, Asia, Africa, South and Central America	Australia
All brake lights	84 W	108 W
Turn signal per side	42 W	54 W
All side lights	100 W	100 W
All tail lights	42 W	54 W
Rear fog light	42 W	54 W


Never exceed the specified values.


### **WARNING**

If the towing bracket is unsuitable or is incorrectly fitted, the trailer can become detached from the vehicle and cause serious injury.

### **NOTICE**

- The vehicle electronics may be damaged if the trailer lights are not connected properly.
- The vehicle electronics may be damaged if the trailer uses too much electricity.
- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other sources of electricity. Only use suitable connectors to provide power to the trailer.

 Towing a trailer places additional demands on the vehicle. Volkswagen recommends additional services between the normal inspection intervals if the vehicle is used frequently for towing a trailer.

 In certain countries, an additional fire extinguisher must be carried if the gross weight of the trailer exceeds 2,500 kg.

## Electrically folding ball head

---




**Fig. 225** On the left of the luggage compartment: button for folding the ball head.



**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The towing bracket coupling ball is located in the bumper. The ball head with electric release cannot be removed.

There may be no other people, objects or pets in the path of the ball head ⇒ .


### Releasing and swivelling out ball head

- Bring the vehicle to a standstill and apply the electronic parking brake ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*.
- Switch off the engine.
- Open the boot lid.
- Pull on the button ⇒ *Fig. 225* briefly. The ball head is released electrically and folds out automatically. The indicator lamp in the button ⇒ *Fig. 225* flashes.
- Continue rotating the ball head with your hand until you hear and feel it click into place and the indicator lamp in the button lights up steadily.
- Close the boot lid.
- If a dust cap has been fitted to the ball head, remove it and stow it in a safe place before attaching a trailer.

### Swivelling in the ball head

- Bring the vehicle to a standstill and apply the electronic parking brake.
- Switch off the engine.
- Uncouple the trailer and disconnect the electrical connection between the vehicle and the trailer. If fitted, remove the adapter from the trailer socket.
- Put the dust cap (if there is one) on the ball head.
- Open the boot lid.
- Pull on the button ⇒ *Fig. 225* briefly. The ball head is electrically unlocked.
- Rotate the ball head under the bumper with your hand until you hear and feel it click into place and the indicator lamp in the button ⇒ *Fig. 225* lights up steadily.
- Close the boot lid.

### Meaning of indicator lamps

- If the indicator lamp in the button ⇒ *Fig. 225 flashes*, the ball head has either not clicked into place properly, or it is damaged ⇒ .
- If the indicator lamp is *lit steadily* when the boot lid is open, the ball head is correctly engaged in the extended or retracted position.
- The indicator lamp in the button goes out approximately one minute after the boot lid is closed.

## WARNING

Improper use of the towing bracket can cause injury and accidents.

- Only use the ball head if it has clicked into place properly.
- Ensure that no people, animals or items are in the path of the ball head.
- Never interrupt the ball head, for example with tools, when it is swivelling.
- Never press the button  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 225 if a trailer is attached or if a luggage rack or other accessories are fitted to the ball head.
- If the ball head will not engage properly, do not use the towing bracket. Have it checked by a qualified workshop.
- If there are faults in the electrical system or in the towing bracket itself, have the towing bracket checked by a qualified workshop.
- If the smallest diameter on the ball head is smaller than 49 mm, do not use the towing bracket.

## NOTICE

Do not aim a high-pressure hose or steam cleaner directly at the mechanically positioned ball head or the fitted trailer socket. Seals could be damaged or the grease required for lubrication could be washed off.



At extremely low outside temperatures, the electric ball head might not rotate. If this happens, it is sufficient to place the vehicle in a warmer room, e.g. a garage.

## Fitting a bicycle carrier on the mechanically positioned ball head



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\Rightarrow$   [Introduction](#)

The maximum permitted load on a bicycle carrier mounted on the ball head is **75 kg** at a distance of 300 mm. This distance refers to the gap between the centre of gravity of the bicycle carrier and the middle of the ball head.

## WARNING

Incorrect use of the towing bracket with a bicycle carrier fitted to the ball head could cause injuries and accidents.

- Never exceed the listed payload and distance.
- Do not attach a bicycle carrier underneath the ball head on the neck of the ball head. The shape of the ball head neck and the design of the bicycle carrier could result in the bicycle carrier becoming misaligned with the vehicle.
- Read and follow the assembly instructions provided by the bicycle carrier manufacturer.

## NOTICE

- Considerable vehicle damage could occur if the maximum permitted payload or distance is exceeded.
- Never exceed the values specified for payload and distance.

## Hitching and connecting the trailer

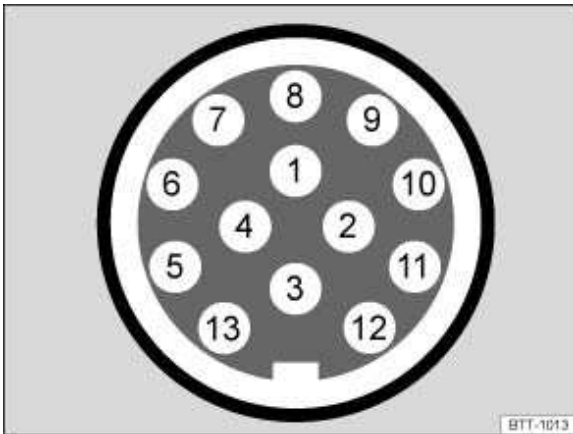


Fig. 226 Typical pin assignment for the trailer socket.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

**Key to illustration** ⇒ Fig. 226 :

Pin	Meaning
1	Left turn signal
2	Rear fog light
3	Earth for pins 1, 2, 4 – 8
4	Right turn signal
5	Rear light, right
6	Brake light
7	Rear light, left
8	Reversing light
9	Permanent live
10	Charging cable plus
11	Earth pin 10
12	Not assigned
13	Earth pin 9

### Trailer socket

A 13-pin trailer socket makes the electrical connection between the towing vehicle and the trailer. When the engine is running, electrical consumers in the trailer are supplied with voltage via the electrical connections (pin 9 and pin 10 of the trailer socket).

When the vehicle detects a trailer through the electrics, the consumers in the trailer are supplied with electrical current via the electrical connection (pins 9 and 10). Pin 9 is assigned as the permanent live, enabling operation of e.g. interior trailer lighting. Electrical consumers such as a caravan refrigerator are supplied with power **only** when the engine is running (pin 10).

To avoid overloading the electrical system, do not inter-connect the three earth wires (pins 3, 11 and 13).

If the trailer has a **7-pin plug** you will need to use a suitable adapter cable. This means that pin 10 cannot be used.



## Emergency breakaway cable

Always fasten the trailer's emergency breakaway cable properly to the towing vehicle. Leave enough slack in the emergency breakaway cable so that the vehicle can still drive around corners. However the emergency breakaway cable should not drag along the ground while you are driving.

## Rear trailer lights

Ensure that the trailer lights work properly and meet legal requirements. Do not exceed the maximum power consumption for the trailer ⇒ *Maximum power consumption of the trailer* .

## Connection to the anti-theft alarm

The trailer is integrated in the anti-theft system if the following conditions are fulfilled:

- When the vehicle has a factory-fitted anti-theft alarm and a factory-fitted towing bracket.
- When the trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- When the vehicle and trailer electric systems are functional, fault-free and undamaged.
- When the vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm is active.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm will be triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm when a trailer is being hitched or unhitched. The tilt sensor could otherwise trigger an alarm unnecessarily.

## Trailer with LED rear lights

For technical reasons, trailers with LED tail lights cannot be integrated into the anti-theft alarm system.

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is not triggered as soon as the electrical connection to the trailer with LED rear lights is interrupted.

The driving profile automatically changes to **Normal** driving profile if the **Eco** driving profile was selected when the trailer was hitched. If the connected trailer cannot be recognised, or when using a towing bracket that was not retrofitted by Volkswagen, the **Normal** driving profile must be selected manually before towing a trailer. Once the trailer has been unhitched, the ignition must be switched off and on again once to reactivate the **Eco** driving profile.

## WARNING

Any electrical accessories which are not connected properly could cause a power surge to the trailer. This could lead to malfunctions in the entire vehicle electronics system and could also cause accidents and serious injuries.

- All work on the electric system should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other sources of electricity.


## WARNING


Contact between the pins in the trailer socket can lead to short circuits, overloading of the electrical system and failure of the lighting system, thereby causing accidents and serious injuries.

- Never connect the pins in the trailer socket to one another.
- Have bent pins repaired by a qualified workshop.

## NOTICE

If you park the trailer using the support wheel or other trailer supports, disconnect the trailer from the vehicle. The vehicle could rock up and down if the load changes or if there is damage to the tyres. If this happens, a great deal of force will be exerted on the towing bracket and trailer, which could lead to damage to the vehicle and trailer.

 If there is a fault in the vehicle or trailer electrical systems or if there is a fault with the anti-theft alarm have the systems checked by a qualified workshop.


 If the engine is not running and electrical equipment is switched on in the trailer via the trailer socket, the vehicle battery will discharge.

## Loading the trailer

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Trailer weight and drawbar load

The trailer weight is the weight that the vehicle can pull ⇒ . The drawbar load is the weight that the towing bracket exerts on the ball head vertically from above ⇒ [Technical data](#).

The figures for trailer weights and draw bar weights that are given on the data plate of the towing bracket are for certification purposes only. The correct values for your specific model, which may be *lower* than these figures, are given in the vehicle registration documents. All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data.

In the interest of road safety, Volkswagen recommends that you always transport the maximum **drawbar load** ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#). The response of the trailer on the road will be poor if the drawbar load is too small.

The drawbar load increases the weight on the rear axle and reduces the maximum load level as a result.

### Gross combination weight rating

The combination weight is made up of the actual weight of the loaded vehicle and of the loaded trailer.

In some countries, trailers are divided into different classes. Volkswagen recommends that you contact a qualified workshop to find out about suitable trailers.

## Loading the trailer

The weight of the load should be distributed evenly. The maximum permitted drawbar load should be utilised. Do not place the load only at the front or the rear of the trailer:

- Distribute the load in the trailer so that heavy objects are either over or as near to the axle as possible.
- Secure all loads on the trailer properly.

## Tyre pressure

Follow the trailer manufacturer's recommendations concerning the tyre pressure for the trailer tyres.

When towing a trailer, inflate the wheels on the towing vehicle with the maximum permitted tyre pressure → [Wheels and tyres](#).

### WARNING

Accidents and serious injuries can occur if you exceed the vehicle's maximum permitted gross axle weight rating, drawbar load, gross vehicle weight rating or gross combination weight rating.

- Never exceed the specified values.
- Never let the actual weights at the front and rear axles exceed the gross axle weight ratings. Never exceed the permissible gross vehicle weight for the vehicle with weight at the front and rear of the vehicle.

### WARNING

Loads that may slide can severely impair stability and driving safety, which can cause accidents and severe injuries.

- Always load trailers correctly.
- Always secure loads using suitable and undamaged securing straps.

## Towing a trailer

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings →  [Introduction](#)

### Headlight adjustment

Towing a trailer can raise the front end of the vehicle enough for the dipped beam to blind other road users. Use the headlight range control to lower the light cone as required. If you do not have headlight range control, the headlights should be adjusted by a qualified workshop. Vehicles with LED highlights adjust automatically and do not require manual adjustment.

### Things to note when driving with a trailer




- If the trailer has an **overrun brake**, apply the brakes *gently at first* and then firmly. This will prevent the jerking that can be caused by the trailer wheels locking.
- The combination weight causes the braking distance to increase.
- Engage a lower gear prior to inclines (manual gearbox or Tiptronic mode of the automatic gearbox) to additionally make use of engine braking. The brake system could otherwise overheat and fail.

- The vehicle's centre of gravity and, in turn, the vehicle's handling, will change because of the trailer load and the increased combined towing weight of the vehicle and trailer.
- The weight distribution of a loaded trailer with an unladen towing vehicle is very unfavourable. When driving in this situation, drive particularly carefully and slowly.

### Pulling off on slopes when towing a trailer

A vehicle towing a trailer is liable to roll back a short distance when moving off on a slope, depending on the angle of the slope and the total weight of the trailer and vehicle.

When towing a trailer, pull off on slopes as follows:

- Depress and hold the brake pedal.
- Press button  once to switch off the electronic parking brake → *Electronic parking brake* .
- Manual gearbox: depress the clutch fully.
- Select first gear or selector lever position **DIS** ⇒ *DSG® dual clutch gearbox* , ⇒ *Manual gearbox: selecting a gear* .
- Pull on the  button and hold it in this position to hold the vehicle and trailer with the electronic parking brake.
- Release the brake pedal.
- Pull away slowly. To do this, slowly release the clutch pedal for a manual gearbox.
- Only let go of the  button when the engine has sufficient power to move off.

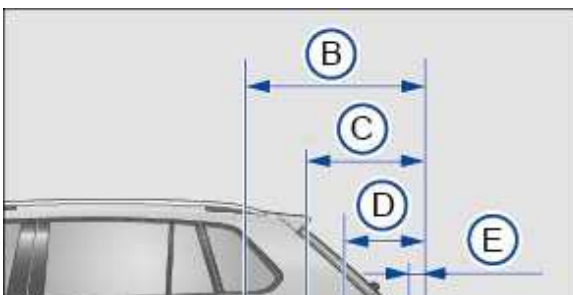


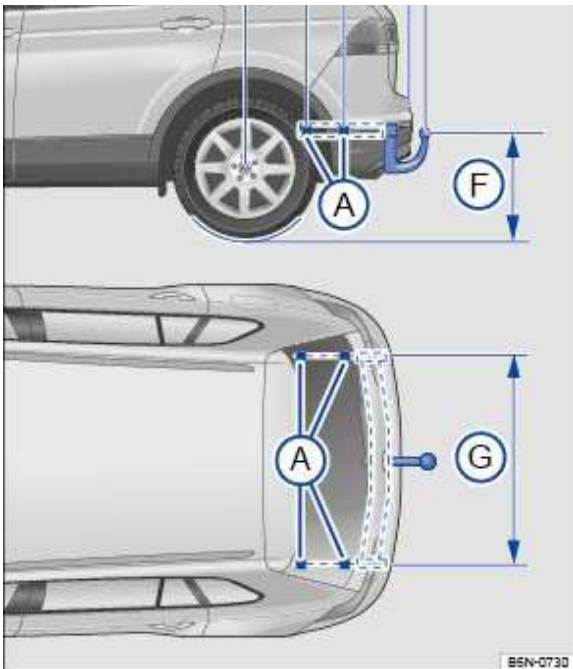
### WARNING

Incorrect trailer towing can cause loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- Towing a trailer and transporting heavy or bulky items can change the way the vehicle handles and increase the braking distance.
- Always drive carefully and think ahead. Brake earlier than in normal driving.
- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Reduce your speed, particularly when going downhill.
- Accelerate carefully and gently. Avoid abrupt and sudden driving and braking manoeuvres.
- Take special care when overtaking. Reduce your speed immediately if the trailer shows even the slightest sign of snaking.
- Never try to stop a trailer from snaking by increasing your speed.
- Always obey speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers.

### Retrofitting a towing bracket





**Fig. 227** Dimensions and attachment points for retrofitting a towing bracket.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Volkswagen recommends having the towing bracket retrofitted by a qualified workshop. The cooling system may need to be modified or heat shields may need to be fitted. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

Observe the clearance dimensions when retrofitting a towing bracket. Always observe the minimum distance given from the middle of the ball head ⇒ *Fig. 227* to the surface of the road. This also applies when the vehicle is fully laden, including maximum drawbar load.

**Clearance dimensions** ⇒ *Fig. 227* :

**A** Attachment points.

**B** <sub>-1)</sub>

**C** <sub>-1)</sub>

**D** <sub>-1)</sub>

**E** <sub>-1)</sub>

**F** <sub>-1)</sub>

**G** <sub>-1)</sub>

## WARNING

Electrical accessories that are not connected properly can cause malfunctions in the entire vehicle electronics system and also cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never connect the trailer's electrical system directly to the electrical connections of the tail lights or to other unsuitable sources of electricity. Only a suitable connector may be used to connect the trailer.
- A towing bracket should be retrofitted to the vehicle by a qualified workshop.

## WARNING

The trailer can become detached from the towing vehicle if the towing bracket is unsuitable or incorrectly fitted. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.



Only use towing brackets which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type.

<sup>1)</sup> Figures were not available at time of publication.

## Trailer stabilisation

---





First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The trailer stabilisation function can detect if an attached trailer is starting to lurch from side to side and can provide countersteer.

Trailer stabilisation is a subsidiary function of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC).

If a lurching motion is detected, the trailer stabilisation function automatically helps to reduce the trailer's rocking motion using counter steering assistance.

### Requirements for trailer stabilisation

- The towing bracket is factory-fitted or a compatible towing bracket has been retrofitted.
- Electronic Stability Control and traction control system are active. The indicator lamp  or  in the instrument cluster display does not light up.
- The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- The vehicle speed is higher than approximately 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The maximum drawbar load is being carried.
- The trailer must have a rigid drawbar.
- Trailers with brakes must have a mechanical overrun system.

Observe the instructions and information for vehicles with an N1 approval ⇒ [Information for vehicles with N1 approval \(light commercial vehicle\)](#).



## WARNING

Do not let the extra safety afforded by the trailer stabilisation function tempt you into taking any risks when driving – this can cause accidents.

- Always adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Accelerate carefully on slippery surfaces.
- Take your foot off the accelerator if one of the systems is active.



## WARNING

The trailer stabilisation function may not be able to detect all driving situations correctly.

- Trailer stabilisation is switched off when Electronic Stability Control is deactivated.
- Light trailers that are snaking will not be recognised by the trailer stabilisation function and stabilised accordingly in all cases.
- A trailer can still *jack-knife* on slippery roads with little grip, even if the towing vehicle is equipped with trailer stabilisation.
- Trailers with a high centre of gravity might tip over before snaking starts.
- Sudden braking procedures could occur automatically in extreme driving situations if the trailer socket is being used without a trailer (e.g. for a bicycle carrier with lighting).

## Fuel

## Safety instructions for handling fuel

---

### WARNING

Filling the tank incorrectly and incorrect handling of fuel can cause explosions, fire, serious burns and other injuries.

- The engine and ignition must be switched off when filling the tank in order to avoid fires, explosions, serious burns and other injuries.
- When filling the tank, always switch off your mobile telephone and two-way radio or any other radio equipment. Electromagnetic radiation can generate sparks which can in turn start a fire.
- Never get back into the vehicle while filling the tank. If in exceptional cases you have to enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal object before touching the filler nozzle again. This will remove any electrostatic charge from you. Failure to do so could generate a spark. Sparks can cause a fire when filling the tank.
- Always ensure that the tank cap is properly closed, to prevent the evaporation and spillage of fuel.
- Comply with any relevant safety information and legislation concerning the handling of fuels.

### WARNING

For safety reasons, Volkswagen does not recommend carrying a spare fuel canister in the vehicle. Fuel could spill out of the canister and set alight. This is especially relevant in the event of an accident. This could cause explosions, fire and injuries.

- If, in exceptional circumstances, you have to transport a spare fuel canister, please note the following:
  - When refilling, never place the spare fuel canister in or on top of the vehicle, for example in the luggage compartment. There may be an electrostatic charge during refilling causing the fuel fumes to ignite.
  - Always place the spare fuel canister on the ground.
  - When filling a spare fuel canister, place the filler nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening.
  - If the spare fuel canister is made of metal, the filler nozzle must have constant contact with the canister in order to avoid static charging.
  - Please follow all legislation concerning the use, stowage and transport of a spare fuel canister.
  - Ensure that the spare fuel canister complies with the industry standard, for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

### NOTICE

Fill the tank only with the fuels listed on the sticker inside the tank flap.

- Do not start the engine under any circumstances if you have refilled using the incorrect fuel. Seek expert assistance. Unapproved fuels can cause serious damage to the engine and fuel system.
- Remove spilt fuel from all vehicle components as quickly as possible in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.



Fuels can pollute the environment. Any spilt service fluids must be cleaned up and disposed of properly.

## Filling the tank

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ [Filling the tank](#)

The tank flap is located at the rear right-hand side of the vehicle ⇒ [Exterior views](#).



Different engines require different fuels. The factory-fitted sticker on the inside of the tank flap indicates the required fuel type for the vehicle.

## Filling the tank

---

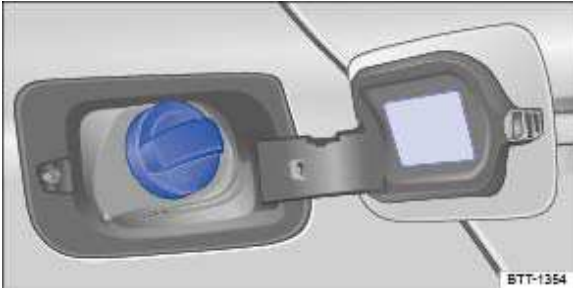


Fig. 228 Illustration: tank flap opened with tank cap.


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Always switch off the engine, the auxiliary heater ⇒ *Auxiliary heating and ventilation*, the ignition and your mobile telephone **before** filling the tank and leave them switched off while filling up.

Information on the capacities is provided in the chapter ⇒ *Technical data*.



### Opening the tank cap

The tank flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right ⇒ *Exterior views*.

- Unlock the tank flap using the vehicle key or the central locking button  in the driver door ⇒ *Central locking and closing system*.
- Press the rear of the tank flap to open it.
- Turn the tank cap anticlockwise to remove it and place it in the holder in the tank flap.

### Filling the tank

The correct fuel grade for your vehicle is shown on the sticker on the inside of the tank flap ⇒ *Fig. 228*.

- The fuel tank is full when the properly operated automatic filler nozzle clicks off for the first time ⇒ .
- Do not continue filling the tank after it switches off. The expansion space in the fuel tank will otherwise fill up and the fuel could spill out ⇒ .

### Closing the tank cap

- Screw the tank cap clockwise into the filler neck until it clicks into place.
- Close the tank flap. It must be flush with the vehicle bodywork.

## WARNING

Do not continue filling the tank once the filler nozzle stops automatically. The fuel tank could be overfilled. This can cause fuel to splash out and overflow. This can cause fires, explosions and serious injuries.

## NOTICE

Remove spilt fuel from all vehicle components as quickly as possible in order to avoid damage to the vehicle.

## Misfuelling prevention device on diesel vehicles

---



Fig. 229 Illustration: misfuelling prevention device in the tank filler neck.

The tank filler neck in diesel vehicles can be fitted with a misfuelling prevention device ⇒ Fig. 229 . The misfuelling prevention device ensures that the vehicle can be fuelled **only** using suitable diesel pump nozzles.

A fuel nozzle that is worn, damaged or not of the correct specification will not open the misfuelling prevention device.

If the diesel pump nozzle cannot be inserted correctly into the tank filler neck, turn the nozzle back and forth while applying light pressure. This can open the misfuelling prevention device and make it possible to refuel the vehicle. If the misfuelling prevention device remains closed, proceed to a qualified workshop to have the system checked.

If it is necessary to refuel the vehicle using a spare fuel canister in the event of an emergency, the misfuelling prevention device will not open. In order to fill the tank with fuel, pour the diesel into the tank extremely slowly in very small quantities.

## Fuel types

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Petrol*

⇒ *Diesel*

Different engines require different fuels. The factory-fitted sticker on the inside of the tank flap indicates the required fuel type for the vehicle.

Volkswagen recommends using fuels with a low sulphur content or which are sulphur-free in order to reduce fuel consumption and prevent damage to the engine.

If the engine is not running smoothly or begins to judder, this can indicate poor or inadequate fuel quality, e.g. water in the fuel.

If these symptoms appear, reduce the vehicle speed immediately and drive to the nearest qualified workshop at medium engine speeds, avoiding high engine loading. If these symptoms occur immediately after the vehicle has been refuelled, switch the engine off as soon as it is safe to do so and seek expert assistance. This can help to prevent secondary damage.


## Petrol

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Petrol types

Vehicles with a petrol engine must run on unleaded petrol in compliance with the European standard EN 228 ⇒ . Fuels with a maximum ethanol content of 10% (E10) can be used for refuelling.


Where petrol complying with the specified standard is not available, Volkswagen dealerships will have information on what fuels are suitable for the vehicle.

The petrol grades differ with respect to the octane number. The vehicle may be filled with petrol that has a higher octane number than the engine requires. However, this does not provide any advantage in terms of fuel consumption or engine output.

### Petrol additives

The petrol quality affects the running properties, performance and service life of the engine. This is why the vehicle should be refuelled with good quality fuel that has already been mixed with the proper additives by the manufacturer. These petrol additives will help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean and prevent deposits from building up in the engine.

If faults potentially related to fuel characteristics arise while the vehicle is in motion, we recommend that you go to a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. Special cleaning service additives are available from Volkswagen dealerships. These can help remedy malfunctions caused by deposits in the engine and fuel system. Only use Volkswagen-approved service additives in the approved quantity.

The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter. Metallic additives should be avoided at all times. Petrol additives that are intended to improve knock resistance or increase the octane number can also contain metallic additives. Therefore fuel additives sold separately should generally not be used ⇒ .

## NOTICE

- Before filling up with petrol, check whether the fuel corresponds to the vehicle's requirements according to the fuel standard information at the pump.
- Only use fuel that complies with the specified standard and has the correct octane number. Otherwise, the engine and the fuel system can suffer considerable damage. The engine can also lose power or fail.
- If, in an emergency, you have to use petrol with an octane number lower than the recommended number, drive at medium engine speeds and avoid high engine loading. Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads. Failure to do so can result in engine damage. Fill the tank with petrol with the correct octane number as soon as possible.
- The use of unsuitable petrol additives can cause considerable damage to the engine and catalytic converter.
- Fuels that are identified at the fuel pump as containing metallic additives may not be used. LRP fuel also contains high concentrations of metallic additives. Risk of engine damage!
- Just one tankful of leaded fuel, or fuel containing other metallic additives, can seriously impair the efficiency of the catalytic converter and can also cause considerable damage to the catalytic converter and engine.

## Diesel

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Diesel


Diesel must comply with European standard EN 590. Where diesel complying with the specified standard is not available, Volkswagen dealerships will have information on what kind of diesel is suitable for the vehicle.

The fuel quality affects the running properties, performance and service life of the engine. This is why the vehicle should be refuelled with good quality fuel that has already been mixed with quality-enhancing additives by the manufacturer.

If you use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content, the service intervals are shorter ⇒ Booklet *Service schedule*. A Volkswagen dealership will be able to tell you which countries have diesel with a high sulphur content.

Separately available fuel additives, flow improvers, or similar agents may not be mixed with the diesel. If faults potentially related to fuel characteristics arise while the vehicle is in motion, we recommend that you go to a qualified workshop to have the fault analysed. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. Special cleaning service additives are available from Volkswagen dealerships. These can help remedy malfunctions caused by deposits in the engine and fuel system. Only use Volkswagen-approved service additives in the approved quantity.

### Winter diesel

When using summer-grade diesel, difficulties may be experienced at temperatures below 0°C (+32°F) because the fuel thickens due to paraffin separation. For this reason, winter-grade diesel which can be used at temperatures below -20°C (-4°F) is available in countries such as Germany during the cold months ⇒ .

In countries with different climatic conditions the diesel sold generally has different temperature characteristics. Check with a Volkswagen dealership or petrol stations in the country concerned regarding the types of diesel available.

It is not unusual for a cold diesel engine to be louder in cold temperatures than in warm weather. In addition, exhaust emissions may be tinged with blue while the engine starts and reaches operating temperature.

### Filter preheater

Diesel vehicles are equipped with a filter preheater system. This ensures that the fuel system remains operational even down to approximately -24°C (-11°F) provided that winter-grade diesel which is safe down to -20°C (-4°F) is used.

However, if the fuel has thickened to such an extent that the engine will not start at temperatures below -24°C (-11°F) simply place the vehicle in a warm garage or workshop for a while.



## WARNING

Never use a start booster. Start boosters may explode or cause the engine to suddenly run at high revs, which can cause serious injuries and engine damage.



## NOTICE

- Before filling up with diesel, check whether the fuel corresponds to the vehicle's requirements according to the fuel standard information at the pump.
- Only use fuel that complies with the specified standard and has the correct certane number. Significant malfunctions could otherwise result.
- Your vehicle is not suitable for use with biodiesel and must not be filled up or driven with biodiesel. Failure to observe this point can result in damage to the fuel system and engine.
- Immediately and thoroughly remove any emerging fuel from the vehicle with soap and warm water, to prevent any damage to the vehicle.
- The diesel engine has been developed for use with diesel only. For this reason, petrol, fuel oil or other unsuitable fuels may not be used. These fuels can cause serious damage to the fuel system and engine.
- The service life of the diesel particulate filter could be reduced considerably if diesel fuels with a high sulphur content are used.



## NOTICE

In cold weather do not mix petrol into the diesel, as this could cause massive damage to the engine's injection system.

## Emission control system for diesel vehicles (AdBlue®)



### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*
- ⇒ *Information on AdBlue*
- ⇒ *Refilling AdBlue*

SCR catalytic converters can be used to reduce emissions in diesel engines. The SCR catalyst uses AdBlue® urea solution to convert nitrogen oxides into nitrogen and water.

The vehicle is fitted with a separate tank for AdBlue® ⇒ *Refilling AdBlue®*. The remaining range can be checked regularly on the instrument cluster display.

## WARNING

If the AdBlue® level is too low, the vehicle cannot be restarted after the ignition has been switched off. Starting with jump leads is also not possible.

- Refill AdBlue® at the latest when the remaining distance reaches approximately 1,000 km.
- Never allow the AdBlue® tank to run empty.

## CAUTION

AdBlue® is an irritant and corrosive fluid that can damage the skin, eyes and breathing passages upon contact.

- Always observe the instructions for use when using AdBlue® containers. If containers are used according to the instructions, it is unlikely that a user will come into contact with AdBlue®.
- If AdBlue® gets into the eyes, immediately rinse the eyes with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor.
- If AdBlue® gets onto the skin, immediately wash the area with plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and consult a doctor if the skin becomes irritated.
- If AdBlue® is swallowed, immediately rinse the mouth out with lots of water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless instructed to do so by a doctor. Seek medical assistance immediately.

## NOTICE







AdBlue® can corrode surfaces such as painted vehicle parts, plastics, clothing and carpets. Remove any spilt AdBlue® as quickly as possible with a damp cloth and plenty of cold water.

- If the AdBlue® has already formed crystals, use warm water and a sponge to remove.

## Warning and indicator lamps



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause/remedy ⇒ 
	<b>The engine cannot be restarted!</b> AdBlue® level is too low. Park the vehicle in a suitable, flat location and refill the minimum amount of AdBlue® ⇒ <a href="#">Refilling AdBlue®</a> .
	<b>The engine cannot be restarted!</b> Fault in the selective catalytic reduction system. Drive to a qualified workshop immediately without switching off the engine. Have the system checked.
	AdBlue® level is low. Refill AdBlue® before the kilometres displayed drop to zero ⇒ <a href="#">Refilling AdBlue®</a> . Volkswagen recommends that this be carried out by a qualified workshop.
	Selective catalytic reduction system faulty or not refilled using norm-standard AdBlue®. Go to a qualified workshop immediately. Have the system checked.
	AdBlue® level is low.

Lit up

Possible cause/remedy ⇒ 

Refill within the remaining AdBlue® range shown ⇒ *Refilling AdBlue®*.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Information on AdBlue®


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The AdBlue® consumption figures depend on the individual driving style, the system's operating temperature and the ambient temperature that the vehicle is operated in.

AdBlue® freezes at -11 °C (+13 °F). Refilling may be restricted if AdBlue® has frozen. The system has heating elements to ensure that it also functions at low temperatures.

The AdBlue® tank holds approximately 12 litres.

The **minimum and maximum** refill quantity of AdBlue® is shown on the instrument cluster display ⇒ .

The AdBlue® tank must never run empty. As of a remaining range of approximately 2,400 km, the instrument cluster display will indicate that the AdBlue® must be refilled ⇒ *Refilling AdBlue®*. If the refill request is ignored, it will not be possible to start the engine again later ⇒ . Refilling is not necessary if there is no refill request.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the German Association of the Automobile Industry (VDA) and is also known as AUS32 or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

## NOTICE

Overfilling with AdBlue® can damage the tank system.

- Volkswagen recommends going to a qualified workshop to refill with AdBlue®.
- Do not fill with more than the maximum refill quantity indicated on the instrument cluster display.

## Refilling AdBlue®

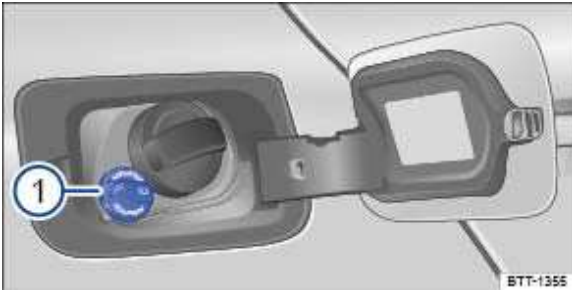


Fig. 230 Tank cap for AdBlue.

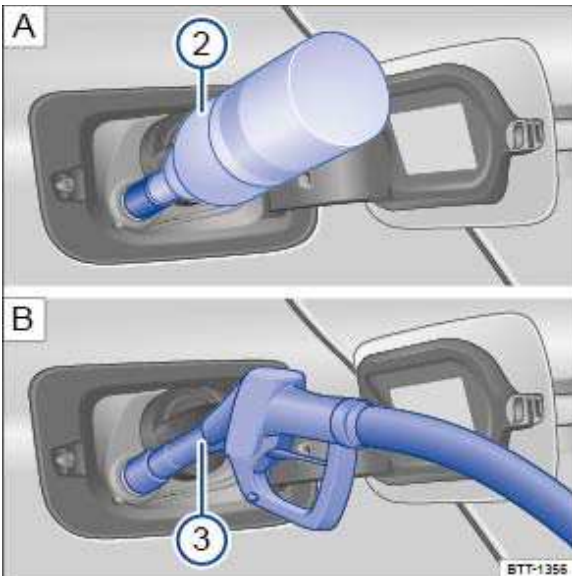





Fig. 231 Refilling AdBlue: with refill bottle. with filler nozzle.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Key for ⇒ Fig. 230 and ⇒ Fig. 231 :

-  Tank filler neck cap.
-  Refill bottle.
-  Filler nozzle.

Stop vehicle on a level surface. The tank level gauge may not detect the refill quantity correctly if the vehicle is not parked on a level surface. e.g. if it is standing with one side on a kerb or is stopped on a gradient.

Open the message on the instrument cluster display to show the **minimum and maximum** refill quantity.

If a message about the AdBlue® level appears on the instrument cluster display, **refill with at least the minimum refill quantity**. A smaller refill amount is insufficient.

Switch off the ignition. If the ignition is not switched off during a refill operation, the refill request may still be shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not fill fuel and AdBlue® at the same time.


Only use AdBlue® that complies with the standard ISO 22241-1. Use original containers only.



## Opening the tank filler neck

- Opening the tank flap.
- Unscrew the cap from the tank filler neck anticlockwise.

## Refilling AdBlue® with the refill bottle

- Please read the manufacturer's notes and information on the refill bottle.
- Observe the expiry date.
- Remove the screw top of the refill bottle.
- Place the neck of the refill bottle on the tank filler neck and turn it clockwise until it is hand-tight.
- Push the refill bottle towards the tank filler neck, press and hold down.
- Wait until the contents of the refill bottle have entered the AdBlue® tank. Do not crumple up or damage the refill bottle!
- Unscrew the refill bottle anticlockwise and lift it carefully up and out ⇒ .
- When the AdBlue® tank is full, AdBlue® will no longer flow out of the bottle and into the tank.

## Refilling AdBlue® with the filler nozzle

The AdBlue® tank can be refilled at all conventional AdBlue® pumps.

- The procedure for refilling with an AdBlue® nozzle is the same as for refilling the fuel tank with fuel.
- Do not fill fuel and AdBlue® at the same time.
- The AdBlue® tank is full as soon as the correctly operated filler nozzle clicks off for the first time. Do not continue refilling, the AdBlue® tank may be damaged by overfilling it and AdBlue® may escape.

## Closing the tank filler neck

- Screw the cap onto the tank filler neck clockwise until it engages.
- Close the tank flap.

## Preparing to drive on

- After refilling, switch on the ignition **only**.
- Leave the ignition switched on for at least 30 seconds to allow the system to detect the refill procedure.
- Do not start the engine until the 30 seconds have elapsed!

## **WARNING**

AdBlue® should only be kept in sealed original containers in a safe place.

- Never store AdBlue® in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain AdBlue®.
- AdBlue® must be stored out of the reach of children.

## **NOTICE**

- Only use AdBlue® that complies with the standard ISO 22241-1. Use original containers only.
- Never mix water, fuel or additives with AdBlue®. Any damage caused by mixing in water or additives would not be covered by the factory warranty.
- Never fill AdBlue® in the diesel tank! Failure to do so can result in engine damage.
- Do not transport the refill bottle in the vehicle habitually. The bottle may develop a leak following changes in temperature and damage and the AdBlue® may damage the vehicle interior.



The refill bottle must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment.



Suitable AdBlue® refill bottles are available from a Volkswagen dealership.

## Engine management system and exhaust purification system

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Indicator lamps*

⇒ *Catalytic converter*

⇒ *Diesel particulate filter*

## **WARNING**



The components of the exhaust system become very hot. This can cause fires.







- Park the vehicle so that no part of the exhaust system can come into contact with any inflammable material underneath the vehicle, e.g. dry grass.
- Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, diesel particulate filter or the heat shields on the exhaust system.

### Indicator lamps



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause	Remedy
	Engine management system fault (electronic power control).	The engine should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Engine speed limited. <sup>a)</sup>	

Lit up	Possible cause	Remedy
		<p>The engine speed is automatically limited to the speed shown on the instrument cluster display. This prevents the engine from overheating.</p> <p>Once the engine is no longer at a critical temperature and you have briefly taken your foot off the accelerator, the engine speed limit will be increased.</p> <p>If the engine speed limit is activated due to a fault in the engine management system, the indicator lamp will also light up <b>EPC</b>. The engine should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Make sure that the engine speed does not exceed the speed displayed, e.g. when changing down a gear.</p>
	Diesel engine is preheating before starting.	⇒ <i>Starting and stopping the engine</i> .
	There is a fault with the exhaust.	Have the engine checked by a qualified workshop.
	Diesel particulate filter has become saturated with soot. <sup>a)</sup>	<p>Drive in 4th gear (manual gearbox) or in selector lever position <b>D</b> (DSG® dual clutch gearbox) at a speed of at least 70 km/h (43 mph) for approximately 15 minutes.</p> <p>Observe the valid speed limits ⇒  .</p> <p>Go to the nearest qualified workshop if the indicator lamp still does not go out.</p>
Flashes	Possible cause	Remedy
	Fault in engine management system (diesel engine).	The engine should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.
	Misfiring, which damages the catalytic converter.	Remove your foot from accelerator pedal. Drive carefully to the next qualified workshop. The engine should be checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.





## **WARNING**

Please observe legal requirements if cleaning the diesel particulate filter when in traffic.

- Follow driving recommendation only if visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions are suitable.
- Do not endanger other vehicles on the road.

## **NOTICE**

To avoid damage to your vehicle, always observe the indicator lamps and associated warning texts.

 While the indicator lamps ,  or **EPC** are lit up, or indicator lamp  is flashing, you must expect engine faults, higher fuel consumption and reduced engine performance.

<sup>a)</sup> Displayed in colour on an instrument cluster with colour display.


## Catalytic converter

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The catalytic converter is used for exhaust gas post-treatment and helps to reduce exhaust emissions. To help ensure long-term functionality in the exhaust system and the catalytic converter:

- Use unleaded petrol only.
- Do not allow the fuel tank to run empty.
- Do not overfill engine oil ⇒ *Engine oil*.
- Do not tow-start the vehicle. Use jump leads ⇒ *Jump starting*.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, reduce speed immediately. The vehicle should be inspected at the nearest qualified workshop. If this happens, unburnt fuel can enter the exhaust system and escape into the atmosphere. The catalytic converter can also be damaged by overheating.

 Even when the exhaust purification system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust in some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel.


## Diesel particulate filter

---

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*


The diesel particulate filter filters out soot particles in the exhaust gas. The soot particles gather in the filter and are burnt under high temperatures periodically (**regeneration**). Heat produced can warm the engine.

Regeneration can cause noises, slight odours and may lead to the radiator fan running on irrespective of the outside temperature, even after the engine is switched off.

To assist the regeneration of diesel particle filter, Volkswagen recommends that you avoid making only short journeys. In vehicles with automatic gearboxes the engine speed can increase while the vehicle is being driven. However, the indicator lamp  will not light up.

Observe the following points to ensure that the exhaust system and the diesel particulate filter will work properly for a long time:

- Only use diesel with low sulphur levels ⇒ *Fuel*.
- Never use biodiesel, petrol or heating oil.
- Do not allow the fuel tank to run empty.
- Do not overfill engine oil ⇒ *Engine oil*.
- Do not tow-start the vehicle. Use jump leads ⇒ *Jump starting*.

 Even when the exhaust purification system is working perfectly, there may be a smell of sulphur from the exhaust in some conditions. This depends on the sulphur content of the fuel.

## Vehicle care

### Notes on vehicle care

---

Regular and expert care helps to maintain the value of the vehicle. This may also be one of the requirements for acknowledging warranty claims in the event of corrosion or paint defects.

Leaving stains, dirt and other deposits on the surface of vehicle components and cloth seat covers for a long time can make it difficult to clean and treat them. Stains, dirt and deposits may become impossible to remove, particularly if left for a long time.

Suitable care products are available from qualified workshops. Follow the usage instructions on the packaging. Consult a qualified workshop if you have special questions or if vehicle parts are not listed.

## **WARNING**

Incorrect care and cleaning of vehicle parts can impair the safety features of the vehicle and cause serious injury.

- Vehicle parts must be cleaned according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- Always use approved or recommended cleaning products.
- Do not use solvent-based cleaning products. Solvents can cause irreparable damage to the airbag modules.
- Protect your hands and arms against parts with sharp edges, e.g. when cleaning the underbody or the insides of the wheel housings.

## **WARNING**

Dirty, misted or iced over windows reduce visibility and increase the risk of accidents and severe injuries. This could impair the safety equipment of the vehicle.

- Only drive when you have a clear view through all windows.
- Do not treat the windscreen with water-repellent window coating agents. In unfavourable conditions, they can cause increased dazzle.

## **WARNING**

Car care products can be toxic and hazardous. Unsuitable care products and incorrect use of care products can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns or poisoning.

- Care products must be kept in the original, sealed container only.
- Read the manufacturer's instructions.
- Never use empty food cans, bottles or other containers for storing care products.
- Keep children away from care products.
- The products can give off harmful fumes during use. They should therefore only be used outside or in well-ventilated spaces.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids to wash, clean or care for your vehicle. These substances are toxic and highly inflammable.

## **NOTICE**

Stains, dirt and other deposits containing aggressive and solvent-based ingredients attack the material and may cause irreparable damage, even if only left for a short time.


- Do not use solvent-based cleaning products.
- Stains, dirt and other deposits should always be removed as quickly as possible and not allowed to dry in.
- Have stubborn stains removed by a qualified workshop.

## Vehicle washing

---

Also wash the underside of the vehicle on a regular basis to remove road salt or seawater residue.


### Automatic car washes

Always observe all the car wash operator's specifications, in particular if your vehicle features add-on parts ⇒ .

- Preferably use car washes without brushes.
- Observe the car wash entrance height and width.
- Spray the vehicle with water before washing.
- Always switch off the Auto Hold function ⇒ *Electronic parking brake*, the wipers ⇒ *Wipers* and the rain sensor before entering the car wash.
- Lock the boot lid.
- Fold in the exterior mirrors.
- Close all windows and the glass roof.
- If your vehicle has decorative and protective films, do not select a wash program with hot wax.


In vehicles with keyless access ⇒ *Central locking and closing system* locking and starting system: if you leave the vehicle for the duration of the washing programme, first switch the ignition off and on again once. Always leave a valid vehicle key inside the vehicle so that the electronic steering column lock does not engage.

### High-pressure cleaners

Observe the manufacturer's information for the high-pressure cleaner. Do not use circular jet nozzles or dirt blasters ⇒ .

- Only use water with a maximum temperature of +60°C (+140°F).
- Do not clean windows that are iced over or covered in snow with a high-pressure cleaner.
- Move the water jet evenly over the vehicle keeping the washer jet at a distance of at least 40 cm.
- Do not direct the water jet at the same point for too long. Instead allow stubborn dirt to soak.
- Where possible, do not aim the water jet at seals, tyres, rubber hoses, insulating material and other sensitive parts of the vehicle (e.g. door locks).
- Only briefly direct the water jet at sensors and camera lenses and observe a distance of at least 10 cm.
- Only direct the water jet at decorative and protective films briefly and with a maximum water pressure of 100 bar.

### Washing the car by hand

Washing the car by hand is always the more gentle way to clean it. However, there are also some things to note for this ⇒ .

- Before washing the vehicle, soak the dirt with plenty of water and then rinse it off thoroughly.
- Clean the vehicle with a soft sponge, a wash mitt or a brush applying only light pressure. Start with the roof and work from the top to the bottom.
- Rinse the sponge, wash mitt or brush thoroughly at regular short intervals.
- Clean the wheels, sill panels etc. last. Use a second sponge for this.

Use a shampoo for very stubborn dirt only.

### Waxing

Waxing protects the paintwork. At the latest when water no longer clearly forms small drops and runs off the paintwork when the vehicle is *clean*, you should re-wax the vehicle with a good wax solution.

Even if a preservative wax is applied regularly in the automatic car wash, Volkswagen recommends protecting the vehicle paintwork with a coat of hard wax compound at least twice a year.

## Polishing

Polishing is only necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and the gloss cannot be brought back by applying wax.

The car must be waxed after polishing with hard wax if the polish used does not contain any preservatives.

### **WARNING**

After the car has been washed, the braking effect could set in later than normal and extend the braking distance as the brake discs and brake pads will be wet, or iced up in winter.

- You can dry and de-ice the brakes by performing careful braking manoeuvres. Ensure that you do not endanger any other road users or violate any legal regulations when doing so.


### **NOTICE**

Incorrectly washing the vehicle can cause serious damage to the vehicle.

- Always follow the instructions exactly.
- Never wash the vehicle in direct sunshine.
- Never aim a water jet directly at locks, doors or the boot lid in cold weather. The locks and seals could freeze.

### **NOTICE**


In order to avoid damage, do not apply polish or hard wax to painted parts with a matt finish, unpainted plastic parts, headlight lenses or the tail light clusters.


 Wash the vehicle only in specially provided wash bays. This prevents waste water contaminated with oil, grease or fuel from entering the sewerage system.

## Caring for and cleaning the vehicle exterior

Please refer to the following table for information on caring for and cleaning specific parts of the car. These are simply recommendations.

### Cleaning and care information

Component	Situation	Procedure 
Door windows, Glass surfaces	Wax residue from automatic car washes or care products.	Remove wax residue from all glass surfaces with a glass cleaning cloth - G 052 522 A2 - or a suitable glass cleaner.
	Snow	Use a small brush to remove snow from the windows and exterior mirrors.
	Ice	Use de-icer spray. Always push in one direction when using a plastic scraper. Do not move it back and forth. Do not use warm or hot water.
Wiper blades	⇒ <i>Wiper blades</i>	

Component	Situation	Procedure ⇒ 
<b>Paintwork</b>	Minor damage to paintwork.	Repair with a touch-up pen. Refer to the vehicle data sticker for the paint code ⇒ <i>Technical data</i> . Consult a qualified workshop about surfaces with matt paint.
	Spilled fuel	Rinse off immediately with water. <del>Remove flash rust with a flash rust remover. Do not polish</del>
	Flash rust deposits	flash rust away! Then wax the paintwork with hard wax.
	Corrosion	Contact a qualified workshop if you have questions. Have removed by a qualified workshop.
	Water no longer forms small drops on clean paintwork.	Preserve the paintwork with hard wax at least twice a year. <del>Treat the vehicle with a suitable polish after removing dirt</del>
	No shine despite waxing/paintwork dull.	and dust. Then preserve the paintwork with hard wax if the polish used does not contain any preserving agents.
	Deposits, e.g. insect residue, bird droppings, tree resin and road salt.	Soak immediately with water and remove with a microfibre cloth.
	Grease stains, e.g. cosmetic products or sun cream.	Remove immediately with mild soap solution <sup>a)</sup> and a soft cloth.
<b>Decorative films, protective films</b>	Differences in colour after removing decorative or protective films.	Treat with a suitable polish. Then preserve the paintwork with hard wax if the polish used does not contain any preserving agents.
	Dirt.	Clean in the same way as paint. Matt decorative films: use plastic cleaner.
	Stubborn dirt	Remove carefully using white spirits, and then rinse using warm water. Matt decorative films: use plastic cleaner.
	Deposits, e.g. insect residue, bird droppings, tree resin and road salt.	Immediately soak with water or a mild soap solution <sup>a)</sup> and remove using a microfibre cloth.
<b>Trim parts, trim strips</b>	Care	Treat the vehicle with liquid hard wax every three months after washing and removing dust. Only use soft microfibre clothes to apply it. <b>Do not use hot wax</b> , also not in car washes!
	Dirt.	Only clean using a soft cloth and mild soap solution <sup>a)</sup> in a dust-free environment. If stainless steel becomes very dirty, use a suitable, solvent-free cleaning product. Anodised surfaces: do not use chrome cleaning products.
<b>Headlights, tail light clusters</b>	Dirt.	Clean with a soft sponge soaked in a mild soap solution <sup>a)</sup> . Do not use cleaning products that contain alcohol.
<b>Wheels</b>	Dirt and road salt	Clean with plenty of water. Do not use paint polish or other abrasive products. Alloy wheels: rinse off every two weeks and then treat with an acid-free cleaning product. Volkswagen recommends applying a hard wax compound to the wheels every three months.
	Damaged protective paint coating.	Repair immediately with a touch-up pen.
	Brake dust.	Use special cleaning products.
<b>Sensors, camera lenses</b>	Dirt.	Sensors: use a soft cloth and solvent-free cleaning agent. Camera lenses: use a soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning product.
	Snow	Remove with a small brush. Do not use warm or hot water.



Component	Situation	Procedure ⇒!
	Ice	Remove ice with a solvent-free de-icer spray. Do not use warm or hot water.
Door lock cylinders	Ice	Volkswagen recommends the use of genuine Volkswagen spray with lubricating and anti-corrosive properties to de-ice the lock cylinders. Do not use door lock de-icers containing substances that dissolve grease.
Exhaust pipes	Road salt deposits	Remove with water and (if necessary) a cleaning agent suitable for stainless steel. Do not use solvent-based cleaning products.
Underseal	Maintenance	Regularly check the underseal and have it touched up if necessary. Never apply underseal or anti-corrosion coatings to the exhaust pipes, catalytic converter, heat shields or other vehicle components that become hot.
Engine compartment, plenum chamber (area between engine compartment and windscreen)	<del>Leaves and other loose objects.</del>	<del>Remove with a vacuum cleaner or by hand ⇒!</del>
	Dirt.	Cleaning should always be performed by a qualified workshop ⇒⚠. Water that has entered the plenum chamber via a manual process (e.g. from a high-pressure cleaner) can cause considerable damage to the vehicle.

## ⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a hazardous area. All work in the engine compartment carries the risk of injury, scalding, accidents and fire.

- Before carrying out any work, ensure that you are familiar with the requisite procedures and general safety regulations ⇒ *In the engine compartment*.
- Volkswagen recommends having the work carried out by a qualified workshop.

## ! NOTICE

Incorrect cleaning and care may cause vehicle damage.

- Always heed the instructions precisely.
- Do not use any excessively harsh, abrasive cleaning products.

## ! NOTICE

The drains of the plenum chamber may become blocked by leaves and dirt. Water that does not drain away can enter the vehicle interior.

- Have the area under the perforated cover cleaned by a qualified workshop.



Environmental conditions such as sunlight, humidity, pollution, stone impact etc. affect the durability and colour of decorative and protective films. Signs of wear and age are normal and do not indicate a defect in quality. Decorative films can show signs of wear and aging after approximately 1 to 3 years and protective films after approximately 2 to 3 years. In regions with very hot climates, decorative films can fade within one year. Protective films are more resistant and can fade slightly within the second year.


<sup>a)</sup> Mild soap solution: no more than 2 tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in 1 litre of water.



## Vehicle interior care and cleaning

Please refer to the following table for information on caring for and cleaning specific parts of the car. These are simply recommendations.


Modern fabrics, such as dark denim, are often not colourfast. Light-coloured upholstery (soft materials or leather) is particularly sensitive to staining caused by these fabrics, even if you are careful. This is not caused by a fault in the upholstery, but by the non-colourfast nature of the garments.


### Cleaning and care information

Component	Situation	Procedure ⇒ 
<b>Door windows, windscreen and rear window</b>	Dirt	Clean with a glass cleaner. Then wipe dry with a clean chamois leather or with a lint-free cloth.
	Dirt particles stuck to the surface.	<del>Remove with a vacuum cleaner on a regular basis so that the material is not permanently damaged by abrasion.</del>
<b>Fabrics, microfibre fabric, imitation leather</b>	Water-based soiling, e.g. coffee, tea etc.	Remove with an absorbent cloth and mild soap solution <sup>a)</sup> .
	Grease stains, e.g. oil, make-up.	Apply a mild soap solution <sup>a)</sup> , dab off dissolved grease and colour particles with an absorbent cloth and then treat with water if necessary.
	Stubborn stains, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, emulsion paint, shoe polish, blood.	Use a special stain remover; if necessary treat subsequently with a mild soap solution <sup>a)</sup> .
	Care	Do not use leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, stain removers or similar products on fabrics, microfibre fabrics or artificial leather.
<b>Natural leather</b>	Fresh stains	Remove with a cotton cloth and mild soap solution <sup>a)</sup> . Clean natural leather immediately.
	Water-based dirt, e.g. coffee, tea etc.	Fresh stains: remove with an absorbent cloth. Dried stains: treat with a stain remover that is suitable for leather.
	Grease stains, e.g. oil, make-up.	Fresh stains: treat with a suitable leather stain remover and an absorbent cloth. Dried stains: grease remover spray.
	Difficult dirt, e.g. ballpoint pen, nail varnish, emulsion paint, shoe polish, blood.	Treat with a suitable leather stain remover.
	Care	Regularly and each time after having finished cleaning, apply care cream with light protection and impregnating properties. Use a special coloured leather cream if necessary. If the vehicle is parked outdoors for long periods, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.  Never treat leather with solvents, way polish, shoe cream, stain removers or anything similar.
<b>Plastic parts</b>	Dirt	Remove with a soft, moist cloth.
	Stubborn dirt	Remove with a soft cloth and a little mild soap solution <sup>a)</sup> ; if necessary, use a solvent-free plastic cleaning agent.

Component	Situation	Procedure ⇒ 
Trim parts, trim strips	Dirt.	<p>Only clean using a soft cloth and mild soap solution<sup>a)</sup> in a dust-free environment.</p> <p>If stainless steel becomes very dirty, use a suitable, solvent-free cleaning product.</p> <p>Anodised surfaces: do not use chrome cleaning products.</p>
Controls	Dirt	<p>Remove large particles of dirt with a soft brush.</p> <p>Subsequently clean controls using a soft cloth and some mild soap solution<sup>a)</sup>. Ensure that no liquids get into the controls.</p>
Displays	Dirt	<p>Use a soft cloth with a little water, commercially available glass cleaner or with LCD cleaner.</p> <p>Do not clean displays with a dry cloth.</p>
Rubber seals	Dirt	Clean with a soft, lint-free cloth and lots of water.
Seat belts	Care	<p>Clean with a suitable rubber care product on a regular basis. </p> <p>Remove large particles of dirt with a soft brush. Clean the seat belt with a <i>mild</i> soap solution. Leave the belt fabric to dry completely and then allow it to be used.</p>
Wooden trims	Dirt	Remove large particles of dirt with a soft brush. Clean with a <i>mild</i> soap solution <sup>a)</sup> .

### Cleaning upholstery on seats with seat heating and on seats with electrical adjustment or airbag components

Airbag system components and electrical connectors may be installed in the driver seat, front passenger seat and, with some equipment levels, also in the rear outer seats. Seat cushions or backrests that are damaged, incorrectly cleaned or treated, or that become wet, may cause damage to the vehicle electrical system or trigger a fault in the airbag system ⇒ .

Electrical components and connectors are installed in electrically adjustable seats and seat cushions with seat heating. These can be damaged if cleaned or treated incorrectly ⇒ . This can also result in damage to other parts of the vehicle electrics.

To avoid this please follow these cleaning guidelines:

- Do not use high-pressure cleaners, steam cleaners or coolant spray.
- Do not switch on the seat heating to dry the seats.
- Do not use washing paste or fine detergent solutions.
- Avoid getting the seat wet.
- Only use detergents that have been approved by Volkswagen.
- If in doubt, consult a specialist cleaning company.

## WARNING

Failure to clean the parts properly can cause damage to the seat belts, the fastenings and the belt retractor.

- Never use chemical cleaning agents on the seat belts or their components. Furthermore the seat belts may not come into contact with corrosive fluids, solvents or sharp objects.
- Dry the cleaned seat belt fully before allowing it to retract.
- Avoid allowing foreign bodies or liquids to enter the slot for the seat belt buckle.
- Never try to repair, modify or remove the seat belts yourself.

## NOTICE

Incorrect cleaning and care may cause vehicle damage.

- Always heed the instructions precisely.
- Sharp objects, such as zips, rivets on clothing or belts may damage surfaces. Open Velcro fasteners can also cause damage.
- Do not use a steam cleaner, brushes or hard sponges etc. for cleaning under any circumstances.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a specialist cleaning company.

a) Mild soap solution: no more than 2 tablespoons of neutral soap diluted in 1 litre of water.

## If and when

### Vehicle tool kit

#### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ [Stowage](#)
- ⇒ [Contents](#)
- ⇒ [Collapsible chocks](#)

Observe any country-specific legislation when securing your vehicle in the event of a breakdown.

## WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre or accident, a loose vehicle tool kit, breakdown set and temporary spare wheel could be flung through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always ensure that the vehicle tool kit, breakdown set and temporary spare wheel are secured in the luggage compartment.

## WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged tools in the vehicle tool kit can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never work with unsuitable or damaged tools from the vehicle tool kit.

## Stowage


---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The vehicle tool kit may be located in various positions in the luggage compartment:

- In a bag on the left or right in the stowage areas of the luggage compartment ⇒ *Stowage area*.
- In a foam rubber holder under the luggage compartment floor ⇒ *Boot lid*.

In some models, the luggage compartment may contain a loose box with a vehicle tool kit. This supplied vehicle tool kit is intended for a possible switch of winter tyres and does not need to be carried in the vehicle at all times.

 After using the vehicle jack, crank it back to its original position so that it can be stored safely.

## Contents

---

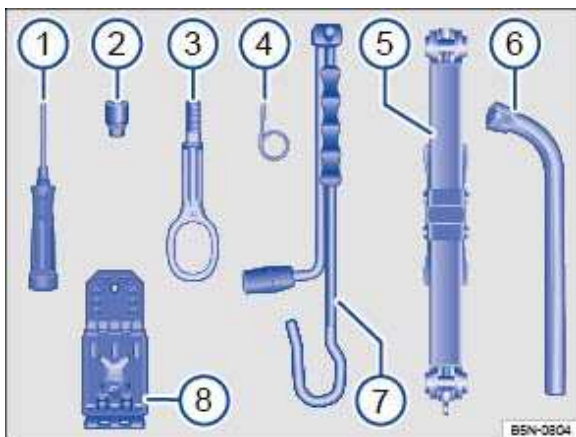


Fig. 232 Contents of the vehicle tool kit.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

### Contents of the tool kit

The content of the vehicle tool kit is determined by the vehicle equipment level. The following section describes the maximum scope:

Key for ⇒ Fig. 232

- 1 Screwdriver with hexagon socket in the handle for slackened wheel bolts. The screwdriver blade is reversible. The screwdriver may be stowed under the box spanner.
- 2 Adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts. Volkswagen recommends that you carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle tool kit at all times. The **code number** of the anti-theft wheel bolt is engraved on the front of the adapter. You will need this number to replace the adapter if lost. Make a note of the code number for the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place – but not inside the vehicle.
- 3 Removable towing eye.
- 4 Wire hook for pulling off the centre cover, wheel covers and the wheel bolt caps.
- 5 Vehicle jack. Before you return the jack to the foam rubber holder, you must wind the claw in fully.
- 6 Box spanner for wheel bolts.
- 7 Crank.
- 8 Collapsible chocks ⇒ *Collapsible chocks*.

## Vehicle jack: maintenance

There are no maintenance cycles for the vehicle jack. Grease it with universal lubricant when necessary.

### WARNING

In the event of a sudden driving/braking manoeuvre or accident, a loose vehicle tool kit may be thrown through the vehicle and cause severe injuries.

- Always be sure that vehicle tools are stored safely in the luggage compartment.

### WARNING

Unsuitable or damaged tools in the vehicle tool kit can lead to accidents and injuries.

- Never work with unsuitable or damaged tools from the vehicle tool kit.



After using the vehicle jack, crank it back to its original position so that it can be stored safely.

## Collapsible chocks

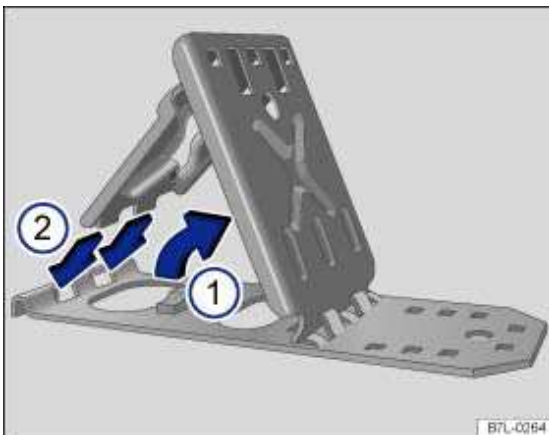


Fig. 233 Folding out the collapsible chock.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The collapsible chocks are stored with the vehicle tool kit ⇒ [Fig. 232](#).

### Assembling the collapsible chocks

- Lift up the support plate ⇒ [Fig. 233](#) ①.
- Fold out the securing plate and insert the two lugs on the securing plate into the slotted holes on the base plate ②.

### Correct usage

The collapsible chocks can be used to chock the wheels that are opposite the wheel that is being changed.

## WARNING

Assembling and using the collapsible chocks incorrectly can cause accidents and injuries.

- Never use damaged collapsible chocks.
- Never use the collapsible chocks to secure the vehicle if it is located on a slope.

## Wiper blades

### Service position

---

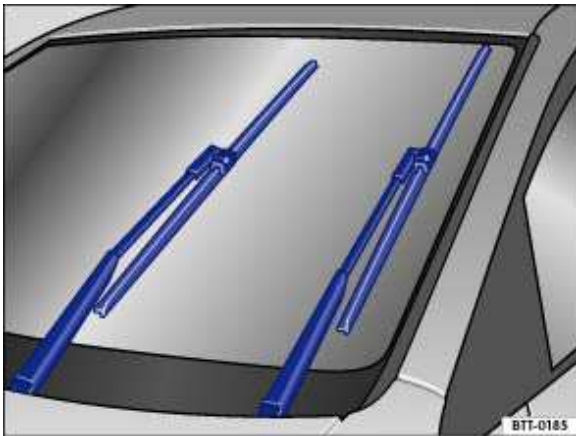



Fig. 234 Wiper blades in service position.


The wiper arms can be lifted off the windscreen when in the service position.

Proceed as follows to move the wipers to the service position ⇒ Fig. 234 :

- The vehicle must be stationary and the bonnet closed ⇒ *In the engine compartment* .
- Switch the ignition on and then off again.
- Briefly press down the windscreen wiper lever ⇒ Fig. 111Ⓞ .

### Lifting the windscreen wiper arms

- Move the wiper arms to the service position before lifting ⇒  .
- When lifting the wiper arm hold it **only** by the wiper blade mounting.

Place the wiper arms back onto the windscreen before driving away ⇒  . With the ignition switched on, briefly press the windscreen wiper lever down to bring the windscreen wiper arms back to the original position.

## NOTICE

- In order to prevent damage to the bonnet and the windscreen wiper arms, the windscreen wiper arms should only be lifted when in the service position.
- Always return the windscreen wiper arms to the windscreen before starting your journey.

## Changing bulbs

## Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Indicator lamp*
- ⇒ *Information on changing bulbs*
- ⇒ *Changing bulbs in the halogen headlights*
- ⇒ *Changing bulbs in the front bumper*
- ⇒ *Changing bulbs in the front bumper (R-Line)*
- ⇒ *Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the body*
- ⇒ *LED lights on the vehicles*

Changing the vehicle bulbs requires considerable technical skill. If you do not feel confident with the procedure, Volkswagen recommends that you have the bulbs changed by a Volkswagen dealership, or that you seek other expert assistance. You should contact a professional mechanic if other vehicle parts around the lights have to be removed, or if gas discharge bulbs (xenon lamps) have to be replaced.

You should keep a box with spare light bulbs for the lights that ensure the vehicle is roadworthy in the vehicle at all times. Spare bulbs are available from Volkswagen dealerships. In some countries it is a legal requirement to have these spare bulbs in the vehicle.

It may be illegal to drive with a defective bulb in the exterior lighting.

### **You can change the following bulbs yourself:**

- Bulbs in the halogen headlight: dipped beam, main beam, daytime running light, side light, turn signal.
- Bulbs in front bumper: fog lights, static cornering light.
- Bulbs in the tail light clusters: rear turn signal, if it does not feature LED technology (depending on vehicle equipment level).

All other bulbs and lamps in the vehicle should always be changed by an expert.

### **Additional bulb specifications**

Some bulbs in headlights or in tail light clusters might have factory specifications that are different to standard bulbs. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.

### **Lights based on LED technology**

The LEDs cannot be replaced by customers. Seek expert assistance. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.



## **WARNING**

Accidents can occur if roads are not sufficiently illuminated and other road users have difficulty seeing the vehicle, or cannot see it at all.

## **WARNING**

Changing the bulb incorrectly can cause accidents and serious injuries.


- When working in the engine compartment, always read and observe the safety warnings ⇒ *In the engine compartment*. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon lamps) operate at high voltage. If they are not handled properly they can cause serious or fatal injuries.
- H7/H15 and gas discharge bulbs are pressurised and could explode when they are being changed.
- Only change the defective bulb once it has had time to cool down completely.
- Never change a bulb unless you are familiar with the procedure. If you are uncertain of what to do, the work should be carried out by a qualified workshop.
- Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. When the light is switched on, heat will cause fingerprints to evaporate on the bulb, which in turn will cause the reflector to dim.
- There are sharp-edged parts in the headlight housing in the engine compartment and on the tail light cluster housing. Protect your hands when changing bulbs.

## **NOTICE**

Damage to the electrical system can be caused by water entering the system if the rubber covers or plastic caps on the headlight housing are not properly mounted after a bulb has been changed.

## Indicator lamp

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Lit up	Possible cause/action
	Vehicle lighting not working partially or completely. Change the defective bulb.
	If all of the bulbs are in working order, go to a qualified workshop.
	<b>OR:</b> fault in the dynamic cornering light system. Go to qualified workshop ⇒ <i>Lights</i> .

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## Monitoring of the light bulbs on the trailer

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket, the vehicle will also monitor certain bulbs on a trailer which has been connected properly via the trailer socket:

If a turn signal in the trailer fails, the indicator lamp (◀ or ▶) in the instrument cluster display will flash twice as fast ⇒ *Lights* .

- Failure of all turn signals on one side.
- Failure of the tail light on one side (in some models, failure of the licence plate light).
- Failure of both brake lights.



## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.


- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.



## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.



If a light emitting diode (LED) in the tail light cluster fails, a warning is not given. If all LEDs fail, this is indicated by the indicator lamp .

## Information on changing bulbs


---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

## Checklist

---

Always carry out the following actions for changing a bulb in the given order ⇒  :

- ✓ Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
- ✓ Switch on the electronic parking brake Electronic parking brake.
- ✓ Turn light switch to position 0 Lights.
- ✓ Place the turn signal and main beam lever in its neutral position Lights.
- ✓ Automatic gearbox: move the selector lever to position P DSG® dual clutch gearbox.
- ✓ Stop the engine and remove the key from the ignition Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Manual gearbox: select a gear Manual gearbox: selecting a gear.
- ✓ Switch off the orientation lighting Lights.
- ✓ Leave the defective bulbs to cool down.
- ✓ Check to see if a fuse has blown Changing fuses.
- ✓ Change the relevant bulb in accordance with the instructions , keeping a torch close to hand if required. Always use identical bulbs with the same designation. The designation is inscribed on the bulb, either on the glass part or on the base.
- ✓ Do not touch the glass part of the bulb with unprotected fingers. The heat of the bulb would cause the fingerprint to evaporate and condense on the reflector. This will impair the brightness of the headlight.
- ✓ After changing the bulb, check to ensure that the bulb is working properly. If the bulb is not working properly, the bulb may not have been inserted properly or may have failed again, or the connector may have been inserted incorrectly.
- ✓ Any time you change a bulb in the front of the vehicle, the headlight settings should be checked by a qualified workshop.

## ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## ! NOTICE

Always take care when removing or fitting lights to prevent damage to the paintwork or to other vehicle parts.

### Changing bulbs in the halogen headlights

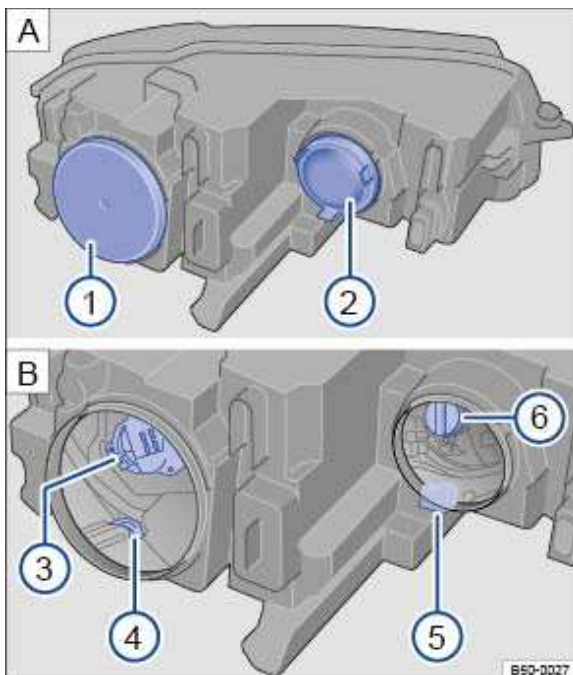


Fig. 235 In the engine compartment: covers and bulbs on the left front headlight.


First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

The front headlight does not need to be removed when changing bulbs.

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

⇒ Fig. 235	Dipped beam headlights	Side lights/daytime running lights	Turn signal	Main beam headlights
1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist ⇒ <i>Information on changing bulbs</i> .			
2.	Open the bonnet  ⇒ <i>In the engine compartment</i> .			
3.	Pull off the rubber cover ①  from the back of the headlight	Pull off the rubber cover ①  from the back of the headlight	Pull off the rubber cover ②  from the back of the headlight	Pull off the rubber cover ②  from the back of the headlight
4.	Turn the bulb holder ③  anticlockwise as far as it will go and pull it out to the rear along with the bulb.	Turn the bulb holder ④  anticlockwise as far as it will go and pull it out to the rear along with the bulb.	Turn the bulb holder ⑤  anticlockwise as far as it will go and pull it out to the rear along with the bulb.	Turn the bulb holder ⑥  anticlockwise as far as it will go and pull it out to the rear along with the bulb.
5.	If applicable, push the catch on the bulb holder and pull the bulb straight out of the bulb holder.			
6.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.			
7.	Insert the bulb holder ③  into the headlight and	Insert the bulb holder ④  into the headlight and		

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

⇒ Fig. 235	Dipped beam headlights	Side lights/daytime running lights	Turn signal	Main beam headlights
	turn it clockwise as far as it will go.	turn it clockwise as far as it will go.	Insert the bulb holder ⑤ <b>B</b> into the headlight and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.	Insert the bulb holder ⑥ <b>B</b> into the headlight and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.
8.	Fit the rubber cover ① <b>A</b> .	Fit the rubber cover ① <b>A</b> .		Fit the rubber cover ② <b>A</b> .
9.	Close the bonnet  ⇒ In the engine compartment.			



The illustration shows the left-hand headlight from the rear. The right-hand headlight is a mirror image of the one shown.

## Changing bulbs in the front bumper

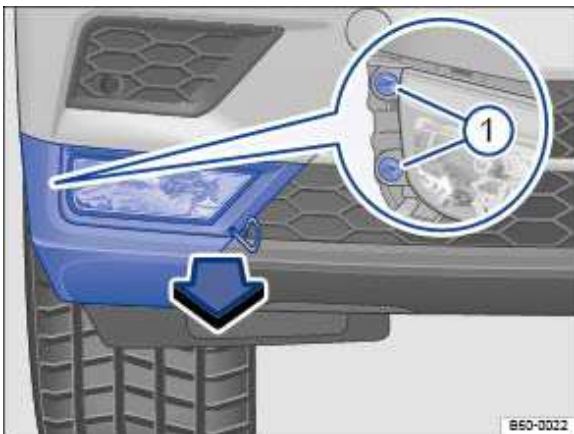


Fig. 236 In the front bumper, right-hand side: remove the fog light.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist ⇒ <i>Information on changing bulbs</i> .
2.	Take the wire hook from the tool kit and insert it in the opening in the cover ⇒ Fig. 236. Pull the cover forwards in the direction of the arrow.
3.	Use the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit to unscrew the securing bolts ⇒ Fig. 236① ⇒ <i>Vehicle tool kit</i> .
4.	Pull the headlight out of the bumper towards the outside of the vehicle.
5.	Release the connector and pull it off.
6.	Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise as far as it will go and pull it out to the rear along with the bulb.
7.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
8.	Insert the bulb holder into the headlight and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.
9.	Connect the connector to the bulb holder. The connector should click into place.
10.	Push the headlight from the outside into the openings and insert into the bumper.
11.	Use the screwdriver to tighten the securing bolts ⇒ Fig. 236①.
12.	Replace the cover in the bumper ⇒ Fig. 236.
13.	Stow the wire hook and screwdriver in the vehicle tool kit.

## Changing bulbs in the front bumper (R-Line)



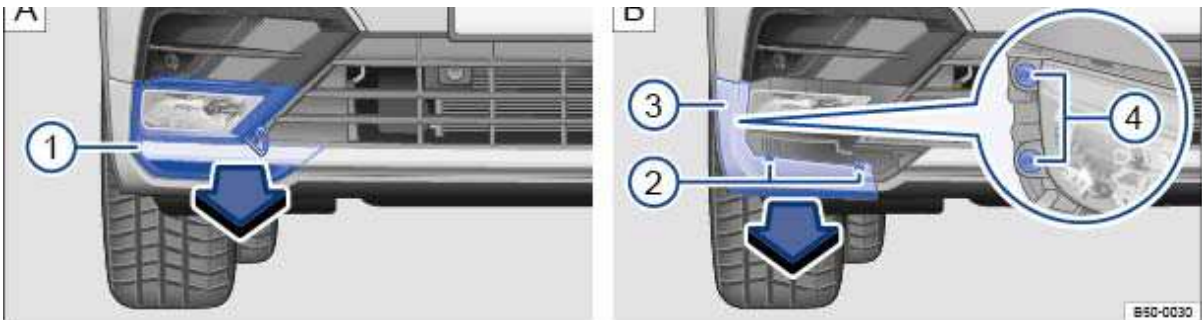


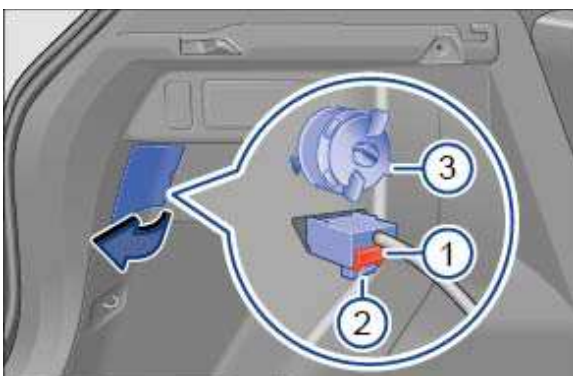
Fig. 237 In the front R-Line bumper, right-hand side: remove the fog light.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\Rightarrow$  Introduction

**The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:**

1. Follow the instructions on the checklist.
2. Take the screwdriver and wire hook out of the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment  $\Rightarrow$  *Vehicle tool kit*.
3. Hook the wire hook into the opening on the cover under the fog light  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 237 **A**. Pull the cover forwards in the direction of the arrow ① **A**.
4. Unscrew 2 securing screws ② **B** in the trim panel ③ **B** with the screwdriver.
5. Unclip the trim panel ③ **B** and remove in the direction of the arrow.
6. Unscrew 2 securing screws in the fog light ④ **B** (close-up) with the screwdriver.
7. Pull the headlight out of the bumper towards the outside of the vehicle.
8. Release the connector and pull it off.
9. Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise as far as it will go and pull it out to the rear along with the bulb.
10. Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
11. Insert the bulb holder into the headlight and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.
12. Connect the connector to the bulb holder. The connector should click into place.
13. Push the headlight from the outside into the openings and insert into the bumper.
14. Tighten 2 securing screws in the fog light ④ **B** (close-up) with the screwdriver.
15. Insert the trim panel ③ **B** into the bumper in the opposite direction to the arrow. The trim panel must click into place securely.
16. Tighten 2 securing screws ② **B** in the trim panel ③ **B** with the screwdriver.
17. Insert the cover ① **A** into the bumper in the opposite direction to the arrow. The cover must click into place securely.
18. Stow the wire hook and screwdriver in the vehicle tool kit.

**Changing bulbs in the tail light cluster in the body**





**Fig. 238** On the side of the luggage compartment: removing the tail light cluster.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The actions should only be carried out in the specified order:

### Removing the tail light cluster

1.	Observe and follow the instructions on the checklist ⇒ <a href="#">Information on changing bulbs</a> .
2.	Open the boot lid ⇒ <a href="#">Boot lid</a> .
3.	Open the section of side trim in the luggage compartment near the tail light cluster in the direction of the arrow ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 238</a> .
4.	Press the red catch ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 238</a> ① on the connector and pull out the connector ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 238</a> ② . If necessary, use the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit to undo the red catch.
5.	Release the securing bolt anticlockwise ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 238</a> ③ .
6.	Carefully pull the tail light cluster to the rear to remove it from the body. Place it on a clean, smooth surface.

### Changing the bulb

7.	Turn the bulb holder anticlockwise as far as it will go and carefully pull it out of the tail light cluster together with the bulb.
9.	Replace the defective bulb with a new bulb of the same type.
10.	Carefully insert the bulb holder into the tail light cluster and turn it anticlockwise until the bulb holder engages.

### Fitting the tail light cluster

11.	Carefully put the tail light cluster into the opening in the body.
12.	Use one hand to hold the tail light cluster in the fitting position while using the other hand to tighten the securing screw ⇒ <a href="#">Fig. 238</a> ③ .
13.	Check that the tail light cluster is positioned correctly and securely.
14.	Connect the connector to the bulb holder and press into place.
15.	Close the section of side trim in the luggage compartment near the tail light cluster against the direction of the arrow
16.	Close the boot lid ⇒ <a href="#">Boot lid</a> .



The illustrations show the left-hand tail light cluster. The right-hand tail light cluster housing is a mirror image of the one shown.



There are various types of tail light cluster, so the position and design of covers, bulbs and bulb holders may vary from those shown in the illustrations.



In tail light clusters with LEDs, some light elements may be fitted with normal bulbs. These bulbs can be changed.

### LED lights on the vehicles



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The following lights may use LEDs:

- Brake light, rear fog light, tail light, turn signal and reversing light in the tail light clusters.
- Dipped beam, main beam, daytime running lights, side lights and turn signal in vehicles with LED headlights.
- The number plate light

Owners cannot replace the LEDs themselves. If some LEDs fail, this may be an indication that more elements are on the point of failure. If this happens, have the lights checked and replaced if necessary at a qualified workshop.

## Changing fuses

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Fuses in the dash panel*
- ⇒ *Fuses in the engine compartment*
- ⇒ *Fuse table for fuses in the dash panel*
- ⇒ *Fuse tables for fuses in the engine compartment*
- ⇒ *Changing a blown fuse*

At the time of print we are unable to provide an complete overview of the locations of the fuses for the electrical consumers. This is because the vehicle is under constant development, because fuses are assigned differently depending on the vehicle equipment level and because several consumers may use a single fuse. You can get more information about the fuse layout from a Volkswagen dealership.

Several electrical consumers could share a single fuse. Conversely, a single consumer could have more than one fuse.

Therefore fuses should only be replaced when the cause of the fault has been rectified. If a new fuse blows shortly after insertion, have the electrical system checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

Fuses must always be replaced by a new fuse with the same amp rating (same colour and markings) and size.

### Fuse designs

- Standard flat blade fuse (ATO<sup>®</sup>).
- Small flat blade fuse (MINI<sup>®</sup>).
- JCASE<sup>®</sup> fuse.

### Colour coding of fuses

Colour	Amp rating (ATO <sup>®</sup> /MINI <sup>®</sup> )	Amp rating (JCASE <sup>®</sup> )
Black	1	–
Orange	5	–
Brown	7,5	–
Red	10	50
Blue	15	20
Yellow	20	60
White or clear	25	–
Green	30	40
Light green	40	–
Pink	30	30

## WARNING

High voltages in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, serious burns and death.

- Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
- Avoid causing short circuits in the electrical system.

## WARNING

Using unsuitable or repaired fuses and bridging an electrical circuit without fuses can cause a fire and serious injuries.

- Never fit fuses that have a higher fuse protection limit. Fuses must always be replaced by a new fuse with the same amp rating (same colour and markings) and size.
- Never repair a fuse.
- Never use a metal strip, paper clip or similar objects to replace a fuse.

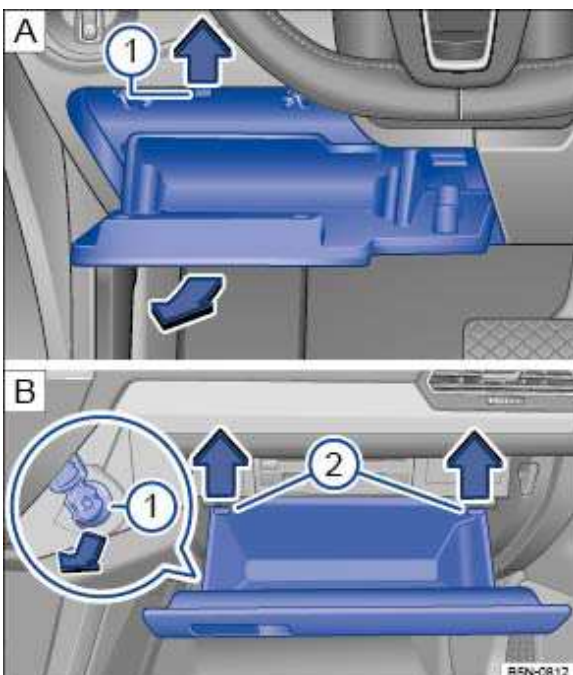
## NOTICE

- To avoid damage to the electrical system in the vehicle, switch the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers off before changing a fuse.
- You can damage another position in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating.
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.



This chapter does not refer to all the fuses in the vehicle. These should be changed only by a qualified workshop.

## Fuses in the dash panel



**Fig. 239** Fuse box cover in the dash panel: : left-hand drive vehicle, to the left-hand side of the steering wheel. right-hand drive vehicle, on the front-passenger side.







First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Fuses must always be replaced by a new fuse with the same amp rating (same colour and markings) and size.

### Left-hand drive: opening the fuse box in the dash panel

- Open the stowage compartment on the driver side ⇒ *Fig. 239* .
- Empty stowage compartment if necessary.
- Push the retaining lug ① upwards in the direction of the arrow whilst opening the stowage compartment until the fuse holder can be accessed.
- To *install*, press the stowage compartment into the mounts on the dash panel until it audibly clicks into place on both sides and then close the compartment.

### Right-hand drive: opening the fuse box in the dash panel

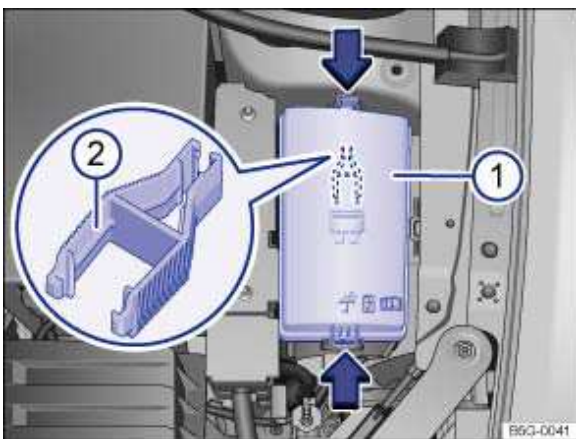
- Open the stowage compartment on the front passenger side ⇒ *Fig. 239* .
- Empty stowage compartment if necessary.
- Push the brake element ① downwards into the holder opening and pull out to the side.
- Push the catches ② upwards in the direction of the arrow whilst opening the stowage compartment until the fuse holder can be accessed.
- To *install*: move the stowage compartment into position. Insert the brake element in the holder opening and push upwards until it audibly engages. Carefully push the stowage compartment forwards beyond the resistance of the catches ②.

### NOTICE

- Remove the covers for the fuse boxes carefully and install them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.

## Fuses in the engine compartment

---




*Fig. 240* In the engine compartment: cover ① of fuse box with plastic pliers ②.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

### Opening the fuse box in the engine compartment

- Open the bonnet  ⇒ *In the engine compartment*.
- Press the release buttons in the direction of the arrow ⇒ *Fig. 240* ① to release the fuse box cover.
- Lift off the cover.

- To *install*, position the cover on the fuse box and press it downwards until the cover audibly clicks into place on both sides.

In some vehicles, there is a pair of plastic pliers ⇒ Fig. 240 ② for removing fuses on the inside of the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment.

### ! NOTICE

- Remove the covers for the fuse boxes carefully and install them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.
- Fuse boxes must be protected from dirt and moisture when opened. Dirt and moisture in the fuse boxes can damage the electrical system.

## Fuse table for fuses in the dash panel

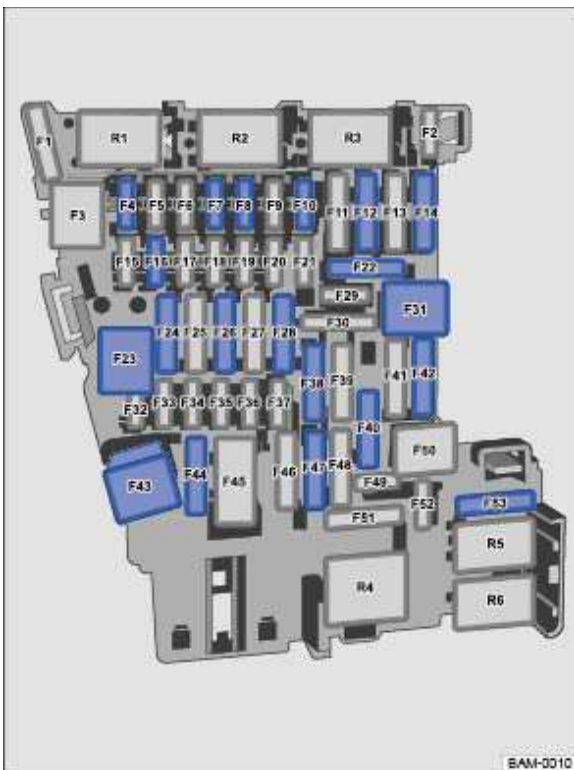


Fig. 241 In the dash panel: fuse layout.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

The table shows the fuse locations of the electrical equipment relevant for the driver. The first column in the table contains the location. The other columns contain the fuse designs, the amp rating and the consumer protected by the fuse.

Fuse location ⇒ Fig. 241	Fuse design	Amp rating	Electrical consumers
F4	MINI®	10	Anti-theft alarm.
F7	MINI®	10	Operating unit for air conditioning system or heating and fresh air system, relay for rear window heating, selector mechanism for the automatic gearbox
F8	MINI®	10	Light switch (dipped headlights), rain/light sensor, electronic parking brake
F10	MINI®	7,5	Display, infotainment controls

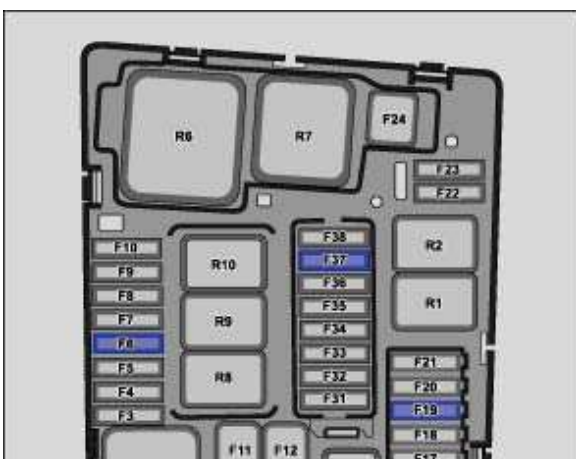
Fuse location ⇒ Fig. 241	Fuse design	Amp rating	Electrical consumers
F12	ATO®	20	Infotainment services
F14	ATO®	30	Blower control
F16	MINI®	7,5	Telephone
F22	ATO®	15	Charging cable for the trailer
F23	JCASE®	40	Exterior lights, right
F24	ATO®	30	Glass roof
F26	ATO®	30	Seat heating
F28	ATO®	25	Left trailer controller unit
F31	JCASE®	40	Exterior lights, left
F38	ATO®	25	Right trailer controller unit
F40 <sup>a)</sup>	ATO®	20	Cigarette lighter, electrical socket
F42	ATO®	40	Central locking
F43	JCASE®	30	Interior lighting
F44	ATO®	15	Trailer controller unit
F47	ATO®	15	Rear wiper
F53	ATO®	30	Rear window heating

**i** Depending on the version and specification of your vehicle, the fuse numbers and positions may differ to those given in the table. If necessary, ask a qualified workshop for the exact fuse layout. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

**i** The electric windows and the electrically adjustable seats may be secured with **circuit breakers** which switch on again automatically a few seconds after the overload, e.g. frozen windows, has been rectified.

<sup>a)</sup> Observe the installation position. Factory-fitted fuse location as shown in illustration ⇒ Fig. 241 .

## Fuse tables for fuses in the engine compartment



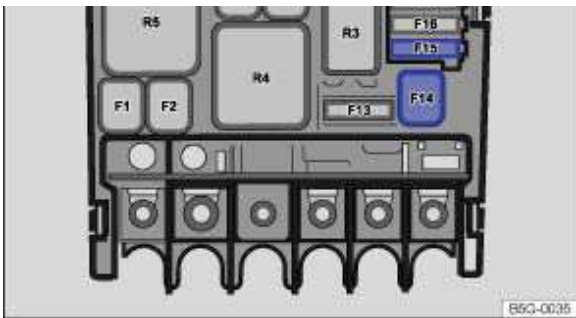


Fig. 242 Engine compartment: fuse layout.

First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings Introduction

The table shows the fuse locations of the electrical equipment relevant for the driver. The first column in the table contains the location. The other columns contain the fuse designs, the amp rating and the consumer protected by the fuse.

Fuse location ⇒ Fig. 242	Fuse design	Amp rating	Electrical consumers
F6	ATO®	5	Brake light sensor
F14	JCASE®	40	Windscreen heating
F15	ATO®	15	Horn
F19	ATO®	30	Windscreen wipers
F37	ATO®	20	Auxiliary heater

Depending on the version and specification of your vehicle, the fuse numbers and positions may differ to those given in the table. If necessary, ask a qualified workshop for the exact fuse layout. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership.

## Changing a blown fuse

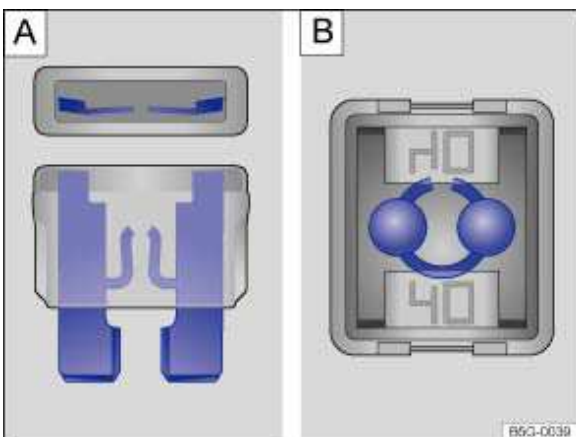
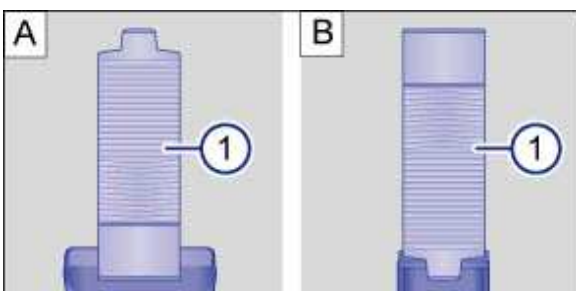


Fig. 243 Blown fuse: flat blade fuse, JCASE® fuse.





**Fig. 244** Remove or insert fuse with plastic pliers: flat blade fuse, JCASE® fuse.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

## Preparation


- Switch off the ignition, the lights and all electrical consumers.
- Open the appropriate fuse box ⇒ [Changing fuses](#) .

## Detecting a blown fuse

- Shine a torch onto the fuse. This will help you to spot the blown fuse more easily.
- If a *flat blade fuse* (ATO®, MINI®) is blown, this can be recognised from the top and side through the transparent housing surrounding the melted metal strips ⇒ [Fig. 243](#) **A**.
- If a *JCASE® fuse* is blown, this can be recognised from the top through the transparent housing ⇒ [Fig. 243](#) **B**.

## Changing a fuse

In some vehicles, there is a pair of plastic pliers for removing fuses on the inside of the cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment.

- Open the fuse box cover in the engine compartment ⇒ [Changing fuses](#) and remove the plastic pliers.
- Push the plastic pliers suitable to the fuse design ⇒ [Fig. 244](#) **A** ① or ⇒ [Fig. 244](#) **B** ① onto the fuse from the side.
- Lift the fuse up and out.
- If the fuse has blown, replace it with a new fuse of the *same* amp rating (same colour and same markings) and *same* size ⇒ .
- Once the new fuse is inserted, clip the plastic pliers into the holder on the inside of the fuse box cover.
- Fit the fuse box cover ⇒ [Changing fuses](#) .

## NOTICE

You can damage another position in the electrical system by using a fuse with a higher amp rating.

# Jump starting

## Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ [Jump lead connection point \(positive terminal\)](#)
- ⇒ [Jump start connection point \(earth connection\)](#)
- ⇒ [How to start the engine using jump leads](#)

If the engine cannot be started because the vehicle battery is discharged, the battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

Jump leads must comply with DIN 72553 (see manufacturer's documentation). The wire cross section must be at least 25 mm<sup>2</sup> for petrol engines and at least 35 mm<sup>2</sup> for diesel engines.

In vehicles with a vehicle battery in the luggage compartment, the jump leads must be connected only to the designated connection points in the engine compartment.

## WARNING

Using the jump leads incorrectly or completing the jump start procedure incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to severe injuries. Please note the following in order to reduce the risk of the battery exploding:

- All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.
- The vehicle battery providing assistance must have approximately the same voltage (12-volts) and approximately the same capacity (see imprint on vehicle battery) as the flat vehicle battery.
- Never charge a vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).
- The battery should be replaced if it is or has ever been frozen.
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is jump started. Always keep fire, sparks, naked flames and lit cigarettes away from the vehicle battery. Never use a mobile telephone when the jump leads are being connected or disconnected.
- Only charge the battery in a well-ventilated space as the battery emits a highly explosive mixture of gases when the vehicle is being jump started.
- Position the jump leads so that they never come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.
- Never confuse the negative and positive terminals or connect the jump leads incorrectly.
- Observe the jump lead manufacturer's instructions.

## NOTICE

Please note the following in order to avoid considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system:

- A short circuit can be caused if the jump leads are wrongly connected.
- The vehicles must not touch each other, as any contact could mean that electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.

### Jump lead connection point (positive terminal)

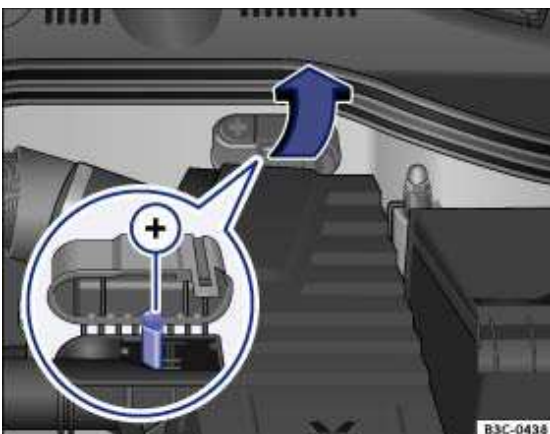


Fig. 245 In the engine compartment underneath a cover: jump lead connection point (positive terminal).

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

In vehicles with a battery in the luggage compartment, there is a jump lead connection point (positive terminal) ⇒ Fig. 245 ⊕ under a cover in the engine compartment for connecting the red jump lead.

The vehicle can be jump-started or be used to jump-start another vehicle only via this jump start connection point.

## Jump start connection point (earth connection)



Fig. 246 In the engine compartment: jump start connection point (earth connection).

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  $\Rightarrow$   [Introduction](#)

There is a jump start connection point (earth connection) in the engine compartment for connecting the *black* jump lead  $\Rightarrow$  Fig. 246  $\ominus$ .

The vehicle can be jump-started or be used to jump-start another vehicle only via this jump start connection point.

## How to start the engine using jump leads

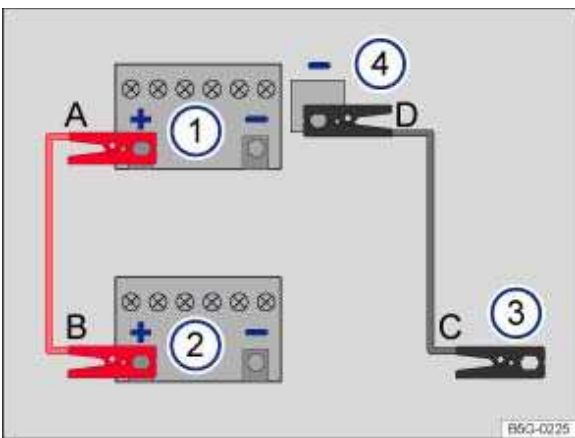


Fig. 247 Diagram for connecting the jump leads (battery in the engine compartment).

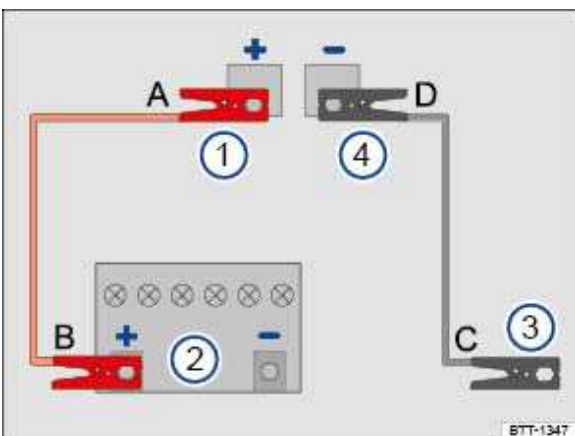


Fig. 248 Diagram for connecting the jump leads (battery in the luggage compartment).



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Key for ⇒ [Fig. 247](#) and ⇒ [Fig. 248](#) :

- ① Positive battery terminal and/or jump start point (positive battery terminal) in the vehicle with a discharged battery, which receives the jump starting.
- ② Positive battery terminal of the battery providing voltage of the vehicle that is providing jump starting.
- ③ Suitable earth connection of the vehicle that is providing assistance with jump starting. Preferably the jump start connection point (earth connection), otherwise attach to the screwed-in towing eye at the front, to a solid metal part which is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or to the cylinder block itself.
- ④ Suitable earth connection on the vehicle being jump-started. Preferably the jump start connection point (earth connection) ⇒ [Jump start connection point \(earth connection\)](#) , otherwise attach to the screwed-in towing eye at the front, to a solid metal part which is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or to the cylinder block itself.

The discharged vehicle battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system.

Before using jump leads, check the battery window ⇒ [Vehicle battery](#) .

The vehicles must not touch. Otherwise electricity could flow as soon as the positive terminals are connected.



Ensure that the battery clamps have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine does not start immediately, switch off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about a minute.

If the engine still does not start, seek expert assistance.


### Connecting jump leads (vehicles with battery in the engine compartment)

The jump leads should be connected only in the order **A – B – C – D** ⇒ [Fig. 247](#) .


- Switch off the ignition in both vehicles ⇒ [Starting and stopping the engine](#) .
- If necessary, open the cover on the vehicle battery ⇒ [Vehicle battery](#) .
- Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal (+) in the vehicle with the discharged battery ⇒ [Fig. 247](#) ① ⇒  .
- Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal (+) of the vehicle battery providing assistance ⇒ [Fig. 247](#) ② .
- Connect one end of the *black* jump lead ⇒ [Fig. 247](#) ③ to a suitable jump start connection point (earth connection) or, if this is not available, to the screwed-in towing eye at the front, to a solid metal part that is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or to the cylinder block itself.
- On the vehicle with the flat battery, connect the other end of the *black* jump lead ⇒ [Fig. 247](#) ④ to a jump-start connection point (earth connection) ⇒ [Jump start connection point \(earth connection\)](#) or, if this is not available, to the screwed-in towing eye at the front ⇒ [Tow-starting and towing](#) or to a solid metal part that is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or to the cylinder block itself ⇒  .
- Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

### Connecting jump leads (vehicles with battery in the luggage compartment)

The jump leads should be connected only in the order **A – B – C – D** ⇒ [Fig. 248](#) .

- Switch off the ignition in both vehicles ⇒ [Starting and stopping the engine](#) .
- Fold open the cover of the jump lead connection point in the engine compartment ⇒ [Jump lead connection point \(positive terminal\)](#) .
- Connect one end of the *red* jump lead to the jump lead connection point (positive terminal, +) of the vehicle with the discharged battery ⇒ [Fig. 248](#) ① ⇒  .



- Connect the other end of the *red* jump lead to the positive terminal (+) of the vehicle battery providing assistance ⇒ *Fig. 248* ②.
- Connect one end of the *black* jump lead ⇒ *Fig. 248* ③ to a suitable jump start connection point (earth connection) or, if this is not available, to the screwed-in towing eye at the front, to a solid metal part that is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or to the cylinder block itself.
- On the vehicle with the flat battery, connect the other end of the *black* jump lead ⇒ *Fig. 248* ④ to a jump-start connection point (earth connection) ⇒ *Jump start connection point (earth connection)* or, if this is not available, to the screwed-in towing eye at the front ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing* or to a solid metal part that is securely bolted onto the cylinder block, or to the cylinder block itself ⇒ .
- Position the leads in such a way that they cannot come into contact with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

## Starting the engine

- Start the engine of the vehicle providing assistance and let it run at idle.
- Start the engine of the car with the discharged vehicle battery and wait two or three minutes until the engine is running smoothly.

## Removing the jump leads

- Before disconnecting the jump leads, switch off the dipped beam headlights if they are switched on.
- Turn on the air conditioning system, or the heating and fresh air system blowers and the rear window heating in the vehicle with the discharged vehicle battery. This helps to minimise voltage peaks which are generated when the leads are disconnected.
- When the engine is running, the jump leads should only be removed in the order **D – C – B – A** ⇒ *Fig. 247* or ⇒ *Fig. 248*.
- If necessary, close the battery cover or fold back the cover of the jump lead connection point ⇒ *Jump lead connection point (positive terminal)*.
- If required, unscrew the front towing eye ⇒ *Tow-starting and towing*.



## WARNING

Jump starting the vehicle incorrectly can cause the battery to explode, which can lead to serious injuries. Please note the following in order to reduce the risk of the battery exploding:

- All work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work on the battery ⇒ *Vehicle battery*.
- Always wear suitable eye protection and protective gloves, and never lean over the vehicle battery.
- Attach the connector cables in the correct order – the positive cable first, followed by the negative.
- Never connect the negative cable to parts of the fuel system or to the brake lines.
- The non-insulated parts of the battery clamps must not be allowed to touch. The jump lead attached to the positive vehicle battery terminal must not touch metal parts of the vehicle.
- Check the battery window using a torch if necessary. If the display is light yellow or colourless, do not jump start the vehicle. Seek expert assistance.
- Avoid electrostatic discharge in the vicinity of the vehicle battery. The gas emitted from the vehicle battery could be ignited by sparks.
- Do not use jump leads to start the engine if the vehicle battery is damaged or if it is or has ever been frozen.

## Tow-starting and towing

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Notes on tow-starting*


⇒ *Notes on towing*

- ⇒ *Fitting the front towing eye*
- ⇒ *Fitting the front towing eye (R-Line)*
- ⇒ *Fitting the rear towing eye*
- ⇒ *Driving tips when towing*

Observe any legal requirements when towing or tow-starting.

**For technical reasons, vehicles with a discharged battery must not be tow-started.**

Vehicles with the Keyless Access locking and starting system should only be towed when the ignition is switched on.

Towing a vehicle when the engine is switched off and the ignition is switched on discharges the vehicle battery. Depending on the vehicle battery charge level, the drop in voltage can be large enough after just a few minutes that electrical consumers in the vehicle will no longer function, e.g. the hazard warning lights. In vehicle with Keyless Access, the steering wheel can lock ⇒ .

## WARNING

Never tow a vehicle that has no power supply.

- Never remove the vehicle key from the ignition or switch off the ignition using the starter button. Otherwise the electronic steering column lock could engage suddenly. You will no longer be able to steer the vehicle. This can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, accidents and serious injuries.
- If the power supply to the towed vehicle is disconnected, stop towing immediately and seek expert assistance.

## WARNING

If a vehicle is being towed, the vehicle handling and braking effect will change significantly. Please note the following in order to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injuries:

- Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle:
  - You will need to depress the brake pedal more vigorously than normal as the brake servo is not working. Always be careful not to drive into the vehicle that is pulling your vehicle.
  - You will need to turn the steering wheel more vigorously as the power-assisted steering function is not working.
- Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle
  - Accelerate carefully and gently.
  - Avoid sudden braking and driving manoeuvres.
  - Brake earlier than normal by pressing lightly on the brake pedal.

## NOTICE

- Remove and install the cover and the towing eye carefully so as to avoid damage to the vehicle, e.g. the paintwork.
- Unburnt fuel can enter the catalytic converter and damage it while the vehicle is being towed.

## Notes on tow-starting

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Vehicles should not be tow-started wherever possible. Use jump leads to start the engine instead ⇒ *Jump starting*.

For technical reasons, the following vehicles **cannot** be tow-started:

- Vehicles with an automatic gearbox.
- Vehicles with Keyless Access, as the electronic steering column lock may not disengage.
- Vehicles with an electronic parking brake as the brake may not release.
- If the vehicle battery has discharged, the engine control units will not function properly.

### However, if the vehicle still has to be tow-started (manual gearbox):

- Engage second or third gear.
- Keep the clutch pressed down.
- Switch on the ignition and the hazard warning lights.
- Once both vehicles are in motion, release the clutch.
- As soon as the engine starts, press the clutch and put the gear into neutral. This helps to prevent driving into the towing vehicle.

### NOTICE

When tow-starting, unburnt fuel can enter the catalytic converter and damage it.

## Notes on towing

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Tow rope or tow bar

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow bar. Only use a tow rope if you do not have a tow bar.

The tow rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the strain on both vehicles. It is advisable to use a tow rope made of synthetic fibre or similarly elastic material.

Only attach the tow rope or tow bar to the specially provided towing eyes or to the towing bracket ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#).

Vehicles with a **factory-fitted towing bracket** must **only** use tow bars that are specially designed to fit a ball head ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#).

### When a vehicle with an automatic gearbox has to be towed:

Check whether the vehicle can be towed ⇒ [When should your vehicle not be towed?](#)

- Switch on the ignition.
- Select the neutral position or move the selector lever to **N** ⇒ [DSG® dual clutch gearbox](#), ⇒ [Manual gearbox: selecting a gear](#).
- Do not allow the vehicle to be towed at speeds faster than 50 km/h (30 mph).
- Do not allow the vehicle to be towed further than 50 km.
- Vehicles with an automatic gearbox may only be towed by the breakdown truck with the front wheels raised.

### Towing vehicles with four-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Vehicles with four-wheel drive (4MOTION) may be towed with a tow bar or tow rope. If the vehicle is towed with the rear or front axle raised, the engine must be switched off otherwise the drive train could be damaged.

### When should your vehicle not be towed?

- If, due to damage, the vehicle gearbox no longer contains any lubricant.

- If the battery is flat, this means that the steering system remains locked and the electronic parking brake and electronic steering column lock, if applied, cannot be released.
- If the distance to be towed is further than 50 km.
- If the steering function or the operating clearance of the wheels cannot be ensured, e.g. after an accident.

### Please comply with the following when towing another vehicle:

- Comply with legal regulations.
- Comply with the information on towing contained in the owner's manual for the other vehicle.



The vehicle can only be towed when the electronic parking brake and the electronic steering column lock are released. If the power supply fails or if there are faults in the electrical system, you may need to use jump leads to start the engine to release the electronic parking brake and the electronic steering column lock.

### Fitting the front towing eye

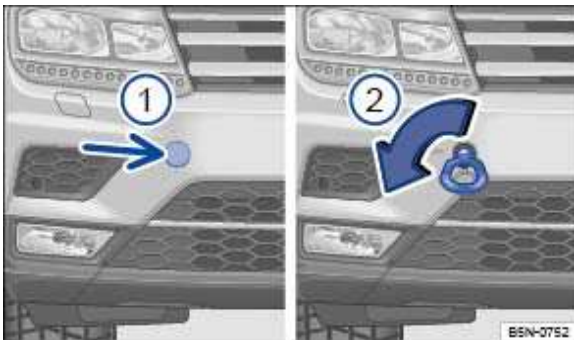


Fig. 249 In the front bumper, right-hand side: towing eye.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ Introduction

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded hole behind a cover on the right of the front bumper (arrow) ⇒ Fig. 249 .

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle.

Comply with the notes on towing ⇒ Notes on towing .

### Fitting the towing eye at front

- Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment ⇒ Vehicle tool kit .
- Press at the side of the cover ⇒ Fig. 249 ① (arrow) to release the cover fastener.
- Remove the cover and leave it hanging from the vehicle.
- Turn the towing eye ⇒ Fig. 249 ② as shown by the arrow into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible ⇒ . Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
- After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it in the opposite direction to the arrow using a suitable object.
- Insert the outer tab of the cover into the opening in the bumper and push on the upper area of the cover until the lug clicks into place in the bumper.
- If necessary clean the towing eye and place them back in the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.



### NOTICE

The towing eye must always be screwed firmly into the mounting. Otherwise, the towing eye can be ripped out of the mounting when the vehicle is being tow-started or towed.

## Fitting the front towing eye (R-Line)

---



Fig. 250 In the right-hand side of the front bumper: cover for the towing eye mounting.



Fig. 251 Front bumper, right-hand side: screwing in the towing eye.


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded hole behind a cover on the right of the front bumper ⇒ Fig. 250.

The towing eye must always be kept in the vehicle.

Comply with the notes on towing.

### Fitting the towing eye at front

- Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.
- Push the area of the cover pointing towards the vehicle ⇒ Fig. 250 in the direction of the arrow to release the cover fastener.
- Remove the cover and leave it hanging from the vehicle.
- Turn the towing eye **anti-clockwise** into the threaded hole and tighten as far as possible ⇒ Fig. 251 ⇒ . Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
- After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it with a suitable object **clockwise**.
- Insert the lug on the cover on the opening pointing towards the vehicle side in the bumper and push on the opposite area of the cover until the lug engages in the bumper.
- If necessary clean the towing eye and place them back in the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.

## ! NOTICE


The towing eye must always be screwed firmly into the mounting. Otherwise, the towing eye can be ripped out of the mounting when the vehicle is being tow-started or towed.

### Fitting the rear towing eye




Fig. 252 On the right-hand side of the rear bumper: screwed-in towing eye.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The towing eye is screwed into a threaded hole behind a cover on the right-hand side of the rear bumper ⇒ [Fig. 252 ①](#). In vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket there is **no** mounting for the removable towing eye behind the cover. Use the towing bracket for towing ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#), ⇒ .

Comply with the notes on towing ⇒ [Notes on towing](#).

### Fitting the towing eye at the rear (vehicles without factory-fitted towing bracket )

- Remove the towing eye from the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment ⇒ [Vehicle tool kit](#).
- Press at the bottom of the cover ⇒ [Fig. 252 ①](#) (arrow) to release the cover fastener.
- Remove the cover and leave it hanging from the vehicle.
- Turn the towing eye as shown by the arrow into the threaded hole ⇒ [Fig. 252 ②](#) and tighten as far as possible ⇒ . Use a suitable object to screw the towing eye fully and securely into the mounting.
- After you have finished towing, remove the towing eye by unscrewing it in the opposite direction to the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 252 ②](#) using a suitable object.
- Insert the lower locking lug in the opening in the bumper and push on the upper area of the cover until the upper locking lug engages in the bumper.
- If necessary clean the towing eye and place them back in the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment.

## ! NOTICE

- The towing eye must always be screwed firmly into the mounting. Otherwise, the towing eye can be ripped out of the mounting when the vehicle is being tow-started or towed.
- Vehicles with a factory-fitted towing bracket must use only tow bars that are specially designed for fitting to a ball head. If you use an unsuitable tow bar, the ball head and the vehicle could be damaged. You should use a tow rope instead.

## Driving tips when towing

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow rope. Both drivers should be familiar with the technique required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not attempt to tow.

When driving, remember not to pull too hard on the towing vehicle and take care to avoid jerking movements. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

It is still possible to activate the turn signals in a vehicle that is being towed, even if the hazard warning lights are switched on. Operate the turn signal and main beam lever in the required direction while the ignition is switched on. The hazard warning lights will not flash while the turn signal is being used. The hazard warning lights will start flashing automatically as soon as the turn signal lever is moved back to the neutral position.

### Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle:

- The ignition of the vehicle being towed must be switched on to prevent the steering wheel from locking, to enable the electronic parking brake to be released and so that the turn signals, horn, windscreen wipers and washers can be used.
- As the power assisted steering does not work if the engine is not running, you will need more strength to steer than you normally would.
- You will need to depress the brake pedal more vigorously than normal as the brake servo is not working. Do not drive too close to the towing vehicle.
- Read and comply with the information and notes in the owner's manual of the towing vehicle.

### Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle:

- Accelerate carefully and gently. Avoid any sudden driving manoeuvres.
- Brake earlier than normal by pressing lightly on the brake pedal.
- Read and comply with any information and notes in the owner's manual of the towed vehicle.


## Checking and refilling

### In the engine compartment

#### Safety notes for working in the engine compartment

---

Always park the vehicle on a level and stable surface before carrying out any work in the engine compartment.

The engine compartment of a motor vehicle is a hazardous area. You should only carry out work on the engine, and in the engine compartment, if you know exactly how to perform the required tasks, are aware of the general safety procedures and have access to the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Serious injuries can be caused by carrying out work incorrectly ⇒ . The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.



## WARNING

Unintentional vehicle movements during service work can cause serious injury.

- Never work underneath a vehicle if it is not secured against rolling away. If you are working underneath the vehicle while the wheels are on the ground, the vehicle must be on a level, the wheels chocked, and the vehicle key removed from the ignition lock as required.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle. The vehicle jack is not sufficient for this task and can fail, which can lead to serious injuries.
- The start/stop system must have been deactivated.



## WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a dangerous area. Serious injuries can be sustained here.

- The utmost care and attention must be paid when carrying out any work and you must follow the general safety rules. Never take any risks.
- Never do any work on the engine or in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry it out. If you are uncertain of what to do, the work should be carried out by a qualified workshop. Serious injuries can result from work that has not been carried out properly.
- Never open the bonnet if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Hot steam or hot coolant can cause serious burns. Always wait until you can no longer see or hear steam or coolant coming from the engine compartment.
- Always allow the engine to cool down before opening the bonnet.
- Hot parts of the engine or exhaust system can burn the skin.
- Observe the following points before opening the bonnet once the engine has cooled down:
  - Switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to position P or move the gear lever to the neutral position.
  - Switch off the ignition and remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
  - Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave the vehicle unattended.
- The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Coolant may spray out and cause serious burns and other injuries.
  - Slowly and carefully turn the cap on the coolant expansion tank anticlockwise while exerting gentle downward pressure on the cap.
  - Always protect the face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- When refilling, do not spill any service fluids on engine components or on the exhaust system. The spilt service fluids can start a fire.





## WARNING

High voltages in the electrical system can cause electric shocks, burns, serious injuries and death!

- Never short circuit the electric system. The vehicle battery could explode.
- Please note the following guidelines to help reduce the risk of an electric shock and serious injuries while the engine is running or being started:
  - Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
  - Never touch the electrical wiring and connections of gas discharge bulbs.



## WARNING

There are rotating components in the engine compartment that can cause serious injury.

- Never place your hand near these components or in the radiator fan. Touching the rotary blades can result in serious injuries. The fan is temperature-controlled and can start automatically, even if the ignition has been switched off and the vehicle key has been removed from the ignition lock.
- If any work has to be performed when the engine is started or with the engine running, there is an additional, potentially fatal, safety risk from the rotating parts, such as the poly V-belts, alternator, radiator fan etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always be particularly careful.
  - Always ensure that no body parts, jewellery, ties, loose items of clothing or long hair can be caught up in rotating engine components. Before starting work, remove any jewellery and ties, tie up long hair and pull clothes in tightly to avoid them getting caught in the engine compartment.
  - Always take due care and attention when depressing the accelerator. The vehicle could move, even if the electronic parking brake is applied.
- Always ensure you have not left any objects, such as cleaning cloths and tools, in the engine compartment. Any forgotten items can cause malfunctions, engine damage and fires.



## WARNING

Additional insulating materials such as covers in the engine compartment could disrupt the operation of the engine, start fires and lead to severe injuries.

- Never cover the engine with any insulating materials.



## WARNING

Service fluids and some materials in the engine compartment are highly flammable and can cause fires and serious injuries!

- Never smoke in the vicinity of the engine compartment.
- Never work near naked flames or sparks.
- Never spill fluids onto the engine. They could ignite on hot engine components and hence cause injuries.
- Please note the following when carrying out any work on the fuel system or the electrical system:
  - Always disconnect the vehicle battery. Ensure that the vehicle is unlocked when the vehicle battery is disconnected as otherwise the anti-theft alarm will be activated.
  - Never work in the direct proximity of heating systems, water heaters or any other open flames.
- Always have a fully functional and tested fire extinguisher to hand.



## NOTICE

When topping up or changing service fluids, ensure that you pour the correct service fluids into the correct openings. The use of incorrect service fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.



Service fluids leaks are harmful to the environment. So you should regularly check the ground underneath your vehicle. If there are spots of oil or other service fluids on the ground, the vehicle should be inspected by a qualified workshop. Any spilled service fluids must be disposed of properly.

## Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment

### Checklist

The following steps should always be carried out in the specified order before working in the engine compartment ⇒ ⚠ :

- ✓ Park the vehicle on a level and stable surface.
- ✓ Depress and hold the brake pedal until you have switched off the ignition.
- ✓ Switch on the electronic parking brake Electronic parking brake.
- ✓ Select the neutral position Manual gearbox: selecting a gear or move the selector lever to position P DSG® dual clutch gearbox.
- ✓ Switch off the ignition and remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Allow the engine to cool sufficiently.
- ✓ Children and other people should be kept well away from the engine compartment.
- ✓ Ensure that the vehicle cannot roll away unexpectedly.



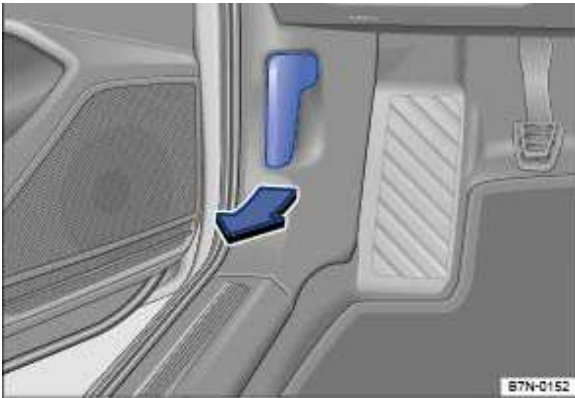
## WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to severe injuries.

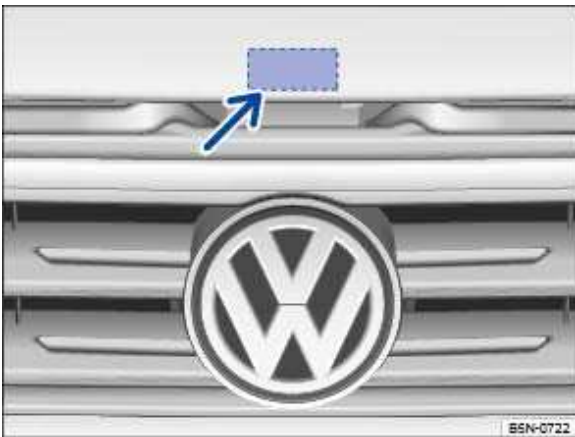
- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## Opening and closing the bonnet





**Fig. 253** In the footwell on the driver's side: release lever for the bonnet.



**Fig. 254** Above the radiator grille: bonnet control lever.

### Opening the bonnet

- Ensure that the windscreen wiper arms are positioned on the windscreen before opening the bonnet ⇒ ①.
- Open the driver door and pull the release lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ Fig. 253. The bonnet is released from its lock by a spring mechanism ⇒ ⚠.
- Lift the bonnet at the control lever ⇒ Fig. 254 (arrow) and open fully. The bonnet is held in the open position by the gas strut.

### Closing the bonnet

- To close the bonnet, pull it down to overcome the gas strut pressure ⇒ ⚠.
- Let the bonnet drop into the catches from a height of about 30 cm – *do not* press it down!

If the bonnet has not closed properly, lift it and then close it again.

The bonnet sits flush with the body parts around it when it is closed properly. The bonnet is no longer highlighted in the instrument cluster display ⇒ *Display* or the display goes out.

## WARNING

If the bonnet is not closed properly, it can open suddenly while you are driving and completely obscure your view of the road. This can lead to accidents and serious injuries.

- After closing the bonnet, always check that it is properly secured. The bonnet must be flush with the surrounding body panels.
- If you notice that the bonnet is not closed properly while the vehicle is in motion, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and close the bonnet.
- Therefore the bonnet should only be opened or closed when you are sure that nobody is in its path.

## NOTICE


- The bonnet should only be opened when the wiper arms are flush to the windscreen and when they are switched off in order to avoid damage to the bonnet and the wiper arms.
- Always return the wiper arms to the windscreen before starting your journey.

## Display



Fig. 255 On the instrument cluster display: the bonnet is open or not closed properly (illustration).

A symbol in the instrument cluster display ⇒ Fig. 255 indicates that the bonnet is open or not closed properly.


 **Do not drive on!** If necessary, lift the bonnet and then close it again.

This symbol is also visible when the ignition is switched off and will go out a few seconds after the vehicle has been locked when all doors are closed.

## WARNING

Failure to observe the warning displays could lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and to accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any warning displays.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

 The symbol can differ depending on the version of the instrument cluster.

## Service fluids and consumables

---

All service fluids and consumables, e.g. tyres, engine coolant and vehicle batteries, are being constantly developed. The same applies to toothed belts, engine oils and spark plugs for combustion engines. For this reason, service fluids and consumables should be replaced at a qualified workshop. Volkswagen dealerships are kept up to date on all innovations.


### WARNING

Unsuitable service fluids and consumables, and the incorrect use of these fluids and consumables, can cause accidents, serious injuries, burns or poisoning.

- Service fluids must be kept in their original sealed container.
- Never store service fluids in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers could drink them.
- Keep children away from all service fluids and consumables.
- Always read and follow the information and warnings on the service fluid packaging.
- When using products that give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well-ventilated area.
- Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail varnish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are toxic and highly flammable. They could cause fires and explosions.

### NOTICE

- Only use suitable service fluids for refilling. Never use the wrong service fluid. Failure to observe this warning can result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.
- Optional equipment and other accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. The engine may overheat at high ambient temperatures and high engine loads.

 Leaking service fluids can pollute the environment. Spilt service fluids must be collected in suitable containers and disposed of properly and with respect for the environment.

## Washer fluid





---



Fig. 256 In the engine compartment: cap of washer fluid reservoir.

The windscreen washer fluid level should be checked regularly and topped up as necessary.

A filter can be found in the feed throat of the washer fluid reservoir. The filter keeps large dirt particles away from the windscreen washer jets when refilling. The filter should only be removed for cleaning. If the filter is damaged or is not present, dirt particles can enter the system and will block the washer jets.

- Open the bonnet  ⇒ *In the engine compartment*.
- The washer fluid reservoir is identified by the  symbol on the cap ⇒ *Fig. 256*.
- Check whether there is enough windscreen washer fluid in the reservoir.
- To top up, mix clean water (not distilled water) with a washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen ⇒ . Observe the dilution instructions on the packaging.
- At low temperatures, add a special anti-freeze agent so that the fluid cannot freeze ⇒ .

## Capacities

The washer fluid reservoir has a capacity of between 3 and 5 litres depending on the vehicle equipment level.

### **WARNING**

**Never mix coolant additive or other unsuitable additives into the windscreen washer fluid. These may leave an oily film on the screen, restricting the field of vision.**

- Use clean, clear water (not distilled water) with a washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen. Windscreen washer fluid recommended by Volkswagen is available from a Volkswagen dealership.
- A suitable anti-freeze agent should be added to the windscreen washer fluid if necessary.

### **NOTICE**

- Never mix other cleaning agents with the cleaning agents recommended by Volkswagen. This can cause the ingredients to separate and block the windscreen washer jets.
- When topping up service fluids, please ensure that you pour the correct service fluids into the correct openings. The use of incorrect service fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.

## Engine oil

### **Introduction**

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Warning and indicator lamps*
- ⇒ *Engine oil specifications*
- ⇒ *Changing engine oil*
- ⇒ *Engine oil consumption*
- ⇒ *Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil*



## WARNING

Incorrect handling of engine oil can cause serious burns and other injuries.

- Always wear eye protection when handling engine oil.
- Engine oil is toxic and must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Engine oil must be kept in the closed original container. This also applies to used oil until it is disposed of.
- Never use empty food containers, bottles or other containers to store engine oil as other people may then drink the engine oil.
- Regular contact with engine oil can damage the skin. Skin that has been in contact with engine oil should be washed thoroughly with water and soap.
- Engine oil becomes extremely hot when the engine is running and can scald skin severely. Always allow the engine to cool down.







Leaking or spilt engine oil can pollute the environment. Spilt service fluids must be collected then disposed of properly and in an environmentally responsible way.

## Warning and indicator lamps



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Warning lamps and text messages may appear on the instrument cluster display. These warnings may also be accompanied by acoustic signals.

Lit up	Possible cause/action
	<p>Engine oil level too low or too high.</p> <p>Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level ⇒ <a href="#">Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil</a> .</p>
Flashes	Possible cause/action
	<p>Engine oil pressure is too low.</p> <p> <b>Do not drive on!</b></p> <p>Switch off the engine. Check the engine oil level ⇒ <a href="#">Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil</a> .</p> <p>- Do <i>not</i> drive on or remain at idling speed if the warning lamp is flashing even if the engine oil level is correct. The engine could otherwise be damaged. Seek expert assistance.</p>
	<p>Fault in the engine oil system.</p> <p>Go to a qualified workshop. The engine oil sensor should be checked.</p>

## **WARNING**

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## **NOTICE**

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.



Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly on the instrument cluster display as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.


## Engine oil specifications



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings  *Introduction*

The engine oil used must correspond exactly to the specifications in the *⇒BookletService schedule*.

The correct engine oil is important for the function and service life of the engine. A special high quality multigrade oil has been filled at the factory and this can normally be used as an all-season oil.



If possible, use only Volkswagen-approved engine oil . To comply with flexible oil change service requirements, refill only with approved flexible service engine oil that meets the corresponding VW standard. The engine oils listed are **multigrade high-lubricity oils**.

Engine oils are constantly being developed and improved. Volkswagen dealerships are kept up to date on all innovations. Volkswagen therefore recommends having engine oil changes done by a Volkswagen dealership.

The quality of the engine oil is not only tailored to the requirements of engines and exhaust gas treatment systems, but also to fuel quality. Due to the way in which a combustion engine works, engine oil always comes into contact with combustion residues and fuel, which has a knock-on effect on the ageing process of the oil.

The quality of fuels can vary greatly between individual markets and this must be taken into account when selecting the correct engine oil.

The use of engine oils compliant with the VW 504 00 und VW 507 00 specifications requires a fuel quality compliant with EN 228 (petrol) and EN 590 (diesel), or fuel of an equivalent quality. **Engine oils compliant with VW 504 00 und VW 507 00 are therefore unsuitable for use in a large number of markets.**

Engine type	Permitted engine oil specifications 		Alternative engine oil specifications 
	Flexible service QI6 (LongLife)	Fixed service QI1, QI2, QI3, QI4, QI7 (based on time/distance travelled)	<i>Only in the EU, Switzerland, Norway, Japan and Australia.<sup>a)</sup></i>
Petrol engines	VW 504 00	VW 502 00	VW 504 00
Diesel engines <b>with</b> diesel particulate filter <sup>b)</sup>	VW 507 00	VW 507 00	–



Engine type	Permitted engine oil specifications ⇒ ⓘ		Alternative engine oil specifications ⇒ ⓘ
	Flexible service QI6 (LongLife)	Fixed service QI1, QI2, QI3, QI4, QI7 (based on time/distance travelled)	Only in the EU, Switzerland, Norway, Japan and Australia. <sup>a)</sup>
Diesel engines without diesel particulate filter <sup>b)</sup>	VW 507 00	VW 505 01	VW 507 00

## ⓘ NOTICE

- Do not add any additional lubricants to the engine oil. Any damage caused by the use of such additives is not covered by the warranty.
- Only those engine oil specifications that have been approved for use with the engine should be used. Using other engine oils can cause engine damage.
- Another engine oil can be used in the event of an emergency if the listed engine oils are not available. To avoid damaging the engine, a maximum quantity of 0.5 litres of the following engine oil may be used only once until the next oil change:
  - Petrol engines: standards ACEAA3/B4 or API SN (API SM).
  - Diesel engines: standards ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

<sup>a)</sup> Alternative engine oil specifications may only be used in fixed services QI1, QI2, QI3, QI4 and QI7, and only when fuel of a quality compliant with EN 228 (petrol) and EN 590 (diesel), or fuel of an equivalent quality, is available in the particular country.

<sup>b)</sup> You can also check with a qualified workshop if you are unsure whether your vehicle is equipped with a diesel particulate filter. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Changing engine oil



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ ⚠ Introduction

The engine oil must be changed regularly in accordance with the specifications in the service schedule ⇒ Booklet *Service schedule*.

The engine oil and filter change should be carried out by a qualified workshop due to the special tools and knowledge required, this also applies to the disposal of used oil. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

More details on the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

Additives in the engine oil can cause new engine oil to discolour quickly. This is normal and does not mean that the engine oil should be changed more frequently.

## WARNING

If, in exceptional cases, you have to carry out an oil change yourself, please note the following:

- Always wear eye protection.
- Always allow the engine to cool down completely to avoid burns.
- Avoid raising your arms when removing the oil drain plug with your fingers to help prevent oil from running down your arm.
- Use a suitable container when draining the used oil. It must be at least large enough to hold the entire quantity of engine oil required for refilling.
- Never store engine oil in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may not know that they contain engine oil.
- Engine oil is toxic and must be stored out of the reach of children.



Before changing the engine oil, first find out where old oil can be disposed of properly near you.



Used oil must be disposed of in accordance with regulations governing the protection of the environment. Never dispose of old oil in locations such as gardens, woods, sewerage systems, on streets and roads, or in rivers and waterways.

## Engine oil consumption



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Engine oil consumption can vary from engine to engine and can change during the working life of an engine.

The vehicle may consume up to 1.0 litre of engine oil per 2,000 km, depending on how you drive and the conditions in which the car is used. In new vehicles, consumption is likely to be higher for the first 5,000 km. The engine oil level must therefore be checked at regular intervals, preferably when refuelling and before long journeys.

When the engine is working hard, for instance during long motorway cruising in summer, when trailer towing ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#) or when climbing mountain passes, the oil level should be kept within the upper permissible area ⇒ [Fig. 257](#) ©.

## Checking the engine oil level and refilling engine oil

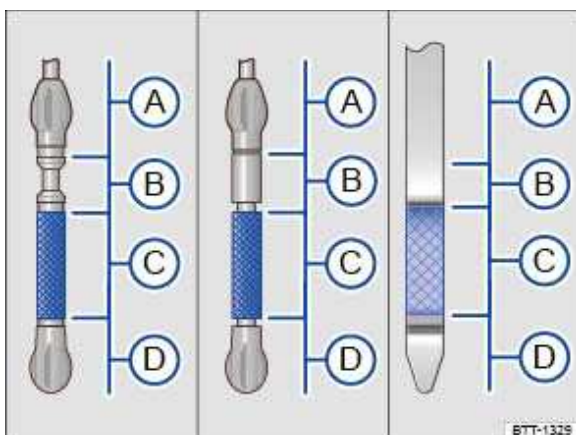


Fig. 257 Engine oil level markings on the oil dipstick.





Fig. 258 In the engine compartment: engine oil filler cap (illustration).

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

Key to ⇒ Fig. 257 :

- A** Engine oil level too high – go to a qualified workshop.
- B** Do not refill engine oil.
- C** Engine oil level OK.
- D** Engine oil level too low – refill engine oil.

## Checklist

---

Carry out the steps in the specified order ⇒  :

- ✓ With the engine at operating temperature, park the vehicle on a level surface to ensure that the engine oil reading is correct.
- ✓ Switch off the engine and wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the sump.
- ✓ Open the bonnet In the engine compartment.
- ✓ Identify the engine oil filler cap and oil dipstick. The engine oil filler opening bears the symbol on the cap and the oil dipstick has a coloured handle. If you cannot find the cap and dipstick please contact a qualified workshop.
- ✓ Pull the dipstick out of the guide tube and wipe it off with a clean cloth.
- ✓ Insert the oil dipstick into the guide tube again as far as it will go. If there is a marking on the upper end of the oil dipstick, this marking must fit in the corresponding groove at the top end of the guide tube when inserting.

Pull the dipstick out again and read the engine oil level on the dipstick as follows: **A** Engine oil level too high. Follow any messages that are shown on the instrument cluster display and go to a qualified workshop . **B** Do not fill the engine oil . Continue to step 16. **C** Engine oil level OK. Engine oil can, e.g. in the case of high engine loads Engine oil consumption, be filled up to the upper limit of this range. Continue to step 8 or 16. **D** Engine oil level is too low. The engine oil must be refilled. Continue to step 8.

- ✓ After reading off the oil level, push the oil dipstick back into the guide tube as far as it will go.
- ✓ Unscrew the engine oil filler opening cap .
- ✓ Only the engine oil expressly approved by Volkswagen for this engine should be gradually refilled in small quantities (no more than 0.5 l).
- ✓ In order to avoid overfilling, wait for approximately one minute after each refill step to allow the engine oil to flow into the oil sump up to the marking on the engine oil dipstick.
- ✓ Read the engine oil level from the dipstick again before refilling with a further small quantity of engine oil. Never overfill engine oil .
- ✓ After topping up, the engine oil level should be in the middle of area **C**. It should not be above **C**, in area **B**, and must not reach area **A** .
- ✓ If too much engine oil has been added unintentionally and the engine oil level is in area **A**, do not start the engine. Inform a qualified workshop and possibly seek expert assistance.
- ✓

- ▼ After refilling, close the engine oil filler opening with the cap.
- ✓ Insert the oil dipstick into the guide tube as far as it will go. If there is a marking on the upper end of the oil dipstick, this marking must fit in the corresponding groove at the top end of the guide tube when inserting.
- ✓ Close the bonnet in the engine compartment.


## **WARNING**

Engine oil can ignite if it comes into contact with hot engine components. It can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.

- If engine oil is spilt on cold engine parts it can heat up and ignite when the engine is running.
- Always ensure that the engine oil filler cap is securely tightened after refilling, and that the dipstick is properly inserted back into the guide tube. This will prevent the engine oil from draining out on to hot engine components when the engine is running.

## **NOTICE**

- If too much engine oil has been added unintentionally and the engine oil level is in area ⇒ Fig. 257 ⓐ, do not start the engine. Inform a qualified workshop and possibly seek expert assistance. The catalytic converter and the engine could otherwise be damaged.
- When topping up service fluids, please ensure that you pour the correct service fluids into the correct openings. The use of incorrect service fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.

 The engine oil level must not be in area ⇒ Fig. 257 ⓐ. Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and escape into the atmosphere via the exhaust system.

## Coolant


### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

⇒ *Coolant specification*

⇒ *Checking the coolant level and refilling coolant*

You should only carry out work on the cooling system if you know exactly how to perform the required tasks, are aware of the general safety procedures and have access to the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Serious injuries can be caused by carrying out work incorrectly ⇒ . The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.



## WARNING

Engine coolant is toxic.

- Engine coolant should only be kept in sealed original containers in a safe place.
- Never store engine coolant in empty food containers, bottles or any other non-original containers as people finding these containers may then drink the engine coolant.
- The engine coolant must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Please note that the amount of correct coolant additive used must be sufficient for the lowest ambient temperature that you expect the vehicle to be exposed to.
- Coolant can freeze at extremely cold outside temperatures, causing the vehicle to break down. Vehicle occupants with inadequate winter clothing could then freeze to death as the heating will also no longer function.



Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Spilt service fluids must be collected then disposed of properly and in an environmentally responsible way.

## Coolant specification

---





First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

The cooling system is filled at the factory with a mixture of specially prepared water and at least 40% coolant additive **G 13** (TL-VW 774 J). The coolant additive is dyed purple. This mixture of water and coolant additive gives the necessary frost protection down to -25°C (-13°F) and protects the alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion. The mixture also prevents scaling and raises the boiling point of the coolant.

In order to protect the coolant system, the proportion of coolant additive must *always* be at least 40%, even if anti-freeze is not required in warm weather and warm climates.

If greater frost protection is required in very cold climates, the proportion of anti-freeze additive can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additive should not exceed 60%, as this would reduce the frost protection and the cooling effect.

When refilling the coolant, a mixture of **distilled water** and at least 40% coolant additive - G 13 - or - G 12 plus-plus - (TL-VW 774 G) (both of which are dyed purple) must be used in order to obtain the optimum corrosion protection ⇒ . Mixing - G 13 - with the coolant additives - G 12 plus - (TL-VW 774 F), - G 12 - (dyed red) or - G 11 - (dyed blue-green) will significantly decrease the level of corrosion protection and should therefore be avoided ⇒ .

## WARNING

Insufficient anti-freeze in the coolant system can cause the engine to break down and cause serious injuries.

- Please note that the amount of correct coolant additive used must be sufficient for the lowest ambient temperature that you expect the vehicle to be exposed to.
- Coolant can freeze at extremely cold outside temperatures, causing the vehicle to break down. Vehicle occupants with inadequate winter clothing could then freeze to death as the heating will also no longer function.

## NOTICE

Never mix genuine coolant additives with other coolants that have not been approved by Volkswagen. Mixing other coolants could cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.

- If the liquid in the coolant expansion tank is not pink (colouring results from mixing the purple coolant additive with distilled water) but for example, brown instead, - G 13 - has been mixed with an unsuitable coolant. The coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case. Failure to observe this point can result in serious faults or engine damage.



Coolant and coolant additives can pollute the environment. Spilt service fluids must be collected then disposed of properly and in an environmentally responsible way.

## Checking the coolant level and refilling coolant



Fig. 259 In the engine compartment: markings on the coolant expansion tank.






Fig. 260 In the engine compartment: coolant expansion tank cap.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The warning lamp for the engine coolant will light up if the engine coolant level is too low.





## Preparation

- Park the vehicle on a firm and level surface.
- Allow the engine to cool down ⇒ .
- Open the bonnet  ⇒ *In the engine compartment*.
- The coolant expansion tank is identified by the  symbol on the cap ⇒ *Fig. 260*.

## Checking the coolant level

- When the engine is cold, check the coolant level on the side markings of the engine coolant expansion tank ⇒ *Fig. 259*. The engine coolant level must be between the marks.
- Refill the coolant if the liquid level in the coolant expansion tank is below the minimum marking (min). When the engine is warm, the coolant level may be slightly above the top line of the marked area.

## Refilling coolant

- Always protect your face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam by placing a suitable cloth on the cap of the coolant expansion tank.
- Unscrew the cap carefully ⇒ .
- Refill only **new** coolant according to the Volkswagen specification ⇒ *Coolant specification* ⇒ .
- Only top up coolant if there is coolant residue in the expansion tank. If this is not observed, the engine could be damaged. If you cannot see any coolant in the expansion tank **do not drive on**. Seek professional assistance.
- If you can see coolant residue in the coolant expansion tank, refill coolant until the level remains stable.
- The coolant level must be between the marks on the coolant expansion tank ⇒ *Fig. 259*. **Do not fill up above the top edge of the marked area** ⇒ .
- Close the cap tightly.
- If in an emergency you do not have access to the required specification ⇒ *Coolant specification*, do not use any other coolant additive! Instead, initially refill with **distilled water** ⇒  only. Then add the correct proportion of coolant additive as soon as possible ⇒ *Coolant specification*.

## WARNING

Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns.

- Never open the bonnet if you can see or hear steam or engine coolant coming out of the engine compartment. Always wait until you can no longer see or hear escaping steam or coolant.
- Always allow the engine to cool down completely before carefully opening the bonnet. Hot components can burn the skin.
- The following points should be noted before opening the bonnet once the engine has cooled down:
  - Switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to position P or move the gear lever to the neutral position.
  - Switch off the ignition and remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock.
  - Always keep children away from the engine compartment and never leave the vehicle unattended.
- The cooling system is under pressure when the engine is hot. Never open the cap of the coolant expansion tank when the engine is hot. Coolant may spray out and cause serious burns and other injuries.
  - Turn the cap slowly and very carefully anti-clockwise while exerting gentle downward pressure on the cap.
  - Always protect the face, hands and arms from hot coolant or steam with a large, thick cloth.
- When refilling, do not spill any service fluids on engine components or on the exhaust system. The spilt service fluids can start a fire. In certain circumstances, the ethylene glycol in the engine can catch fire.

## NOTICE

- Refill only with distilled water. All other types of water can cause corrosion in the engine due to the chemical components contained therein. This can also lead to engine failure. If any other type of water than distilled water is refilled, the fluid in the cooling system should be completely replaced immediately by a qualified workshop.
- Do not fill coolant above the top of the marked area → [Fig. 259](#). Otherwise the excess coolant will be pressed out of the cooling system when the engine is hot and could cause damage.
- If a large amount of coolant has been lost, do not refill the coolant until the engine has *cooled completely*. Heavy coolant loss is an indication of leaks in the engine cooling system. The engine cooling system should be checked by a qualified workshop as soon as possible. Failure to do so can result in engine damage.
- Do not top up with coolant if there is no more coolant in the coolant expansion tank. Air could have entered the cooling system. Do not drive on! Seek expert assistance. Failure to do so can result in engine damage.
- When topping up service fluids, please ensure that you pour the correct service fluids into the correct openings. The use of incorrect service fluids could result in serious malfunctions and engine damage.

## Brake fluid







**Fig. 261** In the engine compartment: cap on the brake fluid container.

Brake fluid will gradually absorb water from the surrounding air. The brake system will be damaged if there is too much water in the brake fluid. The boiling point of the brake fluid is also considerably reduced by the water content. Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock in the brake system if the water content is too high. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can even cause the brake system to fail completely. Your own safety and that of other road users depends on having a brake system that functions properly at all times.

## Brake fluid specification

Volkswagen has developed a brake fluid that has been optimised for the brake system in the vehicle. To ensure optimal operation of the brake system, Volkswagen recommends the use of brake fluid compliant with **VW standard 501 14**.

Before using a particular brake fluid, check that the specifications printed on the container correspond to the vehicle requirements.

Brake fluid that is compliant with VW standard 501 14 is available from Volkswagen dealerships.



If this brake fluid is not available and it is necessary to use another high-quality brake fluid instead, brake fluid that is compliant with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 can be used.

Not all brake fluids that are compliant with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4 have the same chemical composition. Some of these brake fluids may contain chemicals that can damage or destroy brake system components over time.

Volkswagen therefore recommends the use of brake fluid that is compliant with **VW standard 501 14** to ensure sustained optimal operation of the brake system.

Brake fluid that is compliant with VW standard 501 14 fulfils the requirements of DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4.

## Brake fluid level

 Brake fluid level is too low.  **Do not drive on!** Check the brake fluid level.

The brake fluid level must always be between the MIN and MAX marking on the brake fluid reservoir or above the MIN marking.

The brake fluid level cannot be checked accurately in all models as engine components may partially conceal the brake fluid container. If the brake fluid level cannot be read exactly, please go to a qualified workshop.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used as the brake pads wear and the brakes are automatically adjusted.

## Changing the brake fluid

The brake fluid should be changed by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose. Only brake fluid that conforms with the required specification should be used.



## WARNING

Brake failure or reduced braking effect can be caused by the brake fluid level being too low or by brake fluid that is too old or unsuitable.

- The brake system and brake fluid level must be checked regularly.
- The brake fluid should be changed regularly.
- Heavy use of the brakes may cause a vapour lock if the brake fluid is left in the system for too long. Vapour locks reduce levels of braking power, considerably increase braking distance and can cause the brake system to fail completely.
- Please ensure that the correct brake fluid is used. Only use brake fluid that is explicitly compliant with VW standard 501 14.
- Any other brake fluid or a low-quality one can affect the functioning of the brakes and reduce their effectiveness.
- If a brake fluid compliant with VW standard 501 14 is not available, use a high-quality brake fluid compliant with DIN ISO 4925 CLASS 4 or the US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4, but only in exceptional circumstances.
- The refilled brake fluid must be new.



## WARNING

Brake fluid is toxic.

- In order to reduce the risk of poisoning, never use bottles or other containers to store brake fluid. There is always a risk of someone drinking from such containers, even if they are labelled appropriately.
- Brake fluid must always be stored in its original sealed container and kept out of the reach of children.



## NOTICE

Brake fluid that has leaked or been spilt can damage the vehicle paintwork, plastic parts and tyres. Wipe off brake fluid that has leaked or been spilled immediately from all parts of the vehicle.



Brake fluid can pollute the environment. Any spilt service fluids must be cleaned up and disposed of properly.

# Vehicle battery




## Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Warning lamp*
- ⇒ *Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery*
- ⇒ *Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery*






The vehicle battery is a component of the Electrical system and is designed to supply the vehicle with power.

You should only carry out work on the electrical system if you know exactly how to perform the required tasks, are aware of the general safety procedures and have access to the correct equipment, service fluids and suitable tools. Serious injuries can be caused by carrying out work incorrectly ⇒ . The work should be carried out by a qualified workshop if you are uncertain. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## Location of the vehicle battery

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, the battery may be located in the engine compartment or in the luggage compartment under the luggage compartment floor.

## Explanation of the warnings on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Electrolyte is very corrosive and caustic. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	No fires, sparks, naked lights or smoking!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is charging!
	Always keep children away from electrolyte and the vehicle battery.


### **WARNING**

Any work on the vehicle battery and the electrical system can cause serious chemical burns, fire or electric shocks. Always read the following warnings and safety information before carrying out any kind of work:

- Switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers before carrying out any work on the vehicle battery and also disconnect the negative cable from the vehicle battery.
- Children should always be kept away from electrolyte and the vehicle battery.
- Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.
- Electrolyte is very aggressive. It can burn the skin and can cause blindness. When working with the battery, ensure that your hands, arms and face in particular are protected from acid spillages.
- Do not smoke during the work, and never work near naked flames or sparks.
- When handling cables and electrical equipment, avoid generating sparks and electrostatic charge.
- Never short circuit the battery poles.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery. It can explode. Damaged vehicle batteries must be replaced as soon as possible.
- Damaged or frozen vehicle batteries must be replaced immediately. Discharged vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).
- In vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment: ensure that the gas discharge hose is properly connected to the battery.

### **NOTICE**


- Do not allow direct sunlight onto the vehicle battery for an extended period as the UV rays could damage the battery housing.
- If the vehicle is left standing in cold conditions for a long period, protect the vehicle battery from frost. If it freezes it will be damaged.

 When you start the engine after the vehicle battery has been totally discharged or after a successful jump start, you may find that system settings (time, date, personal convenience settings and programming) have been changed or deleted. Check and correct the settings as necessary once the battery has been sufficiently charged.

## Warning lamp

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

Warning lamps and text messages may appear on the instrument cluster display. These warnings may also be accompanied by acoustic signals.

Lit up	Possible cause/action
	<p>Fault in the alternator.</p> <p>Go to a qualified workshop. Have the electrical system checked.</p> <p>Switch off any electrical consumers that are not required. The vehicle battery will not be charged by the alternator while the vehicle is in motion.</p>


### WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated warning lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

### NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated warning lamps and text messages could lead to your vehicle being damaged.

 Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly on the instrument cluster display as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## Checking the electrolyte level of the vehicle battery

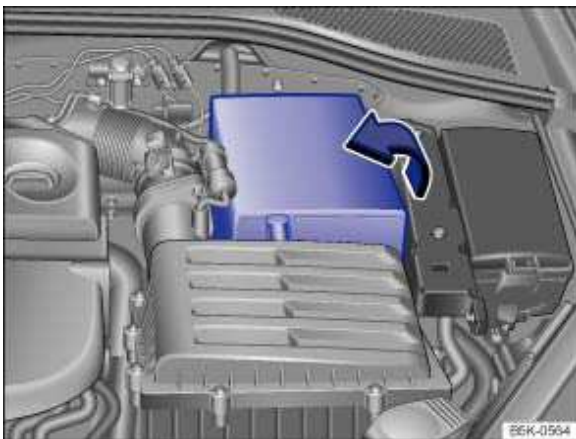
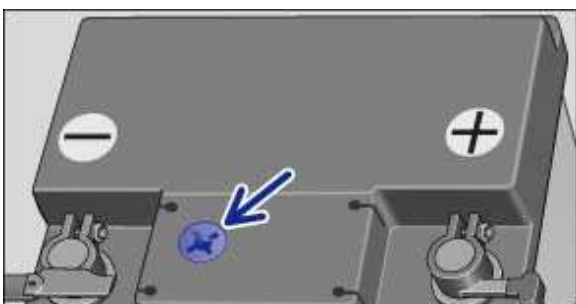


Fig. 262 In the engine compartment: opening the battery cover.





**Fig. 263** A typical window on the top of the vehicle battery.




**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The electrolyte level of the vehicle battery should be checked regularly in high-mileage vehicles, in hot countries and in older vehicle batteries. The vehicle battery is otherwise maintenance-free.

Vehicles with start/stop system ⇒ [Start/stop system](#) , vehicles with an auxiliary heater ⇒ [Auxiliary heating and ventilation](#) and vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment are fitted with special batteries. For technical reasons, it might not be possible to check the electrolyte level in these batteries.

### Preparations (vehicles with the battery in the engine compartment)

- Preparing the vehicle for working in the engine compartment ⇒ [In the engine compartment](#) .
- Open the bonnet  ⇒ [In the engine compartment](#) .

### Preparations (vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment)

In vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment, it is not possible to check the battery without first removing vehicle parts. Seek expert assistance if necessary.

- Open the boot lid ⇒ [Boot lid](#) .
- Fold up and secure the luggage compartment floor ⇒ [Boot lid](#) .

### Battery cover (vehicles with the battery in the engine compartment)

To *open*, fold the cover open in the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 262](#) .

To *close*, fold the cover against the direction of the arrow ⇒ [Fig. 262](#) .

### Checking electrolyte level (batteries with battery window)

- Ensure that enough light is available for you to clearly see the colour indication in the round window on the top of the battery ⇒ [Fig. 263](#) (arrow). Never use naked flames or glowing matter (e.g. cigarettes) as a light source.
- The colour displayed in the round viewer changes according to the electrolyte level in the battery.

Colour display	Action
<i>Light yellow or without colour</i>	The electrolyte level of the vehicle is too low. The battery should be checked and replaced by a qualified workshop if necessary.
<i>Black</i>	The electrolyte level of the vehicle battery is correct.



## WARNING

Any work on the vehicle battery can cause serious chemical burns, explosions and electric shocks.


- Always wear eye protection and protective gloves.
- Electrolyte is very aggressive. It can burn the skin and can cause blindness. When working with the battery, ensure that your hands, arms and face in particular are protected from acid spillages.
- Never tilt the vehicle battery. Electrolyte may spill out of the battery vents and cause chemical burns.
- Never open a vehicle battery.
- If acid is spilt in your eye or on your skin, rinse immediately for several minutes with cold water. Then consult a doctor immediately.
- If acid is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.

## Charging, replacing, disconnecting and connecting the vehicle battery



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Charging the battery

The battery should be charged by a qualified workshop, as the technology used in factory-fitted batteries requires voltage-limited charging ⇒ . Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

### Replacing a vehicle battery

The battery has been developed to suit the conditions of its location and has special safety features. If a vehicle battery has to be replaced, discuss the electromagnetic compatibility, size and necessary servicing, output and safety requirements for the new vehicle battery with a Volkswagen dealership before purchase.

Only maintenance-free vehicle batteries compliant with the standards TL 825 06 and VW 7 50 73 should be used. These standards must be dated July 2012 or later.


In vehicles with a special battery, e.g. *vehicles with start/stop system*, *vehicles with an auxiliary heater* ⇒ [Auxiliary heating and ventilation](#) and *vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment*, the battery may be replaced only with a battery with identical specifications.

Have the vehicle battery replaced by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

In *vehicles with start/stop system*, *vehicles with an auxiliary heater* ⇒ [Auxiliary heating and ventilation](#) and *vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment*, always arrange for the battery to be replaced by a qualified workshop, because the replacement involves an adjustment of the vehicle electronics. Only qualified workshops have the technology required to carry out this adjustment correctly. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

### Disconnecting the vehicle battery

Please note the following if the vehicle battery has to be disconnected from the electrical system in the vehicle:

- Switch off all electrical consumers and the ignition.
- Unlock the vehicle before disconnecting the battery in order to avoid triggering the alarm.
- First disconnect the negative cable and then the positive cable ⇒ .

### Connecting the vehicle battery

- Switch off all electrical consumers and the ignition before reconnecting the vehicle battery.

- First reconnect the positive cable and then the negative cable ⇒ ⚠ .

Various indicator lamps may light up after the vehicle battery has been connected and the ignition is switched on. They will go out if you drive a short distance at a speed of approximately 15 – 20 km/h (9 – 12 mph). If the indicator lamps remain lit up, the vehicle should be checked by a qualified workshop.

If the vehicle battery was disconnected for long periods, the system may not be able to calculate or correctly display the time when the next service is due ⇒ *Instrument cluster* .

*Vehicles with Keyless Access* ⇒ *Central locking and closing system* : If the ignition cannot be switched on after connecting the vehicle battery, lock and unlock the vehicle from the outside. Then try to start the ignition again. Please contact an expert if the ignition cannot be switched on.

## **Automatic switch-off for electrical consumers**

The intelligent vehicle electrical system automatically implements a range of measures to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging under high loads:

- The idling speed is increased so that the alternator provides more electricity.
- The performance of large electrical consumers may be reduced or they may be switched off completely.
- The supply of electricity to the 12-volt sockets and the cigarette lighter is interrupted temporarily while the engine is being started.

The vehicle electrical system cannot always prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. For example when the ignition is switched on for an extended period with the engine off, or when the side or parking lights are on when the vehicle is parked for an extended period.

## **Battery switch-off in an accident with airbag triggered**

Depending on the vehicle equipment level, in the event of an accident where the airbags are deployed, the electrical connection to the battery is automatically disconnected by a pyrotechnic device. This prevents short-circuiting.

## **How the vehicle battery discharges**

- Long periods at a standstill in which the engine is not running, especially if the ignition is switched on.
- The use of electrical consumers when the engine is switched off.
- When the auxiliary heater is being used ⇒ *Auxiliary heating and ventilation* .

## WARNING

Incorrectly attaching the battery and using incorrect vehicle batteries can cause short circuits, fire and serious injuries.

- Always use maintenance-free and leak-proof batteries that have the same properties, specifications and dimensions as the factory-fitted vehicle battery.

## WARNING

A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the vehicle battery is being charged.

- Vehicle batteries should only be charged in well-ventilated spaces.
- Never charge a vehicle battery once it has been frozen. Discharged vehicle batteries can even freeze at temperatures of around 0°C (+32°F).
- The vehicle battery has to be replaced if it has ever been frozen.
- Incorrectly connected cables can cause a short circuit. First connect the positive cable and then the negative cable.

## NOTICE

- Never make or break connections between vehicle batteries if the ignition is switched on or the engine is running. Never use a vehicle battery that does not correspond with the vehicle's specifications. This can damage the electrical system or electronic components, which can cause electrical faults.
- Never connect equipment that provides electricity, such as solar panels or a battery charger, to the 12-volt socket or to the cigarette lighter to charge the vehicle battery. This can damage the vehicle electrical system.



Dispose of the vehicle battery as required by legislation. Batteries may contain toxic substances such as sulphuric acid and lead.



Electrolyte can pollute the environment. Clean up any service fluid leakages and dispose of them properly.

# Wheels and tyres

## Tyre monitoring system

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Types of tyre monitoring system*
- ⇒ *Indicator lamp for the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator*
- ⇒ *Tyre Pressure Monitoring System indicator lamp*
- ⇒ *Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator*
- ⇒ *Tyre Pressure Monitoring System*


Tyre monitoring systems warn the driver about tyre pressures that are too low.





## WARNING


The intelligent tyre monitoring technology cannot overcome the laws of physics, and functions only within the limits of the system. Incorrect handling of the wheels and tyres can lead to a sudden loss of pressure in the tyres, tread separation and even tyre blow-out.

- Check tyre pressures regularly and always maintain the specified value ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) . If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.
- Always maintain the correct cold tyre pressure as specified on the label ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .
- Check tyre inflation pressure regularly when the tyres are cold. Adjust tyre pressure in the cold tyre to the recommended tyre pressure for the tyres installed on your vehicle as necessary ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .
- Check your tyres regularly for signs of wear or damage.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.

 Under-inflated tyres will increase fuel consumption and tyre wear.

 When new tyres are driven at high speeds for the first time, they can expand slightly and trigger a one-off pressure warning.

 Old tyres should only be replaced by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type.

 Do not rely solely on the tyre monitoring system. Check your tyres regularly to ensure that they are properly inflated and have no signs of damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and blisters. Remove any objects that become embedded in the tyre tread but have not penetrated into the body of the tyre itself.


## Types of tyre monitoring system

---


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

There are 2 different tyre monitoring systems available for this vehicle. Their differing features are described below:

### Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

- Monitoring of the various parameters (for example rolling circumference) of all wheels using ABS sensors (indirect measurement).
- Indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster display and text message in the instrument cluster display.
- Setting the system via menus in the infotainment system ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#) .
- Operating the menu to update the system if the tyre pressure has been altered.






### Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

- Monitoring tyre pressure by means of pressure sensors on each tyre valve (direct measurement). Tyre valve made of metal.
- Indicator lamp  in the instrument cluster display and graphical display as well as text message in the instrument cluster.
- Setting the system via menus in the infotainment system ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#) .
- Part load and full load pressures can be set.
- Tyre sizes configurable (if available).
- Automatic reprogramming if the tyre pressure has been altered.

## Indicator lamp for the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

---


 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Lit up	Possible cause ⇒ 	Remedy
	The tyre pressure of one tyre or several tyres has decreased considerably in comparison to the tyre pressure set by the driver, or the structure of the tyre is damaged. An acoustic warning will also be sounded, and a corresponding message may appear in the instrument cluster display.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Reduce speed immediately. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Do not undertake any extreme steering or braking manoeuvres!  Check all wheels and tyre pressures, and correct if necessary ⇒ <a href="#">Information about wheels and tyres</a> . The damaged tyre should be replaced. The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator will have to be re-synchronised after changing the tyre pressure, or after changing one or more wheels ⇒ <a href="#">Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator</a> .
Flashes	Possible cause ⇒ 	Remedy
	System faulty. Indicator lamp flashes for around 1 minute and then lights continuously. In addition, a corresponding text message can be displayed on the instrument cluster and on the infotainment system.	If the tyre pressure is correct, but the indicator lamp continues to flash and then lights up continuously after the ignition is switched off and back on again, and if it is not possible to calibrate the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, please go to a qualified workshop. Have the system checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause tyre damage, tyre failure, the loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injury and death.

- If the indicator lamp  lights up, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and check all the tyres ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .
- Different tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can increase wear on the tyres, reduce vehicle stability and increase the braking distance.
- Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause sudden tyre failure and lead to a tyre burst and the loss of control over the vehicle.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure of all tyres on the vehicle. The recommended tyre pressure can be found on the sticker ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .
- The tyre monitoring system cannot function correctly until all cold wheels have the correct tyre pressure.
- Pressure in all tyres must always be appropriate to the vehicle load ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .
- Always inflate all tyres to the correct tyre pressure before every journey ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .
- If driven with insufficient pressure, the tyre flexes more. This could warm up the tyre to such an extent that the tread may separate and the tyre could burst. This could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- High speeds and overloading of the vehicle may cause the tyres to heat up to such an extent that the tyre bursts, leading you to lose control of the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tyre is not flat and it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop and check and correct the tyre pressure ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated indicator lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.



Driving on unpaved roads for long periods, or a sporty driving style, can temporarily deactivate the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator.

The indicator lamp shows the malfunction, but disappears if the road conditions or driving style change.









## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System indicator lamp



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

If you have a flat tyre, if the tyre pressure is too low or if there is a system fault, the indicator lamp will light up or flash. Text messages may also appear in the instrument cluster display, and an acoustic warning may sound.


Lit up	Text message	Possible cause ⇒ 	Remedy

Lit up	Text message	Possible cause ⇒ 	Remedy
	<b>FLAT TYRE</b>	The pressure of at least one tyre is below 1.4 bar (20 psi/140 kPa) or a critical tyre pressure loss.	 <b>Do not drive on!</b> Reduce speed immediately. Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Do not undertake any extreme steering or braking manoeuvres! Check all tyres for external damage and foreign bodies. Check the pressure of all tyres. If you do not need to change a tyre immediately, you may drive slowly to the nearest qualified workshop.
	<b>TYRE PRESSURES TOO LOW!</b>	The warning indicates at least one tyre with a critical tyre pressure.	Check the tyre pressure of all tyres immediately. If you do not need to change a tyre immediately, you may drive at reduced speed to the nearest qualified workshop.
	<b>PLEASE CHECK tyre pressures.</b>	The warning indicates at least one tyre with a reduced tyre pressure.	Check the tyre pressures on all tyres at the next opportunity and correct them ⇒ <i>Information about wheels and tyres</i> . Avoid long distances and maximum speeds until the correction can be made.
---	<b>PLEASE CHECK tyre pressures.</b>	When the ignition is switched on, the warning shows that there is a loss of pressure from at least one tyre.	Check the tyre pressures on all tyres at the next opportunity and correct them ⇒ <i>Information about wheels and tyres</i> . Avoid long distances and maximum speeds until the correction can be made.
Flashes	Text message	Possible cause ⇒ 	Remedy
	---	Symbol flashes intermittently while the vehicle is in motion. There is a transmission fault between the sensor and the system. The function can be affected temporarily if there is more than one transmitter in the direct vicinity working on the same frequency (e.g. two-way radio, remote control or toys).	If necessary, switch off or avoid the source of interference.
	---	System faulty.  Indicator lamp flashes for around 1 minute and then lights continuously.	If the tyre pressure is correct, but the indicator lamp is still flashing and eventually lights up steadily after the ignition is switched off and back on again, please go to a qualified workshop. Have the system checked.

Several warning and indicator lamps will light up briefly as a functional check when the ignition is switched on. They will go out after a few seconds.

## WARNING

Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause tyre damage, tyre failure, the loss of vehicle control, accidents, serious injury and death.

- If the indicator lamp  lights up, stop the vehicle as soon as possible and check all the tyres ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .
- Different tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can increase wear on the tyres, reduce vehicle stability and increase the braking distance.
- Differing tyre pressures or tyre pressures that are too low can cause sudden tyre failure and lead to a tyre burst and the loss of control over the vehicle.
- The driver is responsible for the correct tyre pressure of all tyres on the vehicle. The recommended tyre pressure can be found on the sticker ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .
- The tyre monitoring system cannot function correctly until all cold wheels have the correct tyre pressure.
- Pressure in all tyres must always be appropriate to the vehicle load ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .
- Always inflate all tyres to the correct tyre pressure before every journey ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .
- If driven with insufficient pressure, the tyre flexes more. This could warm up the tyre to such an extent that the tread may separate and the tyre could burst. This could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- High speeds and overloading of the vehicle may cause the tyres to heat up to such an extent that the tyre bursts, leading you to lose control of the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- If the tyre is not flat and it is not necessary to change the wheel immediately, drive at low speed to the nearest qualified workshop and check and correct the tyre pressure ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#) .

## WARNING

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle breaking down in traffic, and can cause accident and serious injury.

- Never ignore any illuminated indicator lamps or text messages.
- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so.

## NOTICE

Failure to observe illuminated indicator lamps and text messages can lead to your vehicle being damaged.

## Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator uses data from the ABS sensors and other functions to check the speed of rotation and the rolling circumference of the individual wheels. Any change in the rolling circumference of one or more wheels is shown by the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator in the instrument cluster display.

### Changes in the rolling circumference

The rolling circumference of a tyre can change:


- If the tyre pressure has been changed manually.
- If the tyre pressure is too low.
- If the tyre has structural damage.
- If the vehicle is loaded more heavily on one side.
- If the wheels on one axle are loaded more heavily, e.g. high load level.
- If snow chains have been fitted.
- If a temporary spare wheel has been fitted.
- If one wheel per axle has been changed.

In certain circumstances, the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator (U) may become slow or may not display anything, e.g. with a sporty driving style, in winter driving conditions, on unpaved roads, or when driving with snow chains.

## Synchronising the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator


The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator will have to be re-synchronised after changing the tyre pressure, or after changing one or more wheels. This also applies when wheels are swapped, e.g. from the front to the rear.


The saved values must be reset before the system can be resynchronised.


- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** infotainment button ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.
- Touch the  function button to open the **Vehicle settings** menu.
- Touch the **Tyres** function button.
- Touch the **SET** function button.
- If all 4 wheels are set to the correct values, touch the **Confirm** function button to store the tyre pressures.
- Touching the **Cancel** function button will prevent the current tyre pressures from being stored, and the system will not be adapted.


Once the saved values have been reset, the system automatically calibrates itself to the fitted tyres and the tyre pressure applied by the driver during normal vehicle operation. The calibrated values are adopted and monitored after a long journey at various speeds.

If the wheels are loaded more heavily than normal, e.g. if the vehicle is carrying a heavy payload, the tyre pressure must be increased to the recommended full-load tyre pressure before synchronisation ⇒ *Information about wheels and tyres*.

 The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator stops working if there is a fault in the ESC or ABS ⇒ *Brake support systems*.

 If a warning is given about tyre pressure being too low, the vehicle must remain stationary for approximately one minute and should not be moved. Alternatively, the ignition can be switched off and then back on again. The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator can only then be re-synchronised.

 Driving with a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel can cause an incorrect reading because it may differ in size from the other wheels.

 When using snow chains, an incorrect display may be shown as the snow chains increase the tyre circumference.

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

---





Fig. 264 Display in the instrument cluster: current tyre pressures.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System monitors the tyre pressure of the four wheels while the vehicle is in motion using tyre pressure sensors on the tyres. Following a loss in pressure, the system will warn the driver using a visual or acoustic warning.

### Display of tyre pressures on the instrument cluster

Open the menu **Vehicle status** in the instrument cluster display ⇒ *Instrument cluster*. The vehicle is displayed with the target and actual pressures in all the wheels ⇒ Fig. 264. The graphic representation may differ depending on vehicle.


Key for ⇒ Fig. 264	Meaning
①	Target pressure in bar.
②	Actual pressure in bar.
③	Loss in pressure in front left.
④	System fault for rear right tyre.

When the ignition is switched on, the most recently received tyre pressures will be displayed first; these values are updated to the actual pressures and displayed when the journey is started. In case the tyre pressure is too low, the relevant tyre is indicated and displayed along with the actual pressures ⇒ Fig. 264.

If no tyre pressures are transmitted, the last received actual pressures are displayed in grey, e.g. when parking.

### Switching Tyre Pressure Monitoring System on and off<sup>1)</sup>

Observe any country-specific legal requirements for the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.

*Countries where ECE regulations apply:* if a set of tyres is fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres) that do not have wheel sensors or have incompatible wheel sensors, the indicator lamp  will flash for approximately one minute and then light up steadily. An acoustic signal may also be given. The tyre pressures are not monitored. **The system cannot be switched off.**

*For countries where the ECE regulations do not apply:* if a set of tyres is fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres) that do not have wheel sensors or have incompatible wheel sensors, the system will be automatically switched off after you start driving. A text notification will be displayed in this case. An acoustic signal may also be given. The tyre pressures are not monitored. As soon as the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System receives suitable sensor signals again while you are driving, it is switched on automatically.

### Adjusting the tyre pressure

Following any relevant change in the load level, the tyre pressure **must** be checked and altered as necessary. The tyre pressures recommended for the vehicle are on a sticker on the driver door pillar or on the inside of the tank flap ⇒ *Information about wheels and tyres*.

If the tyre pressure has to be altered on a warm tyre, you should inflate the tyre with 0.2 – 0.3 bar (2.9 – 4.4 PSI / 20 – 30 kPa) more than the value given on the tyre pressure sticker.

The readings on the manometer when filling the tyres and the reading on the tyre pressure sensors may be different. The electronic Tyre Pressure Monitoring System provides more accurate results.

### Selecting target pressures for partial or full vehicle load level

The driver has to select the appropriate target tyre pressure for the partially or fully loaded vehicle depending on the vehicle load level.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** infotainment button ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.
- Touch the **Vehicle status** function button.
- Touch the **Setup** function button.
- After selecting the menu option **Tyres**, you can choose between *Part load-Standard*, *Part load-Comfort* or *Full load*.

### Selecting the tyre type

While changing the dimensions of the tyres, it may be necessary to adjust the target pressure for the new tyres. In this case, the correct tyre type must be selected in the vehicle and system settings. If no adjustment is necessary, the selection menu will not be available.

- Switch on the ignition.
- Press the **CAR** infotainment button ⇒ *Operation and display in the infotainment system*.
- Touch the **Vehicle status** function button.
- Touch the **Setup** function button.
- The required tyre dimensions can be selected after selecting the menu option **Tyres**.

If the dimensions of the new tyres are different from those of the factory-fitted tyres, the corresponding target tyre pressures can be entered by a Volkswagen dealer.

### Synchronising tyre pressure sensors

Manual synchronisation is not necessary after tyre pressure sensors have been replaced or tyres have been changed. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System automatically recognises new tyre pressure sensors and synchronises them immediately while driving.

### Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel or the temporary spare wheel in the luggage compartment is **not** monitored.

### Storing tyres

If the tyres are not being used, the sensors will not transmit the tyre pressure. This stops the sensor batteries discharging.

#### **NOTICE**

- **The tyre pressure sensors are mounted on special aluminium valves on the wheels. These valves are securely screwed in. When inflating the tyres and checking the tyre pressure, do not bend the valves into position.**
- **If valve caps are missing, the valve and tyre pressure monitor sensors could be damaged. Always use valve caps that comply with the factory-fitted valve cap specifications. Always screw on valve caps fully. Do not use metal valve caps.**
- **Do not use convenience valve caps as they do not form a proper seal. This can cause damage to the sensors.**
- **Do not damage the valves and sensors when fitting different tyres.**



<sup>1)</sup> Depends on the vehicle.

## Information about wheels and tyres

### Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Handling wheels and tyres*
- ⇒ *Rims*
- ⇒ *New tyres and replacing tyres*
- ⇒ *Tyre pressure*
- ⇒ *Tread depth and wear indicators*
- ⇒ *Tyre damage*
- ⇒ *Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel*
- ⇒ *Tyre lettering and tyre type*
- ⇒ *Winter tyres*
- ⇒ *Snow chains*

Volkswagen recommends that work on tyres and wheels is carried out by a qualified workshop. They are familiar with the procedure and have the necessary special tools and spare parts and the proper facilities for disposing of the old tyres. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

### **WARNING**

**New tyres or tyres which are old, worn down or damaged cannot provide full levels of vehicle control and braking power.**

- **Incorrect handling of wheels and tyres can reduce vehicle safety and cause accidents and serious injuries.**
- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread.**
- **New tyres will have to be run in as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect. Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km in order to prevent accidents and serious injury.**
- **Check tyre pressures regularly when the tyres are cold, and always keep to the specified value. If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent when driving that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.**
- **Never drive with worn tyres or tyres that are damaged (cuts, cracks or blisters). Driving with tyres in this condition can result in blown tyres, accidents and serious injuries. Worn or damaged tyres must be replaced as soon as possible.**
- **Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the fitted tyres.**
- **The effectiveness of the driver assist systems and brake support systems depends on the tyre grip.**
- **If you notice unusual vibrations or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, stop the car immediately and check the wheels and tyres for damage.**
- **In order to reduce the risk of losing control of the vehicle, and the risk of accident and serious injury, never loosen the bolts on wheel rims with bolted on wheel rim rings.**
- **Do not use wheels or tyres if you do not know their history. Used wheels and tyres could be damaged, even if the damage is not visible.**
- **Even if they have not been used, old tyres can suddenly lose pressure or burst, especially at high speeds, and thus cause accidents and serious injuries. Avoid using tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, drive slowly and with extra care at all times.**



For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same vehicle type. Refer to the vehicle documentation and ask a Volkswagen dealership if necessary.

## Handling wheels and tyres

---

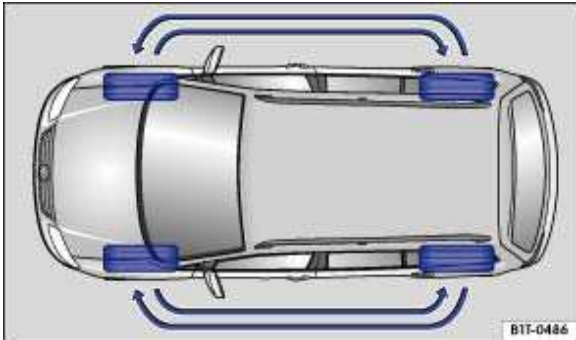


Fig. 265 Diagram showing how to swap wheels.


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The tyres are the most used and most underestimated parts of a vehicle. Tyres are very important as the narrow tyre surfaces are the only contact between the vehicle and the road.

The service life of tyres is dependent on tyre pressure, driving style handling and fitting.

The tyres and wheel rims are an essential part of the vehicle's design. The tyres and rims approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling.

### Avoiding damage to the rims and tyres

- If you have to drive over a kerb or similar obstacle, drive slowly and at a right angle if possible.
- Inspect the wheel rims and tyres regularly for obvious and hidden damage such as cracks or deformations ⇒ *Tyre damage* .
- Remove foreign objects that are in the outer tyre tread and **have not penetrated the inner tyre** ⇒ *Tyre damage* .
- Regularly check that the tyres are at the right pressure. Always respond to any warning messages given by the tyre monitoring system ⇒ *Tyre monitoring system* .
- Damaged or worn tyres must be replaced immediately ⇒ *Tyre damage* .
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the tyres that are fitted ⇒ *Tyre lettering and tyre type* .
- Protect the tyres, and also the spare wheel and temporary spare wheel from contact with corrosive substances, including oils, lubricants, fuel and brake fluid ⇒  .
- Replace missing dust caps immediately.


### Rotating wheels front to rear

Regularly rotating the wheels as shown in the illustration ⇒ *Fig. 265* is recommended to help ensure that tyres wear evenly. All the tyres will then last for about the same time.

Volkswagen recommends having the wheels changed by a qualified workshop.

### Tyres that are older than 6 years

Tyres age through physical and chemical processes that can impair their function. Tyres that are stored unused for an extended period will harden and become brittle more quickly than tyres which are in constant use.

Volkswagen recommends replacing tyres that are older than 6 years with new tyres. This also applies for tyres, including the temporary spare wheel, which appear to still be in good condition and whose tread depth has not yet reached the minimum value stipulated by legislation ⇒  .

The age of a tyre can be determined from the manufacturing date, which is a component of the tyre identification number (**TIN**) ⇒ *Tyre lettering and tyre type*

## Storing tyres

Mark tyres before you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you will be able to mount them correctly when you replace them (left, right, front, rear). When removed, the wheels or tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place. **Do not** store tyres mounted on the rim vertically.

Any tyres not fitted on rims should be kept in suitable sleeves to protect against dirt and should be stored vertically (standing on the tread).



### WARNING

Corrosive liquids and other substances can cause visible and invisible damage to the tyres, which can cause the tyre to burst.

- Always keep chemicals, oils, lubricants, fuel, brake fluid and other corrosive substances away from the tyres.



### WARNING

Even if they have not been used, old tyres can suddenly lose pressure or burst, especially at high speeds, and thus cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Avoid using tyres that are more than six years old. If you have no alternative, drive slowly and with extra care at all times.



### NOTICE

Avoid heavy impacts and drive round obstacles whenever possible. Tyres, particularly low-profile tyres, can be considerably compressed and deformed by potholes and curb edges especially. This can cause the tyre's webbing reinforcement to brake, and cause dents or rips on the side walls or deformations or cracks on the rims.



Old tyres should be disposed of as required by legislation.

## Rims

---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

The design of the wheel bolts is matched to the rims. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system works properly ⇒ [Changing a wheel](#).

For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheels from other vehicles. This can also apply to wheels of the same vehicle type.

The tyres and rims approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling.

## Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must always be tightened with the correct tightening torque ⇒ [Changing a wheel](#).

## Rims with bolted-on rings

Rims with bolted-on rings consist of several components. These components are fastened using special bolts and special fastening technology. This ensures that the wheel functions properly, does not leak, remains safe and runs true. For this reason, damaged rims

should be replaced. They may only be repaired by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose ⇒ ⚠.

### Rims with bolted-on trims

Rims may have removable trims that are attached to the rim with self-locking bolts. Damaged trims may only be replaced by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose ⇒ ⚠.

### Rim identification

In some countries, new rims are legally required to contain certain specifications on them. The following information may appear on the rims (varying from region to region):

- Seal of conformity
- Rim size
- Name of manufacturer or brand name
- Date manufactured (month/year)
- Country of origin
- Production number
- Raw materials batch number
- Product code

### WARNING

The use of unsuitable or damaged rims can impair vehicle safety and cause accidents and serious injury.

- Only use rims that have been approved for the vehicle.
- Check the rims regularly for damage and replace as necessary.

### WARNING

Incorrect loosening and tightening of the bolts on rims with bolted-on rings can cause accidents and serious injury.

- Never remove the bolts on rims with bolted-on rings.
- All work on rims with bolted-on rings must be carried out by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.

## New tyres and replacing tyres

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ ⚠ *Introduction*

### New tyres

- Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km with new tyres as the tyres have to be *run in*. Tyres that have not been run in have reduced grip ⇒ ⚠ and braking effect ⇒ ⚠.
- All four wheels must be fitted with radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread.
- The tread depth of new tyres may vary, according to the type and make of tyre and the tread pattern.

### Replacing tyres

- Tyres should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (i.e. both front tyres or both rear tyres together) ⇒ ⚠.

- Old tyres should only be replaced by tyres that have been approved by Volkswagen for the vehicle type. Ensure that the tyres used are correct in respect of size, diameter, load-carrying capacity and maximum speed.
- You should never use tyres whose effective size is larger than Volkswagen-approved tyres. Larger wheels could rub against the body or other parts of the vehicle.

### Recalibrating the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator

The Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator must be recalibrated each time one or more wheels are replaced. This also applies to swapping the wheels, e.g. from the front to the rear → [Tyre monitoring system](#).

### Additional information for vehicles fitted with a Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

If you wish to replace factory-fitted wheels, please ensure that the new wheels are equipped with sensors that are compatible with the factory-fitted Tyre Pressure Monitoring System. New wheels with sensors are *registered* and integrated into the system. The vehicle must be driven at a speed of over 25 km/h (15 mph) for an extended period so that the new tyre can be registered.

Volkswagen recommends that a new valve set and set of seals is used every time the sensors are replaced or modified. Further information is available from a Volkswagen dealership.

If tyres with dimensions other than those defined by Volkswagen for the vehicle and model are used, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System must be reprogrammed with the new tyre pressure values. Further information is available from a Volkswagen dealership.

If you use wheels that do not have a sensor, or which have non-compatible sensors, the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System will not be able to *register* them. The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System will then not be able to measure tyre pressures. A fault is displayed or the system is switched off.

Further information about the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System, how it functions and what you must know → [Tyre monitoring system](#).

#### **WARNING**

**New tyres will have to be run in as they will initially have reduced grip and braking effect.**

- Drive particularly carefully for the first 600 km in order to prevent accidents and serious injury.

#### **WARNING**

**Wheels must have the necessary freedom of operation. If the wheels do not have the necessary freedom of operation, the tyre could rub on parts of the running gear, the vehicle body and the brake lines. This can lead to a fault in the brake system and to tread separation and thus to a tyre bursting.**

- The actual tyre size must not exceed the tyre dimensions of manufacturers approved by Volkswagen and must not rub on any vehicle body parts.

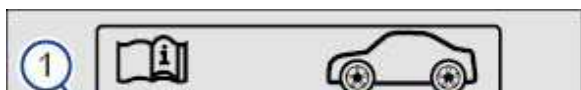


Despite identical size details, the actual size of the various tyre makes may vary from these specified dimensions, or the tyre contours may vary considerably.



Volkswagen-approved tyres are guaranteed to have the dimensions that are suitable for the vehicle. The salesperson will have to provide a certificate from the tyre manufacturer for other tyre makes to prove that the tyre is also suitable for the vehicle. This certificate must be stored in a safe place in the vehicle.

## Tyre pressure



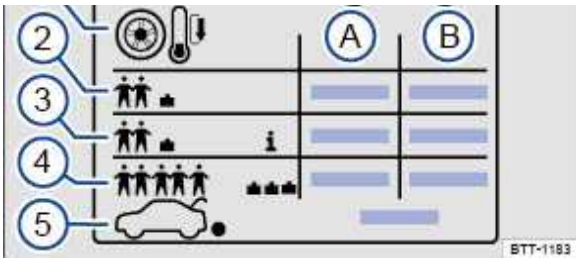


Fig. 266 Symbols on the tyre pressure sticker.



Fig. 267 On the driver door pillar: tyre pressure sticker (alternatively on the inside of the fuel flap).


 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

**Information on the tyre pressure sticker** ⇒ *Fig. 266* :

- A** Specified pressure for the tyres on the front axle.
- B** Specified pressure for the tyres on the rear axle.
- 1** Tyre pressure for cold tyres.
- 2** Tyre pressure for partial load.
- 3** *In some vehicles:* comfort tyre pressure for partial load.
- 4** Tyre pressure for full load.
- 5** Tyre pressure level for the spare or temporary spare wheel.

The tyre pressure sticker shows the correct pressure for factory-fitted tyres. This information applies to summer, all-season and winter tyres. The tyre pressure sticker is located either on the driver door pillar ⇒ *Fig. 267* or on the inside of the tank flap.

The tyre pressure sticker may differ between vehicles. It may include additional tyre sizes ⇒ *Tyre lettering and tyre type* .

Maintaining the wrong tyre pressure leads to accelerated wear and a significantly shorter tyre service life, and may even cause a tyre to burst. Excessive or insufficient pressure has a negative effect on the vehicle's driving characteristics ⇒  . The correct tyre pressure is particularly important at **high speeds**.

### Comfort tyre pressure

In some vehicles, the tyre pressure sticker may show details of a "comfort" tyre pressure ⇒ *Fig. 266* **3** . This should make driving extra comfortable. Fuel consumption may increase when driving with comfort tyre pressure.

### Checking tyre pressure

- The tyre pressure should be checked regularly: at least once a month and before every long journey. Always check all the tyres, including the spare if fitted. The tyre pressure should be checked more frequently in colder regions, but only if the vehicle has not been moved beforehand. The tyre pressure tester must function correctly.
- Only check the tyre pressure when the tyres have not been driven for more than a few kilometres at low speed in the last three hours. The given tyre pressure applies to **cold tyres**. Tyre pressure is always higher in warm tyres than it is in cold tyres. For this reason, never reduce the pressure in warm tyres to adjust the tyre pressure.
- The tyre pressures must be altered to suit the vehicle load ⇒ [Fig. 266④](#).
- After altering the tyre pressures, always screw the valve caps onto the valves and observe any information and instructions on setting the tyre monitoring system ⇒ [Tyre monitoring system](#).
- Ensure you are using the pressure specified by the vehicle manufacturer and not that given by the tyre manufacturer. Never exceed the maximum tyre pressure which is given on the sidewall.

The **spare wheel** or **temporary spare wheel** is filled to the highest tyre pressure ⇒ [Fig. 266⑤](#) permissible for the vehicle.

## WARNING

Too high or too low a pressure may cause the tyre to suddenly lose pressure or burst while the vehicle is in motion. This can cause serious accidents and fatal injuries.

- If the tyre pressure is too low, it is possible that the tyre temperature will increase to such an extent when driving that the tread peels off and the tyre bursts.
- Fast speeds or overloading of the vehicle can cause overheating, sudden tyre damage including tyre bursts and ripping of the tread surface and thus to a loss of control of the vehicle.
- If the tyre pressure is too low or too high, the tyres will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.
- Check tyre pressures regularly, at least once a month, and before every long journey.
- All tyres must have the correct tyre pressure to suit the vehicle load.
- Never reduce excess pressure when the tyres are warm.

## NOTICE

- When attaching the tyre pressure gauge, ensure that you do not position it at an angle to the valve shaft. This can damage the tyre valve.
- Missing valve caps, or valve caps that are not suitable or not screwed on properly, can cause damage to the tyre valve. Always use valve caps that comply with the factory-fitted valve cap specifications. Always screw on valve caps fully.



Under-inflated tyres can contribute to an increase in fuel consumption.



If the tyre monitoring display warns that the tyre pressure in at least one tyre is too low, check tyre pressures with a functioning tyre pressure tester. Low tyre pressure cannot be determined exclusively by looking at the tyre. This also applies to tyres with a low profile.



Please refer to the special points of the tyre monitoring system when checking tyre pressures ⇒ [Tyre monitoring system](#).

## Tread depth and wear indicators



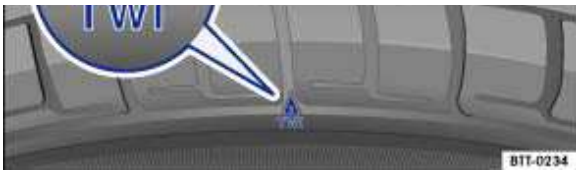



Fig. 268 Tyre tread: wear indicators.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

## Tread depth

Difficult driving situations demand the deepest possible tread depth for the tyres and the same tread depth for the tyres on the front and rear axles. This applies in particular for driving in winter weather and cold temperatures and in wet conditions ⇒ .

In most countries, the minimum tread depth required by law is 1.6 mm (measured in the tread grooves next to the tread wear indicators). Observe any country-specific legal requirements.

**Winter and all-year tyres** lose a large degree of their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. Observe any country-specific legal requirements relating to the permissible minimum tread depths for winter and all-year tyres.

The tread depth of new tyres can vary according to type and manufacturer due to construction and tread design.

## Tread wear indicator in tyres

The original tyres on your vehicle have 1.6 mm high tread wear indicators running across the tread ⇒ [Fig. 268](#). These wear indicators are positioned at set intervals around the tyre. Markings on the tyre sidewall (for instance the letters TWI or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators.

The tread wear indicators show if a tyre is worn down. The tyre must be replaced at the latest when the tread depth is just down to the tread wear indicator.



## WARNING


**Worn tyres are a safety risk and can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle and cause serious injury.**

- Tyres must be replaced at the latest when the tread is worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- Worn tyres have considerably less grip, particularly on wet roads, which can cause the vehicle to glide along the road surface (aquaplaning).
- Worn tyres reduce the possibility of controlling the vehicle well in normal and difficult driving situations and increase braking distance and the risk of sliding.

## Tyre damage



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Damage to tyres and rims is often not readily visible. Any unusual **vibrations** or signs that the car is **pulling to one side** may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged ⇒ .

- Reduce your speed immediately if you suspect that a wheel is damaged.
- Check the tyres and rims for damage.
- If the tyre is damaged, do not drive on. Seek expert assistance.
- If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the next qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.

## Foreign bodies in the tyre



- Leave the foreign body in the tyre if it has entered the inner tyre. However, foreign bodies that are stuck between the tyre tread blocks can be removed.
- *For vehicles with a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel:* where appropriate, change the damaged wheel ⇒ *Changing a wheel* If required, seek expert assistance when changing the damaged wheel. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- *For vehicles with a breakdown set:* the tyre can be sealed and pumped up using the tools in the breakdown set ⇒ *Breakdown set* . Go to a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.
- Check the pressure and adjust it as required.

## Tyre wear

The tyre wear is affected by several factors, for example:

- Driving style.
- Unbalanced wheels.
- Running gear setting.

*Driving style* – fast cornering, heavy acceleration and hard braking all increase tyre wear. The running gear should be checked by a qualified workshop if the tyres show excessive wear despite a normal driving style.

*Unbalanced wheels* – the wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various factors encountered in normal driving can cause them to become unbalanced, which results in steering vibration. Unbalanced wheels will affect levels of wear on the steering system and the suspension. In this case the wheels should be balanced again. New tyres have to be balanced after fitting.

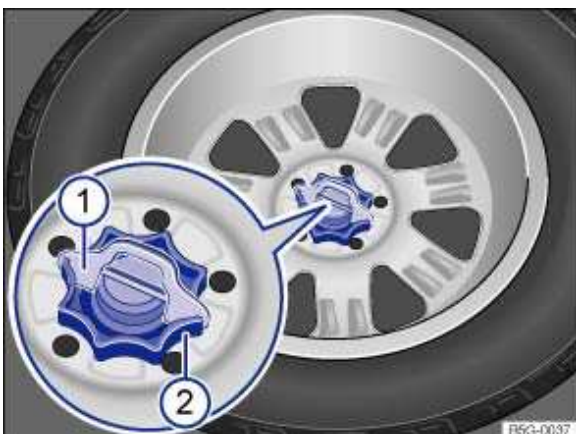
*Running gear setting* – incorrect wheel alignment causes excessive tyre wear, thereby impairing the safety of the vehicle. The wheel alignment should be checked by a qualified workshop if tyres show excessive wear.

## WARNING

If you notice unusual vibration or the car pulling to one side while the vehicle is in motion, this may indicate that one of the tyres is damaged.

- **Reduce speed immediately and park the vehicle without obstructing traffic.**
- **Check the tyres and rims for damage.**
- **Never drive on if wheels or tyres are damaged. Seek expert assistance instead.**
- **If there is no visible damage, drive slowly and cautiously to the next qualified workshop in order to have the vehicle checked.**

## Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel



**Fig. 269** In the luggage compartment: handwheel for securing the spare wheel.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)


### Removing the spare wheel

- Open the boot lid.
- Raise or fold forward the luggage compartment floor ⇒ [Boot lid](#).
- If necessary, pull the wedge of the locating element ⇒ [Fig. 269 ①](#) out and up.
- Unscrew the handwheel in the middle of the spare wheel ② anticlockwise fully and remove the spare wheel.
- Fold the luggage compartment floor back to its original position.
- Close the boot lid.

### Storing the replaced wheel

- Open the boot lid and raise the luggage compartment floor or fold it forwards.
- Place the removed wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim facing downwards with the central hole in the rim positioned exactly above the stud.
- Screw the handwheel ⇒ [Fig. 269 ②](#) onto the threaded pin in clockwise direction until the replaced wheel is secured firmly.
- If necessary, insert the wedge of the locating element ① in the slot on the threaded pin so that the handwheel can no longer be turned.
- Fold the luggage compartment floor back to its original position.
- Close the boot lid.

### If the spare wheel tyre is not the same as the tyres that are mounted on the vehicle

If the spare wheel is not the same as those mounted on the vehicle – for example if winter tyres or the temporary spare wheel are fitted – only use the spare wheel for a short period of time and drive with extra care ⇒ .

When the vehicle is towing a trailer ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#), the temporary spare wheel must only be fitted to the front axle.

Refit the normal, functional road wheel as soon as possible.

#### Follow these guidelines:

- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel ⇒ [Snow chains](#).
- The tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible after fitting the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel ⇒ [Wheels and tyres](#).

The tyre pressure of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel should be checked together with the normal tyres, at least once a month. The spare wheel should have the highest pressure allowed for the vehicle ⇒ [Wheels and tyres](#).

## ⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, to collisions or other accidents and cause serious injuries.

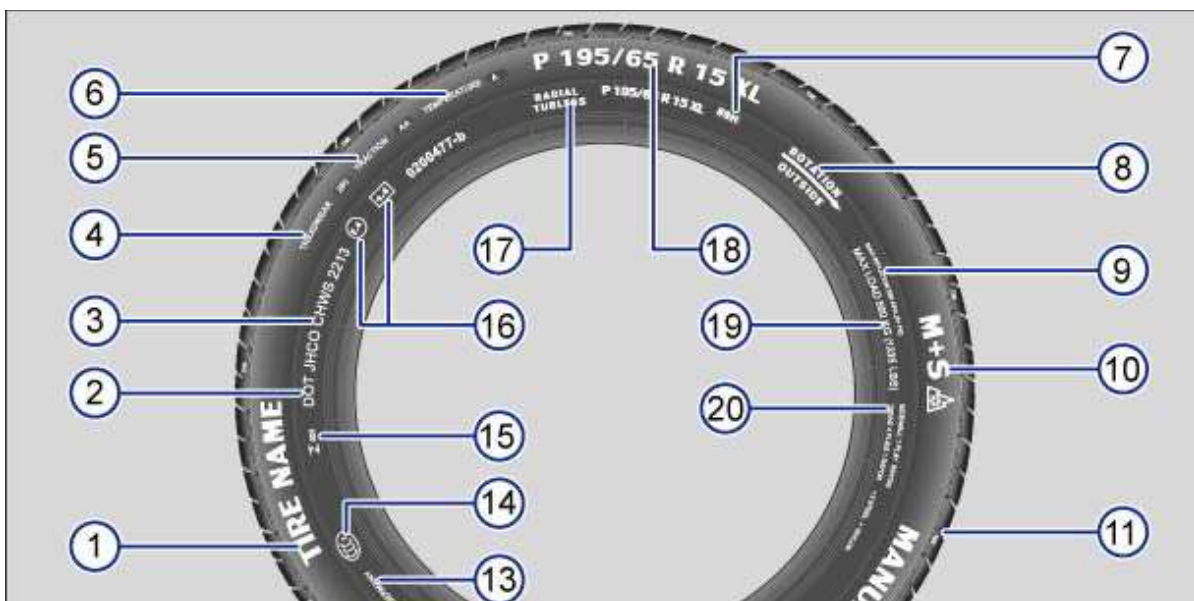
- Never use a spare wheel or temporary spare wheel if it is damaged or worn down to the tread wear indicators.
- In some vehicles, the spare wheel could be smaller than the standard wheel. The small spare wheel has a sticker with the text 80 km/h or 50 mph. This is the maximum speed at which you are permitted to drive with this tyre. The sticker must remain in place throughout the wheel's service life.
- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph). Do not accelerate quickly, brake suddenly or drive at high speed through bends.
- Never drive further than 200 km with a temporary spare wheel if it is fitted to the drive axle.
- The temporary spare wheel should be exchanged for a normal wheel as soon as possible. The temporary spare wheel is designed for a short period of use only.
- The spare wheel or temporary spare wheel must always be secured firmly with the wheel bolts supplied ex works.
- Never drive using more than one spare wheel that is a different size than the original tyres.
- Do not fit a temporary spare wheel to the rear axle when towing a trailer ⇒ *Towing a trailer* .
- Never drive using more than one spare wheel that is a different size than the original tyres.
- After fitting the spare wheel, the tyre pressure must be checked as soon as possible ⇒ *Wheels and tyres* .

## ⓘ NOTICE

The spare wheel is not fitted with tyre pressure sensor. If the spare wheel is being used, the tyre monitoring system indicator lamp flashes in the instrument cluster display after approximately 10 minutes ⇒ *Tyre monitoring system* .

ⓘ If possible, stow the spare wheel, temporary spare wheel or the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment. In vehicles with a breakdown set, the removed wheel **cannot** be secured.

## Tyre lettering and tyre type



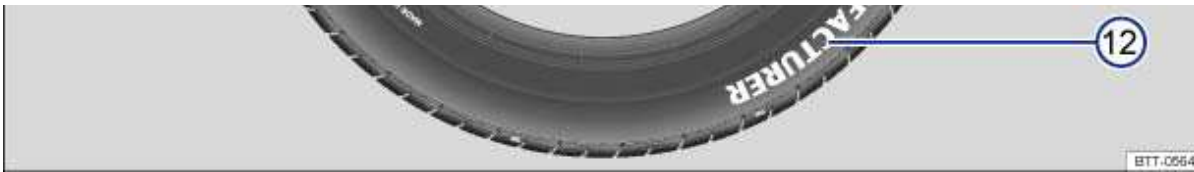





Fig. 270 International tyre lettering.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

⇒ Fig. 270	Tyre lettering (example)	Meaning
①	Product name	Individual tyre lettering from manufacturer.
②	DOT	The tyre complies with the legal requirements of the USA Department of Transportation, responsible for tyre safety standards.  Tyre identification number ( <b>TIN</b> <sup>a</sup> ) – may only be on the inner side of the wheel) and date of manufacture:
③	JHCO CHWS 2213	JHCO CHWS Identifier of producing plant and specifications of the tyre manufacturer on size and characteristics  2213 Manufacture date: 22nd week in 2013.

Information for the end user concerning comparative values for specified basic tyres (standardised test procedure) ⇒ [Consumer information](#) :


④	TREADWEAR 280	Relative life expectancy for the tyre, with reference to a US-specific standard test. Tyres with the specification 280 are used up at a rate of 2.8 times more slowly than standard tyres which have a treadwear value of 100. The performance of tyres is determined by how they are used and can notably deviate from norm values due to driving style, maintenance, road surface and climatic conditions.
⑤	TRACTION AA	Wet braking response of the tyre (AA, A, B or C). This is tested under controlled conditions on certified testing routes. Tyres marked C have a low traction performance. The traction value assigned to the tyres are based on linear traction tests and do not include speed, lateral stability, or aquaplaning and traction under high load.
⑥	TEMPERATURE A	Temperature stability of the tyre at higher test speeds (A, B or C). A and B tyres exceed legal requirements. The temperature evaluation is based on tyres with correct pressure and does not allow for excess pressure. Excessive speed, incorrect pressure or excess pressure can cause heat build-up or tyre damage. This applies to one or a combination of these factors.
⑦	88 H	Load capacity index ⇒ <a href="#">Tyre load</a> and speed index ⇒ <a href="#">Speed index</a> .
⑧	Rotation and arrow <b>OR:</b> outside	Denotes direction of rotation ⇒ <a href="#">Tyres with directional tread pattern</a> .  Denotes outside of tyres ⇒ <a href="#">Asymmetrical tyres</a> .
⑨	MAX INFLATION 350 KPA (51 psi / 3.51 bar)	US limitation for the maximum air pressure.
⑩	M+S or M/S or 	Denotes winter tyres (mud and snow tyres) ⇒ <a href="#">Winter tyres</a> . Studded snow tyres are labelled with an E after the S.
⑪	TWI	Indicates the position of the tread wear indicator ⇒ <a href="#">Tread depth and wear indicators</a> .
⑫	Brand name, logo	Manufacturer.
⑬	Made in Germany	Country of manufacture.
⑭		Country-specific denotation for China (China Compulsory Certification).
⑮	 023	Country-specific denotation for Brazil.

⇒ Fig. 270	Tyre lettering (example)	Meaning	
⑩⑥	E4 e4 0200477-b	Certification of conformity with international regulations. The next number is the code number of the country that granted approval. Approved tyres which comply with ECE regulations are denoted with E, tyres which comply with EC regulations are denoted with e. This is followed by the number of the type approval certificate.	
⑩⑦	RADIAL TUBELESS	Tubeless radial tyres.	
⑩⑧	P 195 / 65 R 15 XL	Size designation:	
		P	Identification for passenger vehicle.
		195	Tyre width from wall to wall in mm.
		65	Height/width ratio in %.
		R	Tyre construction: radial.
		15	Rim diameter in inches.
XL	Heavy-duty tyres (extra load tyres).		
⑩⑨	MAX LOAD 615 KG (1235 LBS)	US load data for the maximum load per wheel.	
⑩⑩	SIDEWALL 1 PLY RAYON	Data on tyre sub-construction components: 1 layer of rayon (artificial silk).	
	TREAD 4 PLYES 1 RAYON + 2 STEEL + 1 NYLON	Data on the tread surface components: In the example there are four layers under the tread surface: 1 layer of rayon, 2 steel belt layers and 1 nylon layer.	

Tyre lettering can also be found inside the tyre. Certain labels may only be found on one side of the tyre, e.g. tyre identification number and manufacturing date.

**Any further numbers and letters are internal codes used by the tyre manufacturer or country-specific denotations.**

### Low-profile tyres

Low-profile tyres have a wider tread surface, larger rim diameter and lower side walls than conventional wheel/tyre combinations ⇒ . Low-profile tyres can improve the vehicle's handling and precision. They may however result in a less comfortable ride on uneven road surfaces and tracks.

### Tyres with directional tread pattern

Tyres with directional tread pattern have been developed to roll in one direction only. An arrow on the tyre sidewall indicates the direction of rotation on tyres with directional tread. The direction of rotation must be adhered to. This is the only guarantee for optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

If, however, the tyre is fitted in the opposite direction to the tread pattern, you must take more care when driving as the tyre is now no longer being used according to its designation. This is particularly important on wet roads. The tyres must be replaced as quickly as possible or be fitted with the tread in the correct direction.

### Asymmetrical tyres

Asymmetrical tyres take into account the differing behaviour of the inner and outer areas of the tread pattern. The sidewalls of asymmetrical tyres are marked to indicate "inside" or "outside". Maintain the correct tyre positioning on the wheel rim. This guarantees optimum grip and helps to avoid aquaplaning, excessive noise and wear.

### Tyre load

The load capacity index indicates how many kilograms can be loaded onto an individual tyre (tyre load).

Examples:

85515kg87545kg88560kg91615kg92630kg93650kg95690kg97730kg99775kg100800kg101825kg102850kg103875kg104900kg

## Speed index

The speed index indicates the maximum permitted speed that may be driven when particular wheels are fitted.

Pmax. 150km/h (93mph)Qmax. 160km/h (99mph)Rmax. 170km/h (106mph)Smax. 180km/h (112mph)Tmax. 190km/h (118mph)  
Umax. 200km/h (125mph)Hmax. 210km/h (130mph)Vmax. 240km/h (149mph)Wmax. 270km/h (168mph)Ymax. 300km/h (186mph)  
Zover 240km/h (149mph)

Some tyre manufacturers use the code ZR for tyres with a highest permitted speed of over 240km/h (149mph).

## Vehicle-specific information on tyre load and speed range

Vehicles registered within the EU and the EU "user countries" are issued a EC certificate of conformity. This details the size, diameter, load capacity and speed range of all tyres approved by Volkswagen for the relevant vehicle type.

The type plate shows whether there is an EC certificate of conformity for this particular vehicle. The type plate can be seen on the lower part of the door pillar when the door is open ⇒ [Technical data](#).

- If the type plate has a row marked Permit then the vehicle does have an EC certificate of conformity.
- If there is no type plate, or no row marked Permit the vehicle does not have an EC certificate of conformity.

<sup>a)</sup> The TIN is the tyre serial number.

## Winter tyres

---




**First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  [Introduction](#)

In winter road conditions, winter tyres will considerably improve the car's handling. The design of summer tyres (width, rubber compound, tread pattern) gives less grip on ice and snow. Volkswagen urgently recommends the use of winter tyres or all-year tyres on all four wheels of the vehicle, particularly if winter conditions are expected on the roads. Winter tyres will also improve the braking response of the vehicle and will help to reduce braking distances in winter weather. Volkswagen recommends that winter tyres be fitted to the vehicle at temperatures below +7°C (+45°F).




Winter tyres and all-year tyres lose their effectiveness when the **tread** is worn down to a depth of 4 mm. Winter and all-year tyres also largely lose their effectiveness through **ageing** – regardless of the tread depth.

### The following applies when using winter tyres:

- Observe any country-specific legal requirements.
- Use winter tyres on all four wheels at the same time.
- Only use in winter road conditions.
- Only use the sizes of winter tyre that have been approved for the vehicle.
- Winter tyres must have the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern.
- Heed the maximum speed permitted by the speed index ⇒ .

## Speed limitation

Winter tyres have a speed limitation depending on the speed index ⇒ [Tyre lettering and tyre type](#).

Speed warning settings can be made and adjusted in the infotainment system using the  button and the  and  function buttons ⇒ [Operation and display in the infotainment system](#).

If you use **V-rated tyres** the speed limits and required tyre pressure will be determined by the engine size. You must ask a Volkswagen dealership about the highest permitted speed and required tyre pressure.

## Four-wheel drive (4MOTION)

Thanks to its four-wheel drive, the vehicle will have plenty of traction in winter conditions, even with the standard tyres. Nevertheless, Volkswagen still recommends that winter tyres or all-year tyres should be fitted *on all 4 wheels* in winter, mainly because this will give a better *braking response*.

Please refer to the appropriate information and notes when using **snow chains** ⇒ [Snow chains](#).

### **WARNING**

The improved winter driving characteristics afforded by the winter tyres should not encourage you to take any risks.

- Adapt your speed and driving style to suit visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- Never exceed the top speed and load permitted for the winter tyres that are fitted.



Summer tyres should be fitted in good time at the end of the winter. The vehicle handling is better if summer tyres are fitted at temperatures above +7°C (+45°F). They are quieter, do not wear so quickly and reduce fuel consumption.



In vehicles with a Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, the system has to be adapted again after wheels are changed ⇒ [Tyre monitoring system](#).



Volkswagen dealerships can provide details on permissible winter tyre sizes.

## Snow chains



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)


Please heed legislation and also the permitted speed when driving your vehicle with snow chains.

In winter conditions, snow chains will not only improve acceleration, but also braking response.

Snow chains **may only be fitted on the front wheels** – even on **four-wheel drive vehicles (4MOTION)** – and only with the **following wheel and tyre combinations**:

Tyre size	Wheel	Type of snow chains to use
215 / 65 R 17	6 1/2 J x 17 offset 38	Only fine-linked snow chains that add no more than about <b>13.5 mm</b> .
	7 J x 17 offset 40	Only fine-linked snow chains that add no more than about <b>9 mm</b> .

Volkswagen recommends that you ask your Volkswagen dealership for information about appropriate wheel, tyre and snow chain size.

Remove wheel centre covers and trim rings before fitting snow chains ⇒ . For safety reasons cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. These are available from your Volkswagen dealership.

## Temporary spare wheel

For technical reasons, snow chains must not be used on the temporary spare wheel ⇒ [Spare wheel or temporary spare wheel](#).

If you have to use snow chains with the temporary spare wheel fitted, the temporary spare wheel should be fitted to the rear axle even when a front wheel is damaged. You can then use the wheel taken from the rear axle to replace the damaged front wheel. Please note the direction of rotation. Volkswagen recommends fitting the snow chains before mounting the wheel on the car.


## WARNING


The use of snow chains that are unsuitable for your vehicle or the incorrect installation of snow chains can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always use the correct snow chains.
- Follow the assembly instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Never exceed the maximum speed permitted for the snow chains that are fitted.

## NOTICE

- Remove the snow chains when driving on roads that are free of snow. The snow chains will otherwise impair handling, damage the tyres and wear out very quickly.
- Snow chains that are in direct contact with the wheel can scratch or damage it. Volkswagen recommends using snow chains with integrated rim protection.

 In vehicles with a Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator, the system may have to be adapted again when snow chains are fitted ⇒ [Tyre monitoring system](#) .

 Snow chains are available in a range of sizes for a vehicle type.

## Hubcaps

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ [Centre cover](#)
- ⇒ [Wheel cover](#)
- ⇒ [Wheel bolt caps](#)

## WARNING

Using unsuitable hubcaps, or fitting them incorrectly, can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Incorrectly fitted hubcaps can become loose while the vehicle is in motion and endanger other road users.
- Do not use damaged hubcaps.
- Always ensure that the airflow to cool the brakes is not restricted or reduced. This also applies if hubcaps are retrofitted. If the airflow is not sufficient, the braking distance could increase significantly.

## NOTICE

Remove the hubcaps carefully and fit them again properly so as to avoid damage to the vehicle.

### Centre cover

---







**Fig. 271** Removing the centre covers by pulling.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The centre cover protects the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

- *To remove*, take the wire hook from the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit* and hook it into the edge of the cover ⇒ *Fig. 271* .
- Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow.
- *To replace*, press the centre cover against the rim until you feel it engage.

The centre cover protects the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

## Wheel cover

---



**Fig. 272** Removing the wheel covers.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The wheel cover protects the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

### Removing the wheel covers

- Take the box spanner and wire hook from the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit* .
- Insert the wire hook into one of the holes in the wheel cover.
- Push the box spanner through the wire hook ⇒ *Fig. 272* and remove the wheel cover in the direction of the arrow.

### Fitting the wheel covers

Before fitting the wheel cover, the anti-theft wheel bolt must be screwed into position ⇒ *Fig. 275* ② or ③. Otherwise, it will not be possible to fit the wheel cover.

The wheel covers must be pushed on to the rims with the hole for the valve aligned with the valve ⇒ *Fig. 275* ①. When fitting the wheel cover ensure that it engages securely on the entire circumference.

## Wheel bolt caps

---



Fig. 273 Removing the wheel bolt caps.

 **First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings** ⇒  *Introduction*

The wheel bolt caps protect the bolts and must be replaced after changing the tyre.

- Take the wire hook from the vehicle tool kit ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit*.
- Insert the hook through the opening in the cap ⇒ *Fig. 273* and pull off in the direction of the arrow.

The **anti-theft wheel bolt** has a separate cap. It only fits onto the anti-theft wheel bolts and not onto conventional wheel bolts.

## Changing a wheel

### **Introduction**

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Preparations for changing a wheel*
- ⇒ *Wheel bolts*
- ⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the jack*
- ⇒ *Changing a wheel*
- ⇒ *After changing a wheel*

Some models are delivered without a factory-fitted jack or box spanner. If this is the case, the wheel should be changed by a qualified workshop.

The vehicle jack supplied with the vehicle is only designed for changing a wheel when one vehicle tyre is damaged and has to be replaced. If both tyres on one side of the vehicle, both tyres on one axle, or all tyres are damaged, seek expert assistance.

Only change the wheel yourself when the car is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the necessary steps and safety procedures, and you have access to the correct tools. Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.

## WARNING

Changing a wheel can be dangerous, especially when carried out at the side of a road. Please note the following steps in order to reduce the risk of serious injuries:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to carry out the wheel change.
- All passengers and children in particular must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work during the wheel change.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.
- Check that the surface the vehicle is parked on is level and firm. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
- Only change the wheel yourself if you feel confident carrying out the procedure. If not, seek expert assistance.
- Always use suitable and undamaged tools to change the wheel.
- Always switch off the engine, switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to the position P or select a gear on a manual gearbox in order to reduce the risk of unintended vehicle movement.
- The wheel bolt tightening torque should be checked with a torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.

## Preparations for changing a wheel

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

## Checklist

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for changing the wheel ⇒  :

- ✓ In the event of a flat tyre, park your vehicle on a firm and level surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
- ✓ Switch on the electronic parking brake Parking and manoeuvring.
- ✓ Automatic gearbox: move the selector lever to position P DSG® dual clutch gearbox.
- ✓ Stop the engine and, if required, remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Manual gearbox: select a gear Manual gearbox: selecting a gear.
- ✓ Ensure that all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle and go straight to a safe place, e.g. behind the safety barrier.
- ✓ Chock the wheel diagonally opposite using the collapsible chocks or other suitable objects.
- ✓ When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly Towing a trailer.
- ✓ Remove any items of luggage from the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Remove the spare wheel or temporary spare wheel and the vehicle tool kit from the luggage compartment.
- ✓ If applicable, remove the hubcaps Hubcaps.

## WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## Wheel bolts





Fig. 274 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts.

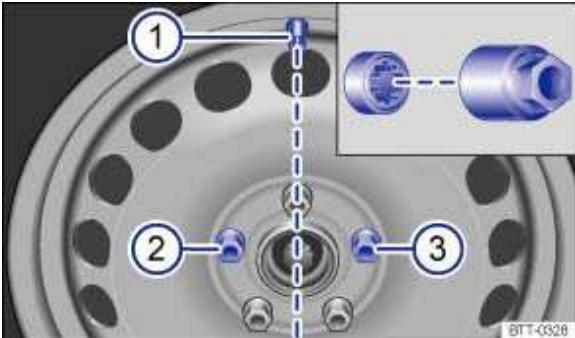


Fig. 275 Changing a wheel: tyre valve ① and locations of the anti-theft wheel bolt ② or ③.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒ ⚠ Introduction

Only the spanner delivered with the vehicle should be used to loosen the wheel bolts.

Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack.

If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by pushing down the end of the spanner carefully with your foot. Hold on to the car for support and take care not to slip.

### Loosening the wheel bolts

- Fit the box spanner over the wheel bolt as far as it will go ⇒ Fig. 274 .
- Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt *one* turn anticlockwise ⇒ ⚠ .

### Loosening the anti-theft wheel bolt

- Take the adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts out of the vehicle tool kit.
- Insert the adapter into the anti-theft wheel bolt ⇒ Fig. 275 . Push it in as far as it will go.
- Insert the box spanner into the adapter as far as it will go.
- Hold the end of the box spanner and turn the wheel bolt *one* turn anticlockwise ⇒ ⚠ .

### Important information about the wheel bolts

The design of the wheel rims and wheel bolts is matched to the factory-fitted wheels. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system works properly.

In certain circumstances, wheel bolts from a vehicle of the same model series may not be used.

On wheels with a wheel cover, the anti-theft wheel bolt must be bolted into position ⇒ Fig. 275 ② or ③ according to the position of the tyre valve ①. Otherwise, it will not be possible to fit the wheel cover.

## Tightening torque for the wheel bolts

The tightening torque for wheel bolts for steel and alloy wheels is **140 Nm**. The tightening torque should be checked with a torque wrench immediately after changing a wheel.

If the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, they must be replaced and the wheel hub threads cleaned **before the tightening torque is checked**.

Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.

### WARNING

Incorrectly tightened wheel bolts can loosen while the vehicle is in motion and cause accidents, serious injury, and loss of control of the vehicle.

- Only use wheel bolts that belong to the wheel.
- Never use different wheel bolts.
- The wheel bolts and threads of the wheel hubs must be clean, free from oil and grease, and turn easily.
- Always use the box spanner placed in the vehicle at the factory to loosen and tighten the wheel bolts.
- Only loosen the wheel bolts by approximately one turn before raising the vehicle with the vehicle jack.
- Never grease or lubricate the wheel bolts or the threads of the wheel hub. This could cause them to loosen while the vehicle is in motion, even if the required torque setting is used.
- Never remove the bolts on rims with bolted-on rings.
- If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, the wheel bolts and rims can loosen while the vehicle is in motion. The wheel bolts and threads can be damaged if the tightening torque is too high.

## Lifting the vehicle with the jack



Fig. 276 Lifting points for the jack.

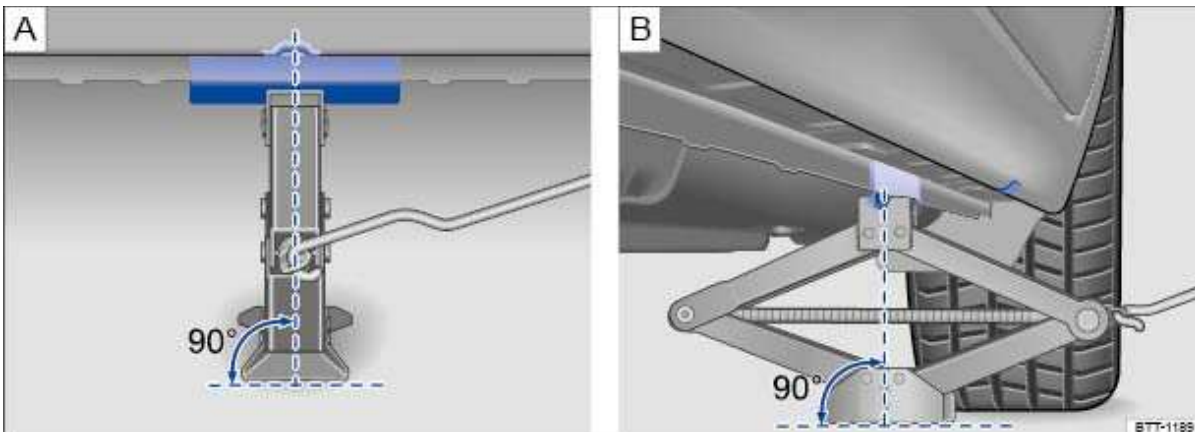



Fig. 277 Vehicle jack at the rear left-hand side of the vehicle.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

The jack may be positioned only at the reinforcements on the underbody, which are located behind the markings on the body ⇒ Fig. 276 . Always use the lifting point closest to the wheel you are working on ⇒ .

## Checklist

To ensure your own safety and the safety of your passengers, observe the following actions in the specified order ⇒  :

- ✓ Find a firm and level surface suitable for lifting the vehicle.
- ✓ Stop the engine. If the vehicle has a manual gearbox, select a gear, or move the selector lever to position P if it has an automatic gearbox DSG® dual clutch gearbox. Switch on the electronic parking brake Parking and manoeuvring.
- ✓ Chock both wheels on the opposite side of the vehicle using the collapsible chocks or other suitable objects.
- ✓ When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly Towing a trailer.
- ✓ Loosen the wheel bolts on the wheel that is being changed Wheel bolts.
- ✓ Find the lifting point under the vehicle which is closest to the wheel that is being changed.
- ✓ Raise the vehicle jack until it just fits under the lifting point of the vehicle.
- ✓ Ensure that the entire surface of the foot of the vehicle jack is resting securely on the ground and that the foot of the vehicle jack is positioned precisely, i.e. vertically beneath the point of application .
- ✓ Position the jack. At the same time, continue to crank the claw up until it is in position around the vertical rib underneath the vehicle .
- ✓ Crank the vehicle jack further until the wheel is just clear of the ground.



## WARNING

Incorrect use of the vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack, which can lead to severe injuries. Please note the following to help reduce the risk of injuries:

- Only use vehicle jacks which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type. Other vehicle jacks could slip out of position – this includes vehicle jacks supplied with other Volkswagen models.
- The ground must be firm and level. Soft ground or surfaces at an incline under the vehicle jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support for the vehicle jack.
- On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the vehicle jack from slipping.
- Fit the vehicle jack only at the points described. The vehicle jack claw must grip the vertical rib under the side member securely ⇒ Fig. 277 .
- Never place any part of your body (e.g. an arm or leg) underneath the vehicle if the latter is only supported by the vehicle jack.
- If you have to work underneath the vehicle, use suitable stands to provide extra support for the vehicle.
- Never lift the vehicle when the engine is running, or if the vehicle is tilted to the side or on a gradient.
- Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised on a vehicle jack. Engine vibrations can cause the vehicle to fall off the vehicle jack.



## WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## Changing a wheel

---




Fig. 278 Changing the wheel: removing the wheel bolts with the screwdriver handle.

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

### Removing the wheel

- Read the checklist ⇒ *Preparations for changing a wheel*.
- Turn the wheel bolts anticlockwise to loosen them ⇒ *Wheel bolts*.
- Jack up the vehicle ⇒ *Lifting the vehicle with the jack*.
- Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle ⇒ *Fig. 278* to fully unscrew the loosened wheel bolts anticlockwise. Remove them and place on a clean surface.
- Remove the wheel.

### Fitting the spare wheel

- Position the spare wheel / temporary spare wheel.
- Insert the anti-theft wheel bolt using the adapter at position ⇒ *Fig. 275* ② or ③ and tighten it slightly in a clockwise direction.
- Screw in all the other wheel bolts in a clockwise direction and use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to tighten them *gently*.
- Lower the vehicle with the jack.
- Use the box spanner to tighten all the wheel bolts securely in a clockwise direction ⇒ . Do not tighten the bolts in clockwise or anticlockwise sequence. Tighten them in diagonal sequence.
- Fit the cover caps, centre covers or wheel covers ⇒ *Hubcaps*.

## WARNING

Incorrect torque or incorrect use of wheel bolts can lead to a loss of control of the vehicle, cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Always keep all wheel bolts and threads in the wheel hubs clean and free from oil and grease. The wheel bolts must be easy to turn and be tightened to the specified torque.
- The hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle should only be used for turning wheel bolts, not use for loosening or tightening them.

## After changing a wheel

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  *Introduction*

- Clean the tools as necessary and place them back in the stowage compartment in the luggage compartment ⇒ *Vehicle tool kit*.

- Stow the temporary spare wheel or the removed wheel safely in the luggage compartment.
- The tightening torque of the wheel bolts should be checked immediately with a torque wrench ⇒ *Tightening torque for the wheel bolts* .
- The damaged wheel should be replaced as soon as possible.



In vehicles with a Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator that measures indirectly, the system may have to be adapted again when new tyres are fitted ⇒ *Tyre monitoring system* .

## Breakdown set

### Introduction

---

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

- ⇒ *Contents of the breakdown set*
- ⇒ *Preparation*
- ⇒ *Sealing and inflating tyres*
- ⇒ *Test after driving for 10 minutes*

You can use the breakdown set (tyre mobility set) to safely seal any tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or punctures (up to **4 mm** in diameter). **Do not remove foreign objects (e.g. screws or nails) from the tyre!**

Once the sealant has been added to the tyre, the tyre pressure must be checked again after approximately 10 minutes of driving.

Seek expert assistance if more than one vehicle tyre is damaged. The breakdown set is only designed for filling *one* tyre.

Only use breakdown set to fill a tyre if the car is parked in a safe place, you are familiar with the necessary actions and safety procedures and you have access to all the correct tools. Seek expert assistance if this is not the case.

#### **The tyre sealant must not be used:**

- If the rim is damaged.
- If the outside temperature is below -20°C (-4°F).
- If there are cuts or punctures in the tyre that are larger than 4 mm.
- If the tyre pressure is very low or the tyres are flat.
- If the use-by date on the sealant has expired.
- In connection with mobility tyres. The word Seal appears on the outer wall of the tyre if your vehicle is fitted with mobility tyres.



## WARNING

Using the breakdown set can be dangerous, especially if the tyres are inflated at the roadside. Please note the following steps in order to reduce the risk of serious injuries:

- Stop the vehicle as soon as it is possible and safe to do so. Park the vehicle at a safe distance from moving traffic in order to fill the tyre.
- Check that the surface the vehicle is parked on is level and firm.
- All passengers, and children in particular, must be at a safe distance and away from your area of work.
- Switch on the hazard warning lights to warn other road users.
- The breakdown set should only be used if you feel confident with carrying out the procedure. If not, seek expert assistance.
- Tyres repaired with the breakdown set are intended for temporary, emergency use only. They should only be used until you can reach the nearest qualified workshop.
- Tyres that have been repaired using the breakdown set should be replaced as soon as possible.
- Sealant is hazardous to health and must be washed off immediately if it gets onto the skin.
- The breakdown set must be stored out of the reach of children.
- Never use a vehicle jack, even if it is approved for the vehicle.
- Always switch off the engine, switch on the electronic parking brake and move the selector lever to the position P or select a gear on a manual gearbox in order to reduce the risk of unintended vehicle movement.

## WARNING

Tyres that have been filled with sealant will not handle in the same way as a standard tyre.

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid full acceleration, sudden braking and fast driving through bends in the road.
- Drive for just 10 minutes at no more than 80 km/h (50 mph) and then check the tyre.



Dispose of used or out-of-date sealant in accordance with legal requirements.



You can get new sealant from a Volkswagen dealership.



Observe the separate instructions from the manufacturer of the breakdown set.

### Contents of the breakdown set

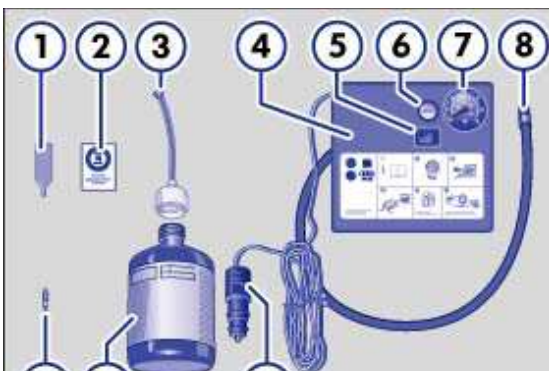




Fig. 279 The breakdown set.



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

The breakdown set is located underneath the floor covering in the luggage compartment. It includes the following components ⇒ Fig. 279 :

- ① Valve core extractor.
- ② Sticker with the maximum permitted speed max. 80 km/h or max. 50 mph.
- ③ Filler hose with plug.
- ④ Air compressor.
- ⑤ ON/OFF switch.
- ⑥ Air bleed screw<sup>1)</sup>.
- ⑦ Tyre pressure display<sup>1)</sup>.
- ⑧ Tyre filler hose.
- ⑨ 12-volt plug.
- ⑩ Tyre filler bottle with sealant.
- ⑪ Spare valve core.

There is a slot on the lower end of the **valve insert extractor** ① for the valve insert. This is required for extracting and fitting the tyre valve. This also applies to the spare valve core ⑪.

<sup>1)</sup> Could also be integrated in the tyre filler hose.

## Preparation


---



First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  Introduction

## Checklist

---

The following actions must always be carried out in the given order in preparation for filling a tyre ⇒  :

- ✓ If you get a flat tyre, park your vehicle on a firm and level surface at a safe distance from the flow of traffic.
- ✓ Switch on the electronic parking brake Parking and manoeuvring.
- ✓ Automatic gearbox: move the selector lever to position P DSG® dual clutch gearbox.
- ✓ Stop the engine and, if required, remove the vehicle key from the ignition lock Starting and stopping the engine.
- ✓ Manual gearbox: select a gear Manual gearbox: selecting a gear.
- ✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights In an emergency.
- ✓ Ensure that all vehicle occupants exit the vehicle and go straight to a safe place, e.g. behind the safety barrier.
- ✓ Set up the warning triangle In an emergency. Observe any legal requirements.
- ✓ Check whether the puncture can be repaired with the breakdown set The tyre sealant must not be used:.
- ✓ When towing a trailer: unhitch the trailer from the vehicle and park it properly Towing a trailer.
- ✓ Remove any items of luggage from the luggage compartment.

- ✓ Take the breakdown set out of the luggage compartment.
- ✓ Take the sticker ② from the breakdown set and stick it on the dash panel within the driver's field of vision.
- ✓ Do not remove foreign objects (e.g. screws or nails) from the tyre.

## WARNING

Ignoring any of the items on this important safety checklist can lead to accidents and severe injuries.

- Always follow the instructions in the checklist and observe the general safety procedures.

## Sealing and inflating tyres






First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

### Sealing a tyre

- Unscrew the cap from the tyre valve.
- Use the valve core extractor ⇒ [Fig. 279 ①](#) to screw the valve core out of the tyre valve. Place the core on a clean surface.
- Shake the tyre filler bottle ⇒ [Fig. 279 ⑩](#) vigorously up and down several times.
- Screw the filler hose ⇒ [Fig. 279 ③](#) tightly onto the tyre filler bottle in a clockwise direction. The plastic foil on the plug is pierced automatically.
- Remove the sealing plug from the filler hose ⇒ [Fig. 279 ③](#) and place the open end fully on the tyre valve.
- Hold the bottle upside down and inject the **entire** contents of the tyre filler bottle into the tyre.
- Remove the empty tyre filler bottle from the valve.
- Use the valve core extractor ⇒ [Fig. 279 ①](#) to screw the valve core back onto the tyre valve.

### Inflating the tyre

- Screw the tyre filler hose ⇒ [Fig. 279 ⑧](#) of the air compressor tightly onto the tyre valve.
- Check that the bleed screw ⇒ [Fig. 279 ⑥](#) is closed.
- Start the engine and let it run.
- Insert the plug ⇒ [Fig. 279 ⑨](#) into one of the vehicle's 12-volt sockets ⇒ [Electrical sockets](#).
- Use the on/off switch ⇒ [Fig. 279 ⑤](#) to switch on the air compressor.
- Run the air compressor until the tyre pressure has reached 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) ⇒  **The maximum running time is 8 minutes** ⇒ .
- Switch off the air compressor.
- If a pressure level of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) **cannot be achieved**, unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
- Drive (or reverse) the vehicle approximately 10 metres so that the sealing compound is more evenly distributed in the tyre.
- Screw the tyre filler hose for the air compressor firmly back onto the tyre valve and inflate the tyre again.
- If the required pressure still cannot be reached, the tyre is too badly damaged. The tyre cannot be sealed with the breakdown set. Do not drive on. Seek expert assistance ⇒ .
- Disconnect the air compressor and unscrew the tyre filler hose from the tyre valve.
- Drive the vehicle no faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) once a tyre pressure of 2.0 – 2.5 bar (29 – 36 psi / 200 – 250 kPa) has been reached.
- Check the tyre pressure after driving for **10 minutes** ⇒ [Test after driving for 10 minutes](#).

## WARNING

The tyre filler hose and the air compressor can get hot during inflation.

- Protect your hands and skin from the hot components.
- Do not place the hot tyre filler hose and the hot air compressor on any inflammable materials.
- Allow the device to cool down fully before stowing.
- If the tyre will not inflate to at least 2.0 bar (29 psi / 200 kPa), the tyre is too damaged. The sealant is unable to seal the tyre. Do not drive on. Seek expert assistance.



## NOTICE

Switch the air compressor off after a maximum of 8 minutes to avoid overheating. Let the air compressor cool down for a few minutes before switching it back on.


### Test after driving for 10 minutes

---

 First read and observe the introductory information and safety warnings ⇒  [Introduction](#)

Reconnect the tyre filler hose ⇒ [Fig. 279](#)  and check the tyre pressure on the Tyre Pressure Loss Indicator .

#### 1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) and lower:

- **Do not drive on!** The tyre cannot be sealed adequately with the breakdown set.
- Seek expert assistance ⇒ .

#### 1.4 bar (20 psi / 140 kPa) and higher:

- Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value ⇒ [Information about wheels and tyres](#).
- Resume your journey to the nearest qualified workshop. Do not exceed a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).
- The damaged tyre should be replaced at the qualified workshop.

## WARNING

Driving with an unsealed tyre is dangerous as it can cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Do not carry on driving if the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar (19 psi / 130 kPa) or lower.
- Seek expert assistance.

## Accessories, modifications, repairs and renewal of parts

### Accessories and parts

---

Volkswagen recommends obtaining advice from a Volkswagen dealership before purchase of accessories, replacement parts or service fluids, e.g. if the vehicle is to be retrofitted with accessories or parts have to be replaced. Volkswagen dealerships can recommend accessories, parts and service fluids suitable for your requirements. They can also answer any questions you might have regarding official regulations.

Volkswagen recommends you use only approved **Volkswagen accessories** and **Volkswagen Genuine Parts®**. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety. And Volkswagen dealerships are qualified to install them correctly.

Although the market is constantly scrutinised, Volkswagen cannot assume responsibility for the reliability, safety and suitability of products **Volkswagen has not approved**. Volkswagen can therefore assume no responsibility for these parts, even if they have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official approval certificate.

Any **retro-fitted equipment** which has a direct effect on the control of the vehicle must be approved by Volkswagen for use in your vehicle and bear the **e** mark (the European Union's authorization symbol). These devices include cruise control systems or an electronically controlled suspension.

Any **additional electrical components** fitted that do not serve to control the vehicle itself must bear the **CE** mark (manufacturer conformity declaration in the European Union). Such devices include refrigerator boxes, laptops and ventilator fans.

## **WARNING**

**Incorrectly performed repairs or modifications to your vehicle can impair the effectiveness of the airbags, cause malfunctions, accidents and fatal injury.**

- **Never secure or mount objects such as drink holders or telephone holders either on or next to the airbag covers or within the deployment zones of the airbag modules.**
- **Objects either on or next to the airbag module covers or are in the deployment zone of the airbags can cause serious or even fatal injuries should the airbags be activated.**

## Repairs and technical modifications

---

**Repairs and technical modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications** → .

Unauthorised modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctions. As the electronic components are linked together in networks, these faults may indirectly affect the working of other systems. This can seriously impair safety, lead to excessive wear of components, and also invalidate the type approval for the vehicle.

The Volkswagen dealership cannot be held liable for any damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly.

The Volkswagen dealership is not responsible for damage caused by technical modifications and/or work performed incorrectly. Such damage is not covered by the Volkswagen guarantee.

Volkswagen recommends that all repairs and technical modifications be performed by an authorised Volkswagen workshop using **Volkswagen Genuine Parts®**.

## Vehicles with special auxiliary equipment or body parts

The manufacturer of these components must ensure that these parts (fittings) adhere to the stipulated environmental laws and regulations, particularly the EU directive 2000/53/EC concerning end-of-life vehicles and EU directive 2003/11/EC concerning the restriction on the marketing and use of certain dangerous substances and preparations.

The vehicle owner should keep all assembly documentation for these auxiliary fittings, and pass it on to any scrapping company later engaged. This is to facilitate environmentally responsible disposal for all vehicles, including refitted vehicles.

## Windscreen repairs

To function properly, some items of equipment require an electrical or electronic module, which is located on the inside of the windscreen near the interior mirror. If the windscreen has been damaged in the viewing field of the electrical or electronic module, e.g. by stone impact, the windscreen must be replaced. Repairing the crack can lead to malfunctions or functional faults in the equipment.

After changing the windscreen, the camera and sensors must be set up and calibrated by a qualified workshop.

## Engine and transmission guard

An engine and transmission guard can reduce the risk of damage to the underside of the vehicle and to the engine oil sump.

Depending on where the vehicle is used, it may be a good idea to have an engine and transmission guard installed, e.g. if the vehicle will be driven over kerbs, on driveways or on unsurfaced roads. If you wish to have one fitted, Volkswagen recommends contacting your Volkswagen dealership.



### WARNING

**Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause malfunctions and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the driver assist systems. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.**

- **Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should be carried out only by a qualified workshop.**



### WARNING

**Unsuitable spare parts and accessories, incorrectly carried out work, modifications and repairs can lead to damage to the vehicle and cause accidents and serious injuries.**

- **Volkswagen strongly recommends you use only approved Volkswagen accessories and Volkswagen Genuine Parts®. These parts and accessories have been specially tested by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety.**
- **Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop. Qualified workshops have the necessary tools, diagnostic equipment, repair information and qualified personnel.**
- **Never fit parts to your vehicle that are in any way different from the factory-fitted parts.**
- **Never secure or mount objects such as drink holders or telephone holders either on or next to the airbag covers or within the deployment zones of the airbag modules.**
- **Only use rim/tyre combinations which have been approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle type.**

## Repairs and faults in the airbag system

---

**Repairs and technical modifications must always be carried out according to Volkswagen specifications ⇒ .**

Modifications and repairs to the front bumper, the doors, the front seats, the headliner, or the bodywork should be carried out by a qualified workshop. System components and airbag system sensors might be fitted on these vehicle components.

If you work on the airbag system or remove and install parts of the system when performing other repair work, parts of the airbag system may be damaged. The consequence may be that, in the event of an accident, the airbag inflates incorrectly or does not inflate at all.

Regulations must be observed to ensure that the effectiveness of the airbags is not reduced and that removed parts do not cause any injuries or environmental pollution. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.

Any modifications to the vehicle's suspension could prevent the airbag system from working properly during a collision. For example, using tyre/rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, making modifications to the suspension rate including work on the springs, struts and shock absorbers could change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some changes to the suspension could cause the forces measured by the sensors to increase. This can lead to the airbag system being triggered in collision scenarios where it normally would not be triggered if modifications to the suspension had not been made. Other modifications can cause the forces measured by the sensors to decrease, therefore preventing the airbag system from being triggered when it should have been.

## **WARNING**

**Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause malfunctions and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the airbag system. This can result in accidents and serious or even fatal injuries.**

- **Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop.**
- **Airbag modules cannot be repaired. They must be replaced.**
- **Never use recycled airbag components or components that have been taken from end-of-life vehicles in your vehicle.**

## **WARNING**

**Modifications to the vehicle's suspension, including the use of unsuitable tyre/rim combinations, can cause the airbag system to work differently and increase the risk of serious or fatal injuries in the event of an accident.**

- **Never install any components in the suspension system that do not have the same characteristics as the original factory-fitted components.**
- **Never use tyre/rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen.**

## Information stored in the control units

Your vehicle is factory fitted with electronic control units which are responsible for engine and gearbox management. The control units also monitor the function of the exhaust system and the airbags.

These electronic control units continuously evaluate data relevant to the vehicle while the vehicle is being driven. Only these data will be stored if there are any faults recorded or any deviations from the specified values. Faults are generally displayed by the indicator lamps on the instrument cluster.

Special units are required to read and evaluate data stored in the control units.

These data are stored so that specialist workshops can diagnose and solve problems. The following data may have been stored:

- Engine and gearbox-relevant data.
- Speed.
- Direction of travel.
- Braking power.
- Seat belt monitor.

The control units never record conversations that take place in the vehicle. It is neither possible nor permitted to use the stored data to create movement profiles.

During normal operation of the vehicle situations may arise in which it may be possible to assign the stored data (alone or in conjunction with other information such as accident reports, vehicle damage, witness statements etc.) to a particular person, possibly by consulting an expert and use of their additional information.

In vehicles with an emergency call function via a mobile telephone or other units, the current location can be transmitted. In the event of an accident in which the control units register that an airbag has been triggered, the system can automatically send out a signal. This depends on your service provider. Transmission is possible only in areas with a sufficiently strong mobile telephone signal.

Additional functions that are contractually agreed with the customer, e.g. vehicle positioning in an emergency or Volkswagen Car-Net, allow certain vehicle data to be transmitted from the vehicle.

## Event data recorder

The vehicle is **not** fitted with an event data recorder.

Event data recorders temporarily store vehicle information. This provides precise information in the event of an accident. Vehicles with an airbag system may store accident-related data, e.g. impact speed, belt buckle states, seat positions and deployment times. The scope of the data is manufacturer-specific.


An event data recorder may only be fitted if the owner has approved the procedure. This is covered by legislation in some countries.

## Reprogramming control units

All data for the control of components are stored in the control units. Some convenience functions, such as lane change flash, single door unlocking and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If the convenience functions are reprogrammed, the descriptions in your vehicle wallet will no longer match the original functions. Volkswagen recommends that you have any reprogramming confirmed in the service schedule under Workshop comments.

Information about possible reprogramming can be obtained from the Volkswagen dealership.

## Reading the vehicle's event memory

There is a diagnostic interface for reading the event memories in the vehicle interior ⇒ . Data relating to the function and status of the electronic control units are stored in the event memory. Additional information on the stored data is available from qualified workshops.

In some models and with some equipment levels, the diagnosis interface can be found in the footwell on the driver side underneath the dash panel or next to the bonnet release lever, possibly behind a cover.

The event memory should only be read and reset by a qualified workshop.

After a fault has been rectified, the information in the memory pertaining to the fault is deleted. Other memory content is overwritten on an ongoing basis.



### WARNING

**Incorrect use of the diagnostic interface can cause malfunctions, which can result in accidents and serious injuries.**

- **Never read the event memory using the diagnostic interface yourself.**
- **The event memory should only be read out via the diagnostic interface by a qualified workshop. Volkswagen recommends using a Volkswagen dealership for this purpose.**


## Mobile communication in the vehicle

---


Volkswagen recommends always using the external aerial for safe use of mobile communication equipment in the vehicle. The connection quality is improved and the range of the mobile communication device is increased.



## Electromagnetic radiation

If a mobile communication device is used without being connected to the external aerial, the electromagnetic radiation will not be optimally directed to the outside of the vehicle. This can pose a health risk → .

## Using a telephone

In many countries, making telephone calls when driving is permitted only using a hands-free system, e.g. via a Bluetooth® connection or the integrated telephone holder ⇒ *Booklet Infotainment system*.. Secure mobile communication devices in a suitable holder before use ⇒ . Use stowage compartments in the vehicle, e.g. in the centre console, to stow mobile hands-free systems.

Use a compatible mobile phone if the hands-free system supports **SIM Access Profile (SAP)**.

## Two-way radios

Observe legal regulations and the manufacturer's operating instructions for operation of two-way radios. Approval is required for retrofitting two-way radio systems.

Ask your Volkswagen dealership for further information on installation of two-way radio systems.



### WARNING

Objects that are placed loose in the vehicle or not properly secured could be flung through the interior and cause injuries during a sudden driving or braking manoeuvre, or in the event of an accident.

- Secure or safely stow mobile communication devices and accessories outside the deployment zones of the airbags.



### WARNING

If mobile communication devices are used that are not connected to an external aerial, electromagnetic radiation in the vehicle could exceed limit values and thus pose a health hazard for drivers and other vehicle occupants. This also applies to external aerials which have not been correctly installed.

- Keep a minimum distance of 20 cm between the aerials of the device and an active medical implant, e.g. pacemaker.
- Do not carry an operational device close to or directly above an active medical implant, e.g. in a breast pocket.
- Switch off the device immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with an active medical implant or any other medical device.

## Consumer information

### Information stickers and plates

---

Safety certificates, stickers and plates showing important vehicle operation information are factory-fitted in the engine compartment and on certain vehicle parts, such as the tank flap, front passenger sun visor, driver door pillar or under/on the luggage compartment floor.

- Never remove or damage the safety certificates, stickers and plates. They must remain legible at all times.
- If vehicle parts bearing safety certificates, stickers or plates are removed from the vehicle, replacement safety certificates, stickers or plates with the same information must be applied properly to the new parts by the qualified workshop.

## Safety certificate

There is a safety certificate on the door pillar of the driver door which states that all necessary safety standards and specifications from the transport safety authorities of the particular country were met at the time of production. The month and year of production and the chassis number may also be listed.

## High voltage warning sticker

There is a sticker near the bonnet lock showing a warning about the high voltage in the vehicle's electrical system.

### **WARNING**

Handling the vehicle incorrectly will increase the risk of accident and injuries.

- Comply with legal regulations.
- Observe the owner's manual.

### **NOTICE**

Handling the vehicle incorrectly could lead to the vehicle becoming damaged.

- Comply with legal regulations.
- Carry out service jobs in accordance with the service schedule.
- Observe the owner's manual.

## Information on Volkswagen Emergency Call service

The functioning and performance of the mobile data link between the vehicle and data server depend on factors that are outside the influence and responsibility of Volkswagen AG. This includes, in particular, adequate mobile reception at the vehicle location as well as, where applicable, disturbances, interference or interruptions in mobile reception due to tunnels, garages, underpasses or other external influences (weather conditions, such as thunderstorms, interfering devices, buildings, bridges or mountains or intensive use of the mobile network, etc.). The data connection between the vehicle and data server can also be guaranteed only if the vehicle is in a country to which it was delivered for initial registration with the approval of Volkswagen AG (area of use). The countries that belong to the area of use of the vehicle depend on the vehicle model, model year and equipment level.

Volkswagen collects, processes, transmits and uses personal data of the user within the framework of legal regulations for the purpose of smooth functioning and provision of the service. If an emergency call is initiated via the Volkswagen Emergency Call Service, the following data will be transmitted to Volkswagen AG: information about your vehicle, its location, time of the accident, number of occupants, accident severity and type (frontal, side or rear collision or rollover), door status and also the default language. This data is processed by Volkswagen AG and passed on to an emergency control centre.

## Radio reception and aerials

In vehicles with a factory-fitted infotainment system, the aerial for radio reception can be installed at various locations in the vehicle:

- On the inside of the rear window, together with the rear window heating.
- On the inside of the rear side windows.
- On the inside of the windscreen.

- On the roof of the vehicle.

Aerials on the interior of the windows can be identified by thin wires.

### NOTICE

**Aerials located on the inside of the windows can be damaged by corrosive or acidic detergents, any other chemicals or if hard objects chafe against the window. Never apply stickers over the window aerials and never clean the aerials with corrosive or acidic detergents or any other chemicals.**

### NOTICE

**When retrofitting an infotainment system, ensure that the vehicle's standard integral aerial amplifier is compatible with the infotainment system or else use an additional aerial adapter. Otherwise the aerial amplifier could be subjected to overvoltage damage.**

## Component protection

Some electronic components and control units are fitted with component protection as standard, e.g. the infotainment system.

Component protection was developed as a protective mechanism in order to:

- Prevent any factory-fitted parts delivered with a vehicle from functioning fully if they have been installed into other vehicles (e.g. after theft),
- Prevent full function of components outside of the vehicle,
- Allow for legitimate installation or exchange of parts and control units by a professional in the case of service.

Where	What appears:	Possible solution
Instrument cluster display	<b>SAFE CP</b>	Go to a qualified workshop.
Infotainment system display	<b>Component theft protection: the infotainment system is not fully available at present. Switch on the ignition.</b>	Switch on the ignition. If this does not deactivate component protection, seek professional assistance.

## Volkswagen repair information

Volkswagen Service information and official Volkswagen repair information can be purchased from the following addresses:

### Customers in Europe, Asia, Australia, Africa, Central and South America

Please contact a Volkswagen dealership or a qualified workshop or order the literature you require from [www.erwin.volkswagen.de](http://www.erwin.volkswagen.de).

### WARNING

**Incorrect repairs and modifications can cause malfunctions and damage to the vehicle and impair the effectiveness of the driver assist systems and the airbag systems. This can result in accidents and severe injuries.**

- Repairs and modifications to your vehicle should only be carried out by a qualified workshop.

## Declaration of conformity

---

The individual manufacturer declares herewith that the following products conform, at the time of vehicle production, with the basic requirements and other relevant laws and regulations, including FCC Part 15.19, FCC Part 15.21 and RSS-Gen Issue 1:

### **Radio-based equipment**

- Electronic immobiliser.
- Vehicle key.
- Remote control for the auxiliary heater ⇒ *Auxiliary heating and ventilation* .
- Keyless Access locking and starting system.
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).
- Area monitoring system (Front Assist) including City Emergency Brake.
- Lane change system (Side Assist)
- Blind Spot Monitor incl. Rear Traffic Alert

### **Electrical equipment**

- 12-volt socket.
- 230-volt Euro socket, 115-volt socket, 100-volt socket.

## Declaration of conformity for wheels and tyres

---

Tyres fitted in the vehicle meet the requirement of BIS and comply with the requirements under the Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR), 1989.

## Recycling and scrapping end-of-life vehicles

---

### **Recycling end-of-life vehicles**

Volkswagen has already made provision for you to recycle your vehicle in an environmentally responsible manner. The recycling system operating in many European countries will take back your vehicle at the end of its useful life. Once the vehicle has been recycled, a certificate of destruction will be issued to show that the vehicle has been disposed of correctly.

End-of-life vehicles are recycled free of charge, provided that national legislation is complied with.

Further information on the recycling of end-of-life vehicles can be found at a Volkswagen dealership.

### **Scrapping**

The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the airbag and the belt tensioners are scrapped. Qualified workshops are familiar with these requirements.


## Information for vehicles with N1 approval (light commercial vehicle)

---

Observe the following for vehicle used for the carriage of goods with a gross weight rating of up to 3.5 t (approval in Europe as N1):

## Variants and number of seats

N1 vehicles based on a Volkswagen passenger car models are available in different versions. The number of seats may be limited to 2 or 4, for example.

*Vehicles with two seats:* due to the omission of a rear bench seat, the floor in the rear of the vehicle interior does not have a floor covering ⇒ .

*Vehicles with four seats:* the rear bench seat is designed so that the middle seat **cannot** be used ⇒ .

## Safe transport of children

Like in vehicles with passenger car approval (M1), approved child restraint systems can be used on the seats ⇒ *Safe transport of children*.

## Towing a trailer

Observe any country-specific regulations when towing a trailer and using a towing bracket.

If the vehicle exceeds the permitted gross weight or axle load for the rear axle, a speed of 80 km/h must not be exceeded when towing a trailer. This also applies to countries where higher speeds are permitted. Always obey speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for vehicles without trailers.

Any permitted excess loads for the vehicle are entered in the vehicle documents. If no permitted excess load is entered, the permitted driving speed limit is 100 km/h taking into account country-specific legislation.

## Technical data

Refer to the vehicle documents for the technical data.

### WARNING

Danger of injuries and electric shock from exposed cables.

- Have the luggage compartment completed at the latest after delivery so that the cables in the rear area of the vehicle are covered during use of the vehicle.

### WARNING

Danger of serious injury due to incorrect transport of persons.

- Never transport a person or child in the middle of the rear bench seat.
- The lack of restraint systems such as seat belt and head restraint can result in serious or fatal injury in the event of an accident.

### WARNING

Danger of serious and fatal injury.

- Do not transport people in the luggage compartment.
- Observe the safety instructions and information on the luggage compartment and transporting items ⇒ *Transporting items*.

# Technical data

## Information on technical data

---


Unless otherwise indicated or listed separately, the technical data for the basic model apply. Optional equipment, different vehicle equipment, special vehicles and country-specific vehicle equipment levels can result in different values. All data in the official vehicle documents take precedence over these data.

Observe the instructions and information for vehicles with an N1 approval ⇒ [Information for vehicles with N1 approval \(light commercial vehicle\)](#).

## Engine

The vehicle data sticker in the service schedule or the vehicle registration documents show which engine is installed in your vehicle.

## Weight

The values for the kerb weight in the following tables apply to the road-ready vehicle with driver (75 kg), service fluids including fuel tank carrying 90% of its capacity and, if applicable, tool kit and spare tyre ⇒ . Additional equipment and retrofitted accessories increase the kerb weight stated and reduce the maximum permitted load accordingly.

The load comprises the weights of the following:

- Vehicle occupants
- All luggage
- Roof load including the mounts or roof bars and the load carrier system
- Drawbar load when towing a trailer ⇒ [Towing a trailer](#).

## Performance figures

For reasons of vehicle registration and vehicle taxation, the power output and performance of some engines may vary in some countries from the information given in this booklet.

In certain vehicles with heavy duty suspension, the engine could be governed to provide a maximum speed of 210 km/h.

When the performance figures were measured, the vehicle was not fitted with any equipment that could reduce performance, e.g. a roof carrier or mud flaps.

## Gross combination weight rating

The gross combination weight ratings listed are only applicable for altitudes up to 1,000 m above sea level. The maximum weight of the car and trailer must be reduced by approximately 10% for every further 1,000 m in altitude.

## Explanation of tables

Abbreviations for the gearboxes: MG = manual gearbox, AG = automatic gearbox, DSG® = DSG® dual clutch gearbox. MG6 = 6-speed manual gearbox.

## ⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permissible weights, gross combination weights, loads, dimensions, maximum speeds and axle loads can damage the vehicle and cause accidents and serious injuries.

- Do not exceed the permitted weights, gross combination weights, loads, dimensions and maximum speeds.
- The actual axle loads must never exceed the maximum permissible axle loads.
- The payload and the distribution of the load in the vehicle have an effect on the driving response and braking distance of the vehicle. Adjust your speed accordingly.

## ⓘ NOTICE

The payload should be distributed as evenly as possible in the vehicle. When transporting heavy objects in the luggage compartment, they should be placed either in front of or over the rear axle in order to minimise the effect on the vehicle's handling.

## Vehicle identification data

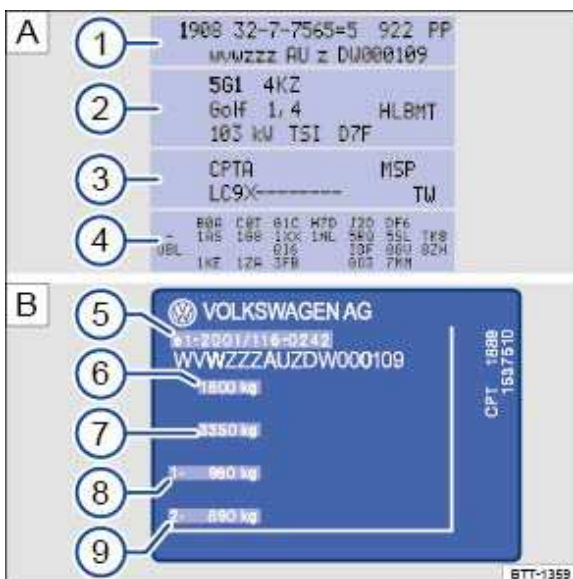


Fig. 280 vehicle data sticker: example shows a vehicle with engine code CPTA ③. Type plate.



Fig. 281 In the windscreen: vehicle identification number.

## Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker → Fig. 280 **A** can be found in the service schedule and near the spare wheel well in the luggage compartment. It contains the following data:

- 1 Vehicle identification number (chassis number).
- 2 Vehicle type, engine power, gearbox type.
- 3 Engine and gearbox code, paint number, interior equipment. In the example, the engine code is CPTA → Fig. 280.
- 4 Optional extras, PR numbers.

## Type plate

The type plate → Fig. 280 **B** can be seen on the lower part of the door pillar when the door is open. Vehicles for certain export countries do not have a type plate.

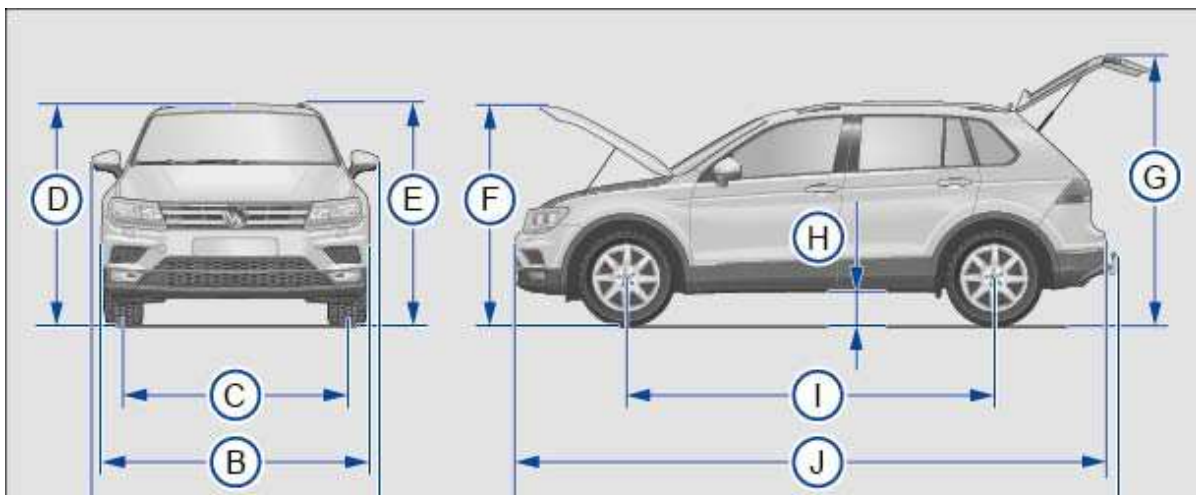
The type plate contains the following data:

- 5 Permit
- 6 Gross vehicle weight rating
- 7 Gross combination weight rating (vehicle plus trailer → *Towing a trailer*).
- 8 Gross axle weight rating, front
- 9 Gross axle weight rating, rear

## Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number can be read from outside the vehicle through a viewer in the windscreen → Fig. 281 (arrow). The viewer is located in the lower corner of the windscreen. The vehicle identification number is also stamped on the right-hand water drainage channel. The water drainage channel is located between the suspension turret and wing. Open the bonnet **▲** → *In the engine compartment* to gain access to the vehicle identification number.

## Dimensions





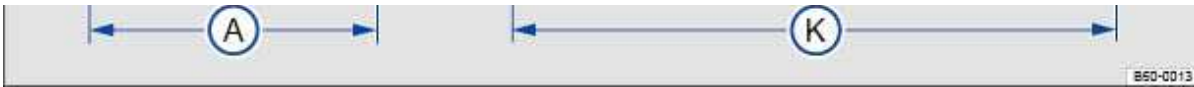


Fig. 282 Dimensions.

The data in the table apply to the most basic German model.

The specified values can vary due to different tyre and wheel sizes, if additional equipment is fitted, for different equipment packages, for retrofitted accessories, and for special vehicles. They can also vary in vehicles that have been manufactured for other countries.

Key to ⇒ Fig. 282 :		Value
Ⓐ	Width (from one exterior mirror to the other)	2,099 mm
Ⓑ	Width	1,839 mm
	Width with widened wheel housing	1,863 mm
Ⓒ	Front track	1,589 mm
	Rear track	1,580 mm
Ⓓ	Height to the upper edge of the roof at kerb weight <sup>a)</sup>	1,632 mm
Ⓔ	Maximum height at kerb weight <sup>a)</sup>	- <sup>b)</sup>
Ⓕ	Height with open bonnet and kerb weight <sup>a)</sup>	1,868 mm
Ⓖ	Height with open boot lid and kerb weight <sup>a)</sup>	2,043 mm
Ⓖ	Ground clearance when ready to drive <sup>c)</sup> between the axles	200 mm
Ⓗ	Wheelbase	2,681 mm
Ⓙ	Length with standard front (from bumper to bumper)	4,486 mm
	Length with off-road front (from bumper to bumper)	- <sup>b)</sup>
Ⓚ	Length with standard front and fitted towing bracket (when factory-fitted)	- <sup>b)</sup>
	Length with off-road front and fitted towing bracket (when factory-fitted)	- <sup>b)</sup>
	Turning circle diameter	11.5 m

### ! NOTICE

- Take care when driving in car parks with protruding kerbstones or bollards. Objects that protrude from the ground can damage the bumper and other components when parking the vehicle.
- Drive carefully through dips in the road, over driveways, ramps, kerbstones and other objects. Low-lying vehicle components such as the bumper, spoiler and parts of the running gear, engine or exhaust system could be damaged.

<sup>a)</sup> Kerb weight without driver, without payload.

<sup>b)</sup> Figures were not available at time of publication.

<sup>c)</sup> Kerb weight with driver (75kg) and service fluids.

## Technical data - Running gear

Term	Technical data
------	----------------

Term	Technical data
Ground clearance (four-wheel drive)	Under the axles: Maximum 180 mm.
	Between the axles: Maximum 200 mm.
Ground clearance (four-wheel drive)	Under the axles: Maximum 180 mm.
	Between the axles: Maximum 200 mm.
Ground clearance (front-wheel drive)	Under the axles: Maximum 170 mm.
	Between the axles: Maximum 190 mm.
Angle of rising gradient	a)
Tilt angle (inclination of the vehicle)	a)
Breakover angle	Maximum of 20 degrees.
Ramp angle	Front with standard front: Maximum of 18 degrees.
	Front with off-road front: Maximum of 25 degrees.
	Rear: Maximum of 24 degrees.

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

## Fuel tank capacity

### Fuel tank capacity

Petrol and diesel engines	Four-wheel drive: approx 60 l, of which 7 l reserve. Front-wheel drive: approx 58 l, of which 7 l reserve.
---------------------------	---

## Petrol engines

### 1.4 l, 4-cylinder TSI® (92 kW)

Power output	92 kW at 5,000 – 6,000 rpm
Engine code (EC)	<b>CZCA</b>
Maximum torque	200 Nm at 1,400 - 4,000 rpm

Gearbox		<b>MG6</b>
Maximum speed	km/h	190
Kerb weight	kg	_a)
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	_a)
Gross axle weight rating, front	kg	_a)
Gross axle weight rating, rear	kg	_a)
Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with petrol engine and 18° standard front)	kg	_a)
Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with petrol engine and 25° off-road front)	kg	_a)
Maximum trailer weight, trailer with no separate brakes	kg	_a)
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a petrol engine and 18° standard front)	kg	_a)
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a petrol engine and 25° off-road front)	kg	_a)

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

#### 1.4-I, 4-cylinder TSI® (110 kW)

Power output	110 kW at 5,000 – 6,000 rpm			
Engine code (EC)	<b>CZEA</b>			
Maximum torque	250 Nm at 1,500 - 3,500 rpm			
Gearbox		<b>MG6</b>	<b>MG64MOTION</b>	<b>DSG®6</b>
Maximum speed	km/h	202	200	200
Kerb weight	kg	_a)	_a)	_a)
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	_a)	_a)	_a)
Gross axle weight rating, front	kg	_a)	_a)	_a)
Gross axle weight rating, rear	kg	_a)	_a)	_a)
Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with petrol engine and 18° standard front)	kg	_a)	_a)	_a)
Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with petrol engine and 25° off-road front)	kg	_a)	_a)	_a)
Maximum trailer weight, trailer with no separate brakes	kg	_a)	_a)	_a)
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a petrol engine and 18° standard front)	kg	_a)	_a)	_a)
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a petrol engine and 25° off-road front)	kg	_a)	_a)	_a)

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

## 2.0 I, 4-cylinder TFSI® (132 kW)

Power output	132 kW at 3,940 – 6,000 rpm	
Engine code (EC)	<b>CZPA</b>	
Maximum torque	320 Nm at 1,500 - 3,940 rpm	
Gearbox		<b>DSG®7 4MOTION</b>
Maximum speed	km/h	208
Kerb weight	kg	1,649
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,260
Gross axle weight rating, front	kg	1,160
Gross axle weight rating, rear	kg	1,150
Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with petrol engine and 18° standard front)	kg	2,200
Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with petrol engine and 25° off-road front)	kg	2,500
Maximum trailer weight, trailer with no separate brakes	kg	750
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a petrol engine and 18° standard front)	kg	4,465
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a petrol engine and 25° off-road front)	kg	4,765

## Diesel engines

### 2.0 I, 4-cylinder TDI® (85 kW)

Power output	85 kW at - rpm <b>with</b> diesel particulate filter	
Engine code (EC)	<b>DFGC</b> (with AdBlue)	
Maximum torque	280 Nm at 1,750 - 2,500 rpm	
Gearbox		<b>MG6</b>
Maximum speed	km/h	185
Kerb weight	kg	_a)
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	_a)
Gross axle weight rating, front	kg	_a)
Gross axle weight rating, rear	kg	_a)

Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with diesel engine and 18° standard front)	kg	_a)
Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with diesel engine and 25° off-road front)	kg	_a)
Maximum trailer weight, trailer with no separate brakes	kg	_a)
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a diesel engine and 18° standard front)	kg	_a)
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a diesel engine and 25° off-road front)	kg	_a)

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

## 2.0 I, 4-cylinder TDI® (110 kW)

Power output	110 kW at 3,500 – 4,000 rpm <sup>a)</sup> with diesel particulate filter				
Engine code (EC)	<b>DFGA</b> (with AdBlue)				
Maximum torque	340 Nm at – rpm <sup>a)</sup>				
Gearbox		<b>MG6</b>	<b>MG6 4MOTION</b>	<b>DSG®7</b>	<b>DSG®7 4MOTION</b>
Maximum speed	km/h	204	201	_a)	200
Kerb weight	kg	1,493	1,585	_a)	1,598
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,210	2,290	_a)	2,330
Gross axle weight rating, front	kg	1,120	1,150	_a)	1,190
Gross axle weight rating, rear	kg	1,140	1,190	_a)	1,190
Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with diesel engine and 18° standard front)	kg	2,000	2,300	_a)	2,300
Maximum trailer weight braked, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with diesel engine and 25° off-road front)	kg	2,000	2,500	_a)	2,500
Maximum trailer weight, trailer with no separate brakes	kg	750	750	_a)	750
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a diesel engine and 18° standard front)	kg	4,210	4,600	_a)	4,620
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a diesel engine and 25° off-road front)	kg	4,290	4,810	_a)	4,830

a) Figures were not available at time of publication.

## 2.0 I, 4-cylinder TDI® (140 kW)

Power output	140 kW at 3,500 – 4,000 rpm <b>with</b> diesel particulate filter	
Engine code (EC)	<b>DFHA</b> (with AdBlue)	
Maximum torque	400 Nm at 1,900 – 3,300 rpm	
Gearbox		<b>DSG<sup>®</sup>7 4MOTION</b>
Maximum speed	km/h	212
Kerb weight	kg	1,773
Gross vehicle weight rating	kg	2,330
Gross axle weight rating, front	kg	1,190
Gross axle weight rating, rear	kg	1,190
Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with diesel engine and 18° standard front)	kg	2,300
Maximum trailer weight with brakes, gradients up to 12% (vehicles with diesel engine and 28° off-road front)	kg	2,500
Maximum trailer weight, trailer with no separate brakes	kg	750
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a diesel engine and 18° standard front)	kg	4,460
Gross combination weight rating (vehicles with a diesel engine and 28° off-road front)	kg	4,760

# Abbreviations

## Abbreviation Definition

rpm	Revolutions per minute – engine speed.
ABS	Anti-lock brake system.
AFS	Cornering lighting.
AM	Medium wave (amplitude modulation).
App	Application.
TCS	Traction control system.
AUX	Auxiliary audio input.
CO <sub>2</sub>	Carbon dioxide.
DCC	Adaptive chassis control.
DIN	German Standards Authority.
DSG <sup>®</sup> 6	Automatic 6-speed DSG <sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox.
DSG <sup>®</sup> 7	Automatic 7-speed DSG <sup>®</sup> dual clutch gearbox.
EDL	Electronic differential lock.
EN	European standard.
ESC	Electronic Stability Control.
ETC	Electronic toll collection system.
g/km	Carbon dioxide emissions in grams per kilometre.
CCS	Cruise Control System.
IT	Information technology.
kN	Kilonewton, pulling power.

## Abbreviation Definition

---

kPa	Kilopascal, value for tyre inflation pressure.
kW	Kilowatt, indication of engine power.
LED	Light-emitting diode.
MFD	Multifunction display.
EC	Engine code.
Nm	Newton metres, unit of engine torque.
OBD	On-board diagnosis.
hp	The approximate equivalent of brake horse power, formerly used to denote engine power.
psi	Pound per square inch, value for tyre inflation pressure.
RON	Research Octane Number, indication of the knock resistance of petrol.
SCR	Technology for selective catalytic reduction of nitrogen oxides
MG6	6-speed manual gearbox.
SIM	Subscriber identity module.
TDI®	Diesel engine with direct injection and turbocharging (turbocharged direct or diesel injection).
TSI®	Twin-charged stratified injection.
XDL	Extension of the electronic differential lock.

Volkswagen AG works continuously to develop and improve its vehicles. Please understand that we must therefore reserve the right to alter any part of the vehicle and its equipment or technical specifications at any time. The data provided concerning scope of delivery, appearance, performance, dimensions, weights, fuel consumption, standards and vehicle functions are all correct at the time of going to print. Some of the equipment described might not yet be available in a particular vehicle (information can be provided by your local Volkswagen dealership), and some equipment may not be available in certain countries. The vehicle illustrated on the cover may have certain items of optional equipment which are only available at extra cost, or which are only available in certain markets. Your Volkswagen dealership will be able to inform you about variations in different countries. Subject to alteration and amendment. No legal commitment may be inferred from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen AG.

All rights under the laws of copyright are expressly reserved by Volkswagen AG. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Germany.

© Volkswagen AG 2016



This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.